16.04.020 - Adoption of Referenced Codes-Purpose

A. Pursuant to RCW 19.27.074, the City of Olympia hereby adopts the following codes, as amended by the Washington State Building Code Council and the City of Olympia, as hereinafter set forth, for the purpose of establishing rules and regulations for the construction, alteration, removal, demolition, use and occupancy, location and maintenance of buildings and structures, as well as the installation, repair, replacement or alteration of electrical, mechanical, and plumbing systems along with their associated equipment, appliances, fixtures, fittings and appurtenances thereto, and providing for the issuance of permits and collection of fees therefore, providing penalties for the violation of such codes and each and all of the regulations, provisions, conditions and terms of these Codes, standards, rules and regulations and appendices as noted. One copy of each code shall be on file with the City Clerk.

1. **International Building Code Adopted.**

   The 2006 Edition of the International Building Code, hereafter IBC, as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-50 WAC, as published by the International Code Council, Inc. (ICC) including ICC A117.1-2006, is hereby adopted, and the following Appendices are specifically adopted:

   - Appendix D, Fire Districts
   - Appendix E, Sections 101 through 106
   - Appendix G, Flood resistant construction.
   - Appendix H, Signs.
   - Appendix J, Grading.

2. **International Residential Code Adopted.**

   The 2006 Edition of the International Residential Code, hereafter IRC, as published by the International Code Council, Inc. (ICC), and as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-51 WAC, is hereby adopted and the following Appendices are specifically adopted:

   - Appendix A (IFGC), Sizing and Capacities of Gas Piping
   - Appendix B (IFGC), Sizing of Venting Systems Serving Appliances Equipped with Draft Hoods, Category I Appliances and Appliances Listed for Use and Type B Vents
   - Appendix C, Exit Terminals of Mechanical Draft and Direct-Vent Venting Systems
   - Appendix G, Swimming pools, spas, and hot tubs
   - Appendix K, Sound transmission

3. **International Mechanical Code Adopted.**

   The 2006 Edition of the International Mechanical Code, hereafter IMC, as published by the International Code Council, Inc. (ICC), and as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-42 WAC, is hereby adopted, except that the standards for liquefied petroleum gas installations shall be National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 58 (Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases) and American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Z223.1/NFPA 54 (National Fuel Gas Code), and sections of Chapter 5 pertaining to Type I hoods, ducts and plenums shall be superseded by the requirements of NFPA Pamphlet No. 96.

4. **Uniform Plumbing Code Adopted.**

   The 2006 Edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code, hereafter UPC, as published by the International

Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO), and as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-56 and 51-57 WAC, is hereby adopted; PROVIDED, that any provisions of such code affecting sewers or fuel gas piping are not adopted, which provisions are in WAC Chapter 51-56 and 51-57 and the rules adopted by the Washington State Building Code Council establishing standards for making buildings and facilities accessible to and usable by the physically disabled or elderly persons as provided in RCW 70.92.100 through 70.92.160.

In addition, the following Appendices are specifically adopted:

- Appendix A, Pipe sizing
- Appendix B, Notes on combination waste/venting
- Appendix I, Installation Standards
- Appendix H, Grease Interceptors

5. **National Fuel Gas Code (NFPA 54) and Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code (NFPA 58) Adopted.**

   The National Fuel Gas Code, hereafter NFGC, as published by NFPA, and as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-52 WAC, is hereby adopted. The Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code, as published by NFPA, and as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-52 WAC, is hereby adopted. These provisions shall apply to the storage and handling of liquefied petroleum gases (LPG).

6. **International Fuel Gas Code Adopted.**

   The 2006 Edition of the International Fuel Gas Code, as published by the International Code Council, and as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-52 WAC, is hereby adopted.

   The provisions shall apply to the installation of all materials and equipment utilizing natural gas except those regulated by the International Residential Code and those utilizing LPG.

7. **Washington State Energy Code Adopted.**

   The 2001, Second Edition, Washington State Energy Code, as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-11 WAC, is hereby adopted.

8. **Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality Code Adopted.**

   The Washington State Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality Code, as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-13 WAC, is hereby adopted.

9. **Manufactured Home Standards adopted**

   The Manufactured Home Standards established by the State of Washington governing the installation of manufactured homes (as set forth in WAC Chapter 296-150M), are hereby adopted.

10. **Washington State Historic Building Code adopted**

    The Historic Building Code, as adopted in Chapter 51-19 WAC, is hereby adopted.

(Ord. 6523 §3, 2008; Ord. 6310 §2, 2004).

An American National Standard

IAPMO/ANSI UPC 1-2006

2006 UNIFORM PLUMBING CODE™

IAPMO®

Approved American National Standard

ANSI

SANITARY ASSE ENGINEERING

MCAA

PHCC

THE PLUMBERS, PIPEFITTERS & SPRINKLERFITTERS UNION UA UNITED ASSOCIATION™

WORLD PLUMBING COUNCIL

REVISION MARKINGS

Code changes from the 2003 edition are marked in the margins as follows:

→ An arrow denotes a deletion.

| A vertical denotes a change.

TIA TIA indicates that the revision is the result of a Tentative Interim Amendment
For further information on tentative interim amendments see Section 5 of the IAPMO Regulations Governing Committee Projects available at http://www.iapmo.org/iapmo/code_rules-regs.html

NFPA A reference in brackets [ ] following a section or paragraph indicates material that has been extracted from another document. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association on the reference subject which is represented by the standard in its entirety. Text which has been extracted pursuant to IAPMO's Extract Guidelines is denoted with the use of "NFPA" in the margin. This text has not been fully processed by IAPMO in accordance with ANSI's public announcement consensus requirements for an American National Standard (ANS) nor approved by ANSI's Board of Standards Review, but will be fully processed in accordance with those requirements as part of the next revision cycle for this document.

Information on referenced publications can be found in Chapter 14.

All pressures used in this code are gauge pressures unless otherwise indicated.

Twenty-Fourth Edition

First Printing, January 2006
Second Printing, April 2006
Third Printing, May 2006
Fourth Printing, January 2007
Fifth Printing, June 2007
Sixth Printing, October 2007

ISSN 0733-2335
Published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
5001 E. Philadelphia Street • Ontario, CA 91761-2816 – USA
Main Phone: (909) 472-4100 • Main Fax: (909) 472-4150

® GCIU 897-M
IBT 853

The advantages of a uniform plumbing code adopted by various local jurisdictions has long been recognized. Disorder in the industry as a result of widely divergent plumbing practices and the use of many different, often conflicting, plumbing codes by local jurisdictions influenced the Western Plumbing Officials Association (now the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials [IAPMO]) to form a committee of plumbing inspectors, master and journeyman plumbers, and sanitary and mechanical engineers, assisted by public utility companies and the plumbing industry to create a basic plumbing document for general use. The product of this effort, the first edition of the *Uniform Plumbing Code*™ (UPC™) was officially adopted by IAPMO in 1945. The widespread use of this code over the past five decades by jurisdictions throughout the United States and internationally is testament to its merit.

With the publication of the 2003 Edition of the *Uniform Plumbing Code*, another significant milestone was reached. For the first time in the history of the United States, a plumbing code was developed through a true consensus process. The 2006 edition represents the most current approaches in the plumbing field and is the second edition developed under the ANSI consensus process. Contributions to the content of the code were made by every segment of the built industry, including such diverse interests as consumers, enforcing authorities, installers/maintainers, insurance, labor, manufacturers, research/standards/testing laboratories, special experts, and users.

The UPC is designed to provide consumers with safe and sanitary plumbing systems while, at the same time, allowing latitude for innovation and new technologies. The public at large is encouraged and invited to participate in IAPMO's open consensus code development process. This code is updated every three years. A code development timeline and other relevant information is available at IAPMO's website at www.iapmo.org.

The *Uniform Plumbing Code* is dedicated to all those who, in working to achieve "the ultimate plumbing code," have unselfishly devoted their time, effort, and personal funds to create and maintain this, the finest plumbing code in existence today.

The *2006 Uniform Plumbing Code* is supported by the American Society of Sanitary Engineering (ASSE), the Mechanical Contractors Association of America (MCAA), the Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors National Association (PHCC-NA), the United Association (UA), and the World Plumbing Council (WPC). The presence of these logos, while reflecting support, does not imply any ownership of the copyright to the UPC, which is held exclusively by IAPMO. Further, the logos of these associations indicates the support of IAPMO's open, consensus process being used to develop IAPMO's codes and standards.

The addresses of the organizations are as follows:
ASSE – 901 Canterbury Road, Suite A • Westlake, OH 44145-7201 • (440) 835-3040
MCAA – 1385 Piccard Drive • Rockville, MD 20850 • (301) 869-5800
PHCC-NA – PO Box 6808 • Falls Church, VA 22046 • (800) 533-7694
UA – 901 Massachusetts Avenue NW • Washington, DC 20001 • (202) 628-5823
WPC – WPC Secretary • c/o The Institute of Plumbing • 64 Station Lane • Hornchurch Essex
RM12 6NB • United Kingdom • +44 17-08-47-27-91

Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA)

A Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) to any Document may be processed if the Council Secretary determines, after a preliminary review, and consultation with the appropriate Chair, that the Amendment appears to be of an emergency nature requiring prompt action and has the endorsement of a Member of the involved Technical Committee.

Section 206.0 Design Flood Elevation – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Section 208.0 Flood Hazard Area – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Section 301.3 Flood Hazard Resistance – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Section 301.3.1 General – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Section301.3.2 Flood hazard areas subject to high velocity wave action – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Section 411.7 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on December 7, 2005.

Section 507.8 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on December 7, 2005.

Section 603.4.21 Pure water process systems – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on December 7, 2005.

Section 603.4.21.1 Dialysis water systems – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on December 7, 2005.

Section 715.3 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 17, 2003.

Section 1202.0 General. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1216.1 Required Gas Supply. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.1 Pipe Sizing Methods. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.1.1 Longest Length Method. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.1.2 Branch Length Method. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.1.3 Hybrid Pressure. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.2 Tables for Sizing Gas-Piping Systems. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.3 Sizing Equations. – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Figure 12-2 Example Illustrating Use of Tables 12-1 and 12-8 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.4 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.5 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Section 1217.6 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on August 28, 2006.

Appendix K, K 1 Private Sewage Disposal - General – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Appendix K, K 5 Septic Tank Construction – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Appendix K, Table K-1 Location of Sewage Disposal Systems – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on September 26, 2005.

Appendix L, L8.6 Additional Venting Required – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on February 7, 2006.

For further information on Tentative Interim Amendments, see Section 5 of the IAPMO Rules Governing Committee Projects – www.iapmo.org.

COMMITTEE ON UNIFORM PLUMBING CODE

These lists represent the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. Please refer to the new members list below.

Terry Swisher, *Chairman*
State of Oregon, [E]

James Weflen, *Secretary*
Copper Development Association, [M]

Robert Aagaard, American Society of Sanitary Engineering [R/S/T]
Rand Ackroyd, Rand Engineering [M]
Rep. Plumbing and Drainage Institute
Julius Ballanco, JB Engineering/Code Consultant PC [SE]
Rep. American Society of Plumbing Engineers
George Bliss, United Association [L]
Sylvanus Bloice, Roots Plumbing Services [I/M]
Jeremy Brown, NSF International [R/S/T]
Lawrence Brown, National Association of Home Builders [U]
Paul Cabot, American Gas Association [U]
Richard Church, Plastic Pipe and Fittings Association [M]
Donald Dickerson, Donald Dickerson Associates [SE]
Rickey Fabra, Plumbers & Steamfitters Local [L]
Lawrence Gibson, Intertek Testing Services [R/S/T]
John M. Jacobs, Mechanical Contractors Association of America [I/M]
Robert Kordulak, Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors National Association [I/M]
Theodore Lemoff, NFPA [R/S/T]
William LeVan, Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute [M]
Thomas Pape, California Urban Water Conservation Council [C]
Leonard Ramociotti, City of Reno [E]
Phillips Ribbs, PHR Consultant [SE]
Arnold Rodio, Pace Setter Plumbing [I/M]
Anthony Scarano, Plastics Piping Consultant [SE]
Joseph Sternola, National Propane Gas Association (NPGA) [U]
Larry Soskin, Ace Duraflo [I/M]
Amir Tabakh, City of Los Angeles [E]
John Taecker, Underwriters Laboratories [R/S/T]
Don Traylor, State Plumbing Board of Louisiana [E]
David Viola, Plumbing Manufacturers Institute [M]

Alternates

Ian Chang, Intertek Testing Services [R/S/T]
Shannon Corcoran, American Society of Sanitary Engineering [R/S/T]
James Dingman, Underwriters Laboratories [R/S/T]
Richard Emerson, Plumbing Manufacturers Institute [M]
Bob Friedlander, Construction Code Consultant [M]
Rep. Plastic Pipe and Fittings Association
Myron Havis, Copper Development Association [M]
Nasrin Kashefi, NSF International [R/S/T]
Kirk Nelson, Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors National Association [I/M]
Michael Tharpe, City of Los Angeles [E]
April Trafton, Donald Dickerson Associates [SE]
Fred Volkers, United Association [L]
James Walls, Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute [M]
Mike Wynne, Plumbers & Steamfitters Local [L]

New Committee Members as of January 2006

Tim Collings, Salt Lake City, Utah [E] is the new chairman of the technical committee appointed as of March 2006
Nasser Nikravi, State of California OSHPD [E]
Ray Moore, American Society of Plumbing Enginner [SE]

Nonvoting

Chris Salazar, Ex-Officio, IAPMO [E]*
Carl Marbery, IAPMO Staff Liaison
Morrie Klimboff, Member Emeritus, M Klimboff Consulting [C]*
Lynne Simnick, IAPMO Saff Liaison

COMMITTEE MEMBERSHIP CLASSIFICATION ABBREVIATIONS

These classifications apply to Technical Committee members and represent their principal interest in the activity of a committee.

M	*Manufacturer:* A representative of a maker or marketer of a product, assembly, or system, or portion thereof, that is affected by the standard.
U	*User:* A representative of an entity that is subject to the provisions of the standard or that voluntarily uses the standard.
I/M	*Installer/Maintainer:* A representative of an entity that is in the business of installing or maintaining a product, assembly, or system affected by the standard.
L	*Labor:* A labor representative or employee concerned with safety in the workplace.
R/S/T	*Research/Standards/Testing Laboratory:* A representative of an independent research organization; an organization that develops codes, standards or other similar documents; or an independent testing laboratory.
E	*Enforcing Authority:* A representative or an agency or an organization that promulgates and/or enforces standards.
I	*Insurance:* A representative of an insurance company, broker, agent, bureau, or inspection agency.
C	*Consumer:* A person who is, or represents, the ultimate purchaser of a product, system, or service affected by the standard, but who is not included in the *User* classification.
SE	*Special Expert:* A person not representing any of the previous classifications, but who has special expertise in the scope of the standard or portion thereof.

FORM FOR PROPOSALS ON IAPMO UPC/UMC COMMITTEE DOCUMENT

NOTE: All proposals MUST be received by 5:00 PM PST/PDST on the published proposal-closing date.

For further information on the standards-making process, please contact Codes and Standards Administration at 909-472-4110 For technical assistance, please call IAPMO at 909-472-4111 or 909-472-4104	**FOR OFFICE USE ONLY** **LOG # :** ______ **DATE REC'D:** ______

PLEASE USE SEPARATE FORM FOR EACH PROPOSAL

Please indicate in which format you wish to receive your ROP/ROC: ☐ Paper ☐ Download* ☐ CD-ROM

*Note: In choosing the download option, you intend to view the ROP/ROC from our website. NO copy will be sent to you.

Date: ________ Name: ______________________________ Telephone #: ______________

Company: ____

Street Address: ____________________ City: ______________ State: ______ Zip: __________

Please Indicate Organization Represented (if any): ______________________________

1. a) **IAPMO Document Title** ______________________________ **Document Year** __________

   b) **Section/Paragraph** ______________________________

2. **Proposal Recommends** (check one): ☐ New Text ☐ Revise Text ☐ Delete Text

3. **Proposal** (Include proposed new or revised wording, or identification of wording to be deleted): [Note: Proposed text should be in legislative format: i.e., use underscore to denote wording to be inserted (<u>inserted wording</u>) and strike-through to denote wording to be deleted (~~deleted wording~~). PLEASE TYPE OR PRINT LEGIBLY IN BLACK INK.]

4. **Statement of Problem and Substantiation for Proposal**: [Note: State the problem that will be resolved by your recommendations; give the specific reason for your proposal, including copies of tests, research papers, etc. If more than 200 words, it may be abstracted for publication.]

5. ☐ **This proposal is original material.** [Note: Original material is considered to be the submitter's own idea based on or as a result of his/her own experience, thought, or research and, to the best of his/her knowledge, is not copied from another source.]

   ☐ **This proposal is not original material, its source (if known) is as follows:** ______________________

   ____

I hereby grant IAPMO all and full rights in copyright, in this proposal, and I understand that I acquire no rights in any publication of IAPMO in which this proposal appears in this or another similar or analogous form.

Signature (**Required**): ____

IAPMO CODES DEPARTMENT FAX • (909) 472-4198 or (909) 472-4246

Mail to: Secretary, Standards Council • IAPMO • 5001 E Philadelphia Street • Ontario • CA • 91761-2816

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SUBMITTING PROPOSALS

- PLEASE READ CAREFULLY -

1. Type or print in BLACK ink.

2. Indicate the title of the document and the document year. Also indicate the specific section or paragraph that the proposed amendment applies to.

3. Check the appropriate box to indicate whether this proposal recommends adding new text, revising existing text, or deleting text.

4. In the space identified as "Proposal", indicate the exact wording you propose as new or revised text, or the text you propose be deleted.

5. In the space titled "Statement of Problem and Substantiation for Proposal", state the problem that will be resolved by your recommendation and give the specific reason for your proposal. Include copies of test results, research papers, fire experience, or other materials that substantiate your recommendation. [See note below, item (f).]

6. Check the appropriate box to indicate whether or not this proposal is original material, and, if it is not, indicate the source of the material.

7. Sign the proposal.

If supplementary material (photographs, diagrams, reports, etc.) is included, you may be required to submit sufficient copies for all members and alternates of the technical committee. The technical committee is authorized to abstract the "Statement of Problem and Substantiation for Proposal" if it exceeds 200 words for publication in the *Report on Proposals*.

NOTE: The IAPMO Regulations Governing Committee Projects in Paragraph 4-3.3 state: Each proposal shall be submitted to the Council Secretary and shall include: (a) identification of the submitter and his or her affiliation (i.e., technical committee, organization, company), where appropriate; (b) identification of the document, edition of the document, and paragraph of the document to which the proposal is directed; (c) the proposed text of the proposal, including the wording to be added, revised (and how revised), or deleted; (d) a statement of the problem and substantiation for proposal; (e) the signature of the submitter; and (f) two copies of any document(s) (other than an IAPMO document) being proposed as a reference standard or publication (see 3-3.7).

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

ADMINISTRATION

101.0 Title, Scope, and General.

101.1 Title.

This document shall be known as the "Uniform Plumbing Code," may be cited as such, and will be referred to herein as "this code."

101.2 Purpose.

This code is an ordinance providing minimum requirements and standards for the protection of the public health, safety, and welfare.

101.3 Plans Required.

The Authority Having Jurisdiction may require the submission of plans, specifications, drawings, and such other information as the Authority Having Jurisdiction may deem necessary, prior to the commencement of, and at any time during the progress of, any work regulated by this code.

The issuance of a permit upon plans and specifications shall not prevent the Authority Having Jurisdiction from thereafter requiring the correction of errors in said plans and specifications or from preventing construction operations being carried on thereunder when in violation of this code or of any other pertinent ordinance or from revoking any certificate of approval when issued in error.

101.4 Scope.

101.4.1 The provisions of this code shall apply to the erection, installation, alteration, repair, relocation, replacement, addition to, use, or maintenance of plumbing systems within this jurisdiction.

101.4.1.1 Repairs and Alterations.

101.4.1.1.1 In existing buildings or premises in which plumbing installations are to be altered, repaired, or renovated, deviations from the provisions of this code are permitted, provided such deviations are found to be necessary and are first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

101.4.1.1.2 Existing building sewers and building drains may be used in connection with new buildings or new plumbing and drainage work only when they are found on examination and test to conform in all respects to the requirements governing new work, and the proper Authority Having Jurisdiction shall notify the owner to make any changes necessary to conform to this code. No building, or part thereof, shall be erected or placed over any part of a drainage system that is constructed of materials other than those approved elsewhere in this code for use under or within a building.

101.4.1.1.3 All openings into a drainage or vent system, excepting those openings to which plumbing fixtures are properly connected or which constitute vent terminals, shall be permanently plugged or capped in an approved manner, using the appropriate materials required by this code.

101.4.1.2 Maintenance. The plumbing and drainage system of any premises under the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be maintained in a sanitary and safe operating condition by the owner or the owner's agent.

101.4.1.3 Existing Construction. No provision of this code shall be deemed to require a change in any portion of a plumbing or drainage system or any other work regulated by this code in or on an existing building or lot when such work was installed and is maintained in accordance with law in effect prior to the effective date of this code, except when any such plumbing or drainage system or other work regulated by this code is determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction to be in fact dangerous, unsafe, insanitary, or a nuisance and a menace to life, health, or property.

101.4.1.4 Conflicts Between Codes. When the requirements within the jurisdiction of this plumbing code conflict with the requirements of the mechanical code, this code shall prevail.

101.4.2 Additions, alterations, repairs, and replacement of plumbing systems shall comply with the provisions for new systems except as otherwise provided in Section 101.5.

101.4.3 The provisions in the appendices are intended to supplement the requirements of this code and shall not be considered part of this code unless formally adopted as such.

101.5 Application to Existing Plumbing System.

101.5.1 Additions, Alterations, or Repairs. Additions, alterations, or repairs may be made to any plumbing system without requiring the existing plumbing system to comply with all the requirements of this code, provided the addition, alteration, or repair conforms to that required for a new plumbing system. Additions, alterations, or repairs shall not cause an existing system to become unsafe, insanitary, or overloaded.

101.5.2 Health and Safety. Whenever compliance with all the provisions of this code fails to eliminate or alleviate a nuisance, or any other dangerous or insanitary condition that may involve health or safety hazards, the owner or the owner's agent shall install such additional plumbing and drainage facilities or shall make such repairs or alterations as may be ordered by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

101.5.3 Existing Installation. Plumbing systems lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code may have their use, maintenance, or repair continued if the use, maintenance, or repair is in accordance with the original design and location and no hazard to life, health, or property has been created by such plumbing system.

101.5.4 Changes in Building Occupancy. Plumbing systems that are a part of any building or structure undergoing a change in use or occupancy, as defined in the Building Code, shall comply to all requirements of this code that may be applicable to the new use or occupancy.

101.5.5 Maintenance. All plumbing systems, materials, and appurtenances, both existing and new, and all parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition. All devices or safeguards required by this code shall be maintained in conformance with the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for maintenance of plumbing systems. To determine compliance with this subsection, the Authority Having Jurisdiction may cause any plumbing system to be reinspected.

101.5.6 Moved Buildings. Plumbing systems that are part of buildings or structures moved into this jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of this code for new installations, except as provided for in Section 103.5.5.2.

102.0 Organization and Enforcement.

102.1 Authority Having Jurisdiction.

The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be the Authority duly appointed to enforce this code.

102.2 Duties and Powers of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

102.2.1 The Authority Having Jurisdiction may appoint such assistants, deputies, inspectors, or other employees as necessary to carry out the functions of the department and this code.

102.2.2 Right of Entry. Whenever it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the provisions of this code, or whenever the Authority Having Jurisdiction has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in any building or upon any premises any condition or violation of this code that makes the building or premises unsafe, insanitary, dangerous, or hazardous, the Authority Having Jurisdiction may enter the building or premises at all reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed upon the Authority Having Jurisdiction by this code, provided that if such building or premises is occupied, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall present credentials to the occupant and request entry. If such building or premises is unoccupied, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall first make a reasonable effort to locate the owner or other person having charge or control of the building or premises and request entry. If entry is refused, the Authority Having Jurisdiction has recourse to every remedy provided by law to secure entry.

When the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have first obtained a proper inspection warrant or other remedy provided by law to secure entry, no owner, occupant, or person having charge, care, or control of any building or premises shall fail or neglect, after proper request is made as herein provided, to promptly permit entry herein by the Authority Having Jurisdiction for the purpose of inspection and examination pursuant to this code.

102.2.3 Stop Orders. Whenever any work is being done contrary to the provisions of this code, the Authority Having Jurisdiction may order the work stopped by notice in writing served on any persons engaged in the doing or causing such work to be done, and any such persons shall forthwith stop work until authorized by the Authority Having Jurisdiction to proceed with the work.

102.2.4 Authority to Disconnect Utilities in Emergencies. The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have the authority to disconnect a plumbing system to a building, structure, or equipment regulated by this code in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property.

102.2.5 Authority to Condemn. Whenever the Authority Having Jurisdiction ascertains that any plumbing system or portion thereof, regulated by this code, has become hazardous to life, health, or property, or has become insanitary, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall order in writing that such plumbing either be removed or placed in a safe or sanitary condition, as appropriate. The order shall fix a reasonable time limit for compliance. No person shall use or maintain defective plumbing after receiving such notice.

When such plumbing system is to be disconnected, written notice shall be given. In cases of immediate danger to life or property, such disconnection may be made immediately without such notice.

102.2.6 Liability. The Authority Having Jurisdiction charged with the enforcement of this code, acting in good faith and without malice in the discharge of the Authority Having Jurisdiction's duties, shall not thereby be rendered personally liable for any damage that may accrue to persons or property as a result of any act or by reason of any act or omission in the discharge of duties. A suit brought against the Authority Having Jurisdiction or employee because of such act or omission performed in the enforcement of any provision of this code shall be defended by legal counsel provided by this jurisdiction until final termination of such proceedings.

102.3 Violations and Penalties.

102.3.1 Violations. It shall be unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation to erect, construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, improve, remove, convert, demolish, equip, use, or maintain any plumbing or permit the same to be done in violation of this code.

102.3.2 Penalties. Any person, firm, or corporation violating any provision of this code shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor, and upon conviction thereof, shall be punishable by a fine and/or imprisonment set forth by the governing laws of the jurisdiction. Each separate day or any portion thereof, during which any violation of this code occurs or continues, shall be deemed to constitute a separate offense.

103.0 Permits and Inspections.

103.1 Permits.

103.1.1 Permits Required. It shall be unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation to make any installation, alteration, repair, replacement, or remodel any plumbing system regulated by this code except as permitted in Section 103.1.2, or to cause the same to be done without first obtaining a separate plumbing permit for each separate building or structure.

103.1.2 Exempt Work. A permit shall not be required for the following:

103.1.2.1 The stopping of leaks in drains, soil, waste, or vent pipe, provided, however, that should any trap, drainpipe, soil, waste, or vent pipe become defective and it becomes necessary to remove and replace the same with new material, the same shall be considered as new work and a permit shall be procured and inspection made as provided in this code.

103.1.2.2 (1) The clearing of stoppages, including the removal and reinstallation of water closets, or

(2) the repairing of leaks in pipes, valves, or fixtures, provided such repairs do not involve or require the replacement or rearrangement of valves, pipes, or fixtures.

Exemption from the permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in violation of the provisions of the code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

103.1.3 Licensing. Provision for licensing shall be determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.2 Application for Permit.

103.2.1 Application. To obtain a permit, the applicant shall first file an application therefore in writing on a form furnished by the Authority Having Jurisdiction for that purpose. Every such application shall:

103.2.1.1 Identify and describe the work to be covered by the permit for which application is made.

103.2.1.2 Describe the land upon which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, street address, or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work.

103.2.1.3 Indicate the use or occupancy for which the proposed work is intended.

103.2.1.4 Be accompanied by plans, diagrams, computations, and other data as required in Section 103.2.2.

103.2.1.5 Be signed by the permittee or the permittee's authorized agent, who may be

required to submit evidence to indicate such authority.

103.2.1.6 Give such other data and information as may be required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.2.2 Plans and Specifications. Plans, engineering calculations, diagrams, and other data shall be submitted in one or more sets with each application for a permit. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may require plans, computations, and specifications to be prepared by, and the plumbing designed by, an engineer and/or architect licensed by the state to practice as such.

Exception: The Authority Having Jurisdiction may waive the submission of plans, calculations, or other data if the Authority Having Jurisdiction finds that the nature of the work applied for is such that reviewing of plans is not necessary to obtain compliance within the code.

103.2.3 Information on Plans and Specifications. Plans and specifications shall be drawn to scale upon substantial paper or cloth and shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature, and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.

103.3 Permit Issuance.

103.3.1 Issuance. The application, plans, and specifications and other data filed by an applicant for a permit shall be reviewed by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Such plans may be reviewed by other departments of this jurisdiction to verify compliance with applicable laws under their jurisdiction. If the Authority Having Jurisdiction finds that the work described in an application for permit and the plans, specifications, and other data filed therewith conform to the requirements of the code and other pertinent laws and ordinances, and that the fees specified in Section 103.4 have been paid, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall issue a permit therefore to the applicant.

When the Authority Having Jurisdiction issues the permit where plans are required, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall endorse in writing or stamp the plans and specifications "APPROVED." Such approved plans and specifications shall not be changed, modified, or altered without authorization from the Authority Having Jurisdiction, and all work shall be done in accordance with approved plans.

The Authority Having Jurisdiction may issue a permit for the construction of a part of a plumbing system before the entire plans and specifications for the whole system have been submitted or approved, provided adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holder of such permit may proceed at the holder's risk without assurance that the permit for the entire building, structure, or plumbing system will be granted.

103.3.2 Retention of Plans. One set of approved plans, specifications, and computations shall be retained by the Authority Having Jurisdiction until final approval of the work covered therein. One set of approved plans and specifications shall be returned to the applicant, and said set shall be kept on the site of the building or work at all times during which the work authorized thereby is in progress.

103.3.3 Validity of Permit. The issuance of a permit or approval of plans and specifications shall not be construed to be a permit for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of this code or of any other ordinance of the jurisdiction. No permit presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code shall be valid.

The issuance of a permit based upon plans, specifications, or other data shall not prevent the Authority Having Jurisdiction from thereafter requiring the correction of errors in said plans, specifications, and other data or from preventing building operations being carried on thereunder when in violation of this code or of other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

103.3.4 Expiration. Every permit issued by the Authority Having Jurisdiction under the provisions of this code shall expire by limitation and become null and void if the work authorized by such permit is not commenced within one hundred eighty (180) days from the date of such permit, or if the work authorized by such permit is suspended or abandoned at any time after the work is commenced for a period of one hundred eighty (180) days. Before such work can be recommenced, a new permit shall first be obtained to do so, and the fee therefore shall be one-half the amount required for a new permit for such work, provided no changes have been made or will be made in the original plans and specifications for such work, and provided further that such suspensions or abandonment has not exceeded one year.

Any permittee holding an unexpired permit may apply for an extension of the time within which work may commence under that permit when the permittee is unable to commence work within the time required by this section for good and satisfactory reasons. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may extend the time for action by the permittee for a period not exceeding one hundred eighty (180) days upon written request by the permittee showing that circumstances beyond the control of the permittee have prevented action from being taken. No permit shall be extended more than once. In order to renew action on a permit after expiration, the permittee shall pay a new full permit fee.

103.3.5 Suspension or Revocation. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may, in writing, suspend or revoke a permit issued under the provisions of this code whenever the permit is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect information supplied or in violation of other ordinance or regulation of the jurisdiction.

103.4 Fees.

103.4.1 Permit Fees. Fees shall be assessed in accordance with the provisions of this section and as set forth in the fee schedule Table 1-1. The fees are to be determined and adopted by this jurisdiction.

103.4.2 Plan Review Fees. When a plan or other data is required to be submitted by Section 103.2.2, a plan review fee shall be paid at the time of submitting plans and specifications for review.

The plan review fees for plumbing work shall be determined and adopted by this jurisdiction.

The plan review fees specified in this subsection are separate fees from the permit fees specified in this section and are in addition to the permit fees.

When plans are incomplete or changed so as to require additional review, a fee shall be charged at the rate shown in Table 1-1.

103.4.3 Expiration of Plan Review. Applications for which no permit is issued within one hundred eighty (180) days following the date of application shall expire by limitation, and plans and other data submitted for review may thereafter be returned to the applicant or destroyed by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may exceed the time for action by the applicant for a period not to exceed one hundred eighty (180) days upon request by the applicant showing that circumstances beyond the control of the applicant have prevented action from being taken. No application shall be extended more than once. In order to renew action on an application after expiration, the applicant shall resubmit plans and pay a new plan review fee.

103.4.4 Investigation Fees: Work Without a Permit.

103.4.4.1 Whenever any work for which a permit is required by this code has been commenced without first obtaining said permit, a special investigation shall be made before a permit may be issued for such work.

103.4.4.2 An investigation fee, in addition to the permit fee, shall be collected whether or not a permit is then or subsequently issued. The investigation fee shall be equal to the amount of the permit fee that would be required by this code if a permit were to be issued. The payment of such investigation fee shall not exempt any person from compliance with all other provisions of this code, nor from any penalty prescribed by law.

103.4.5 Fee Refunds.

103.4.5.1 The Authority Having Jurisdiction may authorize the refunding of any fee paid hereunder that was erroneously paid or collected.

103.4.5.2 The Authority Having Jurisdiction may authorize the refunding of not more than a percentage, as determined by this jurisdiction when no work has been done under a permit issued in accordance with this code.

103.4.5.3 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall not authorize the refunding of any fee paid except upon written application filed by the original permittee not later than one hundred eighty (180) days after the date of fee payment.

103.5 Inspections.

103.5.1 General. All plumbing systems for which a permit is required by this code shall be inspected by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. No portion of any plumbing system shall be concealed until inspected and approved. Neither the Authority Having Jurisdiction nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of material required to permit inspection. When the installation of a plumbing system is complete, an additional and final inspection shall be made. Plumbing systems regulated by this code shall not be connected to the water, the energy fuel supply,

or the sewer system until authorized by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.5.1.1 Inspection. No water supply system or portion thereof shall be covered or concealed until it first has been tested, inspected, and approved.

103.5.1.2 Scope. All new plumbing work and such portions of existing systems as may be affected by new work, or any changes, shall be inspected by the Authority Having Jurisdiction to ensure compliance with all the requirements of this code and to ensure that the installation and construction of the plumbing system is in accordance with approved plans.

103.5.1.3 Covering or Using. No plumbing or drainage system, building sewer, private sewer disposal system, or part thereof, shall be covered, concealed, or put into use until it has been tested, inspected, and accepted as prescribed in this code.

103.5.1.4 Uncovering. If any drainage or plumbing system, building sewer, private sewage disposal system, or part thereof, which is installed, altered, or repaired, is covered or concealed before being inspected, tested, and approved as prescribed in this code, it shall be uncovered for inspection after notice to uncover the work has been issued to the responsible person by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.5.2 Operation of Plumbing Equipment. The requirements of this section shall not be considered to prohibit the operation of any plumbing installed to replace existing equipment or fixtures serving an occupied portion of the building in the event a request for inspection of such equipment or fixture has been filed with the Authority Having Jurisdiction not more than seventy-two (72) hours after such replacement work is completed, and before any portion of such plumbing system is concealed by any permanent portion of the building.

103.5.3 Testing of Systems. All plumbing systems shall be tested and approved as required by this code or the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.5.3.1 Test. Tests shall be conducted in the presence of the Authority Having Jurisdiction or the Authority Having Jurisdiction's duly appointed representative.

103.5.3.2 Test Waived. No test or inspection shall be required where a plumbing system, or part thereof, is set up for exhibition purposes and has no connection with a water or drainage system.

103.5.3.3 Exceptions. In cases where it would be impractical to provide the required water or air tests, or for minor installations and repairs, the Authority Having Jurisdiction may make such inspection as deemed advisable in order to be assured that the work has been performed in accordance with the intent of this code.

103.5.3.4 Protectively Coated Pipe. Protectively coated pipe shall be inspected and tested, and any visible void, damage, or imperfection to the pipe coating shall be repaired to comply with Section 313.0 (see IAPMO IS-13, listed in Appendix I).

103.5.3.5 Tightness. Joints and connections in the plumbing system shall be gastight and watertight for the pressures required by test.

103.5.4 Inspection Requests. It shall be the duty of the person doing the work authorized by a permit to notify the Authority Having Jurisdiction that such work is ready for inspection. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may require that every request for inspection be filed at least one working day before such inspection is desired. Such request may be in writing or by telephone, at the option of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

It shall be the duty of the person requesting inspections required by this code to provide access to and means for proper inspection of such work.

103.5.4.1 Advance Notice. It shall be the duty of the person doing the work authorized by the permit to notify the Authority Having Jurisdiction, orally or in writing, that said work is ready for inspection. Such notification shall be given not less than twenty-four (24) hours before the work is to be inspected.

103.5.4.2 Responsibility. It shall be the duty of the holder of a permit to make sure that the work will stand the test prescribed before giving the notification.

The equipment, material, and labor necessary for inspection or tests shall be furnished by the person to whom the permit is issued or by whom inspection is requested.

103.5.5 Other Inspections. In addition to the inspections required by this code, the

Authority Having Jurisdiction may require other inspections of any plumbing work to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this code and other laws that are enforced by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.5.5.1 Defective Systems. An air test shall be used in testing the sanitary condition of the drainage or plumbing system of any building premises when there is reason to believe that it has become defective. In buildings or premises condemned by the proper Authority Having Jurisdiction because of an insanitary condition of the plumbing system or part thereof, the alterations in such system shall conform to the requirements of this code.

103.5.5.2 Moved Structures. All parts of the plumbing systems of any building or part thereof that is moved from one foundation to another, or from one location to another, shall be completely tested as prescribed elsewhere in this section for new work, except that walls or floors need not be removed during such test when other equivalent means of inspection acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction are provided.

103.5.6 Reinspections. A reinspection fee may be assessed for each inspection or reinspection when such portion of work for which inspection is called is not complete or when required corrections have not been made.

This provision is not to be interpreted as requiring reinspection fees the first time a job is rejected for failure to comply with the requirements of this code, but as controlling the practice of calling for inspections before the job is ready for inspection or reinspection.

Reinspection fees may be assessed when the approved plans are not readily available to the inspector, for failure to provide access on the date for which the inspection is requested, or for deviating from plans requiring the approval of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

To obtain reinspection, the applicant shall file an application therefore in writing upon a form furnished for that purpose and pay the reinspection fee in accordance with Table 1-1.

In instances where reinspection fees have been assessed, no additional inspection of the work will be performed until the required fees have been paid.

103.5.6.1 Corrections. Notices of correction or violation shall be written by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and may be posted at the site of the work or mailed or delivered to the permittee or his authorized representative.

Refusal, failure, or neglect to comply with any such notice or order within ten (10) days of receipt thereof, shall be considered a violation of this code and shall be subject to the penalties set forth elsewhere in this code for violations.

103.5.6.2 Retesting. If the Authority Having Jurisdiction finds that the work will not pass the test, necessary corrections shall be made, and the work shall then be resubmitted for test or inspection.

103.5.6.3 Approval. Upon the satisfactory completion and final test of the plumbing system, a certificate of approval shall be issued by the Authority Having Jurisdiction to the permittee on demand.

103.6 Connection Approval.

103.6.1 Energy Connections. No person shall make connections from a source of energy or fuel to any plumbing system or equipment regulated by this code and for which a permit is required until approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.6.2 Other Connections. No person shall make connection from any water-supply line nor shall connect to any sewer system regulated by this code and for which a permit is required until approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

103.6.3 Temporary Connections. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may authorize temporary connection of the plumbing equipment to the source of energy or fuel for the purpose of testing the equipment.

103.7 Unconstitutional.

103.7.1 If any section, subsection, sentence, clause, or phrase of this code is, for any reason, held to be unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this code. The Legislative body hereby declares that it would have passed this code, and each section, subsection, sentence, clause, or phrase thereof, irrespective of the fact that one or more sections, subsections, sentences, clauses, and phrases are declared unconstitutional.

103.8 Validity

103.8.1 If any provision of this code, or the application thereof to any person or circumstance, is held invalid, the remainder of the code, or the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances, shall not be affected thereby.

103.8.2 Wherever in this code reference is made to an appendix, the provisions in the appendix shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

TABLE 1-1
Plumbing Permit Fees

Permit Issuance

1. For issuing each permit .... *______
2. For issuing each supplemental permit .... *______

Unit Fee Schedule (in addition to items 1 and 2 above)

1. For each plumbing fixture on one trap or a set of fixtures on one trap (including water, drainage piping, and backflow protection therefore) .... *______
2. For each building sewer and each trailer park sewer .... *______
3. Rainwater systems – per drain (inside building) .... *______
4. For each cesspool (where permitted) .... *______
5. For each private sewage disposal system .... *______
6. For each water heater and/or vent .... *______
7. For each gas piping system of one to five outlets .... *______
8. For each additional gas piping system outlet, per outlet .... *______
9. For each industrial waste pretreatment interceptor, including its trap and vent, except kitchen-type grease interceptors functioning as fixture traps .... *______
10. For each installation, alteration, or repair of water piping and/or water treating equipment, each .. *______
11. For each repair or alteration of drainage or vent piping, each fixture .... *______
12. For each lawn sprinkler system on any one meter including backflow protection devices therefore ... *______
13. For atmospheric-type vacuum breakers not included in item 12:
    - 1 to 5 .... *______
    - over 5, each .... *______
14. For each backflow protective device other than atmospheric-type vacuum breakers:
    - 2 inch (51 mm) diameter and smaller .... *______
    - over 2 inch (51 mm) diameter .... *______
15. For each graywater system .... *______
16. For initial installation and testing for a reclaimed water system .... *______
17. For each annual cross-connection testing of a reclaimed water system (excluding initial test) ...... *______
18. For each medical gas piping system serving one to five inlet(s)/outlet(s) for a specific gas .... *______
19. For each additional medical gas inlet(s)/outlet(s) .... *______

Other Inspections and Fees

1. Inspections outside of normal business hours .... *______
2. Reinspection fee .... *______
3. Inspections for which no fee is specifically indicated .... *______
4. Additional plan review required by changes, additions, or revisions to approved plans (minimum charge – one-half hour) .... *______

* Jurisdiction will indicate their fees here.

CHAPTER 2

DEFINITIONS

201.0 General.

For the purpose of this code, the following terms have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

No attempt is made to define ordinary words, which are used in accordance with their established dictionary meanings, except where a word has been used loosely and it is necessary to define its meaning as used in this code to avoid misunderstanding.

The definitions of terms are arranged alphabetically according to the first word of the term.

202.0 Definition of Terms.

203.0 – A –

ABS – Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene.

Accessible – When applied to a fixture, connection, appliance, or equipment, "accessible" means having access thereto, but which first may require the removal of an access panel, door, or similar obstruction. "Readily accessible" means direct access without the necessity of removing any panel, door, or similar obstruction.

Airbreak – A physical separation which may be a low inlet into the indirect waste receptor from the fixture, appliance, or device indirectly connected.

Air Chamber – A pressure surge-absorbing device operating through the compressibility of air.

Airgap, Drainage – The unobstructed vertical distance through the free atmosphere between the lowest opening from any pipe, plumbing fixture, appliance, or appurtenance conveying waste to the flood-level rim of the receptor.

Airgap, Water Distribution – The unobstructed vertical distance through the free atmosphere between the lowest opening from any pipe or faucet conveying potable water to the flood-level rim of any tank, vat, or fixture.

Anchors – See Supports.

Approved – Acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Approved Testing Agency – An organization primarily established for purposes of testing to approved standards and approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Area Drain – A receptor designed to collect surface or storm water from an open area.

Aspirator – A fitting or device supplied with water or other fluid under positive pressure that passes through an integral orifice or constriction, causing a vacuum.

Authority Having Jurisdiction – The organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcing the requirements of a code or standard, or for approving equipment, materials, installations, or procedures. The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be a federal, state, local, or other regional department or an individual such as a plumbing official, mechanical official, labor department official, health department official, building official, or others having statutory authority. In the absence of a statutory authority, the Authority Having Jurisdiction may be some other responsible party. This definition shall include the Authority Having Jurisdiction's duly authorized representative.

204.0 – B –

Backflow – The flow of water or other liquids, mixtures, or substances into the distributing pipes of a potable supply of water from any sources other than its intended source. See Back-Siphonage, Back-Pressure Backflow.

Backflow Connection – Any arrangement whereby backflow can occur.

Back-Pressure Backflow – Backflow due to an increased pressure above the supply pressure, which may be due to pumps, boilers, gravity, or other sources of pressure.

Backflow Preventer – A device or means to prevent backflow into the potable water system.

Back-Siphonage – The flowing back of used, contaminated, or polluted water from a plumbing fixture or vessel into a water supply pipe due to a pressure less than atmospheric in such pipe. See Backflow.

Backwater Valve – A device installed in a drainage system to prevent reverse flow.

Bathroom – A room equipped with a shower or bathtub.

Battery of Fixtures – Any group of two (2) or more similar, adjacent fixtures that discharge into a common horizontal waste or soil branch.

Boiler Blowoff – An outlet on a boiler to permit emptying or discharge of sediment.

Branch – Any part of the piping system other than a main, riser, or stack.

Branch, Fixture – See Fixture Branch.

Branch, Horizontal – See Horizontal Branch.

Branch Vent – A vent connecting one or more individual vents with a vent stack or stack vent.

Building – A structure built, erected, and framed of component structural parts designed for the housing, shelter, enclosure, or support of persons, animals, or property of any kind.

Building Drain – That part of the lowest piping of a drainage system that receives the discharge from soil, waste, and other drainage pipes inside the walls of the building and conveys it to the building sewer beginning two (2) feet (610 mm) outside the building wall.

Building Drain (Sanitary) – A building drain that conveys sewage only.

Building Drain (Storm) – A building drain that conveys storm water or other drainage, but no sewage.

Building Sewer – That part of the horizontal piping of a drainage system that extends from the end of the building drain and that receives the discharge of the building drain and conveys it to a public sewer, private sewer, private sewage disposal system, or other point of disposal.

Building Sewer (Combined) – A building sewer that conveys both sewage and storm water or other drainage.

Building Sewer (Sanitary) – A building sewer that conveys sewage only.

Building Sewer (Storm) – A building sewer that conveys storm water or other drainage, but no sewage.

Building Subdrain – That portion of a drainage system that does not drain by gravity into the building sewer.

Building Supply – The pipe carrying potable water from the water meter or other source of water supply to a building or other point of use or distribution on the lot. Building supply shall also mean water service.

205.0 – C –

Certified Backflow Assembly Tester – A person who has shown competence to test and maintain backflow assemblies to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Cesspool – A lined excavation in the ground that receives the discharge of a drainage system or part thereof, so designed as to retain the organic matter and solids discharging therein, but permitting the liquids to seep through the bottom and sides.

Chemical Waste – See Special Wastes.

Clarifier – See Interceptor.

Clear Water Waste – Cooling water and condensate drainage from refrigeration and air-conditioning equipment; cooled condensate from steam heating systems; cooled boiler blowdown water.

Clinic Sink – A sink designed primarily to receive wastes from bedpans and having a flush rim, an integral trap with a visible trap seal, and the same flushing and cleansing characteristics as a water closet.

Code – A standard that is an extensive compilation of provisions covering broad subject matter or that is suitable for adoption into law independently of other codes and standards.

Combination Thermostatic/Pressure Balancing Valve – A mixing valve that senses outlet temperature and incoming hot and cold water pressure and compensates for fluctuations in incoming hot and cold water temperatures and/or pressures to stabilize outlet temperatures.

Combination Waste and Vent System – A specially designed system of waste piping embodying the horizontal wet venting of one or more sinks or floor drains by means of a common waste and vent pipe, adequately sized to provide free movement of air above the flow line of the drain.

Combined Building Sewer – See Building Sewer (Combined).

Common – That part of a plumbing system that is so designed and installed as to serve more than one (1) appliance, fixture, building, or system.

Conductor – A pipe inside the building that conveys storm water from the roof to a storm drain, combined building sewer, or other approved point of disposal.

Confined Space – A room or space having a volume less than fifty (50) cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/h (1.4 m^3/293 W) of the aggregate input rating of all fuel-burning appliances installed in that space.

Contamination – An impairment of the quality of the potable water that creates an actual hazard to the public health through poisoning or through the spread of disease by sewage, industrial fluids, or waste. Also defined as High Hazard.

Continuous Vent – A vertical vent that is a continuation of the drain to which it connects.

Continuous Waste – A drain connecting the compartments of a set of fixtures to a trap or connecting other permitted fixtures to a common trap.

CPVC – Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride).

Critical Level – The critical level (C-L or C/L) marking on a backflow prevention device or vacuum breaker is a point conforming to approved standards

and established by the testing laboratory (usually stamped on the device by the manufacturer) that determines the minimum elevation above the flood-level rim of the fixture or receptor served at which the device may be installed. When a backflow prevention device does not bear a critical level marking, the bottom of the vacuum breaker, combination valve, or the bottom of any such approved device shall constitute the critical level.

Cross-Connection – Any connection or arrangement, physical or otherwise, between a potable water supply system and any plumbing fixture or any tank, receptor, equipment, or device, through which it may be possible for non potable, used, unclean, polluted, and contaminated water, or other substances to enter into any part of such potable water system under any condition.

206.0 – D –

Department Having Jurisdiction – The Authority Having Jurisdiction, including any other law enforcement agency affected by any provision of this code, whether such agency is specifically named or not.

Design Flood Elevation – The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard map.

Developed Length – The length along the center line of a pipe and fittings.

Diameter – Unless specifically stated, "diameter" is the nominal diameter as designated commercially.

Domestic Sewage – The liquid and water-borne wastes derived from the ordinary living processes, free from industrial wastes, and of such character as to permit satisfactory disposal, without special treatment, into the public sewer or by means of a private sewage disposal system.

Downspout – The rain leader from the roof to the building storm drain, combined building sewer, or other means of disposal located outside of the building. See Conductor and Leader.

Drain – Any pipe that carries waste or waterborne wastes in a building drainage system.

Drainage System – Includes all the piping within public or private premises that conveys sewage or other liquid wastes to a legal point of disposal, but does not include the mains of a public sewer system or a public sewage treatment or disposal plant.

Durham System – A soil or waste system in which all piping is threaded pipe, tubing, or other such rigid construction, using recessed drainage fittings to correspond to the types of piping.

207.0 – E –

Effective Opening – The minimum cross-sectional area at the point of water supply discharge measured or expressed in terms of (1) diameter of a circle or (2) if the opening is not circular, the diameter of a circle of equivalent cross-sectional area. (This is applicable also to airgap.)

Essentially Nontoxic Transfer Fluid - Essentially nontoxic at practically nontoxic, Toxicity Rating Class 1 (reference "Clinical Toxicology of Commercial Products" by Gosselin, Smith, Hodge, & Braddock).

Excess Flow Valve – A valve designed to close when the fuel gas passing through exceeds a prescribed flow rate.

Existing Work – A plumbing system or any part thereof that has been installed prior to the effective date of this code.

208.0 – F –

Fixture Branch – A water supply pipe between the fixture supply pipe and the water distributing pipe.

Fixture Drain – The drain from the trap of a fixture to the junction of that drain with any other drain pipe.

Fixture Supply – A water supply pipe connecting the fixture with the fixture branch.

Fixture Unit – A quantity in terms of which the load-producing effects on the plumbing system of different kinds of plumbing fixtures are expressed on some arbitrarily chosen scale.

Flammable Vapor or Fumes is the concentration of flammable constituents in air that exceeds 25 percent of its lower flammability limit (LFL).

Flood Hazard Area – The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a floodplain subject to a 1 percent or greater chance of flooding in any given year.
2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

Flood Hazard Area Subject to High Velocity Wave Action – Area within the flood hazard area that is subject to high velocity wave action, and shown on a Flood Insurance Rate Map or other flood hazard map as Zone V, VO, VE or V1-30.

Flood Level – See Flooded.

Flood-Level Rim – The top edge of a receptor from which water overflows.

Flooded – A fixture is flooded when the liquid therein rises to the flood-level rim.

Flush Tank – A tank located above or integral with water closets, urinals, or similar fixtures for the purpose of flushing the usable portion of the fixture.

Flush Valve – A valve located at the bottom of a tank for the purpose of flushing water closets and similar fixtures.

Flushometer Tank – A tank integrated within an air accumulator vessel that is designed to discharge a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes.

Flushometer Valve – A valve that discharges a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes and is actuated by direct water pressure.

FOG Disposal System – A grease interceptor that reduces nonpetroleum fats, oils, and grease (FOG) in effluent by separation, and mass and volume reduction.

209.0 – G –

Gang or Group Shower – Two or more showers in a common area.

Grade – The slope or fall of a line of pipe in reference to a horizontal plane. In drainage, it is usually expressed as the fall in a fraction of an inch (mm) or percentage slope per foot (meter) length of pipe.

Gravity Grease Interceptor – A plumbing appurtenance or appliance that is installed in a sanitary drainage system to intercept nonpetroleum fats, oils, and greases (FOG) from a wastewater discharge and is identified by volume, 30-minute retention time, baffle(s), a minimum of two compartments, a minimum total volume of 300 gallons, and gravity separation. [These interceptors comply with the requirements of Chapter 10 or are designed by a registered professional engineer.] Gravity grease interceptors are generally installed outside.

Grease Interceptor – A plumbing appurtenance or appliance that is installed in a sanitary drainage system to intercept nonpertroleum fats, oil, and greases (FOG) from a wastewater discharge.

Grease Removal Device (GRD) – Any hydromechanical grease interceptor that automatically, mechanically removes non-petroleum fats, oils and grease (FOG) from the interceptor, the control of which are either automatic or manually initiated.

Grease Trap – A device designed to retain grease from one (1) to a maximum of four (4) fixtures. This term has been used in previous editions of this code. Refer to Hydromechanical Grease Interceptor and Gravity Grease Interceptor, GRD, and FOG disposal system.

210.0 – H –

Hangers – See Supports.

High Hazard – See Contamination.

Horizontal Branch – A drain pipe extending laterally from a soil or waste stack or building drain with or without vertical sections or branches, which receives the discharge from one or more fixture drains and conducts it to the soil or waste stack or to the building drain.

Horizontal Pipe – Any pipe or fitting that is installed in a horizontal position or which makes an angle of less than forty-five (45) degrees with the horizontal.

Hot Water – Water at a temperature greater than or equal to 120°F (49°C).

House Drain – See Building Drain.

House Sewer – See Building Sewer.

Hydromechanical Grease Interceptor – A plumbing appurtenance or appliance that is installed in a sanitary drainage system to intercept nonpetroleum fats, oil, and grease (FOG) from a wastewater discharge and is identified by flow rate, and separation and retention efficiency. The design incorporates air entrainment, hydromechanical separation, interior baffling, and/or barriers in combination or separately, and one of the following:

A – External flow control, with air intake (vent): directly connected

B – External flow control, without air intake (vent): directly connected

C – Without external flow control, directly connected

D – Without external flow control, indirectly connected

[These interceptors comply with the requirements of Table 10-2.] Hydromechanical grease interceptors are generally installed inside.

211.0 – I –

Indirect Waste Pipe – A pipe that does not connect directly with the drainage system but conveys liquid wastes by discharging into a plumbing fixture, interceptor, or receptacle that is directly connected to the drainage system.

Individual Vent – A pipe installed to vent a fixture trap and that connects with the vent system above the fixture served or terminates in the open air.

Industrial Waste – Any and all liquid or waterborne waste from industrial or commercial processes, except domestic sewage.

Insanitary – A condition that is contrary to sanitary principles or is injurious to health.

Conditions to which "insanitary" shall apply include the following:

(1) Any trap that does not maintain a proper trap seal.

(2) Any opening in a drainage system, except where lawful, that is not provided with an approved water-sealed trap.

(3) Any plumbing fixture or other waste-discharging receptor or device that is not supplied with water sufficient to flush and maintain the fixture or receptor in a clean condition.

(4) Any defective fixture, trap, pipe, or fitting.

(5) Any trap, except where in this code exempted, directly connected to a drainage system, the seal of which is not protected against siphonage and back-pressure by a vent pipe.

(6) Any connection, cross-connection, construction, or condition, temporary or permanent, that would permit or make possible by any means whatsoever for any unapproved foreign matter to enter a water distribution system used for domestic purposes.

(7) The foregoing enumeration of conditions to which the term "insanitary" shall apply shall not preclude the application of that term to conditions that are, in fact, insanitary.

Interceptor (Clarifier) – A device designed and installed so as to separate and retain deleterious, hazardous, or undesirable matter from normal wastes and permit normal sewage or liquid wastes to discharge into the disposal terminal by gravity.

Invert – The lowest portion of the inside of a horizontal pipe.

212.0 – J –

Joint, Brazed – Any joint obtained by joining of metal parts with alloys that melt at temperatures higher than 840°F (449°C), but lower than the melting temperature of the parts to be joined.

Joint, Soldered – A joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures or alloys that melt at a temperature up to and including 840°F (449°C).

213.0 – K –

No definitions

214.0 – L –

Labeled – Equipment or materials bearing a label of a listing agency (accredited conformity assessment body). See Listed (third-party certified).

Lavatories in Sets – Two (2) or three (3) lavatories that are served by one (1) trap.

Leader – An exterior vertical drainage pipe for conveying storm water from roof or gutter drains. See Downspout.

Liquid Waste – The discharge from any fixture, appliance, or appurtenance in connection with a plumbing system that does not receive fecal matter.

Listed (Third-party certified) – Equipment or materials included in a list published by a listing agency (accredited conformity assessment body) that maintains periodic inspection on current production of listed equipment or materials and whose listing states either that the equipment or material complies with approved standards or has been tested and found suitable for use in a specified manner.

Listing Agency – An agency accredited by an independent and authoritative conformity assessment body to operate a material and product listing and labeling (certification) system and that is accepted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, which is in the business of listing or labeling. The system includes initial and ongoing product testing, a periodic inspection on current production of listed (certified) products, and makes available a published report of such listing in which specific information is included that the material or product conforms to applicable standards and found safe for use in a specific manner.

Lot – A single or individual parcel or area of land legally recorded or validated by other means acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction on which is situated a building or which is the site of any work regulated by this code, together with the yards, courts, and unoccupied spaces legally required for the building or works, and that is owned by or is in the lawful possession of the owner of the building or works.

Low Hazard – See Pollution.

215.0 – M –

Macerating Toilet System – A system comprised of a sump with macerating pump and with connections for a water closet and other plumbing fixtures, which is designed to accept, grind, and pump wastes to an approved point of discharge.

Main – The principal artery of any system of continuous piping to which branches may be connected.

Main Sewer – See Public Sewer.

Main Vent – The principal artery of the venting system to which vent branches may be connected.

May – A permissive term.

Mobile Home Park Sewer – That part of the horizontal piping of a drainage system that begins two (2) feet (610 mm) downstream from the last mobile home site and conveys it to a public sewer, private sewer, private sewage disposal system, or other point of disposal.

216.0 – N –

Nuisance – Includes, but is not limited to:

(1) Any public nuisance known at common law or in equity jurisprudence.

(2) Whenever any work regulated by this code is dangerous to human life or is detrimental to health and property.

(3) Inadequate or unsafe water supply or sewage disposal system.

217.0 – O –

Offset – A combination of elbows or bends in a line of piping that brings one section of the pipe out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

Oil Interceptor – See Interceptor.

218.0 – P –

PB – Polybutylene.

PE – Polyethylene.

PE-AL-PE – Polyethylene-aluminum-polyethylene.

PEX – Cross-linked polyethylene.

PEX-AL-PEX – Cross-linked polyethylene—aluminum-cross-linked polyethylene.

Person – A natural person, his heirs, executor, administrators, or assigns and shall also include a firm, corporation, municipal or quasi-municipal corporation, or governmental agency. Singular includes plural, male includes female.

Pipe – A cylindrical conduit or conductor conforming to the particular dimensions commonly known as "pipe size."

Plumbing – The business, trade, or work having to do with the installation, removal, alteration, or repair of plumbing systems or parts thereof.

Plumbing Appliance – Any one of a special class of devices or equipment that is intended to perform a special plumbing function. Its operation and/or control may be dependent upon one or more energized components, such as motors, controls, heating elements, or pressure- or temperature-sensing elements. Such device or equipment may operate automatically through one or more of the following actions: a time cycle, a temperature range, a pressure range, a measured volume or weight; or the device or equipment may be manually adjusted or controlled by the user or operator.

Plumbing Appurtenance – A manufactured device, a prefabricated assembly, or an on-the-job assembly of component parts that is an adjunct to the basic piping system and plumbing fixtures. An appurtenance demands no additional water supply, nor does it add any discharge load to a fixture or the drainage system. It performs some useful function in the operation, maintenance, servicing, economy, or safety of the plumbing system.

Plumbing Fixture – An approved-type installed receptacle, device, or appliance that is supplied with water or that receives liquid or liquid-borne wastes and discharges such wastes into the drainage system to which it may be directly or indirectly connected. Industrial or commercial tanks, vats, and similar processing equipment are not plumbing fixtures, but may be connected to or discharged into approved traps or plumbing fixtures when and as otherwise provided for elsewhere in this code.

Plumbing Official – See Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Plumbing System – Includes all potable water, building supply, and distribution pipes; all plumbing fixtures and traps; all drainage and vent pipes; and all building drains and building sewers, including their respective joints and connections, devices, receptors, and appurtenances within the property lines of the premises and shall include potable water piping, potable water treating or using equipment, medical gas and medical vacuum systems, liquid and fuel gas piping, and water heaters and vents for same.

Pollution – An impairment of the quality of the potable water to a degree that does not create a hazard to the public health but which does adversely and unreasonably affect the aesthetic qualities of such potable water for domestic use. Also defined as Low Hazard.

Potable Water – Water that is satisfactory for drinking, culinary, and domestic purposes and that meets the requirements of the Health Authority Having Jurisdiction.

PP – Polypropylene.

Pressure – The normal force exerted by a homogeneous liquid or gas, per unit of area, on the wall of the container.

(1) Static Pressure – The pressure existing without any flow.

(2) Residual Pressure – The pressure available at the fixture or water outlet after allowance is made for pressure drop due to friction loss, head, meter, and other losses in the system during maximum demand periods.

Pressure-Balancing Valve – A mixing valve that senses incoming hot and cold water pressures and compensates for fluctuations in either to stabilize outlet temperature.

Private or Private Use – Applies to plumbing fixtures in residences and apartments, to private bathrooms in hotels and hospitals, and to restrooms in commercial establishments where the fixtures are intended for the use of a family or an individual.

Private Sewage Disposal System – A septic tank with the effluent discharging into a subsurface disposal field, into one or more seepage pits, or into a combination of subsurface disposal field and seepage pit or of such other facilities as may be permitted under the procedures set forth elsewhere in this code.

Private Sewer – A building sewer that receives the discharge from more than one (1) building drain and conveys it to a public sewer, private sewage disposal system, or other point of disposal.

Public or Public Use – All buildings or structures that are not defined as private or private use.

Public Sewer – A common sewer directly controlled by public authority.

PVC – Poly(vinyl chloride).

PVDF – Polyvinylidene Fluoride.

219.0 – Q –

No definitions.

220.0 – R –

Receptor – An approved plumbing fixture or device of such material, shape, and capacity as to adequately receive the discharge from indirect waste pipes, so constructed and located as to be readily cleaned.

Regulating Equipment – Includes all valves and controls used in a plumbing system that are required to be accessible or readily accessible.

Relief Vent – A vent, the primary function of which is to provide circulation of air between drainage and vent systems or to act as an auxiliary vent on a specially designed system.

Remote Outlet – When used for sizing water piping, it is the furthest outlet dimension, measuring from the meter, either the developed length of the cold-water piping or through the water heater to the furthest outlet on the hot-water piping.

Rim – See Flood-Level Rim.

Riser – A water supply pipe that extends vertically one (1) full story or more to convey water to branches or fixtures.

Roof Drain – A drain installed to receive water collecting on the surface of a roof and to discharge it into a leader, downspout, or conductor.

Roughing-In – The installation of all parts of the plumbing system that can be completed prior to the installation of fixtures. This includes drainage, water supply, gas piping, vent piping, and the necessary fixture supports.

221.0 – S –

Sand Interceptor – See Interceptor.

SDR – An abbreviation for "standard dimensional ratio," which is the specific ratio of the average specified outside diameter to the minimum wall thickness for outside controlled diameter plastic pipe.

Seepage Pit – A lined excavation in the ground which receives the discharge of a septic tank so designed as to permit the effluent from the septic tank to seep through its bottom and sides.

Septic Tank – A watertight receptacle that receives the discharge of a drainage system or part thereof, designed and constructed so as to retain solids, digest organic matter through a period of detention, and allow the liquids to discharge into the soil outside of the tank through a system of open joint piping or a seepage pit meeting the requirements of this code.

Sewage – Any liquid waste containing animal or vegetable matter in suspension or solution and that may include liquids containing chemicals in solution.

Sewage Ejector – A device for lifting sewage by entraining it on a high-velocity jet stream, air, or water.

Sewage Pump – A permanently installed mechanical device, other than an ejector, for removing sewage or liquid waste from a sump.

Shall – Indicates a mandatory requirement.

Shielded Coupling – An approved elastomeric sealing gasket with an approved outer shield and a tightening mechanism.

Shock Arrester – See Water Hammer Arrester.

Should – Indicates a recommendation or that which is advised but not required.

Single-Family Dwelling – A building designed to be used as a home by the owner of such building, which shall be the only dwelling located on a parcel of ground with the usual accessory buildings.

Size and Type of Tubing – See Diameter.

Slip Joint – An adjustable tubing connection, consisting of a compression nut, a friction ring, and a compression washer, designed to fit a threaded adapter fitting or a standard taper pipe thread.

Slope – See Grade.

Soil Pipe – Any pipe that conveys the discharge of water closets, urinals, clinic sinks, or fixtures having similar functions of collection and removal of domestic sewage, with or without the discharge from other fixtures, to the building drain or building sewer.

Special Wastes – Wastes that require some special method of handling, such as the use of indirect waste piping and receptors, corrosion-resistant piping, sand, oil or grease interceptors, condensers, or other pretreatment facilities.

Stack – The vertical main of a system of soil, waste, or vent piping extending through one or more stories.

Stack Vent – The extension of a soil or waste stack above the highest horizontal drain connected to the stack.

Standard – A document, the main text of which contains only mandatory provisions using the word "shall" to indicate requirements and which is in a form generally suitable for mandatory reference by another standard or code or for adoption into law. Nonmandatory provisions shall be located in an appendix, footnote, or fine print note and are not to be considered a part of the requirements of a standard.

Storm Drain – See Building Drain (Storm).

Storm Sewer – A sewer used for conveying rainwater, surface water, condensate, cooling water, or similar liquid wastes.

Subsoil Drain – A drain that collects subsurface or seepage water and conveys it to a place of disposal.

Sump – An approved tank or pit that receives sewage or liquid waste and which is located below the normal grade of the gravity system and which must be emptied by mechanical means.

Supports – Supports, hangers, and anchors are devices for properly supporting and securing pipe, fixtures, and equipment.

222.0 – T –

Tailpiece – The pipe or tubing that connects the outlet of a plumbing fixture to a trap.

Thermostatic (Temperature Control) Valve – A mixing valve that senses outlet temperature and compensates for fluctuations in incoming hot or cold water temperatures.

Trap – A fitting or device so designed and constructed as to provide, when properly vented, a liquid seal that will prevent the back passage of air without materially affecting the flow of sewage or wastewater through it.

Trap Arm – That portion of a fixture drain between a trap and the vent.

Trap Primer – A device and system of piping that maintains a water seal in a remote trap.

Trap Seal – The vertical distance between the crown weir and the top dip of the trap.

> **Crown Weir (Trap Weir)** –The lowest point in the cross-section of the horizontal waterway at the exit of the trap.
>
> **Top Dip (of trap)** – The highest point in the internal cross-section of the trap at the lowest part of the bend (inverted siphon). By contrast, the bottom dip is the lowest point in the internal cross-section.

223.0 – U –

Unconfined Space – A room or space having a volume equal to at least 50 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/h (1.4 m^3/293 W) of the aggregate input rating of all fuel-burning appliances installed in that space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the appliances are installed, through openings not furnished with doors, are considered a part of the unconfined space.

Unsanitary – See Insanitary.

224.0 – V –

Vacuum – Any pressure less than that exerted by the atmosphere.

Vacuum Breaker – See Backflow Preventer.

Vacuum Relief Valve – A device that prevents excessive vacuum in a pressure vessel.

Vent – Any pipe provided to ventilate a plumbing system, to prevent trap siphonage and back-pressure, or to equalize the air pressure within the drainage system.

Vent Pipe – See Vent.

Vent Stack – The vertical vent pipe installed primarily for the purpose of providing circulation of air to and from any part of the drainage system.

Vent System – A pipe or pipes installed to provide a flow of air to or from a drainage system or to provide a circulation of air within such system to protect trap seals from siphonage and back-pressure.

Vented Flow Control Device – A device installed upstream from the hydromechanical grease interceptor having an orifice that controls the rate of flow through the interceptor, and an air intake (vent) downstream from the orifice, which allows air to be drawn into the flow stream.

Vertical Pipe – Any pipe or fitting that is installed in a vertical position or that makes an angle of not more than forty-five (45) degrees with the vertical.

225.0 – W –

Wall-Hung Water Closet – A water closet installed in such a way that no part of the water closet touches the floor.

Waste – See Liquid Waste and Industrial Waste.

Waste Pipe – A pipe that conveys only liquid waste, free of fecal matter.

Water-Conditioning or Treating Device – A device that conditions or treats a water supply so as to change its chemical content or remove suspended solids by filtration.

Water-Distributing Pipe – In a building or premises, a pipe that conveys potable water from the building supply pipe to the plumbing fixtures and other water outlets.

Water Hammer Arrester – A device to absorb hydraulic shock, either of the air chamber or mechanical device design.

Water Main (Street Main) – A water supply pipe for public or community use.

Water Supply System – The building supply pipe, the water-distributing pipes, and the necessary connecting pipes, fittings, control valves, backflow prevention devices, and all appurtenances carrying or supplying potable water in or adjacent to the building or premises.

Welded Joint or Seam – Any joint or seam obtained by the joining of metal parts in the plastic molten state.

Welder, Pipe – A person who specializes in the welding of pipes and holds a valid certificate of competency from a recognized testing laboratory, based on the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessels code, Section IX.

Wet Vent – A vent that also serves as a drain.

Whirlpool Bathtub – A bathtub fixture equipped and fitted with a circulating piping system designed to accept, circulate, and discharge bathtub water upon each use.

226.0 – X –

No definitions.

227.0 – Y –

Yoke Vent – A pipe connecting upward from a soil or waste stack to a vent stack for the purpose of preventing pressure changes in the stacks.

228.0 – Z –

No definitions.

CHAPTER 3

GENERAL REGULATIONS

301.0 Materials – Standards and Alternates.

301.1 Minimum Standards.

301.1.1 Approvals. All pipe, pipe fittings, traps, fixtures, material, and devices used in a plumbing system shall be listed or labeled (third-party certified) by a listing agency (accredited conformity assessment body) and shall conform to approved applicable recognized standards referenced in this code, and shall be free from defects. Unless otherwise provided for in this code, all materials, fixtures, or devices used or entering into the construction of plumbing systems, or parts thereof, shall be submitted to the Authority Having Jurisdiction for approval.

301.1.2 Marking. Each length of pipe and each pipe fitting, trap, fixture, material, and device used in a plumbing system shall have cast, stamped, or indelibly marked on it the manufacturer's mark or name, which shall readily identify the manufacturer to the end user of the product when such marking is required by the approved standard that applies. When required by the approved standard that applies, the product shall be marked with the weight and the quality of the product. All materials and devices used or entering into the construction of plumbing and drainage systems, or parts thereof, shall be marked and identified in a manner satisfactory to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. All such marking shall be done by the manufacturer. Field marking shall not be acceptable.

301.1.3 Standards. Standards listed or referred to in this chapter or other chapters cover materials that will conform to the requirements of this code, when used in accordance with the limitations imposed in this or other chapters thereof and their listing. Where a standard covers materials of various grades, weights, quality, or configurations, there may be only a portion of the listed standard that is applicable. Design and materials for special conditions or materials not provided for herein may be used only by special permission of the Authority Having Jurisdiction after the Authority Having Jurisdiction has been satisfied as to their adequacy. A list of accepted plumbing materials standards is included in Table 14-1. All IAPMO Installation Standards are included in Appendix I for the convenience of the users of this code. They are not considered as a part of this code unless formally adopted as such by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

301.1.4 Existing Buildings. In existing buildings or premises in which plumbing installations are to be altered, repaired, or renovated, the Authority Having Jurisdiction has discretionary powers to permit deviation from the provisions of this code, provided that such a proposal to deviate is first submitted for proper determination in order that health and safety requirements, as they pertain to plumbing, shall be observed.

301.2 Alternate Materials and Methods of Construction Equivalency. Nothing in this code is intended to prevent the use of systems, methods, or devices of equivalent or superior quality, strength, fire resistance, effectiveness, durability, and safety over those prescribed by this code. Technical documentation shall be submitted to the Authority Having Jurisdiction to demonstrate equivalency. The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall approve the system method or device when determined to be equivalent or superior.

However, the exercise of this discretionary approval by the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have no effect beyond the jurisdictional boundaries of said Authority Having Jurisdiction. Any alternate material or method of construction so approved shall not be considered as conforming to the requirements and/or intent of this code for any purpose other than that granted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction when the submitted data does not prove equivalency.

301.2.1 Testing. The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have the authority to require tests, as proof of equivalency.

301.2.1.1 Tests shall be made in accordance with approved standards, by an approved testing agency at the expense of the applicant. In the absence of such standards, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have the authority specify the test procedure.

301.2.1.2 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have the authority to require tests to be made or repeated if, at any time, there is reason to believe that any material or device no longer conforms to the requirements on which its approval was based.

301.3 Flood Hazard Resistance.

301.3.1 General. Plumbing systems shall be located above the design flood elevation.

Exception: Plumbing systems are permitted to be located below the design flood elevation provided that the systems are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within their components and the systems are constructed to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the design flood elevation.

301.3.2 Flood Hazard Areas Subject to High-Velocity Wave Action. Plumbing systems in buildings located in flood hazard areas subject to high-velocity wave action shall meet the requirements of Section 301.3.1, and the plumbing systems, pipes, and fixtures shall not be mounted on or penetrate through walls that are intended to breakaway under flood loads as required by the building code.

301.4 Alternative Engineered Design.

301.4.1 Design Criteria. An alternative engineered design shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, and safety. Material, equipment, or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

301.4.2 Permit Application. The registered professional engineer shall indicate on the design documents that the plumbing system, or parts thereof, is an alternative engineered design so that it is noted on the construction permit application. The permit and permanent permit records shall indicate that an alternative engineered design was part of the approved installation.

301.4.3 Technical Data. The registered professional engineer shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed alternative engineered design and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

301.4.4 Design Documents. The registered professional engineer shall provide two (2) complete sets of signed and sealed design documents for the alternative engineered design for submittal to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The design documents shall include floor plans and a riser diagram of the work. Where appropriate, the design documents shall indicate the direction of flow, all pipe sizes, grade of horizontal piping, loading, and location of fixtures and appliances.

301.4.5 Design Approval. Where the Authority Having Jurisdiction determines that the alternative engineered design conforms to the intent of this code, the plumbing system shall be approved. If the alternative engineered design is not approved, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall notify the registered professional engineer in writing, stating the reasons therefore.

301.4.6 Inspection and Testing. The alternative engineered design shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the submitted testing and inspection plan and the requirements of this code.

302.0 Iron Pipe Size (IPS) Pipe.

Iron, steel, brass, and copper pipe shall be standard-weight iron pipe size (IPS) pipe.

303.0 Disposal of Liquid Waste.

It shall be unlawful for any person to cause, suffer, or permit the disposal of sewage, human excrement, or other liquid wastes, in any place or manner, except through and by means of an approved drainage system, installed and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this code.

304.0 Connections to Plumbing System Required.

All plumbing fixtures, drains, appurtenances, and appliances, used to receive or discharge liquid wastes or sewage, shall be connected properly to the drainage system of the building or premises, in accordance with the requirements of this code.

305.0 Sewers Required.

305.1 Every building in which plumbing fixtures are installed shall have a connection to a public or private sewer except as provided in Section 305.2.

305.2 When a public sewer is not available for use, drainage piping from buildings and premises shall be connected to an approved private sewage disposal system.

305.3 In cities and/or counties where the installation of building sewers is under the jurisdiction of a department other than the Authority Having Jurisdiction, the provisions of this code relating to building sewers need not apply.

306.0 Damage to Drainage System or Public Sewer.

306.1 It shall be unlawful for any person to deposit, by any means whatsoever, into any plumbing fixture, floor drain, interceptor, sump, receptor, or device,

which is connected to any drainage system, public sewer, private sewer, septic tank, or cesspool, any ashes; cinders; solids; rags; inflammable, poisonous, or explosive liquids or gases; oils; grease; or any other thing whatsoever that would, or could, cause damage to the drainage system or public sewer.

306.2 Roofs, inner courts, vent shafts, light wells, or similar areas having rainwater drain, shall discharge to the outside of the building or to the gutter and shall not be connected to the sanitary drainage system unless first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

307.0 Industrial Wastes.

307.1 Wastes detrimental to the public sewer system or detrimental to the functioning of the sewage treatment plant shall be treated and disposed of as found necessary and directed by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

307.2 Sewage or other waste from a plumbing system that may be deleterious to surface or subsurface waters shall not be discharged into the ground or into any waterway unless it has first been rendered safe by some acceptable form of treatment as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

308.0 Location.

308.1 Except as otherwise provided in this code, no plumbing system, drainage system, building sewer, private sewage disposal system, or parts thereof shall be located in any lot other than the lot that is the site of the building, structure, or premises served by such facilities.

308.2 No subdivision, sale, or transfer of ownership of existing property shall be made in such manner that the area, clearance, and access requirements of this code are decreased.

309.0 Improper Location.

Piping, fixtures, or equipment shall not be so located as to interfere with the normal use thereof or with the normal operation and use of windows, doors, or other required facilities.

310.0 Workmanship.

310.1 All design, construction, and workmanship shall be in conformity with accepted engineering practices and shall be of such character as to secure the results sought to be obtained by this code.

310.2 It is unlawful to conceal cracks, holes, or other imperfections in materials by welding, brazing, or soldering or by using therein or thereon any paint, wax, tar, or other leak-sealing or repair agent.

310.3 Burred ends of all pipe and tubing shall be reamed to the full bore of the pipe or tube, and all chips shall be removed.

310.4 Installation Practices. Plumbing systems shall be installed in a manner conforming to this code, applicable standards, and the manufacturer's installation instructions. In instances where the code, applicable standards, or the manufacturer's instructions conflict, the more stringent provisions shall prevail.

311.0 Prohibited Fittings and Practices.

311.1 No double hub fitting, single or double tee branch, single or double tapped tee branch, side inlet quarter bend, running thread, band, or saddle shall be used as a drainage fitting, except that a double hub sanitary tapped tee may be used on a vertical line as a fixture connection.

311.2 No drainage or vent piping shall be drilled and tapped for the purpose of making connections thereto, and no cast-iron soil pipe shall be threaded.

311.3 No waste connection shall be made to a closet bend or stub of a water closet or similar fixture.

311.4 Except as hereinafter provided in Sections 908.0, 909.0, and 910.0, no vent pipe shall be used as a soil or waste pipe, nor shall any soil or waste pipe be used as a vent. Also, single-stack drainage and venting systems with unvented branch lines are prohibited.

311.5 No fitting, fixture and piping connection, appliance, device, or method of installation that obstructs or retards the flow of water, wastes, sewage, or air in the drainage or venting systems, in an amount greater than the normal frictional resistance to flow, shall be used unless it is indicated as acceptable in this code or is approved per Section 301.1 of this code. The enlargement of a three (3) inch (80 mm) closet bend or stub to four (4) inches (100 mm) shall not be considered an obstruction.

311.6 Except for necessary valves, where intermembering or mixing of dissimilar metals occurs, the point of connection shall be confined to exposed or accessible locations.

311.7 All valves, pipes, and fittings shall be installed in correct relationship to the direction of flow.

311.8 Screwed Fittings. Screwed fittings shall be ABS, cast iron, copper, copper alloy, malleable iron, PVC, steel, or other approved materials. Threads shall be tapped out of solid metal or molded in solid ABS or PVC.

312.0 Independent Systems.

The drainage system of each new building and of new work installed in any existing building shall be separate and independent from that of any other

building, and, when available, every building shall have an independent connection with a public or private sewer.

Exception: Where one building stands in the rear of another building on an interior lot, and no private sewer is available or can be constructed to the rear building through an adjoining court, yard, or driveway, the building drain from the front building may be extended to the rear building.

313.0 Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures.

313.1 All piping passing under or through walls shall be protected from breakage. All piping passing through or under cinders or other corrosive materials shall be protected from external corrosion in an approved manner. Approved provisions shall be made for expansion of hot water piping. Voids around piping passing through concrete floors on the ground shall be appropriately sealed.

313.2 All piping in connection with a plumbing system shall be so installed that piping or connections will not be subject to undue strains or stresses, and provisions shall be made for expansion, contraction, and structural settlement. No plumbing piping shall be directly embedded in concrete or masonry. No structural member shall be seriously weakened or impaired by cutting, notching, or otherwise, as defined in the Building Code.

313.3 All trenches deeper than the footing of any building or structure and paralleling the same shall be at least forty-five (45) degrees (0.79 rad) therefrom, or as approved per Section 301.1 of this code.

313.4 No building sewer or other drainage piping or part thereof, constructed of materials other than those approved for use under or within a building, shall be installed under or within two (2) feet (610 mm) of any building or structure, or less than one (1) foot (305 mm) below the surface of the ground.

313.5 Piping subject to corrosion, erosion, or mechanical damage shall be protected in an approved manner.

313.6 No water, soil, or waste pipe shall be installed or permitted outside of a building or in an exterior wall unless, where necessary, adequate provision is made to protect such pipe from freezing.

313.7 All piping penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls, partitions, floors, floor/ceiling assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies, or shaft enclosures shall be protected in accordance with the requirements of the Building Code, IAPMO Installation Standards, and Chapter 15, "Firestop Protection."

313.8 Waterproofing of Openings. Joints at the roof around pipes, ducts, or other appurtenances shall be made watertight by the use of lead, copper, galvanized iron, or other approved flashings or flashing material. Exterior wall openings shall be made watertight. Counterflashing shall not restrict the required internal cross-sectional area of the vent.

313.9 Plastic and copper piping penetrating a framing members to within one (1) inch (25.4 mm) of the exposed framing shall be protected by steel nail plates not less than 0.0478 inches (18 gauge) (1.3mm) in thickness. The steel nail plate shall extend along the framing member a minimum of 1-1/2 inches beyond the outside diameter of the pipe or tubing.

Exception: See Section 1211.3.4.

313.10 Sleeves.

313.10.1 Sleeves shall be provided to protect all piping through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floors.

Exception: Sleeves shall not be required where openings are drilled or bored.

313.10.2 Piping through concrete or masonry walls shall not be subject to any load from building construction.

313.10.3 In exterior walls, annular space between sleeves and pipes shall be sealed and made watertight, as approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Any penetration through fire-resistive construction shall be in accordance with Section 313.7.

313.10.4 Any pipe sleeve through a firewall shall have the space around the pipe completely sealed with an approved fire-resistive material in accordance with all other codes.

313.11 Any structural member weakened or impaired by cutting, notching, or otherwise shall be reinforced, repaired, or replaced so as to be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of the Building Code.

313.12 Ratproofing.

313.12.1 Strainer plates on drain inlets shall be designed and installed so that no opening is greater than one-half (1/2) inch (12.7 mm) in the least dimension.

313.12.2 Meter boxes shall be constructed in such a manner that rats cannot enter a building by following the service pipes from the box into the building.

313.12.3 In or on buildings where openings have been made in walls, floors, or ceilings for the passage of pipes, such openings shall be closed and protected by the installation of approved metal collars securely fastened to the adjoining structure.

313.12.4 Tub waste openings in framed construction to crawl spaces at or below the first floor shall be protected by the installation of approved metal collars or metal screen securely fastened to the adjoining structure with no opening greater than one-half (1/2) inch (12.7mm) in the least dimension.

314.0 Hangers and Supports.

314.1 Suspended piping shall be supported at intervals not to exceed those shown in Table 3-2.

314.2 All piping shall be supported in such a manner as to maintain its alignment and prevent sagging.

314.3 Piping in the ground shall be laid on a firm bed for its entire length; where other support is otherwise provided, it shall be approved per Section 301.0 of this code.

314.4 Hangers and anchors shall be of sufficient strength to support the weight of the pipe and its contents. Piping shall be isolated from incompatible materials.

314.5 All piping, fixtures, appliances, and appurtenances shall be adequately supported in accordance with this code, the manufacturer's installation instructions, and as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

314.6 Hanger rod sizes shall be no smaller than those shown in Table 3-1.

314.7 All gas piping shall be supported by metal straps or hooks at intervals not to exceed those shown in Table 3-2.

TABLE 3-1
Hanger Rod Sizes

Pipe and Tube Size		Rod Size	
Inches	**mm**	**Inches**	**mm**
1/2 – 4	12.7 – 102	3/8	9.5
5 – 8	127 – 203	1/2	12.7
10 – 12	254 – 305	5/8	15.9

315.0 Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill.

315.1 All trenches deeper than the footing of any building or structure and paralleling the same shall be at least forty-five (45) degrees (0.79 rad) therefrom, or as approved per Section 301.0 of this code.

315.2 Tunneling and driving may be done in yards, courts, or driveways of any building site. Where sufficient depth is available to permit, tunnels may be used between open-cut trenches. Tunnels shall have a clear height of two (2) feet (610 mm) above the pipe and shall be limited in length to one-half (1/2) the depth of the trench, with a maximum length of eight (8) feet (2438 mm). When pipes are driven, the drive pipe shall be at least one (1) size larger than the pipe to be laid.

315.3 Open Trenches. All excavations required to be made for the installation of a building drainage system or any part thereof, within the walls of a building, shall be open trench work and shall be kept open until the piping has been inspected, tested, and accepted.

315.4 All excavations shall be completely backfilled as soon after inspection as practicable. Adequate precaution shall be taken to ensure proper compactness of backfill around piping without damage to such piping. Trenches shall be backfilled in thin layers to twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above the top of the piping with clean earth, which shall not contain stones, boulders, cinderfill, frozen earth, construction debris, or other materials that would damage or break the piping or cause corrosive action. Mechanical devices such as bulldozers, graders, etc., may then be used to complete backfill to grade. Fill shall be properly compacted. Suitable precautions shall be taken to ensure permanent stability for pipe laid in filled or made ground.

316.0 Joints and Connections.

316.1 Types of Joints.

316.1.1 Threaded Joints. Threads on iron pipe size (IPS) pipe and fittings shall be standard taper pipe threads in accordance with standards listed in Table 14-1. Threads on tubing shall be approved types. Threads on plastic pipe shall be factory cut or molded. Threaded plastic pipe shall be Schedule 80 minimum wall thickness. Tubing threads shall conform to fine tubing thread standards. When a pipe joint material is used, it shall be applied only on male threads, and such materials shall be approved types, insoluble in water and nontoxic. Cleanout plugs and caps shall be lubricated with water-insoluble, nonhardening material or tape. Thread tape or thread lubricants and sealants specifically intended for use with plastics shall be used on plastic threads. Conventional pipe thread compounds, putty, linseed-oil-based products, and unknown lubricants and sealants shall not be used on plastic threads.

316.1.2 Wiped Joints. Joints in lead pipe or fittings or between lead pipe or fittings and brass or copper pipe, ferrules, solder nipples, or traps

shall be full-wiped joints. Wiped joints shall have an exposed surface on each side of a joint not less than three-fourths (3/4) inch (19.1 mm) and at least as thick as the material being joined. Wall or floor flange lead-wiped joints shall be made by using a lead ring or flange placed behind the joint at the wall or floor. Joints between lead pipe and cast iron, steel, or wrought iron shall be made by means of a caulking ferrule or soldering nipple.

316.1.3 Soldered Joints. Joints in copper tubing shall be made by the appropriate use of approved copper or copper alloy fittings. Surfaces to be joined by soldering shall be cleaned bright by manual or mechanical means. The joints shall be properly fluxed with an approved-type flux and made up with approved solder. All solder and fluxes shall be manufactured to approved standards. Solders and fluxes with a lead content that exceeds two-tenths (0.20) of one (1) percent shall be prohibited in piping systems used to convey potable water.

316.1.4 Flared Joints. Flared joints for soft copper tubing shall be made with fittings meeting approved standards. The tubing shall be reamed to the full inside diameter, resized to round, and expanded with a proper flaring tool.

316.1.5 Flexible Compression Factory-Fabricated Joints. When pipe is joined by means of flexible compression joints, such joints shall conform to approved standards and shall not be considered as slip joints.

316.1.6 Solvent Cement Plastic Pipe Joints. Plastic pipe and fittings designed to be joined by solvent cementing shall comply with appropriate IAPMO Installation Standards.

ABS pipe and fittings shall be cleaned and then joined with solvent cement(s).

CPVC pipe and fittings shall be cleaned and then joined with listed primer(s) and solvent cement(s).

> **Exception:** Listed solvent cements that do not require the use of primer shall be permitted for use with CPVC pipe and fittings, manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846, 1/2 inch through 2 inches in diameter.

PVC pipe and fittings shall be cleaned and joined with primer(s) and solvent cement(s).

A solvent cement transition joint between ABS and PVC building drain or building sewer shall be made using a listed transition solvent cement.

316.1.7 Brazing and Welding. Brazing and welding shall conform to the applicable standard(s) in Table 14-1. Only brazing alloys having a liquid temperature above 1,000°F shall be used. All brazing on medical gas systems shall be performed by certified installers meeting the requirements of ANSI/ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX, Welding and Brazing Qualifications, or AWS B2.2, Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualifications.

316.1.8 Pressure-Lock-Type Connection. This is a mechanical connection that depends on an internal retention device to prevent pipe or tubing separation. Connection is made by inserting the pipe or tubing into the fitting to a prescribed depth.

316.1.9 Pressed Fitting. This is a mechanical connection for joining copper tubing that uses a crimping tool to affix the O-ring seal copper or copper alloy fitting to the tubing. The tubing shall be inserted into the fitting, and the crimp shall be made using the tool recommended by the manufacturer.

316.2 Special Joints.

316.2.1 Copper Tubing to Screw Pipe Joints. Joints from copper tubing to threaded pipe shall be made by the use of brass adapter fittings. The joint between the copper tubing and the fitting shall be a soldered brazed flared, or pressed joint and the connection between the threaded pipe and the fitting shall be made with a standard pipe size screw joint. Solder shall conform to the requirements of Section 316.1.3. Brazed joints shall conform to the requirements of Section 316.1.7. Flared joints shall conform to the requirements of Section 316.1.4. Pressed joints shall conform to the requirements of 316.1.9.

316.2.2 Unions. Approved unions may be used in drainage piping when accessibly located in the trap seal or between a fixture and its trap in the vent system, except underground or in wet vents, at any point in the water supply system, and in gas piping as permitted by Section 1211.3.2(4).

316.2.3 Plastic Pipe to Other Materials. When connecting plastic pipe to other types of piping, only approved types of fittings and adapters designed for the specific transition intended shall be used.

316.3 Flanged Fixture Connections.

316.3.1 Fixture connections between drainage pipes and water closets, floor outlet service sinks and urinals shall be made by means of approved brass, hard lead, ABS, PVC, or iron flanges

caulked, soldered, solvent cemented; rubber compression gaskets; or screwed to the drainage pipe. The connection shall be bolted with an approved gasket, washer, or setting compound between the fixture and the connection. The bottom of the flange shall be set on an approved firm base.

316.3.2 Closet bends or stubs shall be cut off so as to present a smooth surface even with the top of the closet ring before rough inspection is called.

316.3.3 Wall-mounted water closet fixtures shall be securely bolted to an approved carrier fitting. The connecting pipe between the carrier fitting and the fixture shall be an approved material and designed to accommodate an adequately sized gasket. Gasket material shall be neoprene, felt, or similar approved types.

316.4 Prohibited Joints and Connections.

316.4.1 Drainage System. Any fitting or connection that has an enlargement, chamber, or recess with a ledge, shoulder, or reduction of pipe area that offers an obstruction to flow through the drain shall be prohibited.

316.4.2 No fitting or connection that offers abnormal obstruction to flow shall be used. The enlargement of a three (3) inch (80 mm) closet bend or stub to four (4) inches (100 mm) shall not be considered an obstruction.

317.0 Increasers and Reducers.

Where different sizes of pipes and fittings are to be connected, the proper size increasers or reducers or reducing fittings shall be used between the two sizes. Brass or cast-iron body cleanouts shall not be used as a reducer or adapter from cast-iron drainage pipe to iron pipe size (IPS) pipe.

318.0 Food-Handling Establishments.

Food or drink shall not be stored, prepared, or displayed beneath soil or drain pipes, unless those areas are protected against leakage or condensation from such pipes reaching the food or drink as described below. Where building design requires that soil or drain pipes be located over such areas, the installation shall be made with the least possible number of joints and shall be installed so as to connect to the nearest adequately sized vertical stack with the provisions as follows:

318.1 All openings through floors over such areas shall be sealed watertight to the floor construction.

318.2 Floor and shower drains installed above such areas shall be equipped with integral seepage pans.

318.3 All other soil or drain pipes shall be of an approved material as listed in Table 14-1 and Section 701.0. All materials shall conform to established standards. Cleanouts shall be extended through the floor construction above.

318.4 Piping subject to operation at temperatures that will form condensation on the exterior of the pipe shall be thermally insulated.

318.5 Where pipes are installed in ceilings above such areas, the ceiling shall be of the removable type, or shall be provided with access panels in order to form a ready access for inspection of piping.

319.0 Test Gauges. Tests required by this code, which are performed utilizing dial gauges, shall be limited to gauges having the following pressure graduations or incrementations.

319.1 Required pressure tests of ten (10) psi (69 kPa) or less shall be performed with gauges of 1/10 pound (0.7 kPa) incrementation or less.

319.2 Required pressure tests exceeding ten (10) pounds (69 kPa) but less than one hundred (100) psi (689 kPa) shall be performed with gauges of one (1) psi (6.9 kPa) incrementation or less.

319.3 Required pressure tests exceeding one hundred (100) psi (689 kPa) shall be performed with gauges incremented for two (2) percent or less of the required test pressure.

319.4 Test gauges shall have a pressure range not greater than twice the test pressure applied.

320.0 Medical Gas and Vacuum Systems. All such piping shall be installed, tested, and verified in compliance with the appropriate consensus standards referenced in Chapter 14 and the requirements of Chapter 13. The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall require evidence of the competency of the installers and verifiers.

TABLE 3-2
Hangers and Supports

Materials	Types of Joints	Horizontal	Vertical
Cast	Lead and Oakum	5 feet (1,524 mm), except may be 10 feet (3,048 mm) where 10 foot lengths are installed [1,2,3]	Base and each floor not to exceed 15 feet (4,572 mm)
	Compression Gasket	Every other joint, unless over 4 feet (1,219 mm), then support each joint [1,2,3]	Base and each floor not to exceed 15 feet (4,572 mm)
Cast-Iron Hubless	Shielded Coupling	Every other joint, unless over 4 feet (1,219 mm), then support each joint [1,2,3,4]	Base and each floor not to exceed 15 feet (4,572 mm)
Copper Tube and Pipe	Soldered or Brazed	1-1/2 inches (40 mm) and smaller, 6 feet (1,829 mm), 2 inches (50 mm) and larger, 10 feet (3,048 mm)	Each floor, not to exceed 10 feet (3,048 mm)[5]
Steel and Brass Pipe for Water or DWV	Threaded or Welded	3/4 inch (20 mm) and smaller, 10 feet (3,048 mm), 1 inch (25 mm) and larger, 12 feet (3,658 mm)	Every other floor, not to exceed 25 feet (7,620 mm)[5]
Steel, Brass, and Tinned Copper Pipe for Gas	Threaded or Welded	1/2 inch (15 mm), 6 feet (1829 mm), 3/4 inch (20 mm) and 1 inch (25.4 mm), 8 feet (2,438 mm, 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) and larger, 10 feet (3,048 mm)	1/2 inch (12.7 mm), 6 feet (1,829 mm), 3/4 inch (19 mm) and 1 inch (25.4 mm), 8 feet (2,438 mm), 1-1/4 every floor level
Schedule 40 PVC and ABS DWV	Solvent Cemented	All sizes, 4 feet (1,219 mm). Allow for expansion every 30 feet (9,144 mm).[3,6]	Base and each floor. Provide mid-story guides. Provide for expansion every 30 feet (9,144 mm).[6]
CPVC	Solvent Cemented	1 inch (25 mm) and smaller, 3 feet (914 mm), 1-1/4 inch (932 mm) and larger, 4 feet (1,219 mm)	Base and each floor. Provide mid-story guides. [6]
Lead	Wiped or Burned	Continuous Support	Not to exceed 4 feet (1,219 mm)
Copper	Mechanical	In accordance with standards acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction	
Steel and Brass	Mechanical	In accordance with standards acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction	
PEX	Metal Insert and Metal Compression	32 inches (800 mm)	Base and each floor. Provide mid-story guides.
PEX-AL-PEX	Metal Insert and Metal Compression	1/2 inch (12 mm), 3/4 inch (20 mm), 1 inch (25 mm) } All sizes 98 inches (2,489 mm)	Base and each floor. Provide mid-story guides.
PE-AL-PE	Metal Insert and Metal Compression	1/2 inch (12 mm), 3/4 inch (20 mm), 1 inch (25 mm) } All sizes 98 inches (2,489 mm)	Base and each floor. Provide midstory guides.

1 Support adjacent to joint, not to exceed eighteen (18) inches (457 mm).
2 Brace at not more than forty (40) foot (12,192 mm) intervals to prevent horizontal movement.
3 Support at each horizontal branch connection.
4 Hangers shall not be placed on the coupling.
5 Vertical water lines may be supported in accordance with recognized engineering principles with regard to expansion and contraction, when first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
6 See the appropriate IAPMO Installation Standard for expansion and other special requirements.

CHAPTER 4

PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

401.0 Materials – General Requirements.

401.1 Quality of Fixtures. Plumbing fixtures shall be constructed of dense, durable, non-absorbent materials and shall have smooth, impervious surfaces, free from unnecessary concealed fouling surfaces. Except as permitted elsewhere in this code, all fixtures shall conform in quality and design to nationally recognized applicable standards included in Table 14-1.

401.2 Lead. See Table 14-1. Sheet lead shall be not less than the following:

For safe pans not less than four (4) pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m^2) or 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

401.3 Plumbing fixture fittings covered under the scope of NSF 61 shall comply with the requirements of NSF 61.

402.0 Water-Conserving Fixtures and Fittings.

402.1 Flush volumes for low-consumption and water-saver water closets and urinals shall be in accordance with applicable standards referenced in Table 14-1.

402.2 Water Closets. Water closets, either flush tank, flushometer tank, or flushometer valve operated, shall have an average consumption of not more than 1.6 gallons (6.1 liters) of water per flush.

402.3 Urinals. Urinals shall have an average water consumption of not more than 1.0 gallon (3.8 liters) of water per flush.

402.4 Metered Faucets. Self-closing or self-closing metering faucets shall be installed on lavatories intended to serve the transient public, such as those in, but not limited to, service stations, train stations, airports, restaurants, and convention halls. Metered faucets shall deliver not more than 0.25 gallons (1.0 liter) of water per use.

402.5 Emergency Safety Showers. Emergency safety showers shall not be limited in their water supply flow rates.

402.6 Installation. Water-conserving fixtures shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturers' instructions to maintain their rated performance.

403.0 Overflows.

When any fixture is provided with an overflow, the waste shall be so arranged that the standing water in the fixture cannot rise in the overflow when the stopper is closed or remain in the overflow when the fixture is empty. The overflow pipe from a fixture shall be connected on the house or inlet side of the fixture trap, except that overflow on flush tanks may discharge into the water closets or urinals served by them, but it shall be unlawful to connect such overflows with any other part of the drainage system.

404.0 Strainers and Connections.

404.1 Strainers. All plumbing fixtures, other than water closets and urinals, shall be equipped with approved strainers having an approved waterway area. Strainers serving shower drains shall have a waterway equivalent to the area of the tailpiece.

404.2 Connections. Fixtures having concealed slip joint connections shall be provided with an access panel or utility space at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) in its least dimension and so arranged without obstructions as to make such connections accessible for inspection and repair.

404.3 Continuous wastes and fixture tailpieces shall be constructed from the materials specified in Section 701.0 for drainage piping, provided, however, that such connections where exposed or accessible may be of seamless drawn brass not less than No. 20 B&S Gauge (0.032 inches) (0.8 mm). Each such tailpiece, continuous waste, or waste and overflow shall not be less than one and one-half (1-1/2) inches (40 mm) O.D. for sinks, dishwashers, laundry tubs, bathtubs, urinals, and similar fixtures, and not less than one and one quarter (1-1/4) inches (32 mm) for lavatories, drinking fountains, and similar small fixtures.

404.4 Approved wye or other directional-type branch fittings shall be installed in all continuous wastes connecting or receiving the discharge from food waste disposal units, dishwashers, clothes washers, or other force discharge fixtures or appliances. No dishwasher drain shall be connected to a sink tailpiece, continuous waste, or trap on the discharge side of a food waste disposal unit.

405.0 Prohibited Fixtures.

405.1 Water closets having an invisible seal or an unventilated space or having walls which are not thoroughly washed at each discharge shall be prohibited. Any water closet that might permit siphonage of the contents of the bowl back into the tank shall be prohibited. Drinking fountains shall not be installed in public toilet rooms.

405.2 Prohibited Urinals. Floor-type and wall-hung type trough urinals shall be prohibited. Urinals that have an invisible seal or that have an unventilated space or wall that is not thoroughly washed at each discharge shall be prohibited.

405.3 Fixed wooden, or tile wash trays or sinks for domestic use shall not be installed in any building designed or used for human habitation. No sheet metal-lined wooden bathtub shall be installed or reconnected. No dry or chemical closet (toilet) shall be installed in any building used for human habitation, unless first approved by the Health Officer.

406.0 Special Fixtures and Specialties.

406.1 Water and Waste Connections. Baptisteries, ornamental and lily ponds, aquaria, ornamental fountain basins, and similar fixtures and specialties requiring water and/or waste connections shall be submitted for approval to the Authority Having Jurisdiction prior to installation.

406.2 Restaurant kitchen and other special use sinks may be made of approved-type bonderized and galvanized sheet steel of not less than No. 16 U.S. gauge (0.0625 inches) (1.6 mm). All sheet-metal plumbing fixtures shall be adequately designed, constructed, and braced in an approved manner to satisfactorily accomplish their intended purpose.

406.3 Special Use Fixtures. Special use fixtures shall be made of one of the following:

(A) Soapstone

(B) Chemical stoneware

(C) Copper-based alloy

(D) Nickel-based alloy

(E) Corrosion-resistant steel

(F) Other materials suited for the intended use of the fixture.

406.4 Zinc Alloy Components. Zinc alloy components shall meet the applicable nationally recognized standards and shall be used in accordance with their listing.

407.0 Installation.

407.1 Cleaning. Plumbing fixtures shall be installed in a manner to afford easy access for repairs and cleaning. Where practical, all pipes from fixtures shall be run to the nearest wall.

407.2 Joints. Where a fixture comes in contact with the wall or floor, the joint between the fixture and the wall or floor shall be made watertight.

407.3 Securing Fixtures. Floor-outlet or floor-mounted fixtures shall be rigidly secured to the drainage connection and to the floor, when so designed, by screws or bolts of copper, brass, or other equally corrosion-resistant material.

407.4 Wall-Hung Fixtures. Wall-hung fixtures shall be rigidly supported by metal supporting members so that no strain is transmitted to the connections. Flush tanks and similar appurtenances shall be secured by approved non-corrosive screws or bolts.

407.5 Securing Floor-Mounted, Back-Outlet Water Closet Bowls. Floor-mounted, back-outlet water closet bowls shall be set level with an angle of ninety (90) degrees (1.58 rad) between the floor and wall at the centerline of the fixture outlet. The floor and wall shall have a flat mounting surface for at least five (5) inches (127 mm) to the right and left of the fixture outlet centerline. The fixture shall be secured to the wall outlet flange or drainage connection and to the floor by corrosion-resistant screws or bolts. The closet flange shall be secured to a firm base.

Where floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets are used, the soil pipe shall not be less than three (3) inches (80 mm) in diameter. Offset, eccentric, or reducing floor flanges shall not be used.

407.6 Setting. Fixtures shall be set level and in proper alignment with reference to adjacent walls. No water closet or bidet shall be set closer than fifteen (15) inches (381 mm) from its center to any side wall or obstruction nor closer than thirty (30) inches (762 mm) center to center to any similar fixture. The clear space in front of any water closet or bidet shall not be less than twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm). No urinal shall be set closer than twelve (12) inches (305 mm) from its center to any side wall or partition nor closer than twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm) center to center.

407.7 Installations for Persons with Disabilities. Where facilities for persons with disabilities are required in applicable building regulations, the facilities shall be installed in accordance with those regulations.

407.8 Supply Fittings. The supply lines and fittings for every plumbing fixture shall be so installed as to prevent backflow as required in Chapter 6.

408.0 Water Closets.

408.1 Water closet bowls for public use shall be of the elongated type. In nurseries, schools, and other similar places where plumbing fixtures are provided for the use of children under six (6) years of age, water closets shall be of a size and height suitable for children's use. All water closets shall be equipped with seats as required below.

408.2 Water Closet Seats.

408.2.1 Water closet seats shall be of smooth, non-absorbent material.

408.2.2 All water closet seats, except those within dwelling units, shall be either of the open front type or have an automatic seat cover dispenser.

408.2.3 Water closet seats shall be properly sized for the water closet bowl type.

408.2.4 Seats for use in public buildings shall conform to the standard listed in Table 14-1.

409.0 Urinals.

Every water supply to a urinal shall be protected by an approved-type vacuum breaker or other approved backflow prevention device as described in Section 603.3.

410.0 Flushing Devices for Water Closets and Urinals.

410.1 Flushing Devices Required. Each water closet, urinal, clinic sink, or other plumbing fixture that depends on trap siphonage to discharge its waste contents shall be provided with a flushometer valve, flushometer tank, or flush tank designed and installed so as to supply water in sufficient quantity and rate of flow to flush the contents of the fixture to which it is connected, to cleanse the fixture, and to refill the fixture trap, without excessive water use. Flushing devices shall meet anti-siphon requirements required in Chapter 6.

410.2 Automatic Flushing Tanks. Tanks flushing more than one (1) urinal shall be automatic in operation and of sufficient capacity to provide the necessary volume to flush and properly cleanse all urinals simultaneously. Automatically controlled flushometer valves may be substituted for flush tanks.

410.3 Flushometer Valves. No manually controlled flushometer valve shall be used to flush more than one (1) urinal, and each such urinal flushometer valve shall be an approved, self-closing type discharging a predetermined quantity of water. Flushometers shall be installed so that they will be accessible for repair. Flushometer valves shall not be used where the water pressure is insufficient to properly operate them. When the valve is operated, it shall complete the cycle of operation automatically, opening fully and closing positively under the line water pressure. Each flushometer shall be provided with a means for regulating the flow through it.

410.4 Water Supply for Flush Tanks. An adequate quantity of water shall be provided to flush and clean the fixture served. The water supply for flushing tanks and flushometer tanks equipped for manual flushing shall be controlled by a float valve or other automatic device designed to refill the tank after each discharge and to completely shut off the water flow to the tank when the tank is filled to operational capacity. Provision shall be made to automatically supply water to the fixture so as to refill the trap seal after each flushing. The water supply to flush tanks equipped for automatic flushing shall be controlled by a suitable timing device.

410.5 Overflows in Flush Tanks. Flush tanks shall be provided with overflows discharging into the water closet or urinal connected thereto. Overflows supplied as original parts with the fixture shall be of sufficient size to prevent tank flooding at the maximum rate at which the tank is supplied with water under normal operating conditions and when installed per manufacturer's instructions.

411.0 Floor Drains and Shower Stalls.

411.1 Floor drains shall be considered plumbing fixtures, and each such drain shall be provided with an approved-type strainer having a waterway equivalent to the area of the tailpiece. Floor drains, floor receptors, and shower drains shall be of an approved type, suitably flanged to provide a watertight joint in the floor.

411.2 Location of Floor Drains. Floor drains shall be installed in the following areas:

411.2.1 Toilet rooms containing two (2) or more water closets or a combination of one (1) water closet and one (1) urinal, except in a dwelling unit.

411.2.2 Commercial kitchens.

411.2.3 Laundry rooms in commercial buildings and common laundry facilities in multi-family dwelling buildings.

411.3 Food Storage Areas. If drains are provided in storerooms, walk-in freezers, walk-in coolers, refrigerated equipment, or other locations where food is stored, such drains shall have indirect waste piping. Separate waste pipes shall be run from each food storage area, each with an indirect connection to the building sanitary drainage system. Traps shall be provided if required under Section 801.2.2 of this code and shall be vented.

Indirect drains may be located in freezers or other spaces where freezing temperatures are maintained, provided that traps, when supplied, are located where the seal will not freeze. Otherwise, the floor of the freezer shall be sloped to a floor drain located outside of the storage compartment.

411.4 Floor Slope. Floors shall be sloped to floor drains.

411.5 Shower receptors are plumbing fixtures and shall conform to the general requirements contained in Section 401.0. Each such shower receptor shall be constructed of vitrified china or earthenware, ceramic tile, porcelain-enameled metal, or of such other

material as may be acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. No shower receptor shall be installed unless it conforms to acceptable standards as referenced in Table 14-1 or until a specification or a prototype or both of such receptor has first been submitted to and approval obtained from the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

411.6 Each shower receptor shall be an approved type and be so constructed as to have a finished dam, curb, or threshold that is at least one (1) inch (25.4 mm) lower than the sides and back of such receptor. In no case shall any dam or threshold be less than two (2) inches (51 mm) or more than nine (9) inches (229 mm) in depth when measured from the top of the dam or threshold to the top of the drain. Each such receptor shall be provided with an integral nailing flange to be located where the receptor meets the vertical surface of the finished interior of the shower compartment. The flange shall be watertight and extend vertically a minimum of one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the top of the sides of the receptor. The finished floor of the receptor shall slope uniformly from the sides toward the drain not less than one-quarter (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m), nor more than one-half (1/2) inch per foot (41.8 mm/m). Thresholds shall be of sufficient width to accommodate a minimum twenty-two (22) inch (559 mm) door. Shower doors shall open so as to maintain a minimum twenty-two (22) inch (559 mm) unobstructed opening for egress.

> **Exception:** Showers that are designed to comply with the accessibility standards listed in Table 14-1.

411.7 All shower compartments, regardless of shape, shall have a minimum finished interior of one thousand twenty-four (1,024) square inches (0.66 m²) and shall also be capable of encompassing a thirty (30) inch (750 mm) circle. The minimum required area and dimensions shall be measured at a height equal to the top of the threshold and at a point tangent to its centerline. The minimum area and dimensions shall be maintained to a point seventy (70) inches (1778 mm) above the shower drain outlet with no protrusions other than the fixture valve or valves, shower head, soap dishes, shelves, and safety grab bars or rails. Fold-down seats in accessible shower stalls shall be permitted to protrude into the thirty (30) inch (750 mm) circle.

> **Exception No. 1:** Showers that are designed to comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.

> **Exception No. 2:** The minimum required area and dimension shall not apply where an existing bathtub is replaced by a shower receptor having minimum overall dimensions of 30 inches (750 mm) in width and 60 inches (1,500 mm) in length.

411.8 When the construction of on-site built-up shower receptors is permitted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, one of the following means shall be employed:

(1) Shower receptors built directly on the ground:

Shower receptors built directly on the ground shall be watertight and shall be constructed from approved-type dense, nonabsorbent and noncorrosive materials. Each such receptor shall be adequately reinforced, shall be provided with an approved flanged floor drain designed to make a watertight joint in the floor, and shall have smooth, impervious, and durable surfaces.

(2) Shower receptors built aboveground:

When shower receptors are built aboveground, the subfloor and rough side of walls to a height of not less than three (3) inches (76 mm) above the top of the finished dam or threshold shall be first lined with sheet plastic,* lead,* or copper,* or shall be lined with other durable and watertight materials.

All lining materials shall be pitched one-quarter (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) to weep holes in the subdrain of a smooth and solidly formed subbase. All such lining materials shall extend upward on the rough jambs of the shower opening to a point no less than three (3) inches (76 mm) above the top of the finished dam or threshold and shall extend outward over the top of the rough threshold and be turned over and fastened on the outside face of both the rough threshold and the jambs.

Nonmetallic shower subpans or linings may be built up on the job site of not less than three (3) layers of standard, grade fifteen (15) pound (6.8 kg) asphalt-impregnated roofing felt. The bottom layer shall be fitted to the formed subbase and each succeeding layer thoroughly hot-mopped to that below. All corners shall be carefully fitted and shall be made strong and watertight by folding or lapping, and each corner shall be reinforced with suitable webbing hot-mopped in place. All folds, laps, and reinforcing webbing shall extend at least four (4) inches (102 mm) in all directions from the corner, and all webbing shall be of approved type and mesh, producing a tensile strength of not less than fifty (50) psi (344.5 kPa) in either direction. Nonmetallic shower subpans or linings may also consist of multilayers of other approved equivalent materials suitably reinforced and carefully fitted in place on the job site as elsewhere required in this section.

Linings shall be properly recessed and fastened to approved backing so as not to occupy the space required for the wall covering and shall not be nailed or perforated at any point that may be less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the finished dam or threshold. An approved-type subdrain shall be installed with every shower subpan or lining. Each such subdrain shall be of the type that sets flush with the subbase and shall be equipped with a clamping ring or other device to make a tight connection between the lining and the drain. The subdrain shall have weep holes into the waste line. The weep holes located in the subdrain clamping ring shall be protected from clogging.

All shower lining materials shall conform to approved standards acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

---

*Lead and copper subpans or linings shall be insulated from all conducting substances other than their connecting drain by fifteen (15) pound (6.8 kg) asphalt felt or its equivalent, and no lead pan or liner shall be constructed of material weighing less than four (4) pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m^2). Copper pans or liners shall be at least No. 24 B & S Gauge (0.02 inches) (0.5 mm). Joints in lead pans or liners shall be burned. Joints in copper pans or liners shall be soldered or brazed. Plastic pans shall not be coated with asphalt-based materials.

411.8.1 Tests for Shower Receptors. Shower receptors shall be tested for watertightness by filling with water to the level of the rough threshold. The test plug shall be so placed that both upper and under sides of the subpan shall be subjected to the test at the point where it is clamped to the drain.

411.9 Floors of public shower rooms shall have a nonskid surface and shall be drained in such a manner that wastewater from one bather will not pass over areas occupied by other bathers. Gutters in public or gang shower rooms shall have rounded corners for easy cleaning and shall be sloped not less than two (2) percent toward drains. Drains in gutters shall be spaced not more than eight (8) feet (2438 mm) from sidewalls nor more than sixteen (16) feet (4879 mm) apart.

411.10 Location of Valves and Heads. Control valves and showerheads shall be located on the sidewall of shower compartments or be otherwise arranged so that the showerhead does not discharge directly at the entrance to the compartment and the bather can adjust the valves prior to stepping into the shower spray.

411.11 Water Supply Riser. Every water supply riser from the shower valve to the showerhead outlet, whether exposed or not, shall be securely attached to the structure.

412.0 Minimum Number of Required Fixtures.

412.1 Fixture Count. Plumbing fixtures shall be provided for the type of building occupancy and in the minimum number shown in Table 4-1.

412.2 Access to Fixtures.

412.2.1 In multi-story buildings, accessibility to the required fixtures shall not exceed one (1) vertical story.

412.2.2 Fixtures accessible only to private offices shall not be counted to determine compliance with this section.

412.3 Separate Facilities.

Separate toilet facilities shall be provided for each sex.

Exceptions:

(1) Residential installations.

(2) In occupancies serving ten (10) or fewer people, one (1) toilet facility, designed for use by no more than one (1) person at a time, shall be permitted for use by both sexes.

(3) In business and mercantile occupancies with a total floor area of fifteen hundred (1500) square feet (139.5 m^2) or less, one (1) toilet facility, designed for use by no more than one (1) person at a time, shall satisfy the requirements for serving customers and employees of both sexes.

412.4 Fixture Requirements for Special Occupancies.

412.4.1 Additional fixtures may be required when unusual environmental conditions or special activities are encountered.

412.4.2 In food preparation areas, fixture requirements may be dictated by health codes.

412.4.3 Types of occupancy not shown in Table 4-1 shall be considered individually by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

412.5 Facilities in Mercantile and Business Occupancies Serving Customers.

412.5.1 Requirements for customers and employees shall be permitted to be met with a single set of restrooms accessible to both groups. The required number of fixtures shall be the greater of the required number for employees or the required number for customers.

412.5.2 Fixtures for customer use shall be permitted to be met by providing a centrally

located facility accessible to several stores. The maximum distance from entry to any store to this facility shall not exceed five hundred (500) feet (152.4 m).

412.5.3 In stores with a floor area of one hundred fifty (150) square feet (13.9 m^2) or less, the requirement to provide facilities for employees shall be permitted to be met by providing a centrally located facility accessible to several stores. The maximum distance from entry to any store to this facility shall not exceed three hundred (300) feet (91.4 m).

412.6 Food Service Establishments. Food service establishments with an occupant load of one hundred (100) or more shall be provided with separate facilities for employees and customers. Customer and employee facilities may be combined for occupant loads less than one hundred (100).

412.7 Toilet Facilities for Workers.

Suitable toilet facilities shall be provided and maintained in a sanitary condition for the use of workers during construction.

413.0 Fixtures and Fixture Fittings for Persons with Disabilities.

Plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings for persons with disabilities shall conform to the appropriate standards referenced in Table 14-1 of this code.

413.1 Limitation of Hot Water Temperature for Public Lavatories.

Hot water delivered from public-use lavatories shall be limited to a maximum temperature of 120°F. The water heater thermostat shall not be considered a control for meeting this provision.

414.0 Bathtubs and Whirlpool Bathtubs.

Unless otherwise listed, all bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall comply with the following requirements:

414.1 A removable panel shall be provided to access and remove the pump. Whirlpool pump access located in the crawl space shall be located no more than twenty (20) feet (6096 mm) from an access door, trap door, or crawl hole.

414.2 The circulation pump shall be located above the crown weir of the trap.

414.3 The pump and the circulation piping shall be self-draining to minimize water retention in accordance with standards referenced in Table 14-1.

414.4 Suction fittings on whirlpool bathtubs shall comply with the listed standards.

414.5 Limitation of Hot Water in Bathtubs and Whirlpool Bathtubs. The maximum hot water temperature discharging from the bathtub and whirlpool bathtub filler shall be limited to 120°F. The water heater thermostat shall not be considered a control for meeting this provision.

415.0 Installation of Fixture Fittings.

Where two separate handles control the hot and cold water, the left-hand control of the faucet when facing the fixture fitting outlet shall provide the means to alter the hot water temperature from the fixture fitting.

Single-handle mixing valves shall have the flow of hot water correspond to the markings on the fitting.

416.0 Bidets.

416.1 Materials. Bidets shall conform to the standards listed in Table 14-1.

416.2 Backflow Protection. The water supply to the bidet shall be protected according to Chapter 6, which allows for an airgap or vacuum breaker.

417.0 Future Fixtures.

When provision is made for the future installation of fixtures, those provided for shall be considered in determining the required sizes of drain pipes. Construction for future installations shall be terminated with a plugged fitting or fittings. Where the plugged fitting is at the point where the trap of a fixture may be installed, the plumbing system for such fixture shall be complete and conform with all plumbing requirements of this code.

418.0 Shower and Tub-Shower Combination Control Valves.

Showers and tub-shower combinations in all buildings shall be provided with individual control valves of the pressure balance, thermostatic, or combination pressure balance/thermostatic mixing valve type that provide scald and thermal shock protection. These valves shall conform to ASSE 1016. Gang showers, when supplied with a single temperature-controlled water supply pipe, may be controlled by a master thermostatic mixing valve in lieu of individually controlled pressure balance, thermostatic, or combination pressure balance/thermostatic mixing valves. Handle position stops shall be provided on such valves and shall be adjusted per the manufacturer's instructions to deliver a maximum mixed water setting of 120°F (49°C). The water heater thermostat shall not be considered a suitable control for meeting this provision.

TABLE 4-1
Minimum Plumbing Facilities[1]

Each building shall be provided with sanitary facilities, including provisions for persons with disabilities as prescribed by the Department Having Jurisdiction. For requirements for persons with disabilities, ICC/ANSI A117.1, Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities, may be used.

The total occupant load shall be determined by minimum exiting requirements. The minimum number of fixtures shall be calculated at fifty (50) percent male and fifty (50) percent female based on the total occupant load.

The occupant load and use of the building or space under consideration shall first be established using the Occupant Load Factor Table A. Once the occupant load and uses are determined, the requirements of Section 412.0 and Table 4-1 shall be applied to determine the minimum number of plumbing fixtures required.

This table applies to new buildings, additions to a building, changes of occupancy or type in an existing building resulting in increased occupant load (example: change an assembly room from fixed seating to open seating). Exception: New cafeterias for employee use are the only use exempted from this requirement.

Type of Building or Occupancy[2]	Water Closets[14] (Fixtures per Person)	Urinals[5, 10] (Fixtures per Person)	Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)	Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)	Drinking Fountains[3, 13, 18] (Fixtures per Person)
Assembly places – theatres, auditoriums, convention halls, etc.– for permanent employee use	Male / Female 1: 1-15 / 1: 1-15 2: 16-35 / 3: 16-35 3: 36-55 / 4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males.	Male / Female 1 per 40 / 1 per 40		
Assembly places – theatres, auditoriums, convention Halls, etc. – for public use	Male / Female 1: 1-100 / 3: 1-50 2: 101-200 / 4: 51-100 3: 201-400 / 8: 101-200 11: 201-400 Over 400, add one fixture for each additional 500 males and 1 for each additional 125 females.	Male 1: 1-100 2: 101-200 3: 201-400 4: 401-600 Over 600, add 1 fixture for each additional 300 males.	Male / Female 1: 1-200 / 1: 1-200 2: 201-400 / 2: 201-400 3: 401-750 / 3: 401-750 Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons.		1: 1-150 2: 151-400 3: 401-750 Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons.
Dormitories[9]– School or labor[17]	Male / Female 1 per 10 / 1 per 8 Add 1 fixture for each additional 25 males (over 10) and 1 for each additional 20 females (over 8).	Male 1 per 25 Over 150, add 1 fixture for each additional 50 males.	Male / Female 1 per 12 / 1 per 12 Over 12, add one fixture for each additional 20 males and 1 for each 15 additional females.	1 per 8 For females, add 1 bathtub per 30. Over 150, add 1 bathtub per 20.	1 per 150[12]
Dormitories – for staff use[17]	Male / Female 1: 1-15 / 1: 1-15 2: 16-35 / 3: 16-35 3: 36-55 / 4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 1 per 50	Male / Female 1 per 40 / 1 per 40	1 per 8	
Dwellings[4] Single dwelling Multiple dwelling or apartment house[17]	1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit		1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit	1 per dwelling 1 per dwelling or apartment unit	
Hospital waiting rooms	1 per room		1 per room		1 per 150[12]
Hospitals – for employee use	Male / Female 1: 1-15 / 1: 1-15 2: 16-35 / 3: 16-35 3: 36-55 / 4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males.	Male / Female 1 per 40 / 1 per 40		
Hospitals Individual room Ward room	1 per room 1 per 8 patients		1 per room 1 per 10 patients	1 per room 1 per 20 patients	1 per 150[12]
Industrial[6] warehouses, workshops, foundries, and similar establishments – for employee use	Male / Female 1: 1-10 / 1: 1-10 2: 11-25 / 2: 11-25 3: 26-50 / 3: 26-50 4: 51-75 / 4: 51-75 5: 76-100 / 5: 76-100 Over 100, add 1 fixture for each additional 30 persons.		Up to 100, 1 per 10 persons Over 100, 1 per 15 persons[7, 8]	1 shower for each 15 persons exposed to excessive heat or to skin contamination with poisonous, infectious, or irritating material	1 per 150[12]
Institutional – other than hospitals or penal institutions (on each occupied floor)	Male / Female 1 per 25 / 1 per 20	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males.	Male / Female 1 per 10 / 1 per 10	1 per 8	1 per 150[12]
Institutional – other than hospitals or penal institutions (on each occupied floor) – for employee use	Male / Female 1: 1-15 / 1: 1-15 2: 16-35 / 3: 16-35 3: 36-55 / 4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males.	Male / Female 1 per 40 / 1 per 40	1 per 8	1 per 150[12]

Type of Building or Occupancy[2]	Water Closets[14] (Fixtures per Person)	Urinals[5, 10] (Fixtures per Person)	Lavatories (Fixtures per Person)	Bathtubs or Showers (Fixtures per Person)	Drinking Fountains[3, 13] (Fixtures per Person)
Office or public buildings	Male 1: 1-100, 2: 101-200, 3: 201-400 Female 3: 1-50, 4: 51-100, 8: 101-200, 11: 201-400 Over 400, add one fixture for each additional 500 males and 1 for each additional 150 females.	Male 1: 1-100 2: 101-200 3: 201-400 4: 401-600 Over 600, add 1 fixture for each additional 300 males.	Male 1: 1-200, 2: 201-400, 3: 401-750 Female 1: 1-200, 2: 201-400, 3: 401-750 Over 750, add one fixture for each additional 500 persons.		1 per 150[12]
Office or public buildings – for employee use	Male 1: 1-15, 2: 16-35, 3: 36-55 Female 1: 1-15, 3: 16-35, 4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males.	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40		
Penal institutions – for employee use	Male 1: 1-15, 2: 16-35, 3: 36-55 Female 1: 1-15, 3: 16-35, 4: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 0: 1-9 1: 10-50 Add one fixture for each additional 50 males.	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40		1 per 150[12]
Penal institutions – for prison use					
Cell	1 per cell	Male	1 per cell		1 per cell block floor
Exercise room	1 per exercise room	1 per exercise room	1 per exercise room		1 per exercise room
Public or professional offices[15]	Same as Office or Public Buildings for employee use[15]	Same as Office or Public Buildings for employee use[15]	Same as Office or Public Buildings for employee use[15]		Same as Office or Public Buildings for employee use[15]
Restaurants, pubs, and lounges[11,15,16]	Male 1: 1-50, 2: 51-150, 3: 151-300 Female 1: 1-50, 2: 51-150, 4: 151-300 Over 300, add 1 fixture for each additional 200 persons.	Male 1: 1-150 Over 150, add 1 fixture for each additional 150 males.	Male 1: 1-150, 2: 151-200, 3: 201-400 Female 1: 1-150, 2: 151-200, 3: 201-400 Over 400, add 1 fixture for each additional 400 persons.		
Retail or Wholesale Stores	Male 1:1-100, 2:101-200, 3:201-400 Female 1:1-25, 2:26-100, 4:101-200, 6:201-300, 8: 301-400 Over 400, add one fixture for each additional 500 males and one for each 150 females	Male 0:0-25 1:26-100 2:101-200 3:201-400 4:401-600 Over 600, add one fixture for each additional 300 males	One for each two water closets		0: 1-30[17] 1:31-150 One additional drinking fountain for each 150 persons thereafter
Schools – for staff use All schools	Male 1: 1-15, 2: 16-35, 3: 36-55 Female 1: 1-15, 2: 16-35, 3: 36-55 Over 55, add 1 fixture for each additional 40 persons.	Male 1 per 50	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40		
Schools – for student use Nursery	Male 1: 1-20, 2: 21-50 Female 1: 1-20, 2: 21-50 Over 50, add 1 fixture for each additional 50 persons.		Male 1: 1-25, 2: 26-50 Female 1: 1-25, 2: 26-50 Over 50, add 1 fixture for each additional 50 persons.		1 per 150[12]
Elementary	Male 1 per 30 Female 1 per 25	Male 1 per 75	Male 1 per 35 Female 1 per 35		1 per 150[12]
Secondary	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 30	Male 1 per 35	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40		1 per 150[12]
Others (colleges, universities, adult centers, etc.)	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 30	Male 1 per 35	Male 1 per 40 Female 1 per 40		1 per 150[12]
Worship places educational and activities Unit	Male 1 per 150 Female 1 per 75	Male 1 per 150	1 per 2 water closets		1 per 150[12]
Worship places principal assembly place	Male 1 per 150 Female 1 per 75	Male 1 per 150	1 per 2 water closets		1 per 150[12]

1 The figures shown are based upon one (1) fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction thereof.

2 Building categories not shown on this table shall be considered separately by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

3 Drinking fountains shall not be installed in toilet rooms.

4 Laundry trays. One (1) laundry tray or one (1) automatic washer standpipe for each dwelling unit or one (1) laundry tray or one (1) automatic washer standpipe, or combination thereof, for each twelve (12) apartments. Kitchen sinks, one (1) for each dwelling or apartment unit.

5 For each urinal added in excess of the minimum required, one water closet may be deducted. The number of water closets shall not be reduced to less than two-thirds (2/3) of the minimum requirement.

6 As required by ANSI Z4.1, Sanitation in Places of Employment.

7 Where there is exposure to skin contamination with poisonous, infectious, or irritating materials, provide one (1) lavatory for each five (5) persons.

8 Twenty-four (24) lineal inches (610 mm) of wash sink or eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) of a circular basin, when provided with water outlets for such space, shall be considered equivalent to one (1) lavatory.

9 Laundry trays, one (1) for each fifty (50) persons. Service sinks, one (1) for each hundred (100) persons.

10 General. In applying this schedule of facilities, consideration shall be given to the accessibility of the fixtures. Conformity purely on a numerical basis may not result in an installation suited to the needs of the individual establishment. For example, schools should be provided with toilet facilities on each floor having classrooms.

   a. Surrounding materials, wall, and floor space to a point two (2) feet (610 mm) in front of urinal lip and four (4) feet (1219 mm) above the floor, and at least two (2) feet (610 mm) to each side of the urinal shall be lined with non-absorbent materials.
   b. Trough urinals shall be prohibited.

11 A restaurant is defined as a business that sells food to be consumed on the premises.

   a. The number of occupants for a drive-in restaurant shall be considered as equal to the number of parking stalls.
   b. Employee toilet facilities shall not be included in the above restaurant requirements. Hand-washing facilities shall be available in the kitchen for employees.

12 Where food is consumed indoors, water stations may be substituted for drinking fountains. Offices, or public buildings for use by more than six (6) persons shall have one (1) drinking fountain for the first one hundred fifty (150) persons and one (1) additional fountain for each three hundred (300) persons thereafter.

13 There shall be a minimum of one (1) drinking fountain per occupied floor in schools, theatres, auditoriums, dormitories, offices, or public buildings.

14 The total number of water closets for females shall be at least equal to the total number of water closets and urinals required for males. This requirement shall not apply to Retail or Wholesale Stores.

15 For smaller-type Public and Professional Offices such as banks, dental offices, law offices, real estate offices, architectural offices, engineering offices, and similar uses. A public area in these offices shall use the requirements for Retail or Wholesale Stores.

16 A unisex facility (one water closet and one lavatory) may be used when the customer occupant load for the dining area, including outdoor seating area, is 10 or less and the total number of employees for the space is 4 or less.

17 Recreation or community room in multiple dwellings or apartment buildings, regardless or their occupant load, shall be permitted to have separate single-accommodation facilities in common-use areas within tracts or multi-family residential occupancies where the use of these areas is limited exclusively to owners, residents, and their guests. Examples are community recreation or multi-purpose areas in apartments, condos, townhouses, or tracts.

18 A drinking fountain shall not be required in occupancies of 30 or less. When a drinking fountain is not required, then footnotes 3,12, and 13 are not applicable.

Table A. Occupant Load Factor:

Occupancy*, **		Occupant Load Factor (square feet) (CBC 2001, Table A-29A)
Group A		
1.	Auditoriums, convention halls, dance floors, lodge rooms, stadiums, and casinos (use 1/2 "one-half" the number of fixed seating)	15 (where no fixed seating is provided)
2.	Conference rooms, dining rooms, drinking establishments, exhibit rooms, gymnasiums, lounges, stages, and similar uses, including restaurants classified as Group B occupancies	30
3.	Worship places; principal assembly area, educational and activity unit (use 1/2 "one-half" the number of fixed seating)	30 (where no fixed seating is provided)
Group B		
	Office or public buildings (area accessible to the public)	200
Group E		
	Schools for daycare, elementary, secondary	50
Educational Facilities Other than Group E		
	Colleges, universities, adult centers, etc.	50
Group F		
	Workshops, foundries and similar establishments	2,000
Group H		
	Hazardous materials fabrication and storage	2,000
Group I		
	Hospital general use area, health care facilities	200
Group M		
	Retail or Wholesale stores	200
Group R		
	Congregate residence, Group R-1	200
Group S		
	Warehouse	5,000

* Any uses not specifically listed shall be based on similar uses listed in this table.

** For building or space with mixed occupancies, use appropriate occupancy group for each area (for example, a school may have an "A" occupancy for the gymnasium, a "B" occupancy for the office, an "E" occupancy for the classrooms, etc.)
Accessory areas may be excluded (for example: hallway, restroom, stair enclosure)

CHAPTER 5

WATER HEATERS

Part I

501.0 General.

The regulations of this chapter shall govern the construction, location, and installation of fuel-burning and other water heaters heating potable water, together with all chimneys, vents, and their connectors. The minimum capacity for water heaters shall be in accordance with the first hour rating listed in Table 5-1. All design, construction, and workmanship shall be in conformity with accepted engineering practices, manufacturer's installation instructions, and applicable standards and shall be of such character as to secure the results sought to be obtained by this code. No water heater shall be hereinafter installed that does not comply in all respects with the type and model of each size thereof approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. A list of accepted gas equipment standards is included in Table 14-1.

502.0 Definitions.

502.1 Appliance Categorized Vent Diameter/Area. The minimum vent area/diameter permissible for Category I appliances to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards. [NFPA 54: 3.3.7]

502.2 Chimney. (See also Gas Vent, and Venting System.) One or more passageways, vertical or nearly so, for conveying flue or vent gases to the outside atmosphere. [NFPA 54: 3.3.17]

502.3 Chimney, Factory-Built. A chimney composed of listed factory-built components assembled in accordance with the terms of listing to form the completed chimney. [NFPA 54: 3.3.17.2]

502.4 Chimney, Masonry. A field-constructed chimney of solid masonry units, bricks, stones, listed masonry chimney units, or reinforced portland cement concrete, lined with suitable chimney flue liners. [NFPA 54: 3.3.17.3]

502.5 Chimney, Metal. A field-constructed chimney of metal. [NFPA 54: 3.3.17.4]

502.6 Combustible Material. As pertaining to materials adjacent to or in contact with heat-producing appliances, vent connectors, gas vents, chimneys, steam and hot water pipes, and warm air ducts, shall mean materials made of or surfaced with wood, compressed paper, plant fibers, or other materials that are capable of being ignited and burned. Such material shall be considered combustible even though flame-proofed, fire-retardant treated, or plastered. [NFPA 54: 3.3.65.1]

502.7 Direct-Vent Appliances. Appliances that are constructed and installed so that all air for combustion is derived directly from the outside atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outside atmosphere. [NFPA 54: 3.3.6.3]

502.8 Flue Collar. That portion of an appliance designed for the attachment of a draft hood, vent connector, or venting system. [NFPA 54: 3.3.45]

502.9 Gas Vent, Type B. A vent for venting-listed gas appliances with draft hoods and other Category I appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents. [NFPA 54: 3.3.103.2.2]

502.10 Gas Vent, Type L. A vent for venting appliances listed for use with Type L vents and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents. [NFPA 54: 3.3.103.2.4]

502.11 Indirect-Fired Water Heater. A water heater consisting of a storage tank equipped with an internal or external heat exchanger used to transfer heat from an external source to heat potable water. The storage tank may contain heated potable water or water supplied from an external source, such as a boiler.

502.12 Vent. A passageway used to convey flue gases from gas utilization equipment or their vent connectors to the outside atmosphere. [NFPA 54: 3.3.103]

502.13 Vent Connector. The pipe or duct that connects a fuel-gas-burning appliance to a vent or chimney. [NFPA 54: 3.3.104]

TABLE 5-1[1] FIRST HOUR RATING

Number of Bathrooms	1 to 1.5			2 to 2.5				3 to 3.5			
Number of Bedrooms	1	2	3	2	3	4	5	3	4	5	6
First Hour Rating,[2] Gallons	42	54	54	54	67	67	80	67	80	80	80

Note:
1 The first hour rating is found on the "Energy Guide" lable.
2 Non-storage and solar water heaters shall be sized to meet the appropriate first hour rating as shown in the table.

NFPA NFPA **502.14 Venting System.** A continuous open passageway from the flue collar or draft hood of a gas-burning appliance to the outside atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. [NFPA 54: 3.3.96.6]

502.15 Water Heater. An appliance for supplying hot water for domestic or commercial purposes. [NFPA 54: 3.3.55.7]

503.0 Permits.

It shall be unlawful for any person to install, remove, or replace or cause to be installed, removed, or replaced any water heater without first obtaining a permit from the Authority Having Jurisdiction to do so.

504.0 Inspection.

504.1 Inspection of Chimneys or Vents. This inspection shall be made after all chimneys, vents, or parts thereof, authorized by the permit, have been installed and before any such vent or part thereof has been covered or concealed.

504.2 Final Water Heater Inspection. This inspection shall be made after all work authorized by the permit has been installed. The Authority Having Jurisdiction will make such inspection as deemed necessary to be assured that the work has been installed in accordance with the intent of this code. No equipment or part thereof shall be covered or concealed until the same has been inspected and approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

505.0 Water Heater Requirements.

505.1 Location. Water heater installations in bedrooms and bathrooms shall comply with one of the following [NFPA 54: 10.28.1]:

(1) Fuel-burning water heaters may be installed in a closet located in the bedroom or bathroom provided the closet is equipped with a listed, gasketed door assembly and a listed self-closing device. The self-closing door assembly shall meet the requirements of Section 505.1.1. The door assembly shall be installed with a threshold and bottom door seal and shall meet the requirements of Section 505.1.2. All combustion air for such installations shall be obtained from the outdoors in accordance with Section 507.4. The closet shall be for the exclusive use of the water heater.

(2) Water heater shall be of the direct vent type. [NFPA 54: 10.28.1.2]

505.1.1 Self-Closing Doors. Self-closing doors shall swing easily and freely and shall be equipped with a self-closing device to cause the door to close and latch each time it is opened. The closing mechanism shall not have a hold-open feature. [NFPA 80: 6.1.4.2]

505.1.2 Gasketing. Gasketing on gasketed doors or frames shall be furnished only in accordance with the published listings of the doors, frame, or gasketing material manufacturer. [NFPA 80: 6.4.8]

Exception: Where acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, gasketing of noncombustible or limited-combustible material (see NFPA 220) Standard on Types of Building Construction) shall be permitted to be applied to the frame, provided closing and latching of the door are not inhibited.

505.2 Water heaters of other than the direct-vent type shall be located as close as practical to the chimney or gas vent. [NFPA 54: 9.28.1.2]

505.3 Clearance.

505.3.1 The clearances shall not be such as to interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility for servicing. Listed water heaters shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions. [NFPA 54: 10.28.2.1]

505.3.2 Unlisted water heaters shall be installed with a clearance of 12 inches (300 mm) on all sides and rear. Combustible floors under unlisted water heaters shall be protected in an approved manner. [NFPA 54: 10.28.2.2]

505.4 Pressure-Limiting Devices. A water heater installation shall be provided with overpressure protection by means of an approved, listed device, installed in accordance with the terms of its listing and the manufacturer's instructions. [NFPA 54: 10.28.3]

505.5 Temperature-Limiting Devices. A water heater installation or a hot water storage vessel installation shall be provided with overtemperature protection by means of an approved, listed device installed in accordance with the terms of its listing and the manufacturer's instructions. [NFPA 54: 10.28.4]

505.6 Temperature, Pressure, and Vacuum Relief Devices. The installation of temperature, pressure, and vacuum relief devices or combinations thereof, and automatic gas shutoff devices, shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturers' instructions. A shutoff valve shall not be placed between the relief valve and the water heater or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere. The hourly Btu discharge capacity or the rated steam relief capacity of the device shall not be less than the input rating of the water heater. [NFPA 54: 10.28.5]

506.0 Oil-Burning and Other Water Heaters.

506.1 Water heaters deriving heat from fuels or types of energy other than gas shall be constructed and

in accordance with approved standards. Vents or chimneys for such appliances shall be approved types. An adequate supply of air for combustion and for adequate ventilation of heater rooms or compartments shall be provided. Each such appliance shall be installed in a location approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and local and state fire-prevention agencies.

506.2 All storage-type water heaters and hot water boilers deriving heat from fuels or types of energy other than gas, shall be provided with, in addition to the primary temperature controls, an overtemperature safety protection device constructed, listed, and installed in accordance with nationally recognized applicable standards for such devices and a combination temperature and pressure-relief valve.

506.3 Oil-fired water heaters shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment.*

506.4 Indirect-Fired Water Heaters

506.4.1 Indirect-fired water heaters shall conform to applicable sections of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, or to one of the other applicable standards shown in Table 14-1. Each water heater shall bear a label in accordance with ASME requirements, or an approved testing agency, certifying and attesting that such equipment has been tested and inspected and meets the requirements of the applicable standards or code.

506.4.2 Indirect-fired water heater that incorporate a single-wall heat exchanger shall meet all of the following requirements:

(1) Connected to a low-pressure hot water boiler limited to a maximum of 30 psig by an approved safety or relief valve.

(2) Heater transfer medium is either potable water or contains fluids having a toxicity rating or Class of 1.

(3) Bear a label with the word "Caution," followed by the following statements:

(a) The heat-transfer medium must be water or other nontoxic fluid having a toxic rating or Class of 1 as listed in Clinical Toxicology of Commercial Products, 5th edition.

(b) The pressure of the heat-transfer medium must be limited to a maximum of 30 psig by an approved safety or relief valve.

Note: The word "Caution" and the statements in letters having a minimum uppercase height of 0.120 inch (3.05 mm). The minimum vertical spacing between lines of type shall be 0.046 inch (1.17 mm). Lowercase letters shall be compatible with the uppercase letter size specification.

507.0 Air for Combustion and Ventilation.

507.1 General.

507.1.1 Air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases for gas utilization equipment installed in buildings shall be obtained by application of one of the methods covered in Sections 507.2.1 through 507.7. Gas utilization equipment of other than natural draft and Category I vented appliances shall be provided with combustion, ventilation, and dilution air in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's instructions. Where infiltration does not provide the necessary air, outdoor air shall be introduced in accordance with methods covered in Sections 507.4 through 507.7. [NFPA 54: 8.3.1.1]

Exception No. 1: This provision shall not apply to direct-vent appliances. [NFPA 54: 8.3.1.1]

Exception No. 2: Type 1 clothes dryers that are provided with make-up air in accordance with section NFPA 54: 8.4.3.

507.1.1.1 Clothes Dryer. A device used to dry wet laundry by means of heat derived from the combustion of fuel gases. [NFPA 54: 3.3.18]

507.1.1.2 Clothes Dryer, Type 1. Primarily used in family living environment. May or may not be coin-operated for public use. [NFPA 54: 3.3.18.1]

507.1.1.3 Exhausting to the Outdoors. Type 1 and Type 2 clothes dryers shall be exhausted to the outside air. [NFPA 54: 10.4.2]

507.1.1.4 Provisions for Make-Up Air. Make-up air shall be provided for Type 1 clothes dryers in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions. [NFPA 54: 10.4.3.1]

507.1.2 Gas appliances of other than natural draft design and other than Category I vented appliances shall be provided with combustion, ventilation, and dilution air in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. [NFPA 54: 9.3.1.2]

507.1.3 Where used, a draft hood or a barometric draft regulator shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the equipment served so as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply. [NFPA 54: 9.3.1.4]

507.1.4 Makeup air requirements for the operation of exhaust fans, kitchen ventilation systems, clothes dryers, and fireplaces shall be considered in determining the adequacy of a space to provide combustion air requirements. [NFPA 54: 9.3.1.5]

507.2 Indoor Combustion Air. The required volume of indoor air shall be determined in accordance with Sections 507.2.1 or 507.2.2 except that where the air infiltration rate is known to be less than 0.40 ACH, Section 507.2.2 shall be used. The total required volume shall be the sum of the required volume calculated for all appliances located within the space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the appliances are installed through openings not furnished with doors, and through combustion air openings sized and located in accordance with Section 507.3 are considered a part of the required volume. [NFPA 54: 9.3.2]

507.2.1 Standard Method. The minimum required volume shall be 50 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/hour (4.8 m^3/kW). [NFPA 54: 9.3.2.1]

507.2.2 Known Air Infiltration Rate Method. Where the air infiltration rate of a structure is known, the minimum required volume shall be determined as follows [NFPA 54: 9.3.2.2]:

(1) For appliances having other than fan-assisted, combustion systems: calculate using Equation 5-1 but no smaller than 35 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/hour (3.4 m^3/kW). [NFPA 54: 9.3.2.2(1)]

(2) For fan-assisted combustion system appliances, calculate using Equation 5-2 but no smaller than 25 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/hour (2.4 m^3/kW). [NFPA 54: 9.3.2.2(2)]

Equation 5-1:

$$\text{Required Volume}_{other} > (21\ \text{ft}^3/\text{ACH}) \times (I_{other}/1{,}000\ \text{Btu/h})$$

Equation 5-2:

$$\text{Required Volume}_{fan} > (15\ \text{ft}^3/\text{ACH}) \times (I_{fan}/1{,}000\ \text{Btu/h})$$

Where:

I_{other} = All Appliances other than Fan-Assisted Input in Btu/hour

I_{fan} = Fan-Assisted Appliance Input in Btu/hour

ACH = Air Change per Hour (Percent of volume of space exchanged per hour, expressed as a decimal)

507.3 Indoor Opening Size and Location. Openings used to connect indoor spaces shall be sized and located in accordance with the following [NFPA 54: 9.3.2.3]:

(1) *Combining spaces on the same story.* Each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 in.^{2}/1,000 Btu/h (2200 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all gas utilization equipment in the space, but not less than 100 in.^{2} (0.06 m^2). One opening shall commence within 12 inches (300 mm) of the top, and one opening shall commence within 12 inches (300 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure [see Figure 5-7]. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (80mm). [NFPA 54:9.3.2.3(1)]

(2) *Combining spaces in different stories.* The volumes of spaces in different stories shall be considered as communicating spaces where such spaces are connected by one or more openings in doors or floors having a total minimum free area of 2 in.^{2}/1,000 Btu/h (4,400 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all gas utilization equipment. [NFPA 54: 8.3.2.3(2)]

507.4 Outdoor Combustion Air. Outdoor combustion air shall be provided through opening(s) to the outdoors in accordance with methods in Sections 507.4.1 or 507.4.2. The minimum dimension of air openings shall not be less than 3 inches (80 mm). [NFPA 54: 9.3.3]

507.4.1 Two Permanent Openings Method: Two permanent openings, one commencing within 12 inches (300 mm) of the top and one commencing within 12 inches (300 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure shall be provided. The openings shall communicate directly, or by ducts, with the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors as follows. [See Figure 5-8 through 5-11.] [NFPA 54: 9.3.3.1]

(1) Where directly communicating with the outdoors or where communicating to the outdoors through vertical ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 in.^{2}/4000 Btu/h (550 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all equipment in the enclosure. [See Figures 5-8 and 5-9.] [NFPA 54: 9.3.3.1(1)]

(2) Where communicating with the outdoors through horizontal ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 in.^{2}/2,000 Btu/h (1,100 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all equipment in the enclosure. [See Figure 5-10] [NFPA 54: 9.3.3.1(2)]

507.4.2 One Permanent Opening Method: One permanent opening, commencing within 12 inches (300 mm) of the top of the enclosure, shall be provided. The equipment shall have clearances of at least 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and back and 6 inches (160 mm) from the front of the appliance. The opening shall directly communicate with the outdoors or shall communicate through a vertical or horizontal duct to the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors [see Figure 5-11] and shall have a minimum free area of the following [NFPA 54: 9.3.3.2]:

(1) 1 in.^{2}/3000 Btu/h (700 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all equipment located in the enclosure, and [NFPA 54: 9.3.3.2(1)]

(2) Not less than the sum of the areas of all vent connectors in the space. [NFPA 54: 9.3.3.2(2)]

507.5 Combination Indoor and Outdoor Combustion Air. The use of a combination of indoor and outdoor combustion air shall be in accordance with Sections 507.5.1, 507.5.2 and 507.5.3 [see example calculation in NFPA 54 Annex J and this chapter – Part II] [NFPA 54: 9.3.4].

507.5.1 Indoor Openings. Where used, openings connecting the interior spaces shall comply with Section 507.3. [NFPA 54: 9.3.4(1)]

507.5.2 Outdoor openings shall be located in accordance with Sections 507.4.1 or 507.4.2. [NFPA 54: 9.3.4(2)]

507.5.3 Outdoor Openings Size. The outdoor openings size shall be calculated in accordance with the following [NFPA 54: 9.3.4(3)]:

(1) The ratio of interior spaces shall be the available volume of all communicating spaces divided by the required volume.

(2) The outdoor size reduction factor shall be 1 minus the ratio of interior spaces.

(3) The minimum size of outdoor openings shall be the full size of outdoor openings calculated in accordance with Sections 507.4.1 or 507.4.2, multiplied by the reduction factor. The minimum dimension of air openings shall not be less than 3 inches (80 mm). [NFPA 54: 8.3.4(3)(c)]

507.6 Engineered Installations. Engineered combustion air installations shall provide an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation, and dilution air and shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 54: 9.3.5]

507.7 Mechanical Combustion Air Supply. Where all combustion air is provided by a mechanical air supply system, the combustion air shall be supplied from outdoors at the minimum rate of 0.35 feet^3/min per 1,000 Btu/h (0.034 m^3/min per kW) for all appliances located within the space. [NFPA 54: 9.3.6]

507.7.1 Where exhaust fans are installed, additional air shall be provided to replace the exhausted air. [NFPA 54: 9.3.6.1]

507.7.2 Each of the appliances served shall be interlocked to the mechanical air supply system to prevent main burner operation where the mechanical air supply system is not in operation. [NFPA 54: 9.3.6.2]

507.7.3 Where combustion air is provided by the building's mechanical ventilation system, the system shall provide the specified combustion air rate in addition to the required ventilation air. [NFPA 54: 9.3.6.3]

507.8 Louvers Grilles and Screens.

(A) Louvers and Grilles. The required size of openings for combustion, ventilation,and dilution air shall be based on the net free area of each opening. Where the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. Where the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25 percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75 percent free area. Nonmotorized louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position. [NFPA 54: 9.3.7.1]

(B) Screens. Screens shall not be smaller than 1/4-inch mesh. [NFPA 54: 9.3.7.2]

(C) Motorized louvers shall be interlocked with the equipment so they are proven in the full open position prior to main burner ignition and during main burner operation. Means shall be provided to prevent the main burner from igniting should the louver fail to open during burner start-up and to shut down the main burner if the louvers close during burner operation. [NFPA 54: 9.3.7.3]

507.9 Combustion Air Ducts. Combustion air ducts shall comply with the following:

(1) Ducts shall be of galvanized steel or a material having equivalent corrosion resistance, strength, and rigidity. [NFPA 54: 9.3.8.1]

Exception: Within dwelling units, unobstructed stud and joist spaces shall not be prohibited from conveying combustion air, provided that not more than one fireblock is removed.

(2) Ducts shall terminate in an unobstructed space, allowing free movement of combustion air to the appliances. [NFPA 54: 9.3.8.2]

(3) Ducts shall serve a single space. [NFPA 54: 9.3.8.3]

(4) Ducts shall not service both upper and lower combustion air openings where both such openings are used. The separation between ducts serving upper and lower combustion air openings shall be maintained to the source of combustion air. [NFPA 54: 9.3.8.4]

(5) Ducts shall not be screened where terminating in an attic space. [NFPA 54:9.3.8.5]

(6) Intakes for combustion air ducts located exterior to the building shall have the lowest side of the combustion air intake openings located at least 12 inches (300 mm) vertically from the adjoining grade level.

(7) Horizontal upper combustion air ducts shall not slope downward toward the source of combustion air. [NFPA 54: 9.3.8.6]

(8) The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent, or plastic piping installed within a masonry chimney flue, metal or factory-built chimney, shall not be used to supply combustion air [NFPA 54: 9.3.8.7], unless it is listed and shown in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

508.0 Other Water Heater Installation Requirements.

508.1 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have the authority to require the use of an approved dielectric insulator on the water piping connections of water heaters and related water heating equipment.

508.2 In seismic design categories C, D, E, and F, water heaters shall be anchored or strapped to resist horizontal displacement due to earthquake motion. Strapping shall be at points within the upper one-third (1/3) and lower one-third (1/3) of its vertical dimensions. At the lower point, a minimum distance of four (4) inches (102 mm) shall be maintained above the controls with the strapping.

508.3 A water heater supported from the ground shall rest on level concrete or other approved base extending not less than three (3) inches (76 mm) above the adjoining ground level.

508.4 When a water heater is located in an attic, attic-ceiling assembly, floor-ceiling assembly, or floor-subfloor assembly where damage may result from a leaking water heater, a watertight pan of corrosion-resistant materials shall be installed beneath the water heater with a minimum three-quarter (3/4) inch (20 mm) diameter drain to an approved location.

508.5 Relief Valve Discharge.

Discharge from a relief valve into a water heater pan shall be prohibited.

508.6 Added or Converted Equipment. When additional or replacement equipment is installed or an appliance is converted to gas from another fuel, the location in which the equipment is to be operated shall be checked to verify the following [NFPA 54: 9.1.2]:

508.6.1 Air for combustion and ventilation is provided where required, in accordance with the provisions of Section 507.0. Where existing facilities are not adequate, they shall be upgraded to Section 507.0 specifications [NFPA 54: 9.1.2(1)].

508.6.2 The installation components and equipment meet the clearances to combustible material provisions of NFPA 54: 9.2.2. It shall be determined that the installation and operation of the additional or replacement equipment does not render the remaining equipment unsafe for continued operation. [NFPA 54: 9.1.2(2)]

(The following reference was extracted from NFPA 54.)

9.2.2 Clearance to Combustible Materials. Gas utilization equipment and their vent connectors shall be installed with clearances from combustible material so their operation will not create a hazard to persons or property. Minimum clearances between combustible walls and the back and sides of various conventional types of equipment and their vent connectors are specified in Chapters 9 and 10. (Reference can also be made to NFPA 211, Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances.)

508.6.3 The venting system is constructed and sized in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Where the existing venting system is not adequate, it shall be upgraded to comply with this chapter. [NFPA 54: 9.1.2(3)]

508.7 Types of Gases. It shall be determined whether the gas-utilization equipment has been designed for use with the gas to which it will be connected. No attempt shall be made to convert the equipment from the gas specified on the rating plate for use with a different gas without consulting the installation instructions, the serving gas supplier, or the equipment manufacturer for complete instructions. [NFPA 54: 9.1.3]

508.8 Safety Shutoff Devices for Unlisted LP-Gas Equipment Used Indoors. Unlisted gas utilization equipment for use with undiluted liquefied petroleum gases and installed indoors shall be equipped with safety shutoff devices of the complete shutoff type. [NFPA 54: 9.1.4]

508.9 Use of Air or Oxygen Under Pressure. Where air or oxygen under pressure is used in connection with the gas supply, effective means such as a back-pressure regulator and relief valve shall be provided to prevent air or oxygen from passing back into the gas piping. Where oxygen is used, installation shall be in accordance with NFPA 51, *Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen-Fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes.* [NFPA 54: 9.1.5]

508.10 Protection of Gas Equipment from Fumes or Gases Other than Products of Combustion. Non-direct vent-type gas appliances installed in beauty shops, barbershops, or other facilities where chemicals that generate corrosive or flammable products such as aerosol sprays are routinely used shall be located in an equipment room separate or partitioned off from other areas with provisions for combustion and dilution air from outdoors. Direct vent equipment shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions. [NFPA 54: 9.1.6.2]

508.11 Process Air. In addition to air needed for combustion in commercial or industrial processes, process air shall be provided as required for cooling

of equipment or material, controlling dew point, heating, drying, oxidation, dilution, safety exhaust, odor control, air for compressors, and for comfort and proper working conditions for personnel. [NFPA 54: 9.1.7]

508.12 Building Structural Members.

508.12.1 Structural members of a building shall not pass through gas utilization equipment having an operating temperature in excess of 500°F (260°C). [NFPA 54: 9.1.8.1]

508.12.2 Structural members passing through gas utilization equipment having an operating temperature of 500°F (260°C) or less shall be of noncombustible material. Building columns, girders, beams, or trusses shall not be installed within equipment, unless insulation and ventilation are provided to avoid all deterioration in strength and linear expansion of the building structure in either a vertical or a horizontal direction. [NFPA 54: 9.1.8.2]

508.12.3 Gas utilization equipment shall be furnished either with load-distributing bases or with a sufficient number of supports to prevent damage to either the building structure or equipment. [NFPA 54: 9.1.8.3]

508.12.4 At the locations selected for installation of gas utilization equipment, the dynamic and static load-carrying capacities of the building structure shall be checked to determine whether they are adequate to carry the additional loads. The equipment shall be supported and shall be connected to the piping so as not to exert undue stress on the connections. [NFPA 54: 9.1.8.4]

508.13 Flammable Vapors. Gas appliances shall not be installed in areas where the open use, handling, or dispensing of flammable liquids occurs, unless the design, operation, or installation reduces the potential of ignition of the flammable vapors. Gas utilization equipment installed in compliance with Sections 508.14, 508.15, or 508.16 shall be considered to comply with the intent of this provision. [NFPA 54: 9.1.9]

508.14 Installation in Residential Garages.

(1) Gas utilization equipment in residential garages and in adjacent spaces that open to the garage and are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit shall be installed so that all burners and burner-ignition devices are located not less than 18 inches (450 mm) above the floor unless listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant. [NFPA 54: 9.1.10.1]

(2) Such equipment shall be located or protected so it is not subject to physical damage by a moving vehicle. [NFPA 54: 9.1.10.2]

(3) When appliances are installed in a separate, enclosed space having access only from outside of the garage, such equipment may be installed at floor level, providing the required combustion air is taken from the exterior of the garage. [NFPA 54: 9.1.10.3]

508.15 Installation in Commercial Garages.

508.15.1 Parking Structures. Gas utilization equipment installed in enclosed, basement, and underground parking structures shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 88A, *Standard for Parking Structures*. [NFPA 54: 9.1.11.1]

508.15.2 Repair Garages. Gas utilization equipment installed in repair garages shall be installed in a detached building or room, separated from repair areas by walls or partitions, floors, or floor-ceiling assemblies that are constructed so as to prohibit the transmission of vapors and having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, and that have no openings in the wall separating the repair area within 8 feet (2.5 m) of the floor. Wall penetrations shall be fire-stopped. Air for combustion purposes shall be obtained from outside the building. The heating room shall not be used for the storage of combustible materials. [NFPA 54: 9.1.11.2]

Exception No. 1: Overhead heaters where installed not less than 8 ft (2.5 m) above the floor shall be permitted.

Exception No. 2: Heating equipment for vehicle repair areas where there is no dispensing or transferring of Class I or Class II flammable or combustible liquids or liquefied petroleum gas shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 30A, *Automotive and Marine Service Station Code*. [NFPA 54: 8.1.11.2]

508.16 Installation in Aircraft Hangars. Heaters in aircraft hangars shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 409, *Standard on Aircraft Hangars*. [NFPA 54: 9.1.12]

508.17 Gas Equipment Physical Protection. Where it is necessary to locate gas utilization equipment close to a passageway traveled by vehicles or equipment, guardrails or bumper plates shall be installed to protect the equipment from damage. [NFPA 54: 9.1.13]

508.18 Venting of Flue Gases. Gas utilization equipment shall be vented in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and NFPA 54, Chapter 10. [NFPA 54: 9.1.14]

508.19 Extra Device or Attachment. No device or attachment shall be installed on any gas utilization equipment that could in any way impair the combustion of gas. [NFPA 54: 9.1.15]

508.20 Adequate Capacity of Piping. When additional gas utilization equipment is being connected to a gas piping system, the existing

piping shall be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity. (See Section 1209.4.3.) Where inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as necessary, or separate gas piping of adequate capacity shall be run from the point of delivery to the equipment. [NFPA 54: 9.1.16]

508.21 Avoiding Strain on Gas Piping. Gas utilization equipment shall be supported and so connected to the piping as not to exert undue strain on the connections. [NFPA 54: 9.1.17]

508.22 Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. Where the gas supply pressure is higher than that at which the gas utilization equipment is designed to operate or varies beyond the design pressure limits of the equipment, a gas appliance pressure regulator shall be installed. [NFPA 54: 9.1.18]

508.23 Venting of Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. Venting of gas appliance pressure regulators shall comply with the following requirements [NFPA 54: 9.1.19]:

508.23.1 Gas appliance pressure regulators requiring access to the atmosphere for successful operation shall be equipped with vent piping leading outdoors or, if the regulator vent is an integral part of the equipment, into the combustion chamber adjacent to a continuous pilot, unless constructed or equipped with a vent limiting means to limit the escape of gas from the vent opening in the event of diaphragm failure. [NFPA 54: 9.1.19(1)]

508.23.2 Vent limiting means shall be employed on listed gas appliance pressure regulators only. [NFPA 54: 9.1.19(2)]

508.23.3 In the case of vents leading outdoors, means shall be employed to prevent water from entering this piping and also to prevent blockage of vents by insects and foreign matter. [NFPA 54: 9.1.19(3)]

508.23.4 Under no circumstances shall a regulator be vented to the gas utilization equipment flue or exhaust system. [NFPA 54: 9.1.19(4)]

508.23.5 In the case of vents entering the combustion chamber, the vent shall be located so the escaping gas will be readily ignited by the pilot and the heat liberated thereby will not adversely affect the normal operation of the safety shutoff system. The terminus of the vent shall be securely held in a fixed position relative to the pilot. For manufactured gas, the need for a flame arrester in the vent piping shall be determined. [NFPA 54: 9.1.19(5)]

508.23.6 Vent lines from a gas appliance pressure regulator and bleed lines from a diaphragm-type valve shall not be connected to a common manifold terminating in a combustion chamber. Vent lines shall not terminate in positive-pressure-type combustion chambers. [NFPA 54: 9.1.19(6)]

508.24 Bleed Lines for Diaphragm-Type Valves. Bleed lines shall comply with the following requirements [NFPA 54: 9.1.20]:

508.24.1 Diaphragm-type valves shall be equipped to convey bleed gas to the outside atmosphere or into the combustion chamber adjacent to a continuous pilot. [NFPA 54: 9.1.20(1)]

508.24.2 In the case of bleed lines leading outdoors, means shall be employed to prevent water from entering this piping and also to prevent blockage of vents by insects and foreign matter. [NFPA 54: 9.1.20(2)]

508.24.3 Bleed lines shall not terminate in the gas utilization equipment flue or exhaust system. [NFPA 54: 9.1.20(3)]

508.24.4 In the case of bleed lines entering the combustion chamber, the bleed line shall be located so the bleed gas will be readily ignited by the pilot and the heat liberated thereby will not adversely affect the normal operation of the safety shutoff system. The terminus of the bleed line shall be securely held in a fixed position relative to the pilot. For manufactured gas, the need for a flame arrester in the bleed line piping shall be determined. [NFPA 54: 9.1.20(4)]

508.24.5 Bleed lines from a diaphragm-type valve and vent lines from a gas appliance pressure regulator shall not be connected to a common manifold terminating in a combustion chamber. Bleed lines shall not terminate in positive-pressure-type combustion chambers. [NFPA 54: 9.1.20(5)]

508.25 Combination of Equipment. Any combination of gas utilization equipment, attachments, or devices used together in any manner shall comply with the standards that apply to the individual equipment. [NFPA 54: 9.1.21]

508.26 Installation Instructions. The installing agency shall conform with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations in completing an installation. The installing agency shall leave the manufacturer's installation, operating, and maintenance instructions in a location on the premises where they will be readily available for reference and guidance for the Authority Having Jurisdiction, service personnel, and the owner or operator. [NFPA 54: 9.1.22]

508.27 Protection of Outdoor Equipment. Gas utilization equipment not listed for outdoor installation but installed outdoors shall be provided with protection to the degree that the environment requires. Equipment listed for outdoor installation

shall be permitted to be installed without protection in accordance with the provisions of its listing. (See 9.2.1.) [NFPA 54: 9.1.23]

(The following references were extracted from NFPA 54.)

9.2 Accessibility and Clearance.

9.2.1 Accessibility for Service. All gas utilization equipment shall be located with respect to building construction and other equipment so as to permit access to the gas utilization equipment. Sufficient clearance shall be maintained to permit cleaning of heating surfaces; the replacement of filters, blowers, motors, burners, controls, and vent connections; the lubrication of moving parts where necessary; the adjustment and cleaning of burners and pilots; and the proper functioning of explosion vents, if provided. For attic installation, the passageway and servicing area adjacent to the equipment shall be floored.

509.0 Equipment on Roofs.

509.1 General.

(1) Gas-utilization equipment on roofs shall be designed or enclosed so as to withstand climactic conditions in the area in which they are installed. Where enclosures are provided, each enclosure shall permit easy entry and movement, shall be of reasonable height, and shall have at least a 30-inches (760mm) clearance between the entire service access panel(s) of the equipment and the wall of the enclosure. [NFPA 54: 9.4.1.1]

(2) Roofs on which equipment is to be installed shall be capable of supporting the additional load or shall be reinforced to support the additional load. [NFPA 54: 9.4.1.2]

(3) All access locks, screws, and bolts shall be of corrosion-resistant material. [NFPA 54: 9.4.1.3]

509.2 Installation of Equipment on Roofs.

(1) Gas utilization equipment shall be installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. [NFPA 54: 9.4.2.1]

(2) Equipment shall be installed on a well-drained surface of the roof. At least 6 feet (1.8m) of clearance shall be available between any part of the equipment and the edge of a roof or similar hazard, or rigidly fixed rails, guards, parapets, or other building structures at least 42 inches (1.1 m) in height shall be provided on the exposed side. [NFPA 54: 9.4.2.2]

(3) All equipment requiring an external source of electrical power for its operation shall be provided with (1) a readily accessible electrical disconnecting means within sight of the equipment that will completely de-energize the equipment, and (2) a 120-V ac grounding-type receptacle outlet on the roof adjacent to the equipment. The receptacle outlet shall be on the supply side of the disconnect switch. [NFPA 54: 9.4.2.3]

(4) Where water stands on the roof at the equipment or in the passageways to the equipment, or where the roof is of a design having a water seal, a suitable platform, walkway, or both shall be provided above the waterline. Such platforms or walkways shall be located adjacent to the equipment and control panels so that the equipment can be safely serviced where water stands on the roof. [NFPA 54: 9.4.2.4]

509.3 Access to Equipment on Roofs.

509.3.1 Gas utilization equipment located on roofs or other elevated locations shall be accessible. [NFPA 54: 9.4.3.1]

509.3.2 Buildings more than 15 feet (4.6 m) in height shall have an inside means of access to the roof, unless other means acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction are used. [NFPA 54: 9.4.3.2]

509.3.3 The inside means of access shall be a permanent, or fold-away inside stairway or ladder, terminating in an enclosure, scuttle, or trap door. Such scuttles or trap doors shall be at least 22 inches x 24 inches (560 mm x 610 mm) in size, shall open easily and safely under all conditions, especially snow; and shall be constructed so as to permit access from the roof side unless deliberately locked on the inside.

At least 6 feet (1.8 m) of clearance shall be available between the access opening and the edge of the roof or similar hazard, or rigidly fixed rails or guards a minimum of 42 inches (1.1 m) in height shall be provided on the exposed side. Where parapets or other building structures are utilized in lieu of guards or rails, they shall be a minimum of 42 inches (1.1 m) in height. [NFPA 54: 9.4.3.3]

509.3.4 Permanent lighting shall be provided at the roof access. The switch for such lighting shall be located inside the building near the access means leading to the roof. [NFPA 54: 9.4.3.4]

509.4 Appliances in Attics.

509.4.1 Attic Access. An attic in which an appliance is installed shall be accessible through an opening and passageway at least as large as the largest component of the appliance, and not less than 22 inches x 30 inches (560 mm x 760 mm). [NFPA 54: 9.5.1]

509.4.2 Where the height of the passageway is less than 6 feet (1.8 m), the distance from the

passageway access to the appliance shall not exceed 20 feet (6.1 m) measured along the centerline of the passageway. [NFPA 54: 9.5.1.1]

509.4.3 The passageway shall be unobstructed and shall have solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide from the entrance opening to the appliance. [NFPA 54: 9.5.1.2]

509.4.4 Work Platform. A level working platform not less than 30 inches (760 mm) by 30 inches (760 mm) shall be provided in front of the service side of the appliance. [NFPA 54: 9.5.2]

509.4.5 Lighting and Convenience Outlet. A permanent 120-volt receptacle outlet and a lighting fixture shall be installed near the appliance. The switch controlling the lighting fixture shall be located at the entrance to the passageway. [NFPA 54: 9.5.3]

510.0 Venting of Equipment.

510.1 General. This section recognizes that the choice of venting materials and the methods of installation of venting systems are dependent on the operating characteristics of the gas utilization equipment. The operating characteristics of vented gas utilization equipment can be categorized with respect to (1) positive or negative pressure within the venting system, and (2) whether or not the equipment generates flue or vent gases that can condense in the venting system. See NFPA 54 Section 3.3 for the definition of these vented appliance categories. [NFPA 54: 12.2]

510.2 Specification for Venting.

510.2.1 Connection to Venting Systems. Except as permitted in Sections 510.2.2 through 510.2.6, all gas utilization equipment shall be connected to venting systems. [NFPA 54: 12.3.1]

510.2.2 Equipment Not Required to Be Vented. The following equipment shall not be required to be vented [NFPA 54: 12.3.2]:

510.2.2.1 Listed Ranges. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(1)]

510.2.2.2 Built-in Domestic Cooking Units Listed and Marked for Optional Venting. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(2)]

510.2.2.3 Listed Hot Plates and Listed Laundry Stoves. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(3)]

510.2.2.4 Listed Type 1 clothes dryers shall be exhausted to the outside air. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(4)]

510.2.2.5 A single listed booster-type (automatic instantaneous) water heater, when designed and used solely for the sanitizing rinse requirements of a dishwashing machine, provided that the equipment is installed with the draft hood in place and unaltered if a draft hood is required, in a commercial kitchen having a mechanical exhaust system; where installed in this manner, the draft hood outlet shall not be less than 36 inches (910 mm) vertically and 6 inches (150 mm) horizontally from any surface other than the equipment. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(5)]

510.2.2.6 Listed Refrigerators. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(6)]

510.2.2.7 Counter Appliances. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(7)]

510.2.2.8 Direct Gas-Fired Makeup Air Heaters. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(9)]

510.2.2.9 Other Equipment Listed for Unvented Use and Not Provided with Flue Collars. [NFPA 54: 12.3.2(10)]

510.2.2.10 Specialized Equipment of Limited Input such as Laboratory Burners or Gas Lights. [NFPA 54:12.3.2(11)] Where any or all of this equipment in Sections 510.2.2.1 through 510.2.2.10 is installed so the aggregate input rating exceeds 20 Btu/h/ft^3 (207 W/m^3) of room or space in which it is installed, one or more shall be provided with venting systems or other approved means for removing the vent gases to the outside atmosphere so the aggregate input rating of the remaining unvented equipment does not exceed 20 Btu/h/ft^3 (207 W/m^3). Where the calculationincludes the volume of an adjacent room or space, the room or space in which the equipment is installed shall be directly connected to the adjacent room or space by a doorway, archway, or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed.

510.2.3 Ventilating Hoods. Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent gas utilization equipment installed in commercial applications (see Section 510.3.5) and to vent industrial equipment, particularly where the process itself requires fume disposal. [NFPA 54: 12.3.3]

510.2.4 Well-Ventilated Spaces. The operation of industrial gas utilization equipment such that its flue gases are discharged directly into a large and well-ventilated space shall be permitted. [NFPA 54: 12.3.4]

510.2.5 Direct-Vent Equipment. Listed direct-vent gas utilization equipment shall be considered properly vented where installed in accordance with the terms of its listing, the manufacturer's instructions, and Section 510.8(3) of this code. [NFPA 54: 12.3.5]

510.2.6 Equipment with Integral Vents. Gas utilization equipment incorporating integral venting means shall be considered properly vented where installed in accordance with its listing, the manufacturer's instructions, and Sections 510.8.1 and 510.8.2 of this code. [NFPA 54: 12.3.6]

510.3 Design and Construction.

510.3.1 Minimum Safe Performance. A venting system shall be designed and constructed so as to develop a positive flow adequate to remove flue or vent gases to the outside atmosphere.

510.3.2 Equipment Draft Requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.4.1]

510.3.3 Design and Construction. Gas utilization equipment required to be vented shall be connected to a venting system designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of Sections 510.4 through 510.15 of this code. [NFPA 54: 12.4.2]

510.3.4 Mechanical Draft Systems.

510.3.4.1 Mechanical draft systems shall be listed and shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and both the appliance and the mechanical draft system manufacturers' instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.4.3.1]

510.3.4.2 Gas utilization equipment requiring venting shall be permitted to be vented by means of mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design. [NFPA 54: 12.4.3.2]

Exception: Incinerators.

510.3.4.3 Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to prevent leakage of flue or vent gases into a building. [NFPA 54: 12.4.3.3]

510.3.4.4 Vent connectors serving equipment vented by natural draft shall not be connected into any portion of mechanical draft systems operating under positive pressure. [NFPA 54: 12.4.3.4]

510.3.4.5 Where a mechanical draft system is employed, provision shall be made to prevent the flow of gas to the main burners when the draft system is not performing so as to satisfy the operating requirements of the equipment for safe performance. [NFPA 54: 12.4.3.5]

510.3.4.6 The exit terminals of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2.1 m) above grade where located adjacent to public walkways and shall be located as specified in Sections 510.8.1 and 510.8.2 of this code. [NFPA 54: 12.4.3.6]

510.3.5 Ventilating Hoods and Exhaust Systems.

510.3.5.1 Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent gas utilization equipment installed in commercial applications. [NFPA 54: 12.4.4.1]

510.3.5.2 Where automatically operated gas utilization equipment is vented through a ventilating hood or exhaust system equipped with a damper or with a power means of exhaust, provisions shall be made to allow the flow of gas to the main burners only when the damper is open to a position to properly vent the equipment and when the power means of exhaust is in operation. [NFPA 54: 12.4.4.2]

510.3.6 Circulating Air Ducts and Furnace Plenums. No portion of a venting system shall extend into or pass through any circulating air duct or furnace plenum. [NFPA 54: 12.4.5.1]

510.4 Type of Venting System to Be Used.

510.4.1 The type of venting system to be used shall be in accordance with Table 5-2. [NFPA 54: 12.5.1]

510.4.2 Plastic Piping. Plastic piping used for venting equipment listed for use with such venting materials shall be approved. [NFPA 54: 12.5.2]

510.4.3 Special Gas Vent. Special gas vent shall be listed and installed in accordance with the terms of the special gas vent listing and the manufacturer's instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.5.3]

510.5 Masonry, Metal, and Factory-Built Chimneys.

510.5.1 Listing or Construction.

510.5.1.1 Factory-built chimneys shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions. Factory-built chimneys used to vent appliances that operate at positive vent pressure shall be listed for such application. [NFPA 54: 12.6.1.1]

510.5.1.2 Metal chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances.* [NFPA 54: 12.6.1.2]

510.5.1.3 Masonry chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances,* and lined with approved clay flue lining, a listed chimney

lining system, or other approved material that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening, or cracking from vent gases at temperatures up to 1800°F (982°C). [NFPA 54: 12.6.1.3]

Exception: Masonry chimney flues lined with a chimney lining system specifically listed for use with listed gas appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances, and other gas appliances listed for use with Type B vents shall be permitted. The liner shall be installed in accordance with the liner manufacturer's instructions and the terms of the listing. A permanent identifying label shall be attached at the point where the connection is to be made to the liner. The label shall read: "This chimney liner is for appliances that burn gas only. Do not connect to solid-or liquid-fuel-burning appliances or incinerators." [NFPA 54: 12.6.1.3]

510.5.2 Termination.

510.5.2.1 A chimney for residential-type or low-heat gas utilization equipment shall extend at least 3 feet (0.9 m) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3.0 m). [See Figure 5-1.] [NFPA 54: 12.6.2.1]

510.5.2.2 A chimney for medium-heat equipment shall extend at least 10 feet (3.0 m) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7.6 m). [NFPA 54: 12.6.2.2]

510.5.2.3 A chimney shall extend at least 5 feet (1.5 m) above the highest connected equipment draft hood outlet or flue collar. [NFPA 54: 12.6.2.3]

510.5.2.4 Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built chimneys except where such shrouds are listed and labeled for use with the specific factory-built chimney system and are installed in accordance with manufacturers' installation instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.6.2.4]

510.5.3 Size of Chimneys. The effective area of a chimney venting system serving listed gas appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances, and other appliances listed for use with Type B vents shall be in accordance with one of the following methods [NFPA 54: 12.6.3.1]:

(1) This chapter and NFPA 54; Chapter 13. [NFPA 54: 12.6.3.1(1)]

(2) For sizing an individual chimney venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood, the effective areas of the vent connector and chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet or greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area. [NFPA 54: 12.6.3.1(2)]

(3) For sizing a chimney venting system connected to two appliances with draft hoods, the effective area of the chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet, or greater than seven times the smallest draft hood outlet area. [NFPA 54: 12.6.3.1(3)]

(4) Other approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.6.3.1(5)]

(5) Chimney venting systems using mechanical draft shall be sized in accordance with approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.6.3.1(4)] Where an incinerator is vented by a chimney serving other gas utilization equipment, the gas input to the incinerator shall not be included in calculating chimney size, provided the chimney flue diameter is not less than 1 inch (25 mm) larger in equivalent diameter than the diameter of the incinerator flue outlet. [NFPA 54: 12.6.3.2]

510.5.4 Inspection of Chimneys.

(A) Before replacing an existing appliance or connecting a vent connector to a chimney, the chimney passageway shall be examined to ascertain that it is clear and free of obstructions and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting solid- or liquid-fuel-burning appliances or fireplaces. [NFPA 54: 12.6.4.1]

(B) Chimneys shall be lined in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid-Fuel Burning Appliances.* [NFPA 54: 12.6.4.2]

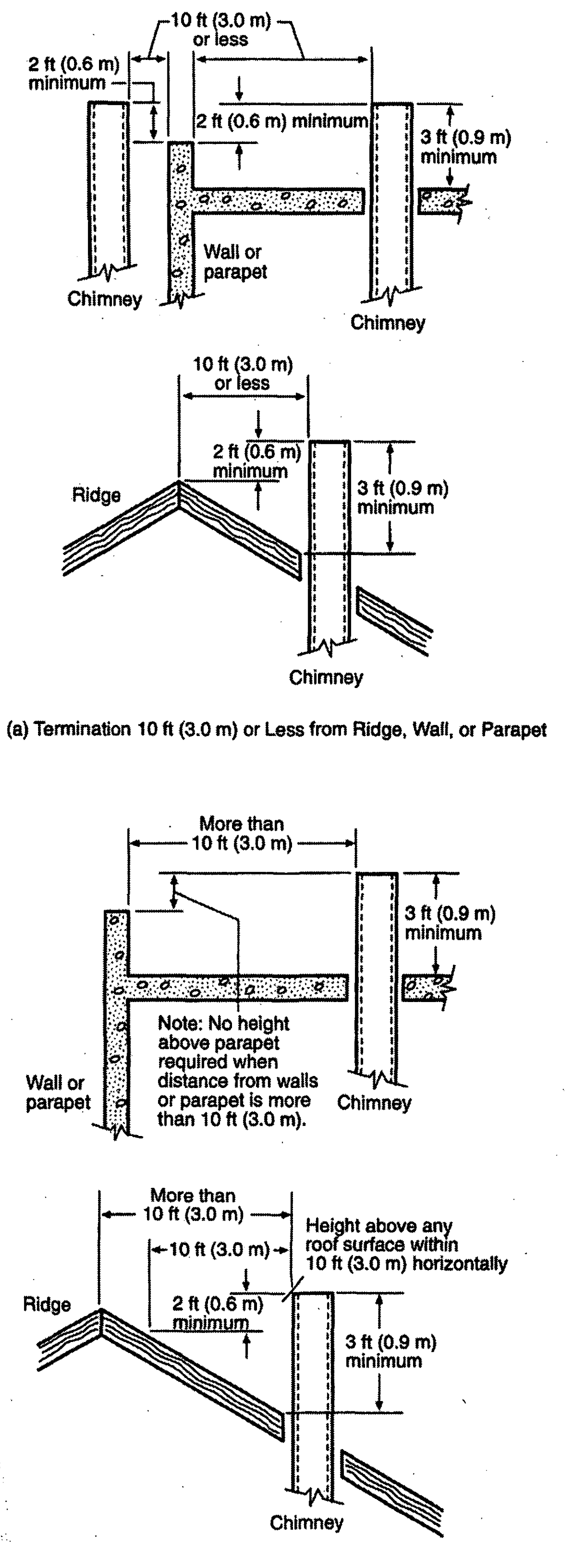
(C) Cleanouts shall be examined to determine that they will remain tightly closed when not in use. [NFPA 54: 12.6.4.3]

(D) When inspection reveals that an existing chimney is not safe for the intended application, it shall be repaired, rebuilt, lined, relined, or replaced with a vent or chimney to conform to NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid-Fuel-Burning Appliances*, and shall be suitable for the equipment to be attached. [NFPA 54: 12.6.4.4]

510.5.5 Chimney Serving Equipment Burning Other Fuels.

510.5.5.1 Gas utilization equipment shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a separate appliance designed to burn solid fuel. [NFPA 54: 12.6.5.1]

510.5.5.2 Where one chimney serves gas utilization equipment and equipment burning liquid fuel, the equipment shall be connected through separate openings or shall be connected through a single opening



(a) Termination 10 ft (3.0 m) or Less from Ridge, Wall, or Parapet

(b) Termination More Than 10 ft (3.0 m) from Ridge, Wall, or Parapet

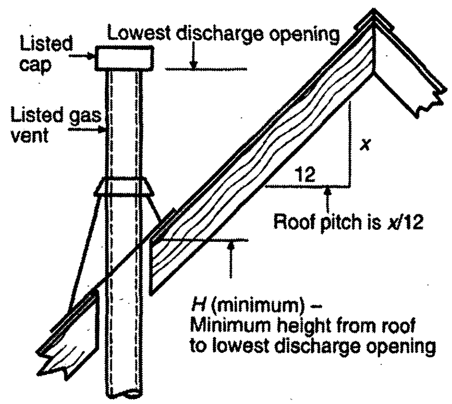
FIGURE 5-1 Typical Termination Locations for Chimneys and Single-Wall Metal Pipes Serving Residential-Type and Low-Heat Equipment [NFPA 54: Figure 12.6.2.1]

where joined by a suitable fitting located as close as practical to the chimney. Where two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue, they shall be at different levels. Where the gas utilization equipment is automatically controlled, it shall be equipped with a safety shutoff device. [NFPA 54: 12.6.5.2]

TABLE 5-2
Type of Venting System to Be Used

Gas Utilization Equipment	Type of Venting System
Listed Category I equipment Listed equipment equipped with draft hood Equipment listed for use with Type B gas vent system for gas venting	Type B gas vent (510.6) Chimney (510.5) Single-wall metal pipe (510.7) Listed chimney lining (510.5.1.3) Special gas vent listed for this equipment (510.4.3)
Listed vented wall furnaces	Type B-W gas vent (510.6, 510.6.2.2)
Category II equipment	As specified or furnished
Category III equipment Category IV equipment	By manufacturers of listed equipment (510.4.2, 510.4.3)
Incinerators, outdoors	Single-wall metal pipe (510.7, 510.7.3)
Incinerators, indoors Equipment that can be converted to use of solid fuel Unlisted combination gas- and oil-burning equipment Combination gas- and solid-fuel-burning equipment Equipment listed for use with chimneys only Unlisted equipment	Chimney (510.5)
Listed combination gas- and oil-burning equipment	Type L vent (510.6) or chimney (510.5)
Decorative appliance in vented fireplace	Chimney [UMC 907.2(3)]
Gas-fired toilets	Single-wall metal pipe (510.7, NFPA 54: 9.25.3)
Direct-vent equipment	See 510.2.5
Equipment with integral vent	See 510.2.6

[NFPA 54: Table 12.5.1]



Roof pitch heights

Roof pitch	H(minimum) ft.	m
Flat to 6/12	1.0	0.30
Over 6/12 to 7/12	1.25	0.38
Over 7/12 to 8/12	1.5	0.46
Over 8/12 to 9/12	2.0	0.61
Over 9/12 to 10/12	2.5	0.76
Over 10/12 to 11/12	3.25	0.99
Over 11/12 to 12/12	4.0	1.22
Over 12/12 to 14/12	5.0	1.52
Over 14/12 to 16/12	6.0	1.83
Over 16/12 to 18/12	7.0	2.13
Over 18/12 to 20/12	7.5	2.27
Over 20/12 to 21/12	8.0	2.44

FIGURE 5-2 Gas Vent Termination Locations for Listed Caps 12 in. (300 mm) or Less in Size at Least 8 ft. (2.4 m) from a Vertical Wall [NFPA 54: Figure 12.7.2 and Table 12.7.2]

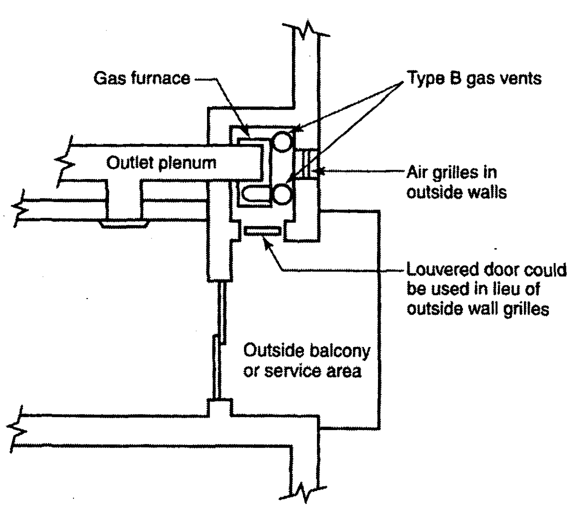


FIGURE 5-3 Plan View of Practical Separation Method for Multistory Gas Venting. [NFPA 54: Figure 12.7.4.2]

510.5.5.3 A listed combination gas- and solid-fuel-burning appliance connected to a single chimney flue shall be equipped with a manual reset device to shut off gas to the main burner in the event of sustained backdraft or flue gas spillage. The chimney flue shall be sized to properly vent the appliance. [NFPA 54: 12.6.5.3]

510.5.5.4 A single chimney flue serving a listed combination gas- and oil-burning appliance shall be sized to properly vent the appliance. [NFPA 54: 12.6.5.4]

510.5.6 Support of Chimneys. All portions of chimneys shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Listed factory-built chimneys shall be supported and spaced in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.6.6]

510.5.7 Cleanouts. Where a chimney that formerly carried flue products from liquid- or solid-fuel-burning appliances is used with an appliance using fuel gas, an accessible cleanout shall be provided. The cleanout shall have a tight-fitting cover and be installed so its upper edge is at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the lower edge of the lowest chimney inlet opening. [NFPA 54: 12.6.7]

510.5.8 Space Surrounding Lining or Vent.

510.5.8.1 The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent, or plastic piping installed within a masonry chimney flue shall not be used to vent another appliance. [NFPA 54: 12.6.8.1]

Exception: The insertion of another liner or vent within the chimney as provided in this code and the liner or vent manufacturer's instructions.

510.5.8.2 The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent, or plastic piping installed within a masonry chimney flue shall not be used to supply combustion air. [NFPA 54: 12.6.8.2]

Exception: Direct-vent gas-fired appliances designed for installation in a solid-fuel-burning fireplace where installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instruction.

510.6 Gas Vents.

510.6.1 A gas vent passing through a roof shall extend through the entire roof flashing, roof jack, or roof thimble and be terminated with a listed termination cap. [NFPA 54: 10.6.1(3)]

510.6.1.1 Type B or Type L vents shall extend in a generally vertical direction with offsets not exceeding 45 degrees, except that a vent system having not more than one

60-degree offset shall be permitted. Any angle greater than 45 degrees from the vertical is considered horizontal. The total horizontal distance of a vent plus the horizontal vent connector serving draft-hood-equipped appliances shall not be greater than 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent. [NFPA 54: 10.6.1(4)]

Exception: Systems designed and sized as provided in this chapter or in accordance with other approved engineering methods.

510.6.1.2 Vents serving Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 54, Chapter 10 or other approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.7.1(3)]

510.6.2 A gas vent shall terminate in accordance with one of the following [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(1)]:

(1) Above the roof surface with a listed cap or listed roof assembly. Gas vents 12 inches (300 mm) in size or smaller with listed caps shall be permitted to be terminated in accordance with Figure 5-2, provided they are at least 8 feet (2.4 m) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction. All other gas vents shall terminate not less than 2 feet (0.6 m) above the highest point where they pass through the roof and at least 2 feet (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3.1 m). [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(1)(a)]

(2) Industrial gas utilization equipment as provided in Section 510.2.4. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(1)(c)]

(3) Direct-vent systems as provided in Section 510.2.5. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(1)(d)]

(4) Equipment with integral vents as provided in Section 510.2.6. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(1)(e)]

(5) Mechanical draft systems as provided in Section 510.3.4. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(1)(f)]

(6) Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems as provided in Section 510.3.5. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(1)(g)]

510.6.2.1 A Type B or a Type L gas vent shall terminate at least 5 feet (1.5 m) in vertical height above the highest connected equipment draft hood or flue collar. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(2)]

510.6.2.2 A Type B-W gas vent shall terminate at least 12 feet (3.7 m) in vertical height above the bottom of the wall furnace. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(3)]

510.6.2.3 A gas vent extending through an exterior wall shall not terminate adjacent to the wall or below eaves or parapets, except as provided in Sections 510.2.5 and 510.3.4. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(4)]

510.6.2.4 Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of gas vents except where such shrouds are listed for use with the specific gas venting system and are installed in accordance with manufacturers' installation instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(5)]

510.6.2.5 All gas vents shall extend through the roof flashing, roof jack, or roof thimble and terminate with a listed cap or listed roof assembly. [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(6)]

510.6.2.6 A gas vent shall terminate at least 3 feet (0.9m) above a forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3.0m). [NFPA 54: 12.7.2(7)]

510.6.3 Size of Gas Vents. Venting systems shall be sized and constructed in accordance with NFPA 54, Chapter 13 or other approved engineering methods and the gas vent and gas equipment manufacturers' instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3]

510.6.3.1 Category I Appliances. The sizing of natural draft venting systems serving one or more listed appliances equipped with a draft hood or appliances listed for use with Type B gas vent, installed in a single story of a building, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.1]

(1) The provisions of this chapter. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.1(1)]

(2) Vents serving fan-assisted combustion system appliances, or combinations of fan-assisted combustion systems and draft hood-equipped appliances, shall be sized in accordance with this chapter or other approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.1(2)]

(3) For sizing an individual gas vent for a single, draft-hood-equipped appliance, the effective area of the vent connector and the gas vent shall be not less than the area of the appliance draft hood outlet or greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.1(3)]

(4) For sizing a gas vent connected to two appliances with draft hoods, the effective area of the vent shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet or greater than seven times the smaller draft hood outlet area. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.1(4)]

(5) Approved engineering practices. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.1(5)]

510.6.3.2 Category II, Category III, and Category IV Appliances. The sizing of gas vents for Category II, Category III, and Category IV gas utilization equipment shall be in accordance with the equipment manufacturers' instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.3]

510.6.3.3 Sizing. Chimney venting systems using mechanical draft shall be sized in accordance with approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.7.3.4]

510.6.4 Gas Vents Serving Equipment on More Than One Floor.

510.6.4.1 A common gas vent shall be permitted in multistory installations to vent Category I gas utilization equipment located on more than one floor level, provided the venting system is designed and installed in accordance with approved engineering methods. For the purpose of this section, crawl spaces, basements, and attics shall be considered as floor levels. [NFPA 54: 12.7.4.1]

510.6.4.2 All gas utilization equipment connected to the common vent shall be located in rooms separated from a habitable space. Each of these rooms shall have provisions for an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation, and dilution air that is not supplied from a habitable space. (See Figure 5-3.) [NFPA 54: 12.7.4.2]

The size of the connectors and common segments of multistory venting systems for gas utilization equipment listed for use with Type B double-wall gas vent shall be in accordance with Table 5-14, provided [NFPA 54: 12.7.4.3]:

(1) The available total height (H) for each segment of a multistory venting system is the vertical distance between the level of the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar on that floor and the centerline of the next highest interconnection tee. (See Figure G.1(K).) [NFPA 54: 12.7.4.3(1)]

TABLE 5-3
Clearance for Connectors [NFPA 54: Table 12.8.4.4]

	Minimum Distance from Combustible Material			
Equipment	**Listed Type B Gas Vent Material**	**Listed Type L Vent Material**	**Single-Wall Metal Pipe**	**Factory-Built Chimney Sections**
Listed equipment with draft hoods and equipment listed for use with Type B gas vents	As listed	As listed	6 in.	As listed
Residential boilers and furnaces with listed gas conversion burner and with draft hood	6 in.	6 in.	9 in.	As listed
Residential appliances listed for use with Type L vents	Not permitted	As listed	9 in.	As listed
Residential incinerators	Not permitted	9 in.	18 in.	As listed
Listed gas-fired toilets	Not permitted	As listed	As listed	As listed
Unlisted residential appliances with draft hood	Not permitted	6 in.	9 in.	As listed
Residential and low-heat equipment other than those above	Not permitted	9 in.	18 in.	As listed
Medium-heat equipment	Not permitted	Not permitted	36 in.	As listed

For SI units, 1 in.= 25.4 mm.
Note: These clearances shall apply unless the listing of an appliance or connector specifies clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

(2) The size of the connector for a segment is determined from its gas utilization equipment heat input and available connector rise, and shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet or flue collar size. [NFPA 54: 12.7.4.3(2)]

(3) The size of the common vertical vent segment, and of the interconnection tee at the base of that segment, shall be based on the total gas utilization equipment heat input entering that segment and its available total height. [NFPA 54: 12.7.4.3(3)]

510.6.5 Support of Gas Vents. Gas vents shall be supported and spaced in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.7.5]

510.6.6 Marking. In those localities where solid and liquid fuels are used extensively, gas vents shall be permanently identified by a label attached to the wall or ceiling at a point where the vent connector enters the gas vent. The label shall read: "This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid- or liquid-fuel-burning appliances or incinerators." The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall determine whether its area constitutes such a locality. [NFPA 54: 12.7.6]

510.7 Single-Wall Metal Pipe.

510.7.1 Construction. Single-wall metal pipe shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0304 inch (0.7 mm) thick or of other approved, noncombustible, corrosion-resistant material. [NFPA 54: 12.8.1]

510.7.2 Cold Climate. Uninsulated single-wall metal pipe shall not be used outdoors in cold climates for venting gas utilization equipment in regions where the 99 percent winter design temperature is below 32° Fahrenheit. [NFPA 54: 12.8.2]

510.7.3 Termination. The termination of single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the following requirements [NFPA 54: 12.8.3]:

510.7.3.1 Single-wall metal pipe shall terminate at least 5 feet (1.5 m) in vertical height above the highest connected equipment draft hood outlet or flue collar. [NFPA 54: 12.8.3(1)]

510.7.3.2 Single-wall metal pipe shall extend at least 2 feet (0.6 m) above the highest point where it passes through the roof of a building and at least 2 feet (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3.1 m). [See Figure 5-1.] [NFPA 54: 12.8.3(2)]

510.7.3.3 An approved cap or roof assembly shall be attached to the terminus of a single-wall metal pipe. [Also see Section 510.7.4.2.] [NFPA 54: 12.8.3(3)]

510.7.4 Installation with Equipment Permitted by 510.4.1.

510.7.4.1 Single-wall metal pipe shall be used only for runs directly from the space in which the gas utilization equipment is located through the roof or exterior wall to the outer air. A pipe passing through a roof shall extend without interruption through the roof flashing, roof jacket, or roof thimble. [NFPA 54: 12.8.4.1]

510.7.4.2 Single-wall metal pipe shall not originate in any unoccupied attic or concealed space and shall not pass through any attic, inside wall, concealed space, or floor. For the installation of a single-wall metal pipe through an exterior combustible wall, see Section 510.10.14.2. [NFPA 54: 12.8.4.2]

510.7.4.3 Single-wall metal pipe used for venting an incinerator shall be exposed and readily examinable for its full length and shall have suitable clearances maintained. [NFPA 54: 12.8.4.3]

510.7.4.4 Minimum clearances from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table 5-3. Reduced clearances from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be as specified for vent connectors in Table 5-4. [NFPA 54: 12.8.4.4]

510.7.4.5 Where a single-wall metal pipe passes through a roof constructed of combustible material, a noncombustible, nonventilating thimble shall be used at the point of passage. The thimble shall extend at least 18 inches (460 mm) above and 6 inches (150 mm) below the roof with the annular space open at the bottom and closed only at the top. The thimble shall be sized in accordance with Section 510.10.14.2. [NFPA 54: 12.8.4.5]

510.7.5 Size of Single-Wall Metal Pipe. Single-wall metal piping shall comply with the following requirements [NFPA 54: 12.8.5]:

510.7.5.1 A venting system of a single-wall metal pipe shall be sized in accordance with one of the following methods and the gas equipment manufacturer's instructions [NFPA 54: 12.8.5(1)]:

(1) For a draft-hood-equipped appliance, in accordance with this chapter. [NFPA 54: 12.8.5(1,a)]

(2) For a venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood, the areas of the connector and the pipe each shall

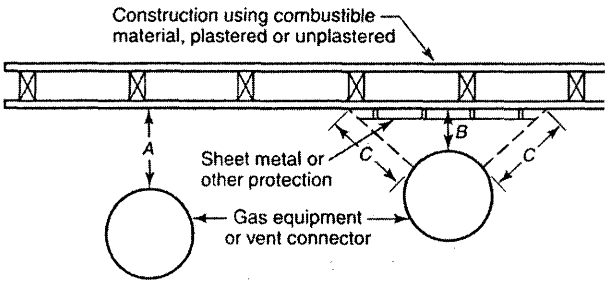
Table 5-4
Reduction of Clearances with Specified Forms of Protection [NFPA 54: Table 10.2.3(b)]

	Where the required clearance with no protection from appliance, vent connector, or single-wall metal pipe is:									
	36 in.		18 in.		12 in.		9 in.		6 in.	
	Allowable Clearances with Specified Protection (in.)									
Type of protection applied to and covering all surfaces of combustible material within the distance specified as the required clearance with no protection [See Figures 5-4 through 5-6.]	Use Col. 1 for clearances above appliance or horizontal connector. Use Col. 2 for clearances from appliances, vertical connector, and single-wall metal pipe.									
	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2	Above Col. 1	Sides and Rear Col. 2
(1) 3-1/2 in. thick masonry wall without ventilated air space	--	24	--	12	--	9	--	6	--	5
(2) 1/2 in. insulation board over 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts	24	18	12	9	9	6	6	5	4	3
(3) 0.024 sheet metal over 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire on rear face with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(4) 3-1/2 in. thick masonry wall with ventilated air space	--	12	--	6	--	6	--	6	--	6
(5) 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	2
(6) 1/2 in. thick insulation board with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(7) 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space over 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(8) 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets 0.024 sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm.

Notes:

1. Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.
2. All clearances shall be measured from the outer surface of the combustible material to the nearest point on the surface of the appliance, disregarding any intervening protection applied to the combustible material.
3. Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. No spacer or tie shall be used directly opposite the appliance or connector.
4. Where all clearance reduction systems use a ventilated air space, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described. [See Figure 5-5 and Figure 5-6.]
5. There shall be at least 1 in. (25 mm) between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using a ventilated air space.
6. Where a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, it shall have a minimum 1 inch (25 mm) air gap. To provide adequate air circulation, the bottom and top edges, or only the side and top edges, or all edges shall be left open.
7. Mineral wool batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 lb/ft^3 (128 kg/m^3) and a minimum melting point of 1,500°F (816°C).
8. Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu in./ft^2 /h-°F (0.144 W/m-K) or less.
9. There shall be at least 1 inch (25 mm) between the appliance and the protector. In no case shall the clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface be reduced below that allowed in this table.
10. All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.
11. Listed single-wall connectors shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and the manufacturers' instructions.

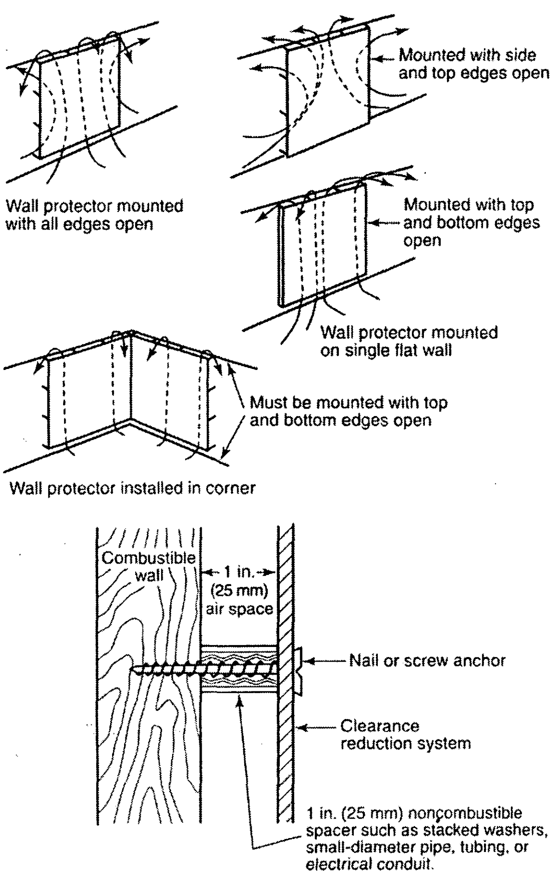


Notes:

A – Equals the clearance with no protection specified in Tables 5-3 and 5-4 and in the sections applying to various types of equipment.

B – Equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table 5-3. The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make C equal to A.

FIGURE 5-4 Extent of Protection Necessary to Reduce Clearances from Gas Equipment or Vent Connectors. [NFPA 54: Figure 10.3.2.2(1)]



Masonry walls can be attached to combustible walls using wall ties. Spacers should not be used directly behind appliance or connector.

FIGURE 5-5 Wall Protection Reduction System. [NFPA 54: Figure 10.3.2.2(2)]

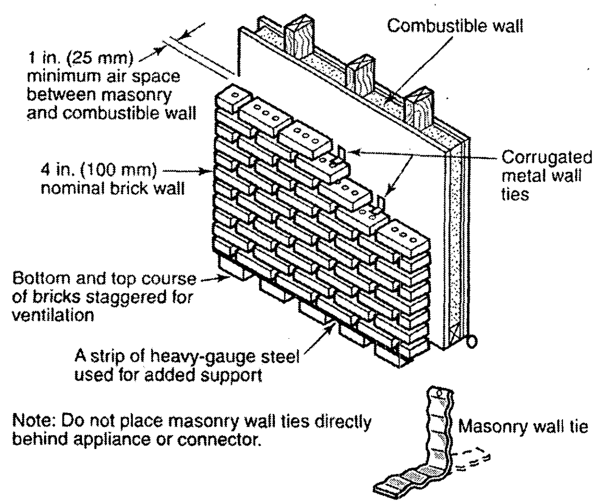


FIGURE 5-6 Masonry Clearance Reduction System. [NFPA 54: Figure 10.3.2.2(3)]

TABLE 5-5
Minimum Thickness for Galvanized Steel Vent Connector for Low-Heat Appliances
[NFPA 54: Table 12.11.2.5]

Diameter of Connector (in.)	Minimum Thickness (in.)*
Less than 6	0.019
6 to less than 10	0.023
10 to 12 inclusive	0.029
14 to 16 inclusive	0.034
Over 16	0.056

* For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm; 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

not be less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet, whichever is smaller. The vent area shall not be greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area. [NFPA 54: 12.8.5(1,b)]

(3) Other approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.8.5(1,c)]

510.7.5.2 Where a single-wall metal pipe is used and has a shape other than round, it shall have an equivalent effective area equal to the effective area of the round pipe for which it is substituted, and the minimum internal dimension of the pipe shall be 2 inches (50 mm). [NFPA 54: 12.8.5(2)]

510.7.5.3 The vent cap or a roof assembly shall have a venting capacity not less than that of the pipe to which it is attached. [NFPA 54: 12.8.5(3)]

NFPA **510.7.6 Support of Single-Wall Metal Pipe.** All portions of single-wall metal pipe shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed. [NFPA 54: 12.8.6]

510.7.7 Marking. Single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the marking provisions of Section 510.6.6. [NFPA 54: 12.8.7]

510.8 Through-the-Wall Vent Termination. (See Figure 5-12.)

510.8.1 A mechanical draft venting system shall terminate at least 3 feet (0.9 m) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3.1 m). [NFPA 54: 12.9.1]

Exception No. 1: This provision shall not apply to the combustion air intake of a direct-vent appliance.

Exception No. 2: This provision shall not apply to the separation of the integral outdoor air inlet and flue gas discharge of listed outdoor appliances.

510.8.2 A mechanical draft venting system of other than direct-vent type shall terminate at least 4 feet (1.2 m) below, 4 feet (1.2 m) horizontally from, or 1 foot (300 mm) above any door, operable window, or gravity air inlet into any building. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade. [NFPA 54: 12.9.2]

510.8.3 The vent terminal of a direct-vent appliance with an input of 10,000 Btu/h (3 kW) or less shall be located at least 6 inches (150 mm) from any air opening into a building, and such an appliance with an input over 10,000 Btu/h (3 kW) but not over 50,000 Btu/h (14.7 kW) shall be installed with a 9-inch (230 mm) vent termination clearance, and an appliance with an input over 50,000 Btu/h (14.7 kW) shall have at least a 12 inch (300-mm) vent termination clearance. The bottom of the vent terminal and the air intake shall be located at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade. [NFPA 54: 12.9.3]

510.8.4 Through-the-wall vents for Category II and Category IV appliances and noncategorized condensing appliances shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or could be detrimental to the operation of regu-lators, relief valves, or other equipment. Where local experience indicates that condensate is a problem with Category I and Category III appli-ances, this provision shall also apply. [NFPA 54: 12.9.4]

510.9 Condensation Drain.

510.9.1 Provision shall be made to collect and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category II and Category IV gas utilization equipment and noncategorized condensing appliances in accordance with Section 510.8.4. [NFPA 54: 12.10.1]

510.9.2 Where local experience indicates that condensation is a problem, provision shall be made to drain off and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category I and Category III gas utilization equipment in accordance with 510.8.4. [NFPA 54: 10.9.2]

510.10 Vent Connectors for Category I Gas Utilization Equipment.

510.10.1 Where Required. A vent connector shall be used to connect gas utilization equipment to a gas vent, chimney, or single-wall metal pipe, except where the gas vent, chimney, or single-wall metal pipe is directly connected to the equipment. [NFPA 54: 12.11.1]

510.10.2 Materials.

510.10.2.1 A vent connector shall be made of noncombustible, corrosion resis-tant material capable of withstanding the vent gas temperature produced by the gas utilization equipment and of sufficient thickness to withstand physical damage. [NFPA 54: 12.11.2.1]

510.10.2.2 Where the vent connector used for gas utilization equipment having a draft hood or a Category I appliance is located in or passes through an unconditioned area, that portion of the vent connector shall be listed Type B, Type L, or listed vent material having equivalent insulation qualities. [NFPA 54: 12.11.2.2]

Exception: Single-wall metal pipe located within the exterior walls of the building and located in areas having a local 99 percent winter design temperature of 5°F or higher.

510.10.2.3 Where the vent connector used for gas utilization equipment having a draft hood or a Category I appliance is located in or passes through attics and crawl spaces, that portion of the vent connector shall be listed Type B, Type L, or listed vent material having equivalent insulation qualities. [NFPA 54: 12.11.2.3]

510.10.2.4 Vent connectors for residential-type appliances shall comply with the following: [NFPA 54: 12.11.2.4]

(1) Vent Connectors Not Installed in Attics, Crawl Spaces, or Other Unconditioned Areas. Vent connectors for listed gas

appliances having draft hoods and for appliances having draft hoods and equipped with listed conversion burners that are not installed in attics, crawl spaces, or other unconditioned areas shall be one of the following:

(a) Type B or Type L vent material.

(b) Galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.018-inches (0.46 mm) thick.

(c) Aluminum (1100 or 3003 alloy or equivalent) sheet not less than 0.027-inches (0.69 mm) thick.

(d) Stainless steel sheet not less than 0.012-inches (0.31 mm) thick.

(e) Smooth interior wall metal pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equal to or greater than that of b, c, or d above.

(f) A listed vent connector.

(2) Vent connectors shall not be covered with insulation.

Exception: Listed insulated vent connectors shall be installed according to the terms of their listing.

510.10.2.5 A vent connector for non-residential low-heat equipment shall be a factory-built chimney section or steel pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equivalent to that for the appropriate galvanized pipe as specified in Table 5-5. Factory-built chimney sections shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturer's instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.11.2.5]

510.10.2.6 Vent connectors for medium-heat equipment and commercial and industrial incinerators shall be constructed of factory-built, medium-heat chimney sections or steel of a thickness not less than that specified in Table 5-6 and shall comply with the following: [NFPA 54: 12.11.2.6]

(1) A steel vent connector for equipment with a vent gas temperature in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) measured at the entrance to the connector shall be lined with medium-duty fire brick (ASTM C 64, Specification for Refractories for Incinerators and Boilers, Type F) or the equivalent.

(2) The lining shall be at least 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) thick for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension of 18 inches (460 mm) or less.

(3) The lining shall be at least 4-1/2 inches (110 mm) thick laid on the 4-1/2 inch (110-mm) bed for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension greater than 18 inches (460 mm).

(4) Factory-built chimney sections, if employed, shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 5-6

Minimum Thickness for Steel Vent Connectors for Medium-Heat Equipment and Commercial and Industrial Incinerators

[NFPA 54: Table 12.11.2.6]

Vent Connector Size		
Diameter (in.)	**Area (in.^{2})**	**Minimum Thickness (in.)**
Up to 14	Up to 154	0.053
Over 14 to 16	154 to 201	0.067
Over 16 to 18	201 to 254	0.093
Over 18	Larger than 254	0.123

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm; 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

510.10.3 Size of Vent Connector.

510.10.3.1 A vent connector for gas utilization equipment with a single draft hood or for a Category I fan-assisted combustion system appliance shall be sized and installed in accordance with this chapter or other approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.11.3.1]

510.10.3.2 For a single appliance having more than one draft hood outlet or flue collar, the manifold shall be constructed according to the instructions of the appliance manufacturer. Where there are no instructions, the manifold shall be designed and constructed in accordance with approved engineering practices. As an alternate method, the effective area of the manifold shall equal the combined area of the flue collars or draft hood outlets, and the vent connectors shall have a minimum 1-foot (0.3 m) rise. [NFPA 54: 12.11.3.2]

510.10.3.3 Where two or more gas appliances are connected to a common vent or chimney, each vent connector shall be sized in accordance with this chapter or other approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.11.3.3] As an alternative method applicable only when all of the appliances are draft-hood-equipped, each vent connector shall have an

effective area not less than the area of the draft hood outlet of the appliance to which it is connected. [NFPA 54: 12.11.3.4]

510.10.3.4 Where two or more gas appliances are vented through a common vent connector or vent manifold, the common vent connector or vent manifold shall be located at the highest level consistent with available headroom and clearance to combustible material and shall be sized in accordance with this chapter or other approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 12.11.3.5]

As an alternate method applicable only where there are two draft-hood-equipped appliances, the effective area of the common vent connector or vent manifold and all junction fittings shall be not less than the area of the larger vent connector plus 50 percent of the areas of smaller flue collar outlets. [NFPA 54: 12.11.3.6]

510.10.3.5 Where the size of a vent connector is increased to overcome installation limitations and obtain connector capacity equal to the equipment input, the size increase shall be made at the equipment draft hood outlet. [NFPA 54: 12.11.3.7]

510.10.4 Two or More Appliances Connected to a Single Vent.

510.10.4.1 Where two or more vent connectors enter a common gas vent, chimney flue, or single-wall metal pipe, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with the available headroom or clearance to combustible material. [NFPA 54: 12.11.4.1]

510.10.4.2 Vent connectors serving Category I appliances shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive static pressure, such as those serving Category III or Category IV appliances. [NFPA 54: 12.11.4.2]

510.10.5 Clearance. Minimum clearances from vent connectors to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table 5-3. [NFPA 54: 12.11.5]

Exception: The clearance between a vent connector and combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table 5-4.

510.10.6 Avoid Unnecessary Bends. A vent connector shall be installed so as to avoid turns or other construction features that create excessive resistance to flow of vent gases. [NFPA 54: 12.11.6]

510.10.7 Joints. Joints between sections of connector piping and connections to flue collars or draft hood outlets shall be fastened in accordance with one of the following methods: [NFPA 54: 12.11.7]

(1) By sheet metal screws.

(2) Vent connectors of listed vent material shall be assembled and connected to flue collars or draft hood outlets in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

(3) Other approved means.

510.10.8 Slope. A vent connector shall be installed without any dips or sags and shall slope upward toward the vent or chimney at least 1/4 in./ft. (20 mm/m). [NFPA 54: 12.11.8]

Exception: Vent connectors attached to a mechanical draft system installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

510.10.9 Length of Vent Connector.

510.10.9.1 A vent connector shall be as short as practical and the gas utilization equipment located as close as practical to the chimney or vent. [NFPA 54: 12.11.9.1]

510.10.9.2 The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the chimney or vent except for engineered systems. The maximum length of an individual connector for a chimney or vent system serving multiple appliances, from the appliance outlet to the junction with the common vent or another connector, shall be 100 percent of the height of the chimney or vent. [NFPA 54: 12.11.9.2]

510.10.9.3 The maximum horizontal length of a Type B double-wall connector shall be 100 percent of the height of the chimney or vent, except for engineered systems. The maximum length of an individual connector for a chimney or vent system serving multiple appliances, from the appliance outlet to the junction with the common vent or another connector, shall be 100 percent of the height of the chimney or vent. [NFPA 54:12.11.9.3]

510.10.10 Support. A vent connector shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed to maintain clearances and prevent physical damage and separation of joints. [NFPA 54: 12.11.10]

NFPA **510.10.11 Chimney Connection.** Where entering a flue in a masonry or metal chimney, the vent connector shall be installed above the extreme bottom to avoid stoppage. Where a thimble or slip joint is used to facilitate removal of the connector, the connector shall be firmly attached to or inserted into the thimble or slip joint to prevent the connector from falling out. Means shall be employed to prevent the connector from entering so far as to restrict the space between its end and the opposite wall of the chimney flue. [NFPA 54: 12.11.11]

NFPA **510.10.12 Inspection.** The entire length of a vent connector shall be readily accessible for inspection, cleaning, and replacement. [NFPA 54: 12.11.12]

NFPA **510.10.13 Fireplaces.** A vent connector shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a fireplace unless the fireplace flue opening is permanently sealed. [NFPA 54: 12.11.13]

510.10.14 Passage through Ceilings, Floors, or Walls.

510.10.14.1 A vent connector shall not pass through any ceiling, floor, or fire-resistance-rated wall. A single-wall metal pipe connector shall not pass through any interior wall.

Exception: Vent connectors made of listed Type B or Type L vent material and serving listed equipment with draft hoods and other equipment listed for use with Type B gas vents that pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material shall be installed with not less than the listed clearance to combustible material.

NFPA **510.10.14.2** A vent connector made of a single-wall metal pipe shall not pass through a combustible exterior wall unless guarded at the point of passage by a ventilated metal thimble not smaller than the following: [NFPA 54: 12.11.14.2]

(1) For listed appliances equipped with draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents, the thimble shall be a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) larger in diameter than the vent connector. Where there is a run of not less than 6 feet (1.8 m) of vent connector in the opening between the draft hood outlet and the thimble, the thimble shall be a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) larger in diameter than the vent connector.

(2) For unlisted appliances having draft hoods, the thimble shall be a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) larger in diameter than the vent connector.

(3) For residential and low-heat appliances, the thimble shall be a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) larger in diameter than the vent connector.

Exception: In lieu of thimble protection, all combustible material in the wall shall be removed from the vent connector a sufficient distance to provide the specified clearance from such vent connector to combustible material. Any material used to close up such opening shall be noncombustible.

510.10.14.3 Vent connectors for medium-heat equipment shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material. [NFPA 54: 12.11.14.3] NFPA

510.11 Vent Connectors for Category II, Category III, and Category IV Gas Utilization Equipment. (See Section 510.4.) [NFPA 54: 12.12] NFPA

510.12 Draft Hoods and Draft Controls. NFPA

510.12.1 Equipment Requiring Draft Hoods. Vented gas utilization equipment shall be installed with draft hoods. [NFPA 54: 12.13.1] NFPA

Exception: Dual oven-type combination ranges; incinerators; direct-vent equipment; fan-assisted combustion system appliances; equipment requiring chimney draft for operation; single firebox boilers equipped with conversion burners with inputs greater than 400,000 Btu/h (117 kW); equipment equipped with blast, power, or pressure burners that are not listed for use with draft hoods; and equipment designed for forced venting. NFPA

510.12.2 Installation. A draft hood supplied with or forming a part of listed vented gas utilization equipment shall be installed without alteration, exactly as furnished and specified by the equipment manufacturer. [NFPA 54: 12.13.2] If a draft hood is not supplied by the equipment manufacturer where one is required, a draft hood shall be installed, be of a listed or NFPA

approved type, and, in the absence of other instructions, be of the same size as the equipment flue collar. Where a draft hood is required with a conversion burner, it shall be of a listed or approved type. [NFPA 54: 12.13.2.1] Where it is determined that a draft hood of special design is needed or preferable for a particular installation, the installation shall be in accordance with the recommendations of the equipment manufacturer and shall be with the approval of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 54: 12.13.2.2]

510.12.3 Draft-Control Devices. Where a draft-control device is part of the gas utilization equipment or is supplied by the equipment manufacturer, it shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's instructions, the device shall be attached to the flue collar of the equipment or as near to the equipment as practical. [NFPA 54: 12.13.3]

510.12.4 Additional Devices. Gas utilization equipment (except incinerators) requiring controlled chimney draft shall be permitted to be equipped with a listed double-acting barometric draft regulator installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. [NFPA 54: 12.13.4]

510.12.5 Location. Draft hoods and barometric draft regulators shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the equipment in such a manner as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply. [NFPA 54: 12.13.5]

510.12.6 Positioning. Draft hoods and draft regulators shall be installed in the position for which they were designed with reference to the horizontal and vertical planes and shall be located so that the relief opening is not obstructed by any part of the equipment or adjacent construction. The equipment and its draft hood shall be located so that the relief opening is accessible for checking vent operation. [NFPA 54: 12.13.6]

510.12.7 Clearance. A draft hood shall be located so that its relief opening is not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from any surface except that of the equipment it serves and the venting system to which the draft hood is connected. Where a greater or lesser clearance is indicated on the equipment label, the clearance shall not be less than that specified on the label. Such clearances shall not be reduced. [NFPA 54: 12.13.7]

510.13 Manually Operated Dampers. A manually operated damper shall not be placed in any equipment vent connector. Fixed baffles shall not be classified as manually operated dampers. [NFPA 54: 12.14]

510.14 Automatically Operated Vent Dampers. An automatically operated vent damper shall be of a listed type. [NFPA 54: 12.15]

510.15 Obstructions. Devices that retard the flow of vent gases shall not be installed in a vent connector, chimney, or vent. The following shall not be considered as obstructions: [NFPA 54: 12.16]

(1) Draft regulators and safety controls specifically listed for installation in venting systems and installed in accordance with the terms of their listing.

(2) Approved draft regulators and safety controls designed and installed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

(3) Listed heat reclaimers and automatically operated vent dampers installed in accordance with the terms of their listing.

(4) Vent dampers serving listed appliances installed in accordance with this chapter or other approved engineering methods.

(5) Approved economizers, heat reclaimers, and recuperators installed in venting systems of equipment not required to be equipped with draft hoods, provided the gas utilization equipment manufacturer's instructions cover the installation of such a device in the venting system and performance in accordance with Sections 510.3.1 and 510.3.2 is obtained.

511.0 Sizing of Category I Venting Systems.

511.1 These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions (see Section 510.15) are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following: [NFPA 54: 13.1.1]

(1) The maximum capacity of the vent system shall be determined using the NAT Max column.

(2) The minimum capacity shall be determined as though the appliance were a fan-assisted appliance, using the FAN Min column to

determine the minimum capacity of the vent system. Where the corresponding "FAN Min" is "NA" the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

511.1.1 Where the vent size determined from the tables is smaller than the appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar, the use of the smaller size shall be permitted provided that the installation complies with all of the following requirements: [NFPA 54: 13.1.2]

(1) The total vent height (H) is at least 10 feet (3 m).

(2) Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced more than one table size.

(3) Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars larger than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes.

(4) The maximum capacity listed in the tables for a fan-assisted appliance is reduced by 10 percent (0.90 maximum table capacity).

(5) The draft hood outlet is greater than 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter. Do not connect a 3-inch (80mm) diameter vent to a 4-inch (100mm) diameter draft hood outlet. This provision shall not apply to fan-assisted appliances.

511.1.2 Single-appliance venting configurations with zero (0) lateral lengths in Tables 5-8, 5-9, and 5-12 shall have no elbows in the venting system. For vent configurations with lateral lengths, the venting tables include allowance for two 90-degree turns. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees, the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees up to and including 90 degrees, the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. [NFPA 54: 13.1.3]

511.1.3 Zero (0) lateral (L) shall apply only to a straight vertical vent attached to a top outlet draft hood or flue collar. [NFPA 54: 13.1.4]

511.1.4 Sea level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation. [NFPA 54: 13.1.5]

511.1.5 For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent capacity (FAN Max/NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance rating input. [NFPA 54: 13.1.6]

511.1.6 Listed corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Tables 5-8 or 5-9 for Type B vents with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Tables 5-8 or 5-9. Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Section 511.1.2. The 20 percent reduction for corrugated metallic chimney liner systems includes an allowance for one long radius 90-degree turn at the bottom of the liner. [NFPA 54: 13.1.7]

511.1.7 Where the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the vent connector, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum vent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not exceed seven times the flow area of the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 13.1.9]

511.1.8 Connection to Chimney Liners. Connections between chimney liners and listed double-wall connectors shall be made with listed adapters designed for such purposes. [NFPA 54: 13.1.8]

511.1.9 Vertical Vent Upsizing 7 x Rule. Where the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the vent connector, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum vent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not exceed seven times the flow area of the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 13.1.9]

511.1.10 Draft Hood Conversion Accessories. Draft hood conversion accessories for use with masonry chimneys venting listed Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the listed accessory manufacturers' installation instructions. [NFPA 54:13.1.10]

511.1.11 Tables 5-8 through 5-12 shall be used for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. A Type B vent passing through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8 shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Table 5-10 in

combination with Table 5-13 shall be used for clay-tile-lined exterior masonry chimneys, provided all of the following are met: [NFPA 54: 13.1.11]

(1) The vent connector is Type B double wall.

(2) The vent connector length is limited to 1-1/2 feet for each inch (180 mm/mm) of vent connector diameter.

(3) The appliance is draft-hood-equipped.

(4) The input rating is less than the maximum capacity given in Table 5-10.

(5) For a water heater, the outdoor design temperature shall not be less than 5°F (15°C).

(6) For a space-heating appliance, the input rating is greater than the minimum capacity given by Table 5-13.

(7) Where the conditions of (1) through (6) cannot be met, an alternative venting design shall be used, such as a listed chimney lining system.

Exception: Vents serving listed appliances installed in accordance with the appliance instructions and the terms of the listing.

511.1.12 Corrugated vent connectors shall not be smaller than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter. [NFPA 54: 13.1.12]

511.1.13 Vent connectors shall not be upsized more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter. [NFPA 54: 13.1.13]

511.1.14 In a single run of vent or vent connector, more than one diameter and type shall be permitted to be used, provided that all the sizes and types are permitted by the tables. [NFPA 54: 13.1.14]

511.1.15 Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries. (See Part II-Example G.1.3.) [NFPA 54: 13.1.15]

511.1.16 Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted. [NFPA 54: 13.1.16]

511.1.17 For vent heights lower than 6 feet and higher than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities. [NFPA 54: 13.1.17]

511.2 Additional Requirements to Multiple Appliance Vent Table 5-8 through Table 5-22.

511.2.1 Obstructions and Vent Damper. These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions (see Section 510.15) are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturers' instructions or in accordance with the following: [NFPA 54: 13.2.1]

(1) The maximum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the NAT Max column.

(2) The maximum capacity of the vertical vent or chimney shall be determined using the FAN + NAT column when the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, or the NAT + NAT column when the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood.

(3) The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the appliance were a fan-assisted appliance.

(a) The minimum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the FAN Min column.

(b) The FAN + FAN column shall be used when the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, and the FAN + NAT column shall be used when the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood, to determine whether the vertical vent or chimney configuration is not permitted (NA). Where the vent configuration is NA, the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

511.2.2 The maximum vent connector horizontal length shall be 18 in./in. (180 mm/mm) of connector diameter as shown in Table 5-7. [NFPA 54: 13.2.2]

511.2.3 The vent connector shall be routed to the vent utilizing the shortest possible route. Connectors with longer horizontal lengths than those listed in Table 5-7 are permitted under the following conditions: [NFPA 54: 13.2.3]

(A) The maximum capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) of the vent connector shall be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length listed in Table 5-7. For example, the maximum length listed for a 4-inches (100mm) connector is 6 feet (1.8 m). With a connector length greater than 6 feet (1.8 m) but not exceeding 12 feet (3.7 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10 percent (0.90 maximum vent connector capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 feet (3.7 m) but not exceeding 18 feet (5.5 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 maximum vent capacity).

(B) For a connector serving a fan-assisted appliance, the minimum capacity (FAN Min) of the connector shall be determined by referring to the corresponding single

appliance table. For Type B double-wall connectors, Table 5-8 shall be used. For single-wall connectors, Table 5-9 shall be used. The height (H) and lateral (L) shall be measured according to the procedures for a single appliance vent, as if the other appliances were not present.

TABLE 5-7
Vent Connector Maximum Length
[NFPA 54: Table 13.2.2]

Connector Diameter Maximum (in.)	Connector Horizontal Length (ft.)
3	4-1/2
4	6
5	7-1/2
6	9
7	10-1/2
8	12
9	13-1/2
10	15
12	18
14	21
16	24
18	27
20	30
22	33
24	36

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm; 1 ft = 0.305 m.
[NFPA 54: Table 13.2.2]

511.2.4 Where the vent connectors are combined prior to entering the vertical portion of the common vent to form a common vent manifold, the size of the common vent manifold and the common vent shall be determined by applying a 10 percent reduction (.90 x maximum common vent capacity) to the Common Vent Capacity part of the common vent tables. The length of the common vent connector manifold (LM) shall not exceed 18 in./in. (180 mm/mm) of common vent connector manifold diameter (D). (See Part II-Figure G.1(k).) [NFPA 54: 13.2.4]

511.2.5 Where the common vertical vent is offset, the maximum capacity of the common vent shall be reduced in accordance with Section 511.2.6, and the horizontal length of the common vent offset shall not exceed 18 in./in. (180 mm/mm) of common vent diameter. [NFPA 54: 13.2.5]

511.2.6 For each elbow up to and including 45 degrees in the common vent, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees up to and including 90 degrees, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. [NFPA 54: 13.2.6]

511.2.7 The vent connector capacities listed in the common vent sizing tables include allowance for two 90-degree elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees, the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees up to and including 90 degrees, the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. [NFPA 54: 13.2.7]

511.2.8 Common Vent Minimum Size. The cross-sectional area of the common vent shall be equal to or greater than the cross-sectional area of the largest connector. [NFPA 54: 13.2.8]

511.2.9 Tee and Wye Fittings. Tee and wye fittings connected to a common vent shall be considered as part of the common vent and constructed of materials consistent with that of the common vent. [NFPA 54: 13.2.9]

511.2.10 At the point where tee or wye fittings connect to a common vent, the opening size of the fitting shall be equal to the size of the common vent. Such fittings shall not be prohibited from having reduced size openings at the point of connection of appliance vent connectors. [NFPA 54: 13.2.10]

511.2.11 Sea level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation. [NFPA 54: 13.2.11]

511.2.12 The connector rise (R) for each appliance connector shall be measured from the draft hood outlet or flue collar to the centerline where the vent gas streams come together. [NFPA 54: 13.2.12]

511.2.13 For multiple units of gas utilization equipment all located on one floor, available total height (H) shall be measured from the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar up to the level of the outlet of the common vent. [NFPA 54: 13.2.13]

511.2.14 For multistory installations, available total height (H) for each segment of the system

shall be the vertical distance between the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar entering that segment and the centerline of the next higher interconnection tee. (See Part II-Figure G.1(j).) [NFPA 54: 13.2.14]

511.2.15 The size of the lowest connector and of the vertical vent leading to the lowest interconnection of a multistory system shall be in accordance with Tables 5-8 or 5-9 for available total height (H) up to the lowest interconnection. (See Part II-Figure G.1(n).) [NFPA 54: 13.2.15]

511.2.16 Where used in multistory systems, vertical common vents shall be Type B double-wall and shall be installed with a listed vent cap. [NFPA 54: 13.2.16]

511.2.17 Offsets in multistory common vent systems shall be limited to a single offset in each system, and systems with an offset shall comply with all of the following: [NFPA 54: 13.2.17]

(1) The offset angle shall not exceed 45 degrees from vertical.

(2) The horizontal length of the offset shall not exceed 18 inches for each inch (180 mm/mm) of common vent diameter of the segment in which the offset is located.

(3) For the segment of the common vertical vent containing the offset, the common vent capacity listed in the common venting tables shall be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 x maximum common vent capacity).

(4) A multistory common vent shall not be reduced in size above the offset.

511.2.18 Where two or more appliances are connected to a vertical vent or chimney, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or chimney shall not exceed seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized vent areas, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods. [NFPA 54: 13.2.18]

511.2.19 For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent connector capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent connector capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the table shall be greater than the highest appliance input rating. [NFPA 54: 13.2.19]

511.2.20 Listed corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Tables 5-14 or 5-15 for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Tables 5-14 or 5-15. Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Sections 511.2.5 and 511.2.6. The 20 percent reduction for corrugated metallic chimney liner systems includes an allowance for one long radius 90-degree turn at the bottom of the liner. [NFPA 54: 13.2.20]

511.2.21 Tables 5-14 and 5-15 shall be used for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent passing through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8 shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Tables 5-19 and 5-20 shall be used for clay-tile-lined exterior masonry chimneys, provided all of the following conditions are met: [NFPA 54: 13.2.23]

(1) Vent connector is Type B double-wall.

(2) At least one appliance is draft-hood-equipped.

(3) The combined appliance input rating is less than the maximum capacity given by Table 5-19 (for NAT + NAT) or Table 5-21 (for FAN + NAT).

(4) The input rating of each space-heating appliance is greater than the minimum input rating given by Table 5-20 (for NAT + NAT) or Table 5-21 (for FAN + NAT).

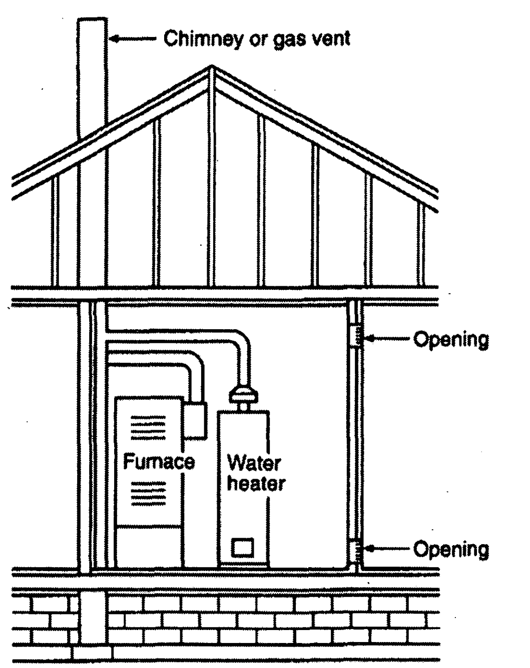


FIGURE 5-7 All Combustion Air from Indoor Spaces through Indoor Combustion Air Openings. [NFPA 54: Figure A.9.3.2.3(1)]

(5) The vent connector sizing is in accordance with Table 5-16.

(6) Where these conditions cannot be met, an alternative venting design shall be used, such as a listed chimney lining system.

Exception: Vents serving listed appliances installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturers' installation instructions.

511.2.22 Vent connectors shall not be increased more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter. Vent connectors for draft-hood-equipped appliances shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet diameter. Where vent connector sizes determined from the tables for fan-assisted appliances are smaller than the flue collar diameter, the use of the smaller sizes shall be permitted provided that the installation complies with all of the following conditions: [NFPA 54: 13.2.24]

(1) Vent connectors for fan-assisted appliance flue collars 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced by more than one table size [e.g., 12 inches to 10 in. (300 mm to 250 mm) is a one-size reduction] and those larger than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes [e.g., 24 inch to 20 inch (610 mm to 510 mm) is a two-size reduction].

(2) Fan-assisted appliances are common vented with a draft-hood-equipped appliance.

(3) The vent connector has a smooth interior wall.

511.2.23 All combinations of pipe sizes, single-wall, and double-wall metal pipe shall be allowed within any connector run or within the common vent, provided ALL of the appropriate tables permit ALL of the desired sizes and types of pipe, as if they were used for the entire length of the subject connector or vent. Where single-wall and Type B double-wall metal pipes are used for vent connectors within the same venting system, the common vent must be sized using Tables 5-15 or 5-17 as appropriate. [NFPA 54: 13.2.25]

511.2.24 Where a table permits more than one diameter of pipe to be used for a connector or vent, all the permitted sizes shall be permitted to be used. [NFPA 54: 13.2.26]

511.2.25 Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries. (See Part II Annex G.1.3.) [NFPA 54: 13.2.27]

511.2.26 Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted. [NFPA 54: 13.2.28]

511.2.27 For vent heights lower than 6 feet and higher than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities. [NFPA 54: 13.2.28]

512.0 Direct-Vent Equipment. Listed direct-vent gas utilization equipment shall be considered properly vented where installed in accordance with the terms of its listing, the manufacturers' instructions, and Section 510.8.3. [NFPA 54: 12.3.5]

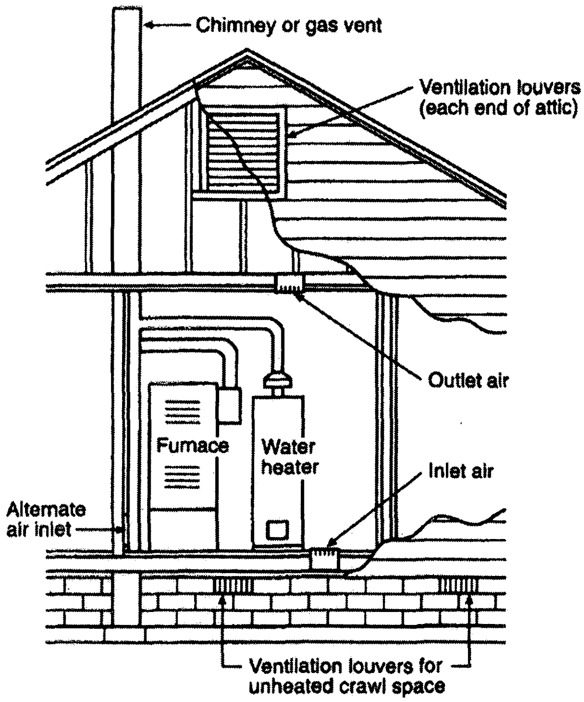


FIGURE 5-8 All Combustion Air from Outdoors - Inlet Air from Ventilated Crawl Space and Outlet Air to Ventilated Attic. [NFPA 54: Figure A.9.3.3.1(1)(a)]

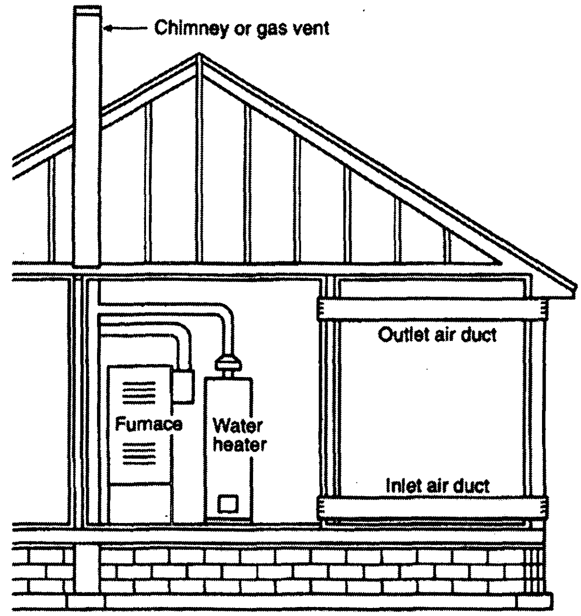


FIGURE 5-10 All Combustion Air from Outdoors through Horizontal Ducts. [NFPA 54: Figure A.9.3.3.1(2)]

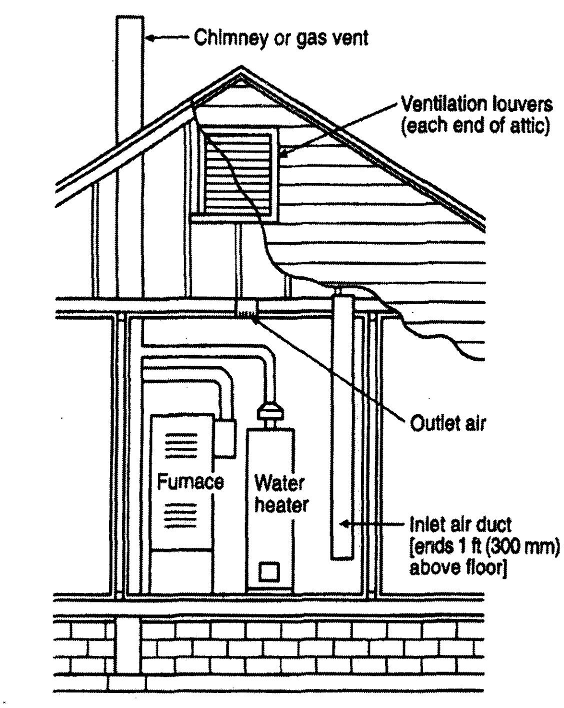


FIGURE 5-9 All Combustion Air from Outdoors through Ventilated Attic. [NFPA 54: Figure A.9.3.3.1(1)(b)]

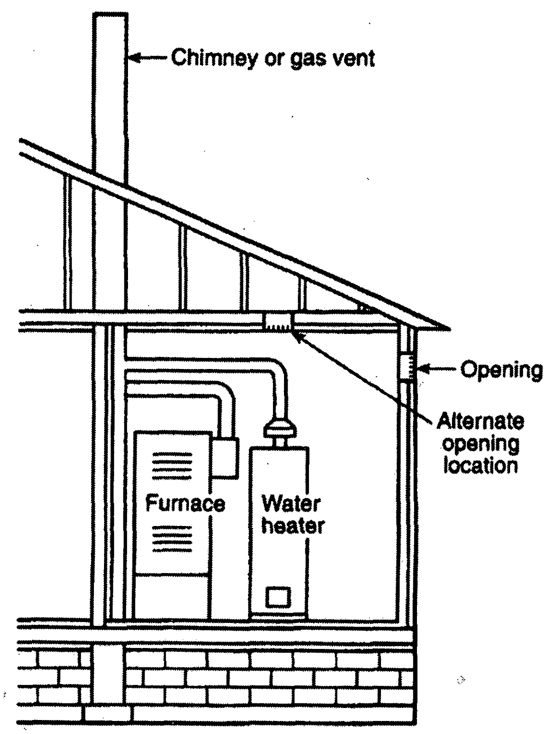


FIGURE 5-11 All Combustion Air from Outdoors through Single Combustion Air Opening. [NFPA 54: Figure A.9.3.3.2]

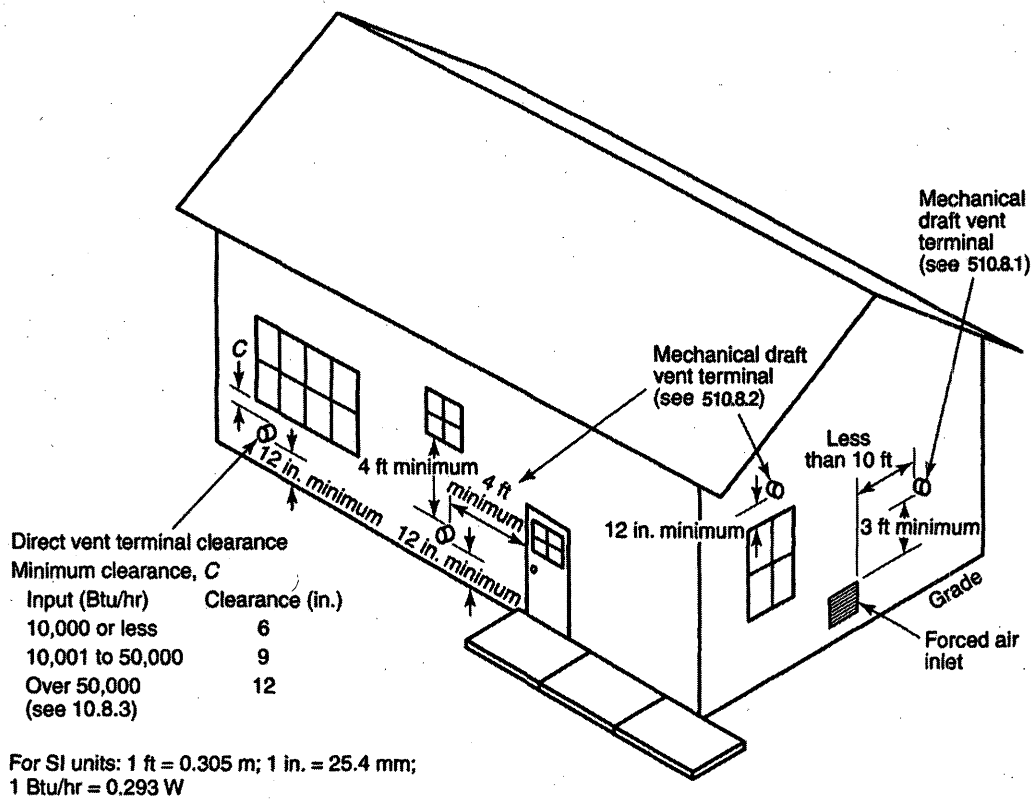


FIGURE 5-12 Exit Terminals of Mechanical Draft and Direct-Vent Venting Systems. [NFPA 54: Figure A.12.9]

99% Winter Design Temperatures for the Contiguous United States

This map is a necessarily generalized guide to temperatures in the contiguous United States. Temperatures shown for areas such as mountainous regions and large urban centers may not be accurate. The data used to develop this map are from the 1993 ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals (Chapter 24, Table 1: Climate Conditions for the United States).

For 99% winter design temperatures in Alaska, consult the ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals.

99% winter design temperatures for Hawaii are greater than 37°F.

FIGURE 5-13 Range of Winter Design Temperatures Used in Analyzing Exterior Masonry Chimneys in the United States. [NFPA 54:Figure G.2.4]

Table 5-8 Type B Double-Wall Gas Vent

													Number of Appliances:	Single								
													Appliance Type:	Category I								
													Appliance Vent Connection:	Connected Directly to Vent								
		Vent Diameter — *D* (in.)																				
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
Height *H* (ft)	Lateral *L* (ft)	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	0	78	46	0	152	86	0	251	141	0	375	205	0	524	285	0	698	370	0	897	470
	2	13	51	36	18	97	67	27	157	105	32	232	157	44	321	217	53	425	285	63	543	370
	4	21	49	34	30	94	64	39	153	103	50	227	153	66	316	211	79	419	279	93	536	362
	6	25	46	32	36	91	61	47	149	100	59	223	149	78	310	205	93	413	273	110	530	354
8	0	0	84	50	0	165	94	0	276	155	0	415	235	0	583	320	0	780	415	0	1006	537
	2	12	57	40	16	109	75	25	178	120	28	263	180	42	365	247	50	483	322	60	619	418
	5	23	53	38	32	103	71	42	171	115	53	255	173	70	356	237	83	473	313	99	607	407
	8	28	49	35	39	98	66	51	164	109	64	247	165	84	347	227	99	463	303	117	596	396
10	0	0	88	53	0	175	100	0	295	166	0	447	255	0	631	345	0	847	450	0	1096	585
	2	12	61	42	17	118	81	23	194	129	26	289	195	40	402	273	48	533	355	57	684	457
	5	23	57	40	32	113	77	41	187	124	52	280	188	68	392	263	81	522	346	95	671	446
	10	30	51	36	41	104	70	54	176	115	67	267	175	88	376	245	104	504	330	122	651	427
15	0	0	94	58	0	191	112	0	327	187	0	502	285	0	716	390	0	970	525	0	1263	682
	2	11	69	48	15	136	93	20	226	150	22	339	225	38	475	316	45	633	414	53	815	544
	5	22	65	45	30	130	87	39	219	142	49	330	217	64	463	300	76	620	403	90	800	529
	10	29	59	41	40	121	82	51	206	135	64	315	208	84	445	288	99	600	386	116	777	507
	15	35	53	37	48	112	76	61	195	128	76	301	198	98	429	275	115	580	373	134	755	491
20	0	0	97	61	0	202	119	0	349	202	0	540	307	0	776	430	0	1057	575	0	1384	752
	2	10	75	51	14	149	100	18	250	166	20	377	249	33	531	346	41	711	470	50	917	612
	5	21	71	48	29	143	96	38	242	160	47	367	241	62	519	337	73	697	460	86	902	599
	10	28	64	44	38	133	89	50	229	150	62	351	228	81	499	321	95	675	443	112	877	576
	15	34	58	40	46	124	84	59	217	142	73	337	217	94	481	308	111	654	427	129	853	557
	20	48	52	35	55	116	78	69	206	134	84	322	206	107	464	295	125	634	410	145	830	537
30	0	0	100	64	0	213	128	0	374	220	0	587	336	0	853	475	0	1173	650	0	1548	855
	2	9	81	56	13	166	112	14	283	185	18	432	280	27	613	394	33	826	535	42	1072	700
	5	21	77	54	28	160	108	36	275	176	45	421	273	58	600	385	69	811	524	82	1055	688
	10	27	70	50	37	150	102	48	262	171	59	405	261	77	580	371	91	788	507	107	1028	668
	15	33	64	NA	44	141	96	57	249	163	70	389	249	90	560	357	105	765	490	124	1002	648
	20	56	58	NA	53	132	90	66	237	154	80	374	237	102	542	343	119	743	473	139	977	628
	30	NA	NA	NA	73	113	NA	88	214	NA	104	346	219	131	507	321	149	702	444	171	929	594
50	0	0	101	67	0	216	134	0	397	232	0	633	303	0	932	518	0	1297	708	0	1730	952
	2	8	86	61	11	183	122	14	320	206	15	497	314	22	715	445	26	975	615	33	1276	813
	5	20	82	NA	27	177	119	35	312	200	43	487	308	55	702	438	65	960	605	77	1259	798
	10	26	76	NA	35	168	114	45	299	190	56	471	298	73	681	426	86	935	589	101	1230	773
	15	59	70	NA	42	158	NA	54	287	180	66	455	288	85	662	413	100	911	572	117	1203	747
	20	NA	NA	NA	50	149	NA	63	275	169	76	440	278	97	642	401	113	888	556	131	1176	722
	30	NA	NA	NA	69	131	NA	84	250	NA	99	410	259	123	605	376	141	844	522	161	1125	670
100	0	NA	NA	NA	0	218	NA	0	407	NA	0	665	400	0	997	560	0	1411	770	0	1908	1040
	2	NA	NA	NA	10	194	NA	12	354	NA	13	566	375	18	831	510	21	1155	700	25	1536	935
	5	NA	NA	NA	26	189	NA	33	347	NA	40	557	369	52	820	504	60	1141	692	71	1519	926
	10	NA	NA	NA	33	182	NA	43	335	NA	53	542	361	68	801	493	80	1118	679	94	1492	910
	15	NA	NA	NA	40	174	NA	50	321	NA	62	528	353	80	782	482	93	1095	666	109	1465	895
	20	NA	NA	NA	47	166	NA	59	311	NA	71	513	344	90	763	471	105	1073	653	122	1438	880
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	78	290	NA	92	483	NA	115	726	449	131	1029	627	149	1387	849
	50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	147	428	NA	180	651	405	197	944	575	217	1288	787

[NFPA 54 Table 13.1(a)]

Table 5-8 *continued*

		Number of Appliances:	Single																						
		Appliance Type:	Category I																						
		Appliance Vent Connection:	Connected Directly to Vent																						
		Vent Diameter — *D* (in.)																							
		10			12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
Height *H* (ft)	Lateral *L* (ft)	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	0	1121	570	0	1645	850	0	2267	1170	0	2983	1530	0	3802	1960	0	4721	2430	0	5737	2950	0	6853	3520
	2	75	675	455	103	982	650	138	1346	890	178	1769	1170	225	2250	1480	296	2782	1850	360	3377	2220	426	4030	2670
	4	110	668	445	147	975	640	191	1338	880	242	1761	1160	300	2242	1475	390	2774	1835	469	3370	2215	555	4023	2660
	6	128	661	435	171	967	630	219	1330	870	276	1753	1150	341	2235	1470	437	2767	1820	523	3363	2210	618	4017	2650
8	0	0	1261	660	0	1858	970	0	2571	1320	0	3399	1740	0	4333	2220	0	5387	2750	0	6555	3360	0	7838	4010
	2	71	770	515	98	1124	745	130	1543	1020	168	2030	1340	212	2584	1700	278	3196	2110	336	3882	2560	401	4634	3050
	5	115	758	503	154	1110	733	199	1528	1010	251	2013	1330	311	2563	1685	398	3180	2090	476	3863	2545	562	4612	3040
	8	137	746	490	180	1097	720	231	1514	1000	289	2000	1320	354	2552	1670	450	3163	2070	537	3850	2530	630	4602	3030
10	0	0	1377	720	0	2036	1060	0	2825	1450	0	3742	1925	0	4782	2450	0	5955	3050	0	7254	3710	0	8682	4450
	2	68	852	560	93	1244	850	124	1713	1130	161	2256	1480	202	2868	1890	264	3556	2340	319	4322	2840	378	5153	3390
	5	112	839	547	149	1229	829	192	1696	1105	243	2238	1461	300	2849	1871	382	3536	2318	458	4301	2818	540	5132	3371
	10	142	817	525	187	1204	795	238	1669	1080	298	2209	1430	364	2818	1840	459	3504	2280	546	4268	2780	641	5099	3340
15	0	0	1596	840	0	2380	1240	0	3323	1720	0	4423	2270	0	5678	2900	0	7099	3620	0	8665	4410	0	10,393	5300
	2	63	1019	675	86	1495	985	114	2062	1350	147	2719	1770	186	3467	2260	239	4304	2800	290	5232	3410	346	6251	4080
	5	105	1003	660	140	1476	967	182	2041	1327	229	2696	1748	283	3442	2235	355	4278	2777	426	5204	3385	501	6222	4057
	10	135	977	635	177	1446	936	227	2009	1289	283	2659	1712	346	3402	2193	432	4234	2739	510	5159	3343	599	6175	4019
	15	155	953	610	202	1418	905	257	1976	1250	318	2623	1675	385	3363	2150	479	4192	2700	564	5115	3300	665	6129	3980
20	0	0	1756	930	0	2637	1350	0	3701	1900	0	4948	2520	0	6376	3250	0	7988	4060	0	9785	4980	0	11,753	6000
	2	59	1150	755	81	1694	1100	107	2343	1520	139	3097	2000	175	3955	2570	220	4916	3200	269	5983	3910	321	7154	4700
	5	101	1133	738	135	1674	1079	174	2320	1498	219	3071	1978	270	3926	2544	337	4885	3174	403	5950	3880	475	7119	4662
	10	130	1105	710	172	1641	1045	220	2282	1460	273	3029	1940	334	3880	2500	413	4835	3130	489	5896	3830	573	7063	4600
	15	150	1078	688	195	1609	1018	248	2245	1425	306	2988	1910	372	3835	2465	459	4786	3090	541	5844	3795	631	7007	4575
	20	167	1052	665	217	1578	990	273	2210	1390	335	2948	1880	404	3791	2430	495	4737	3050	585	5792	3760	689	6953	4550
30	0	0	1977	1060	0	3004	1550	0	4252	2170	0	5725	2920	0	7420	3770	0	9341	4750	0	11,483	5850	0	13,848	7060
	2	54	1351	865	74	2004	1310	98	2786	1800	127	3696	2380	159	4734	3050	199	5900	3810	241	7194	4650	285	8617	5600
	5	96	1332	851	127	1981	1289	164	2759	1775	206	3666	2350	252	4701	3020	312	5863	3783	373	7155	4622	439	8574	5552
	10	125	1301	829	164	1944	1254	209	2716	1733	259	3617	2300	316	4647	2970	386	5803	3739	456	7090	4574	535	8505	5471
	15	143	1272	807	187	1908	1220	237	2674	1692	292	3570	2250	354	4594	2920	431	5744	3695	507	7026	4527	590	8437	5391
	20	160	1243	784	207	1873	1185	260	2633	1650	319	3523	2200	384	4542	2870	467	5686	3650	548	6964	4480	639	8370	5310
	30	195	1189	745	246	1807	1130	305	2555	1585	369	3433	2130	440	4442	2785	540	5574	3565	635	6842	4375	739	8239	5225
50	0	0	2231	1195	0	3441	1825	0	4934	2550	0	6711	3440	0	8774	4460	0	11,129	5635	0	13,767	6940	0	16,694	8430
	2	41	1620	1010	66	2431	1513	86	3409	2125	113	4554	2840	141	5864	3670	171	7339	4630	209	8980	5695	251	10,788	6860
	5	90	1600	996	118	2406	1495	151	3380	2102	191	4520	2813	234	5826	3639	283	7295	4597	336	8933	5654	394	10,737	6818
	10	118	1567	972	154	2366	1466	196	3332	2064	243	4464	2767	295	5763	3585	355	7224	4542	419	8855	5585	491	10,652	6749
	15	136	1536	948	177	2327	1437	222	3285	2026	274	4409	2721	330	5701	3534	396	7155	4511	465	8779	5546	542	10,570	6710
	20	151	1505	924	195	2288	1408	244	3239	1987	300	4356	2675	361	5641	3481	433	7086	4479	506	8704	5506	586	10,488	6670
	30	183	1446	876	232	2214	1349	287	3150	1910	347	4253	2631	412	5523	3431	494	6953	4421	577	8557	5444	672	10,328	6603
100	0	0	2491	1310	0	3925	2050	0	5729	2950	0	7914	4050	0	10,485	5300	0	13,454	6700	0	16,817	8600	0	20,578	10,300
	2	30	1975	1170	44	3027	1820	72	4313	2550	95	5834	3500	120	7591	4600	138	9577	5800	169	11,803	7200	204	14,264	8800
	5	82	1955	1159	107	3002	1803	136	4282	2531	172	5797	3475	208	7548	4566	245	9528	5769	293	11,748	7162	341	14,204	8756
	10	108	1923	1142	142	2961	1775	180	4231	2500	223	5737	3434	268	7478	4509	318	9447	5717	374	11,658	7100	436	14,105	8683
	15	126	1892	1124	163	2920	1747	206	4182	2469	252	5678	3392	304	7409	4451	358	9367	5665	418	11,569	7037	487	14,007	8610
	20	141	1861	1107	181	2880	1719	226	4133	2438	277	5619	3351	330	7341	4394	387	9289	5613	452	11,482	6975	523	13,910	8537
	30	170	1802	1071	215	2803	1663	265	4037	2375	319	5505	3267	378	7209	4279	446	9136	5509	514	11,310	6850	592	13,720	8391
	50	241	1688	1000	292	2657	1550	350	3856	2250	415	5289	3100	486	6956	4050	572	8841	5300	659	10,979	6600	752	13,354	8100

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.1(a)]

Table 5-9 Type B Double-Wall Vent

														Number of Appliances:	Single													
														Appliance Type:	Category I													
														Appliance Vent Connection:	Single Wall Metal Connector													
		Vent Diameter — *D* (in.)																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																										
Height *H* (ft)	**Lateral *L* (ft)**	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	38	77	45	59	151	85	85	249	140	126	373	204	165	522	284	211	695	369	267	894	469	371	1118	569	537	1639	849
	2	39	51	36	60	96	66	85	156	104	123	231	156	159	320	213	201	423	284	251	541	368	347	673	453	498	979	648
	4	NA	NA	33	74	92	63	102	152	102	146	225	152	187	313	208	237	416	277	295	533	360	409	664	443	584	971	638
	6	NA	NA	31	83	89	60	114	147	99	163	220	148	207	307	203	263	409	271	327	526	352	449	656	433	638	962	627
8	0	37	83	50	58	164	93	83	273	154	123	412	234	161	580	319	206	777	414	258	1002	536	360	1257	658	521	1852	967
	2	39	56	39	59	108	75	83	176	119	121	261	179	155	363	246	197	482	321	246	617	417	339	768	513	486	1120	743
	5	NA	NA	37	77	102	69	107	168	114	151	252	171	193	352	235	245	470	311	305	604	404	418	754	500	598	1104	730
	8	NA	NA	33	90	95	64	122	161	107	175	243	163	223	342	225	280	458	300	344	591	392	470	740	486	665	1089	715
10	0	37	87	53	57	174	99	82	293	165	120	444	254	158	628	344	202	844	449	253	1093	584	351	1373	718	507	2031	1057
	2	39	61	41	59	117	80	82	193	128	119	287	194	153	400	272	193	531	354	242	681	456	332	849	559	475	1242	848
	5	52	56	39	76	111	76	105	185	122	148	277	186	190	388	261	241	518	344	299	667	443	409	834	544	584	1224	825
	10	NA	NA	34	97	100	68	132	171	112	188	261	171	237	369	241	296	497	325	363	643	423	492	808	520	688	1194	788
15	0	36	93	57	56	190	111	80	325	186	116	499	283	153	713	388	195	966	523	244	1259	681	336	1591	838	488	2374	1237
	2	38	69	47	57	136	93	80	225	149	115	337	224	148	473	314	187	631	413	232	812	543	319	1015	673	457	1491	983
	5	51	63	44	75	128	86	102	216	140	144	326	217	182	459	298	231	616	400	287	795	526	392	997	657	562	1469	963
	10	NA	NA	39	95	116	79	128	201	131	182	308	203	228	438	284	284	592	381	349	768	501	470	966	628	664	1433	928
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	72	158	186	124	220	290	192	272	418	269	334	568	367	404	742	484	540	937	601	750	1399	894
20	0	35	96	60	54	200	118	78	346	201	114	537	306	149	772	428	190	1053	573	238	1379	750	326	1751	927	473	2631	1346
	2	37	74	50	56	148	99	78	248	165	113	375	248	144	528	344	182	708	468	227	914	611	309	1146	754	443	1689	1098
	5	50	68	47	73	140	94	100	239	158	141	363	239	178	514	334	224	692	457	279	896	590	381	1126	734	547	1665	1074
	10	NA	NA	41	93	129	86	125	223	146	177	344	224	222	491	316	277	666	437	339	866	570	457	1092	702	646	1626	1037
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	155	208	136	216	325	210	264	469	301	325	640	419	393	838	549	526	1060	677	730	1587	1005
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	186	192	126	254	306	196	309	448	285	374	616	400	448	810	526	592	1028	651	808	1550	973
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127	76	372	219	110	584	334	144	849	472	184	1168	647	229	1542	852	312	1971	1056	454	2996	1545
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111	76	281	183	109	429	279	139	610	392	175	823	533	219	1069	698	296	1346	863	424	1999	1308
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106	98	271	173	136	417	271	171	595	382	215	806	521	269	1049	684	366	1324	846	524	1971	1283
	10	NA	NA	NA	91	144	98	122	255	168	171	397	257	213	570	367	265	777	501	327	1017	662	440	1287	821	620	1927	1243
	15	NA	NA	NA	115	131	NA	151	239	157	208	377	242	255	547	349	312	750	481	379	985	638	507	1251	794	702	1884	1205
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	181	223	NA	246	357	228	298	524	333	360	723	461	433	955	615	570	1216	768	780	1841	1166
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	389	477	305	461	670	426	541	895	574	704	1147	720	937	1759	1101
50	0	33	99	66	51	213	133	73	394	230	105	629	361	138	928	515	176	1292	704	220	1724	948	295	2223	1189	428	3432	1818
	2	36	84	61	53	181	121	73	318	205	104	495	312	133	712	443	168	971	613	209	1273	811	280	1615	1007	401	2426	1509
	5	48	80	NA	70	174	117	94	308	198	131	482	305	164	696	435	204	953	602	257	1252	795	347	1591	991	496	2396	1490
	10	NA	NA	NA	89	160	NA	118	292	186	162	461	292	203	671	420	253	923	583	313	1217	765	418	1551	963	589	2347	1455
	15	NA	NA	NA	112	148	NA	145	275	174	199	441	280	244	646	405	299	894	562	363	1183	736	481	1512	934	668	2299	1421
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	176	257	NA	236	420	267	285	622	389	345	866	543	415	1150	708	544	1473	906	741	2251	1387
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	315	376	NA	373	573	NA	442	809	502	521	1086	649	674	1399	848	892	2159	1318
100	0	NA	NA	NA	49	214	NA	69	403	NA	100	659	395	131	991	555	166	1404	765	207	1900	1033	273	2479	1300	395	3912	2042
	2	NA	NA	NA	51	192	NA	70	351	NA	98	563	373	125	828	508	158	1152	698	196	1532	933	259	1970	1168	371	3021	1817
	5	NA	NA	NA	67	186	NA	90	342	NA	125	551	366	156	813	501	194	1134	688	240	1511	921	322	1945	1153	460	2990	1796
	10	NA	NA	NA	85	175	NA	113	324	NA	153	532	354	191	789	486	238	1104	672	293	1477	902	389	1905	1133	547	2938	1763
	15	NA	NA	NA	132	162	NA	138	310	NA	188	511	343	230	764	473	281	1075	656	342	1443	884	447	1865	1110	618	2888	1730
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	168	295	NA	224	487	NA	270	739	458	325	1046	639	391	1410	864	507	1825	1087	690	2838	1696
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	231	264	NA	301	448	NA	355	685	NA	418	988	NA	491	1343	824	631	1747	1041	834	2739	1627
	50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	540	584	NA	617	866	NA	711	1205	NA	895	1591	NA	1138	2547	1489

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, l ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.1(b)]

Table 5-10 Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	*Single*
Appliance Type:	*Category I*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*

		Type B Double-Wall Connector Diameter — *D* (in.) To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																										
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10			12		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																										
Height *H* (ft)	Lateral *L* (ft)	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	130	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	320	NA	NA	401	NA	NA	581
	5	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	49	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	117	NA	NA	165	NA	NA	231	NA	NA	298	NA	NA	376	NA	NA	561
8	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	93	NA	NA	145	NA	NA	198	NA	NA	266	84	590	350	100	728	446	139	1024	651
	5	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	88	NA	NA	134	NA	NA	183	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	328	149	711	423	201	1007	640
	8	NA	NA	24	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	83	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	175	NA	NA	239	NA	NA	318	173	695	410	231	990	623
10	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	103	NA	NA	162	NA	NA	221	68	519	298	82	655	388	98	810	491	136	1144	724
	5	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	57	NA	NA	96	NA	NA	148	NA	NA	204	NA	NA	277	124	638	365	146	791	466	196	1124	712
	10	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	50	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	139	NA	NA	191	NA	NA	263	155	610	347	182	762	444	240	1093	668
15	2	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	114	NA	NA	179	53	475	250	64	613	336	77	779	441	92	968	562	127	1376	841
	5	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	62	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	164	NA	NA	231	99	594	313	118	759	416	139	946	533	186	1352	828
	10	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	97	NA	NA	153	NA	NA	216	126	565	296	148	727	394	173	912	567	229	1315	777
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	89	NA	NA	141	NA	NA	201	NA	NA	281	171	698	375	198	880	485	259	1280	742
20	2	NA	NA	38	NA	NA	74	NA	NA	124	NA	NA	201	51	522	274	61	678	375	73	867	491	87	1083	627	121	1548	953
	5	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	68	NA	NA	116	NA	NA	184	80	503	254	95	658	350	113	845	463	133	1059	597	179	1523	933
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	60	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	172	NA	NA	237	122	627	332	143	811	440	167	1022	566	221	1482	879
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	97	NA	NA	159	NA	NA	220	NA	NA	314	165	780	418	191	987	541	251	1443	840
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	83	NA	NA	148	NA	NA	206	NA	NA	296	186	750	397	214	955	513	277	1406	807
30	2	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	137	NA	NA	216	47	581	303	57	762	421	68	985	558	81	1240	717	111	1793	1112
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	76	NA	NA	128	NA	NA	198	75	561	281	90	741	393	106	962	526	125	1216	683	169	1766	1094
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	115	NA	NA	184	NA	NA	263	115	709	373	135	927	500	158	1176	648	210	1721	1025
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	171	NA	NA	243	NA	NA	353	156	893	476	181	1139	621	239	1679	981
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	91	NA	NA	159	NA	NA	227	NA	NA	332	176	860	450	203	1103	592	264	1638	940
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	188	NA	NA	288	NA	NA	416	249	1035	555	318	1560	877
50	2	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	92	NA	NA	161	NA	NA	251	NA	NA	351	51	840	477	61	1106	633	72	1413	812	99	2080	1243
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	151	NA	NA	230	NA	NA	323	83	819	445	98	1083	596	116	1387	774	155	2052	1225
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	138	NA	NA	215	NA	NA	304	NA	NA	424	126	1047	567	147	1347	733	195	2006	1147
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	199	NA	NA	282	NA	NA	400	146	1010	539	170	1307	702	222	1961	1099
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	185	NA	NA	264	NA	NA	376	165	977	511	190	1269	669	246	1916	1050
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	468	233	1196	623	295	1832	984
Minimum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})			12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132	
Maximum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})			49			88			137			198			269			352			445			550			792	

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.1(c)]

Table 5-11 Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	Single
Appliance Type:	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection:	Single-Wall Metal Connector

Single-Wall Metal Connector Diameter — *D* (in.)
To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom

Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Height *H* (ft)	Lateral *L* (ft)	3 FAN Min	3 FAN Max	3 NAT Max	4 FAN Min	4 FAN Max	4 NAT Max	5 FAN Min	5 FAN Max	5 NAT Max	6 FAN Min	6 FAN Max	6 NAT Max	7 FAN Min	7 FAN Max	7 NAT Max	8 FAN Min	8 FAN Max	8 NAT Max	9 FAN Min	9 FAN Max	9 NAT Max	10 FAN Min	10 FAN Max	10 NAT Max	12 FAN Min	12 FAN Max	12 NAT Max
6	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	130	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	319	NA	NA	400	NA	NA	580
	5	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	81	NA	NA	116	NA	NA	164	NA	NA	230	NA	NA	297	NA	NA	375	NA	NA	560
8	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	93	NA	NA	145	NA	NA	197	NA	NA	265	NA	NA	349	382	725	445	549	1021	650
	5	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	51	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	133	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	246	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	422	673	1003	638
	8	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	47	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	126	NA	NA	174	NA	NA	237	NA	NA	317	NA	NA	408	747	985	621
10	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	102	NA	NA	161	NA	NA	220	216	518	297	271	654	387	373	808	490	536	1142	722
	5	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	56	NA	NA	95	NA	NA	147	NA	NA	203	NA	NA	276	334	635	364	459	789	465	657	1121	710
	10	NA	NA	24	NA	NA	49	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	137	NA	NA	189	NA	NA	261	NA	NA	345	547	758	441	771	1088	665
15	2	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	113	NA	NA	178	166	473	249	211	611	335	264	776	440	362	965	560	520	1373	840
	5	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	106	NA	NA	163	NA	NA	230	261	591	312	325	755	414	444	942	531	637	1348	825
	10	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	54	NA	NA	96	NA	NA	151	NA	NA	214	NA	NA	294	392	722	392	531	907	504	749	1309	774
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	138	NA	NA	198	NA	NA	278	452	692	372	606	873	481	841	1272	738
20	2	NA	NA	38	NA	NA	73	NA	NA	123	NA	NA	200	163	520	273	206	675	374	258	864	490	252	1079	625	508	1544	950
	5	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	115	NA	NA	183	NA	NA	252	255	655	348	317	842	461	433	1055	594	623	1518	930
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	59	NA	NA	105	NA	NA	170	NA	NA	235	312	622	330	382	806	437	517	1016	562	733	1475	875
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	95	NA	NA	156	NA	NA	217	NA	NA	311	442	773	414	591	979	539	823	1434	835
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	NA	NA	144	NA	NA	202	NA	NA	292	NA	NA	392	663	944	510	911	1394	800
30	2	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	81	NA	NA	136	NA	NA	215	158	578	302	200	759	420	249	982	556	340	1237	715	489	1789	1110
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	196	NA	NA	279	245	737	391	306	958	524	417	1210	680	600	1760	1090
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	66	NA	NA	113	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	260	300	703	370	370	920	496	500	1168	644	708	1713	1020
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	105	NA	NA	168	NA	NA	240	NA	NA	349	428	884	471	572	1128	615	798	1668	975
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	88	NA	NA	155	NA	NA	223	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	445	643	1089	585	883	1624	932
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	281	NA	NA	408	NA	NA	544	1055	1539	865
50	2	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	91	NA	NA	160	NA	NA	250	NA	NA	350	191	837	475	238	1103	631	323	1408	810	463	2076	1240
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	149	NA	NA	228	NA	NA	321	NA	NA	442	293	1078	593	398	1381	770	571	2044	1220
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	136	NA	NA	212	NA	NA	301	NA	NA	420	355	1038	562	447	1337	728	674	1994	1140
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	124	NA	NA	195	NA	NA	278	NA	NA	395	NA	NA	533	546	1294	695	761	1945	1090
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	258	NA	NA	370	NA	NA	504	616	1251	660	844	1898	1040
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	318	NA	NA	458	NA	NA	610	1009	1805	970
Minimum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})			12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132	
Maximum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})			49			88			137			198			269			352			445			550			792	

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, l ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.1(d)]

Table 5-12 Single-Wall Metal Pipe or Type B Asbestos Cement Vent

				Number of Appliances:	Single				
				Appliance Type:	Draft Hood-Equipped				
				Appliance Vent Connection:	Connected Directly to Pipe or Vent				
		Diameter – *D* (in.) To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom							
		3	4	5	6	7	8	10	12
Height *H* (ft)	Lateral *L* (ft)	Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour							
		Maximum Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour							
6	0	39	70	116	170	232	312	500	750
	2	31	55	94	141	194	260	415	620
	5	28	51	88	128	177	242	390	600
8	0	42	76	126	185	252	340	542	815
	2	32	61	102	154	210	284	451	680
	5	29	56	95	141	194	264	430	648
	10	24	49	86	131	180	250	406	625
10	0	45	84	138	202	279	372	606	912
	2	35	67	111	168	233	311	505	760
	5	32	61	104	153	215	289	480	724
	10	27	54	94	143	200	274	455	700
	15	NA	46	84	130	186	258	432	666
15	0	49	91	151	223	312	420	684	1040
	2	39	72	122	186	260	350	570	865
	5	35	67	110	170	240	325	540	825
	10	30	58	103	158	223	308	514	795
	15	NA	50	93	144	207	291	488	760
	20	NA	NA	82	132	195	273	466	726
20	0	53	101	163	252	342	470	770	1190
	2	42	80	136	210	286	392	641	990
	5	38	74	123	192	264	364	610	945
	10	32	65	115	178	246	345	571	910
	15	NA	55	104	163	228	326	550	870
	20	NA	NA	91	149	214	306	525	832
30	0	56	108	183	276	384	529	878	1370
	2	44	84	148	230	320	441	730	1140
	5	NA	78	137	210	296	410	694	1080
	10	NA	68	125	196	274	388	656	1050
	15	NA	NA	113	177	258	366	625	1000
	20	NA	NA	99	163	240	344	596	960
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	192	295	540	890
50	0	NA	120	210	310	443	590	980	1550
	2	NA	95	171	260	370	492	820	1290
	5	NA	NA	159	234	342	474	780	1230
	10	NA	NA	146	221	318	456	730	1190
	15	NA	NA	NA	200	292	407	705	1130
	20	NA	NA	NA	185	276	384	670	1080
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	222	330	605	1010

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.1(e)]

Table 5-13 Exterior Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	Single
Appliance Type:	NAT
Appliance Vent Connection:	Type B Double-Wall Connector

SPECIAL USE: Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-Heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Internal Area of Chimney (in.^{2})							
	12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 37°F or greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	123	190	249	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	579
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 27°F to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	116	156	180	212	266
8	0	0	82	127	167	187	214	263
10	0	51	97	141	183	201	225	265
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	233	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	419	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	763
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 17°F to 26°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	215	259	349
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	197	226	264	352
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	214	245	278	358
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	296	331	398
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	352	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	507	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 5°F to 16°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	416
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	312	423
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	289	331	430
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	393	485
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	450	547
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	972
	Local 99% winter design temperature: −10°F to 4°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	484
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	494
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	513
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	586
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	650
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	805
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1003
	Local 99% winter design temperature: −11°F or lower Not recommended for any vent configurations							

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW, °C = (°F − 32)/1.8.
Note: See Figure G.2.4 for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.1(f)]

Table 5-14 Type B Double-Wall Vent

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection:	Type B Double-Wall Connector

Vent Connector Capacity

Type B Double-Wall Vent and Connector Diameter — *D* (in.); Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Connector Rise *R* (ft)	3 FAN Min	3 FAN Max	3 NAT Max	4 FAN Min	4 FAN Max	4 NAT Max	5 FAN Min	5 FAN Max	5 NAT Max	6 FAN Min	6 FAN Max	6 NAT Max	7 FAN Min	7 FAN Max	7 NAT Max	8 FAN Min	8 FAN Max	8 NAT Max	9 FAN Min	9 FAN Max	9 NAT Max	10 FAN Min	10 FAN Max	10 NAT Max
6	1	22	37	26	35	66	46	46	106	72	58	164	104	77	225	142	92	296	185	109	376	237	128	466	289
	2	23	41	31	37	75	55	48	121	86	60	183	124	79	253	168	95	333	220	112	424	282	131	526	345
	3	24	44	35	38	81	62	49	132	96	62	199	139	82	275	189	97	363	248	114	463	317	134	575	386
8	1	22	40	27	35	72	48	49	114	76	64	176	109	84	243	148	100	320	194	118	408	248	138	507	303
	2	23	44	32	36	80	57	51	128	90	66	195	129	86	269	175	103	356	230	121	454	294	141	564	358
	3	24	47	36	37	87	64	53	139	101	67	210	145	88	290	198	105	384	258	123	492	330	143	612	402
10	1	22	43	28	34	78	50	49	123	78	65	189	113	89	257	154	106	341	200	125	436	257	146	542	314
	2	23	47	33	36	86	59	51	136	93	67	206	134	91	282	182	109	374	238	128	479	305	149	596	372
	3	24	50	37	37	92	67	52	146	104	69	220	150	94	303	205	111	402	268	131	515	342	152	642	417
15	1	21	50	30	33	89	53	47	142	83	64	220	120	88	298	163	110	389	214	134	493	273	162	609	333
	2	22	53	35	35	96	63	49	153	99	66	235	142	91	320	193	112	419	253	137	532	323	165	658	394
	3	24	55	40	36	102	71	51	163	111	68	248	160	93	339	218	115	445	286	140	565	365	167	700	444
20	1	21	54	31	33	99	56	46	157	87	62	246	125	86	334	171	107	436	224	131	552	285	158	681	347
	2	22	57	37	34	105	66	48	167	104	64	259	149	89	354	202	110	463	265	134	587	339	161	725	414
	3	23	60	42	35	110	74	50	176	116	66	271	168	91	371	228	113	486	300	137	618	383	164	764	466
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59	45	181	93	60	288	134	83	391	182	103	512	238	125	649	305	151	802	372
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70	47	190	110	62	299	158	85	408	215	105	535	282	129	679	360	155	840	439
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79	48	198	124	64	309	178	88	423	242	108	555	317	132	706	405	158	874	494
50	1	19	71	36	30	133	64	43	216	101	57	349	145	78	477	197	97	627	257	120	797	330	144	984	403
	2	21	73	43	32	137	76	45	223	119	59	358	172	81	490	234	100	645	306	123	820	392	148	1014	478
	3	22	75	48	33	141	86	46	229	134	61	366	194	83	502	263	103	661	343	126	842	441	151	1043	538
100	1	18	82	37	28	158	66	40	262	104	53	442	150	73	611	204	91	810	266	112	1038	341	135	1285	417
	2	19	83	44	30	161	79	42	267	123	55	447	178	75	619	242	94	822	316	115	1054	405	139	1306	494
	3	20	84	50	31	163	89	44	272	138	57	452	200	78	627	272	97	834	355	118	1069	455	142	1327	555

Common Vent Capacity

Type B Double-Wall Common Vent Diameter — *D* (in.); Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	4 FAN +FAN	4 FAN +NAT	4 NAT +NAT	5 FAN +FAN	5 FAN +NAT	5 NAT +NAT	6 FAN +FAN	6 FAN +NAT	6 NAT +NAT	7 FAN +FAN	7 FAN +NAT	7 NAT +NAT	8 FAN +FAN	8 FAN +NAT	8 NAT +NAT	9 FAN +FAN	9 FAN +NAT	9 NAT +NAT	10 FAN +FAN	10 FAN +NAT	10 NAT +NAT
6	92	81	65	140	116	103	204	161	147	309	248	200	404	314	260	547	434	335	672	520	410
8	101	90	73	155	129	114	224	178	163	339	275	223	444	348	290	602	480	378	740	577	465
10	110	97	79	169	141	124	243	194	178	367	299	242	477	377	315	649	522	405	800	627	495
15	125	112	91	195	164	144	283	228	206	427	352	280	556	444	365	753	612	465	924	733	565
20	136	123	102	215	183	160	314	255	229	475	394	310	621	499	405	842	688	523	1035	826	640
30	152	138	118	244	210	185	361	297	266	547	459	360	720	585	470	979	808	605	1209	975	740
50	167	153	134	279	244	214	421	353	310	641	547	423	854	706	550	1164	977	705	1451	1188	860
100	175	163	NA	311	277	NA	489	421	NA	751	658	479	1025	873	625	1408	1215	800	1784	1502	975

[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(a)]

Table 5-14 *Continued*

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection:	Type B Double-Wall Connector

		Type B Double-Wall Vent and Connector Diameter — *D* (in.)																				
		12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
Vent Height *H*	Connector Rise *R*	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
(ft)	(ft)	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	2	174	764	496	223	1046	653	281	1371	853	346	1772	1080	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	180	897	616	230	1231	827	287	1617	1081	352	2069	1370	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	2	186	822	516	238	1126	696	298	1478	910	365	1920	1150	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	192	952	644	244	1307	884	305	1719	1150	372	2211	1460	471	2737	1800	560	3319	2180	662	3957	2590
	6	198	1050	772	252	1445	1072	313	1902	1390	380	2434	1770	478	3018	2180	568	3665	2640	669	4373	3130
10	2	196	870	536	249	1195	730	311	1570	955	379	2049	1205	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	201	997	664	256	1371	924	318	1804	1205	387	2332	1535	486	2887	1890	581	3502	2280	686	4175	2710
	6	207	1095	792	263	1509	1118	325	1989	1455	395	2556	1865	494	3169	2290	589	3849	2760	694	4593	3270
15	2	214	967	568	272	1334	790	336	1760	1030	408	2317	1305	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	221	1085	712	279	1499	1006	344	1978	1320	416	2579	1665	523	3197	2060	624	3881	2490	734	4631	2960
	6	228	1181	856	286	1632	1222	351	2157	1610	424	2796	2025	533	3470	2510	634	4216	3030	743	5035	3600
20	2	223	1051	596	291	1443	840	357	1911	1095	430	2533	1385	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	230	1162	748	298	1597	1064	365	2116	1395	438	2778	1765	554	3447	2180	661	4190	2630	772	5005	3130
	6	237	1253	900	307	1726	1288	373	2287	1695	450	2984	2145	567	3708	2650	671	4511	3190	785	5392	3790
30	2	216	1217	632	286	1664	910	367	2183	1190	461	2891	1540	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	223	1316	792	294	1802	1160	376	2366	1510	474	3110	1920	619	3840	2365	728	4861	2860	847	5606	3410
	6	231	1400	952	303	1920	1410	384	2524	1830	485	3299	2340	632	4080	2875	741	4976	3480	860	5961	4150
50	2	206	1479	689	273	2023	1007	350	2659	1315	435	3548	1665	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	213	1561	860	281	2139	1291	359	2814	1685	447	3730	2135	580	4601	2633	709	5569	3185	851	6633	3790
	6	221	1631	1031	290	2242	1575	369	2951	2055	461	3893	2605	594	4808	3208	724	5826	3885	867	6943	4620
100	2	192	1923	712	254	2644	1050	326	3490	1370	402	4707	1740	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	200	1984	888	263	2731	1346	336	3606	1760	414	4842	2220	523	5982	2750	639	7254	3330	769	8650	3950
	6	208	2035	1064	272	2811	1642	346	3714	2150	426	4968	2700	539	6143	3350	654	7453	4070	786	8892	4810

Common Vent Capacity

	Type B Double-Wall Common Vent Diameter — *D* (in.)																				
	12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
Vent Height *H* (ft)	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT
6	900	696	588	1284	990	815	1735	1336	1065	2253	1732	1345	2838	2180	1660	3488	2677	1970	4206	3226	2390
8	994	773	652	1423	1103	912	1927	1491	1190	2507	1936	1510	3162	2439	1860	3890	2998	2200	4695	3616	2680
10	1076	841	712	1542	1200	995	2093	1625	1300	2727	2113	1645	3444	2665	2030	4241	3278	2400	5123	3957	2920
15	1247	986	825	1794	1410	1158	2440	1910	1510	3184	2484	1910	4026	3133	2360	4971	3862	2790	6016	4670	3400
20	1405	1116	916	2006	1588	1290	2722	2147	1690	3561	2798	2140	4548	3552	2640	5573	4352	3120	6749	5261	3800
30	1658	1327	1025	2373	1892	1525	3220	2558	1990	4197	3326	2520	5303	4193	3110	6539	5157	3680	7940	6247	4480
50	2024	1640	1280	2911	2347	1863	3964	3183	2430	5184	4149	3075	6567	5240	3800	8116	6458	4500	9837	7813	5475
100	2569	2131	1670	3732	3076	2450	5125	4202	3200	6749	5509	4050	8597	6986	5000	10,681	8648	5920	13,004	10,499	7200

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(a)]

Table 5-15 Type B Double-Wall Vent

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection:	Single-Wall Metal Connector

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Connector Rise *R* (ft)	3 FAN Min	3 FAN Max	3 NAT Max	4 FAN Min	4 FAN Max	4 NAT Max	5 FAN Min	5 FAN Max	5 NAT Max	6 FAN Min	6 FAN Max	6 NAT Max	7 FAN Min	7 FAN Max	7 NAT Max	8 FAN Min	8 FAN Max	8 NAT Max	9 FAN Min	9 FAN Max	9 NAT Max	10 FAN Min	10 FAN Max	10 NAT Max
		Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter — *D* (in.) / Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
6	1	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	71	NA	NA	102	207	223	140	262	293	183	325	373	234	447	463	286
	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	85	168	182	123	215	251	167	271	331	219	334	422	281	458	524	344
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	121	131	95	175	198	138	222	273	188	279	361	247	344	462	316	468	574	385
8	1	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	106	226	240	145	285	316	191	352	403	244	481	502	299
	2	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	57	125	126	89	184	193	127	234	266	173	293	353	228	360	450	292	492	560	355
	3	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	64	130	138	100	191	208	144	241	287	197	302	381	256	370	489	328	501	609	400
10	1	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	50	119	121	77	182	186	110	240	253	150	302	335	196	372	429	252	506	534	308
	2	NA	NA	33	84	85	59	124	134	91	189	203	132	248	278	183	311	369	235	381	473	302	517	589	368
	3	NA	NA	36	89	91	67	129	144	102	197	217	148	257	299	203	320	398	265	391	511	339	528	637	413
15	1	NA	NA	29	79	87	52	116	138	81	177	214	116	238	291	158	312	380	208	397	482	266	556	596	324
	2	NA	NA	34	83	94	62	121	150	97	185	230	138	246	314	189	321	411	248	407	522	317	568	646	387
	3	NA	NA	39	87	100	70	127	160	109	193	243	157	255	333	215	331	438	281	418	557	360	579	690	437
20	1	49	56	30	78	97	54	115	152	84	175	238	120	233	325	165	306	425	217	390	538	276	546	664	336
	2	52	59	36	82	103	64	120	163	101	182	252	144	243	346	197	317	453	259	400	574	331	558	709	403
	3	55	62	40	87	107	72	125	172	113	190	264	164	252	363	223	326	476	294	412	607	375	570	750	457
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89	169	278	129	226	380	175	296	497	230	378	630	294	528	779	358
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106	177	290	152	236	397	208	307	521	274	389	662	349	541	819	425
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120	185	300	172	244	412	235	316	542	309	400	690	394	555	855	482
50	1	46	69	34	75	128	60	109	207	96	162	336	137	217	460	188	284	604	245	364	768	314	507	951	384
	2	49	71	40	79	132	72	114	215	113	170	345	164	226	473	223	294	623	293	376	793	375	520	983	458
	3	52	72	45	83	136	82	119	221	123	178	353	186	235	486	252	304	640	331	387	816	423	535	1013	518
100	1	45	79	34	71	150	61	104	249	98	153	424	140	205	585	192	269	774	249	345	993	321	476	1236	393
	2	48	80	41	75	153	73	110	255	115	160	428	167	212	593	228	279	788	299	358	1011	383	490	1259	469
	3	51	81	46	79	157	85	114	260	129	168	433	190	222	603	256	289	801	339	368	1027	431	506	1280	527

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height *H* (ft)	4 FAN +FAN	4 FAN +NAT	4 NAT +NAT	5 FAN +FAN	5 FAN +NAT	5 NAT +NAT	6 FAN +FAN	6 FAN +NAT	6 NAT +NAT	7 FAN +FAN	7 FAN +NAT	7 NAT +NAT	8 FAN +FAN	8 FAN +NAT	8 NAT +NAT	9 FAN +FAN	9 FAN +NAT	9 NAT +NAT	10 FAN +FAN	10 FAN +NAT	10 NAT +NAT
	Type B Double-Wall Vent Diameter — *D* (in.) / Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
6	NA	78	64	NA	113	99	200	158	144	304	244	196	398	310	257	541	429	332	665	515	407
8	NA	87	71	NA	126	111	218	173	159	331	269	218	436	342	285	592	473	373	730	569	460
10	NA	94	76	163	137	120	237	189	174	357	292	236	467	369	309	638	512	398	787	617	487
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200	416	343	274	544	434	357	738	599	456	905	718	553
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223	463	383	302	606	487	395	824	673	512	1013	808	626
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257	533	446	349	703	570	459	958	790	593	1183	952	723
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296	622	529	410	833	686	535	1139	954	689	1418	1157	838
100	166	153	NA	297	263	NA	469	398	NA	726	633	464	999	846	606	1378	1185	780	1741	1459	948

[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(b)]

Table 5-16 Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection:	Type B Double-Wall Connector

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Connector Rise *R* (ft)	3 FAN Min	3 FAN Max	3 NAT Max	4 FAN Min	4 FAN Max	4 NAT Max	5 FAN Min	5 FAN Max	5 NAT Max	6 FAN Min	6 FAN Max	6 NAT Max	7 FAN Min	7 FAN Max	7 NAT Max	8 FAN Min	8 FAN Max	8 NAT Max	9 FAN Min	9 FAN Max	9 NAT Max	10 FAN Min	10 FAN Max	10 NAT Max
		Type B Double-Wall Vent Connector Diameter — *D* (in.) / Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
6	1	24	33	21	39	62	40	52	106	67	65	194	101	87	274	141	104	370	201	124	479	253	145	599	319
	2	26	43	28	41	79	52	53	133	85	67	230	124	89	324	173	107	436	232	127	562	300	148	694	378
	3	27	49	34	42	92	61	55	155	97	69	262	143	91	369	203	109	491	270	129	633	349	151	795	439
8	1	24	39	22	39	72	41	55	117	69	71	213	105	94	304	148	113	414	210	134	539	267	156	682	335
	2	26	47	29	40	87	53	57	140	86	73	246	127	97	350	179	116	473	240	137	615	311	160	776	394
	3	27	52	34	42	97	62	59	159	98	75	269	145	99	383	206	119	517	276	139	672	358	163	848	452
10	1	24	42	22	38	80	42	55	130	71	74	232	108	101	324	153	120	444	216	142	582	277	165	739	348
	2	26	50	29	40	93	54	57	153	87	76	261	129	103	366	184	123	498	247	145	652	321	168	825	407
	3	27	55	35	41	105	63	58	170	100	78	284	148	106	397	209	126	540	281	147	705	366	171	893	463
15	1	24	48	23	38	93	44	54	154	74	72	277	114	100	384	164	125	511	229	153	658	297	184	824	375
	2	25	55	31	39	105	55	56	174	89	74	299	134	103	419	192	128	558	260	156	718	339	187	900	432
	3	26	59	35	41	115	64	57	189	102	76	319	153	105	448	215	131	597	292	159	760	382	190	960	486
20	1	24	52	24	37	102	46	53	172	77	71	313	119	98	437	173	123	584	239	150	752	312	180	943	397
	2	25	58	31	39	114	56	55	190	91	73	335	138	101	467	199	126	625	270	153	805	354	184	1011	452
	3	26	63	35	40	123	65	57	204	104	75	353	157	104	493	222	129	661	301	156	851	396	187	1067	505
30	1	24	54	25	37	111	48	52	192	82	69	357	127	96	504	187	119	680	255	145	883	337	175	1115	432
	2	25	60	32	38	122	58	54	208	95	72	376	145	99	531	209	122	715	287	149	928	378	179	1171	484
	3	26	64	36	40	131	66	56	221	107	74	392	163	101	554	233	125	746	317	152	968	418	182	1220	535
50	1	23	51	25	36	116	51	51	209	89	67	405	143	92	582	213	115	798	294	140	1049	392	168	1334	506
	2	24	59	32	37	127	61	53	225	102	70	421	161	95	604	235	118	827	326	143	1085	433	172	1379	558
	3	26	64	36	39	135	69	55	237	115	72	435	180	98	624	260	121	854	357	147	1118	474	176	1421	611
100	1	23	46	24	35	108	50	49	208	92	65	428	155	88	640	237	109	907	334	134	1222	454	161	1589	596
	2	24	53	31	37	120	60	51	224	105	67	444	174	92	660	260	113	933	368	138	1253	497	165	1626	651
	3	25	59	35	38	130	68	53	237	118	69	458	193	94	679	285	116	956	399	141	1282	540	169	1661	705

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height *H* (ft)	12 FAN +FAN	12 FAN +NAT	12 NAT +NAT	19 FAN +FAN	19 FAN +NAT	19 NAT +NAT	28 FAN +FAN	28 FAN +NAT	28 NAT +NAT	38 FAN +FAN	38 FAN +NAT	38 NAT +NAT	50 FAN +FAN	50 FAN +NAT	50 NAT +NAT	63 FAN +FAN	63 FAN +NAT	63 NAT +NAT	78 FAN +FAN	78 FAN +NAT	78 NAT +NAT	113 FAN +FAN	113 FAN +FAN	113 NAT +NAT
	Minimum Internal Area of Masonry Chimney Flue (in.^{2}) / Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
6	NA	74	25	NA	119	46	NA	178	71	NA	257	103	NA	351	143	NA	458	188	NA	582	246	1041	853	NA
8	NA	80	28	NA	130	53	NA	193	82	NA	279	119	NA	384	163	NA	501	218	724	636	278	1144	937	408
10	NA	84	31	NA	138	56	NA	207	90	NA	299	131	NA	409	177	606	538	236	776	686	302	1226	1010	454
15	NA	NA	36	NA	152	67	NA	233	106	NA	334	152	523	467	212	682	611	283	874	781	365	1374	1156	546
20	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	75	NA	250	122	NA	368	172	565	508	243	742	668	325	955	858	419	1513	1286	648
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	270	137	NA	404	198	615	564	278	816	747	381	1062	969	496	1702	1473	749
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	620	328	879	831	461	1165	1089	606	1905	1692	922
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	348	NA	NA	499	NA	NA	669	2053	1921	1058

[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(c)]

Table 5-17 Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	Category I
Appliance Vent Connection:	Single-Wall Metal Connector

Vent Connector Capacity

Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter — *D* (in.) / Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Connector Rise *R* (ft)	3 FAN Min	3 FAN Max	3 NAT Max	4 FAN Min	4 FAN Max	4 NAT Max	5 FAN Min	5 FAN Max	5 NAT Max	6 FAN Min	6 FAN Max	6 NAT Max
6	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	39	NA	NA	66	179	191	100
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	84	186	227	123
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	61	134	153	97	193	258	142
8	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	40	NA	NA	68	195	208	103
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	137	139	85	202	240	125
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	143	156	98	210	264	145
10	1	NA	NA	22	NA	NA	41	130	151	70	202	225	106
	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	53	136	150	86	210	255	128
	3	NA	NA	34	97	102	62	143	166	99	217	277	147
15	1	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	43	129	151	73	199	271	112
	2	NA	NA	30	92	103	54	135	170	88	207	295	132
	3	NA	NA	34	96	112	63	141	185	101	215	315	151
20	1	NA	NA	23	87	99	45	128	167	76	197	303	117
	2	NA	NA	30	91	111	55	134	185	90	205	325	136
	3	NA	NA	35	96	119	64	140	199	103	213	343	154
30	1	NA	NA	24	86	108	47	126	187	80	193	347	124
	2	NA	NA	31	91	119	57	132	203	93	201	366	142
	3	NA	NA	35	95	127	65	138	216	105	209	381	160
50	1	NA	NA	24	85	113	50	124	204	87	188	392	139
	2	NA	NA	31	89	123	60	130	218	100	196	408	158
	3	NA	NA	35	94	131	68	136	231	112	205	422	176
100	1	NA	NA	23	84	104	49	122	200	89	182	410	151
	2	NA	NA	30	88	115	59	127	215	102	190	425	169
	3	NA	NA	34	93	124	67	133	228	115	199	438	188

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Connector Rise *R* (ft)	7 FAN Min	7 FAN Max	7 NAT Max	8 FAN Min	8 FAN Max	8 NAT Max	9 FAN Min	9 FAN Max	9 NAT Max	10 FAN Min	10 FAN Max	10 NAT Max
6	1	231	271	140	292	366	200	362	474	252	499	594	316
	2	239	321	172	301	432	231	373	557	299	509	696	376
	3	247	365	202	309	491	269	381	634	348	519	793	437
8	1	250	298	146	313	407	207	387	530	263	529	672	331
	2	258	343	177	323	465	238	397	607	309	540	766	391
	3	266	376	205	332	509	274	407	663	356	551	838	450
10	1	267	316	151	333	434	213	410	571	273	558	727	343
	2	276	358	181	343	489	244	420	640	317	569	813	403
	3	284	389	207	352	530	279	430	694	363	580	880	459
15	1	268	376	161	349	502	225	445	646	291	623	808	366
	2	277	411	189	359	548	256	456	706	334	634	884	424
	3	286	439	213	368	586	289	466	755	378	646	945	479
20	1	265	425	169	345	569	235	439	734	306	614	921	387
	2	274	455	195	355	610	266	450	787	348	627	986	443
	3	282	481	219	365	644	298	461	831	391	639	1042	496
30	1	259	492	183	338	665	250	430	864	330	600	1089	421
	2	269	518	205	348	699	282	442	908	372	613	1145	473
	3	277	540	229	358	729	312	452	946	412	626	1193	524
50	1	252	567	208	328	778	287	417	1022	383	582	1302	492
	2	262	588	230	339	806	320	429	1058	425	596	1346	545
	3	271	607	255	349	831	351	440	1090	466	610	1386	597
100	1	243	617	232	315	875	328	402	1181	444	560	1537	580
	2	253	636	254	326	899	361	415	1210	488	575	1570	634
	3	262	654	279	337	921	392	427	1238	529	589	1604	687

Common Vent Capacity

Minimum Internal Area of Masonry Chimney Flue (in.^{2}) / Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	12 FAN +FAN	12 FAN +NAT	12 NAT +NAT	19 FAN +FAN	19 FAN +NAT	19 NAT +NAT	28 FAN +FAN	28 FAN +NAT	28 NAT +NAT	38 FAN +FAN	38 FAN +NAT	38 NAT +NAT
6	NA	NA	25	NA	118	45	NA	176	71	NA	255	102
8	NA	NA	28	NA	128	52	NA	190	81	NA	276	118
10	NA	NA	31	NA	136	56	NA	205	89	NA	295	129
15	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	66	NA	230	105	NA	335	150
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	74	NA	247	120	NA	362	170
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	135	NA	398	195
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

Vent Height *H* (ft)	50 FAN +FAN	50 FAN +NAT	50 NAT +NAT	63 FAN +FAN	63 FAN +NAT	63 NAT +NAT	78 FAN +FAN	78 FAN +NAT	78 NAT +NAT	113 FAN +FAN	113 FAN +FAN	113 NAT +NAT
6	NA	348	142	NA	455	187	NA	579	245	NA	846	NA
8	NA	380	162	NA	497	217	NA	633	277	1136	928	405
10	NA	405	175	NA	532	234	771	680	300	1216	1000	450
15	NA	400	210	677	602	280	866	772	360	1359	1139	540
20	NA	503	240	765	661	321	947	849	415	1495	1264	640
30	NA	558	275	808	739	377	1052	957	490	1682	1447	740
50	NA	612	325	NA	821	456	1152	1076	600	1879	1672	910
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	494	NA	NA	663	2006	1885	1046

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(d)]

Table 5-18 Single-Wall Metal Pipe or Type B Asbestos Cement Vent

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	Draft Hood–Equipped
Appliance Vent Connection:	Direct to Pipe or Vent

Vent Connector Capacity

Total Vent Height *H* (ft)	Connector Rise *R* (ft)	Vent Connector Diameter — *D* (in.)					
		3	4	5	6	7	8
		Maximum Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
6–8	1	21	40	68	102	146	205
	2	28	53	86	124	178	235
	3	34	61	98	147	204	275
15	1	23	44	77	117	179	240
	2	30	56	92	134	194	265
	3	35	64	102	155	216	298
30 and up	1	25	49	84	129	190	270
	2	31	58	97	145	211	295
	3	36	68	107	164	232	321

Common Vent Capacity

Total Vent Height *H* (ft)	Common Vent Diameter — *D* (in.)						
	4	5	6	7	8	10	12
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour						
6	48	78	111	155	205	320	NA
8	55	89	128	175	234	365	505
10	59	95	136	190	250	395	560
15	71	115	168	228	305	480	690
20	80	129	186	260	340	550	790
30	NA	147	215	300	400	650	940
50	NA	NA	NA	360	490	810	1190

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW.
Note: See Figure G.1(f) and Section 13.2.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(e)]

Table 5-19 Exterior Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	NAT + NAT
Appliance Vent Connection:	Type B Double-Wall Connector

SPECIAL USE: Combined Appliance Maximum Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Internal Area of Chimney (in.^{2})							
	12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
6	25	46	71	103	143	188	246	NA
8	28	53	82	119	163	218	278	408
10	31	56	90	131	177	236	302	454
15	NA	67	106	152	212	283	365	546
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	325	419	648
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	496	749
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	922
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(f)]

Table 5-20 Exterior Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	NAT + NAT
Appliance Vent Connection:	Type B Double-Wall Connector

SPECIAL USE: Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-Heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Internal Area of Chimney (in.^{2})							
	12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 37°F or greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NA
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	579
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 27°F to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	NA	NA	180	212	NA
8	0	0	82	NA	NA	187	214	263
10	0	51	NA	NA	NA	201	225	265
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	763
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 17°F to 26°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	264	352
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	278	358
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	331	398
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	862
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 5°F to 16°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	430
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	485
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	547
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 4°F or lower Not recommended for any vent configurations							

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW, °C = (°F − 32)/1.8.
Note: See Figure 5-13 for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(g)]

Table 5-21 Exterior Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	**Two or More**
Appliance Type:	**FAN + NAT**
Appliance Vent Connection:	**Type B Double-Wall Connector**

SPECIAL USE: Combined Appliance Maximum Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Internal Area of Chimney (in.^{2})							
	12	**19**	**28**	**38**	**50**	**63**	**78**	**113**
6	74	119	178	257	351	458	582	853
8	80	130	193	279	384	501	636	937
10	84	138	207	299	409	538	686	1010
15	NA	152	233	334	467	611	781	1156
20	NA	NA	250	368	508	668	858	1286
30	NA	NA	NA	404	564	747	969	1473
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	831	1089	1692
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1921

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(h)]

Table 5-22 Exterior Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	Two or More
Appliance Type:	FAN + NAT
Appliance Vent Connection:	Type B Double-Wall Connector

SPECIAL USE: Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-Heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour

Vent Height *H* (ft)	Internal Area of Chimney (in.^{2})							
	12	19	28	38	50	63	78	113
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 37°F or greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	123	190	249	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	334	398	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	714	707	579
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1600
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 27°F to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	116	156	180	212	266
8	0	0	82	127	167	187	214	263
10	0	51	97	141	183	210	225	265
15	NA	111	142	183	233	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	187	230	284	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	330	319	419	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	672	705	763
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1554
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 17°F to 26°F							
6	0	55	99	141	182	215	259	349
8	52	74	111	154	197	226	264	352
10	NA	90	125	169	214	245	278	358
15	NA	NA	167	212	263	296	331	398
20	NA	NA	212	258	316	352	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	362	429	470	507	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	723	766	862
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1669
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 5°F to 16°F							
6	NA	78	121	166	214	252	301	416
8	NA	94	135	182	230	269	312	423
10	NA	111	149	198	250	289	331	430
15	NA	NA	193	247	305	346	393	485
20	NA	NA	NA	293	360	408	450	547
30	NA	NA	NA	377	450	531	580	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	797	853	972
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1833
	Local 99% winter design temperature: −10°F to 4°F							
6	NA	NA	145	196	249	296	349	484
8	NA	NA	159	213	269	320	371	494
10	NA	NA	175	231	292	339	397	513
15	NA	NA	NA	283	351	404	457	586
20	NA	NA	NA	333	408	468	528	650
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	603	667	805
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	955	1003
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: −11°F or lower Not recommended for any vent configurations							

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu per hr = 0.293 kW.
Note: See Figure G.2.4 for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.
[NFPA 54 Table 13.2(i)]

PART II

This is originally from NFPA 54, Annex G which contains additional references from the UPC.

Sizing of Venting Systems Serving Appliances Equipped with Draft Hoods, Category I Appliances, and Appliances Listed for Use with Type B Vents

G.1 Examples Using Single Appliance Venting Tables. See Figure G.1(a) through Figure G.1(n).

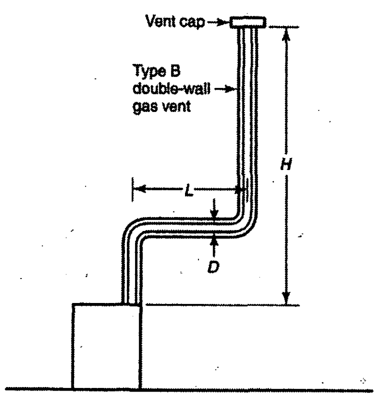


Table 5-8 is used when sizing Type B double-wall gas vent connected directly to the appliance.

Note: The appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE G.1(a) Type B Double-Wall Vent System Serving a Single Appliance With a Type B Double-Wall Vent.

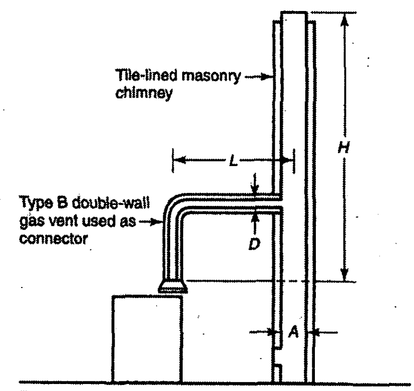


Table 5-10 is used when sizing a Type B double-wall gas vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney

Notes:
1. *A* is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.
2. The appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE G.1(c) Vent System Serving a Single Appliance With a Masonry Chimney and a Type B Double-Wall Vent Connector.

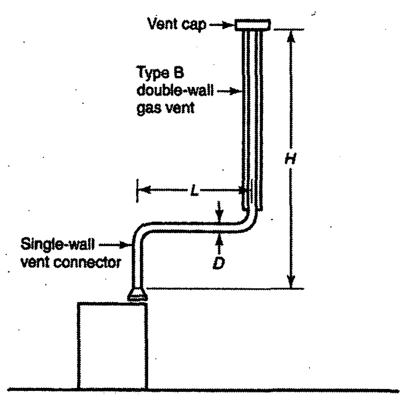


Table 5-9 is used when sizing a single-wall metal vent connector attached to a Type B double-wall gas vent.

Note: The appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE G.1(b) Type B Double-Wall Vent System Serving a Single Appliance With a Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector.

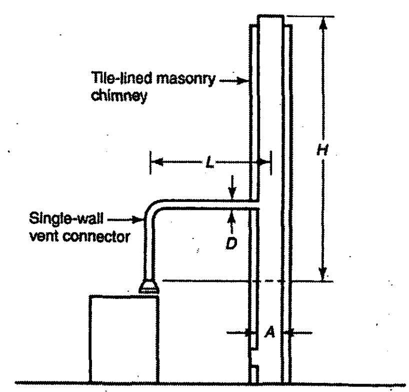
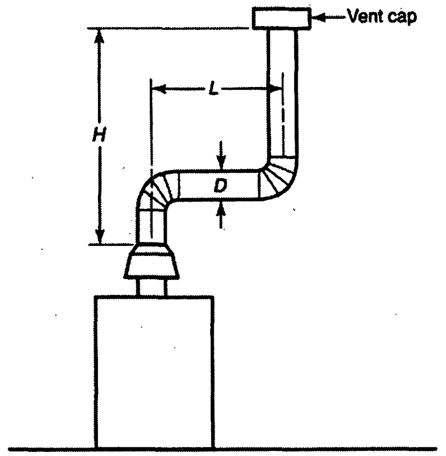


Table 5-11 is used when sizing a single-wall vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Notes:
1. *A* is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.
2. The appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE G.1(d) Vent System Serving a Single Appliance Using a Masonry Chimney and a Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector.



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal vent serving a single draft-hood-equipped appliance. (See Table 5-12)

FIGURE G.1(e) Asbestos Cement Type B or Single-Wall Metal Vent System Serving a Single Draft-Hood-Equipped Appliance.

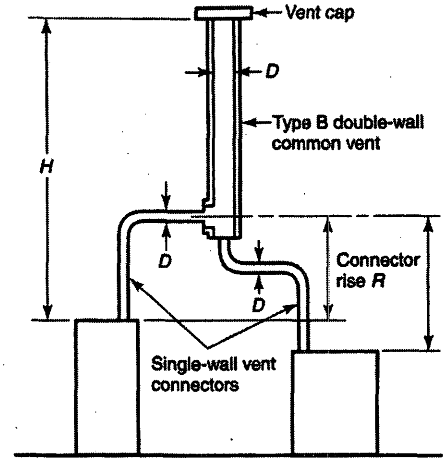


Table 5-15 is used when sizing single-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE G.1(g) Vent System Serving Two or More Appliances With Type B Double-Wall Vent and Single-Wall Metal Vent Connectors.

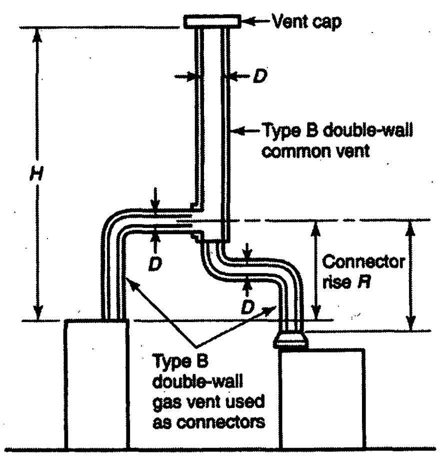


Table 5-14 is used when sizing Type B double-wall gas vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE G.1(f) Vent System Serving Two or More Appliances With Type B Double-Wall Vent and Type B Double-Wall Vent Connectors.

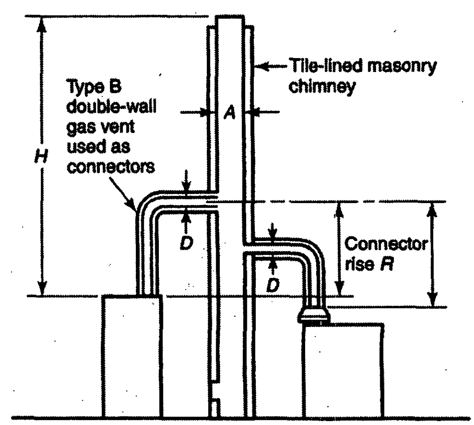


Table 5-16 is used when sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Notes:
1. A is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.
2. Each appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE G.1(h) Masonry Chimney Serving Two or More Appliances With Type B Double-Wall Vent Connectors.

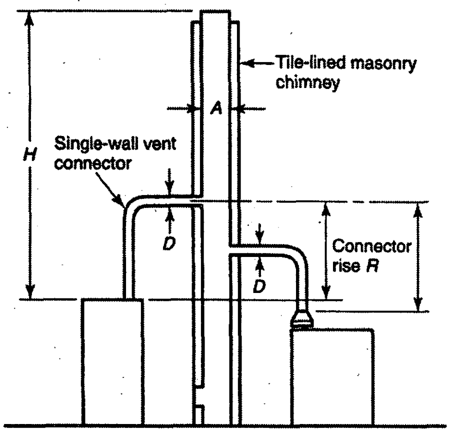
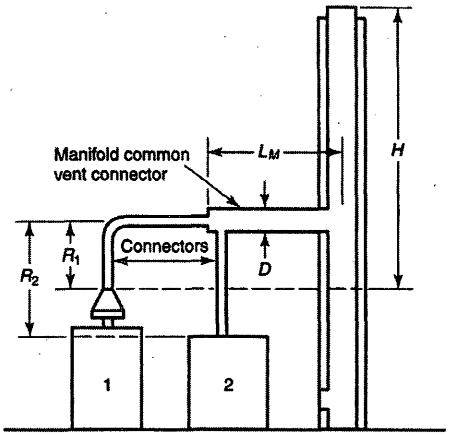


Table 5-17 is used when sizing single-wall metal vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Notes:
1. A is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.
2. Each appliance can be either Category I draft-hood-equipped or fan-assisted type.

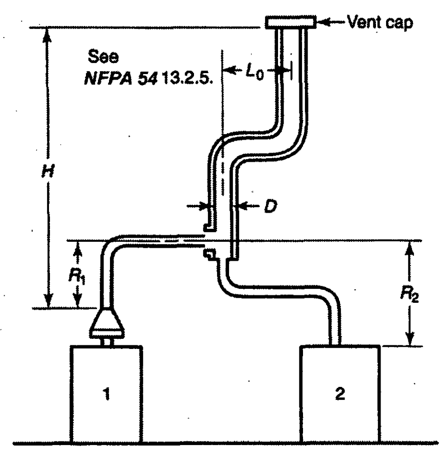
FIGURE G.1(i) Masonry Chimney Serving Two or More Appliances with Single-Wall Metal Vent Connectors.



Example: Manifolded common vent connector L_M can be no greater than 18 times the common vent connector manifold inside diameter; that is, a 4 in. (100 mm) inside diameter common vent connector manifold should not exceed 72 in. (1800 mm) in length.

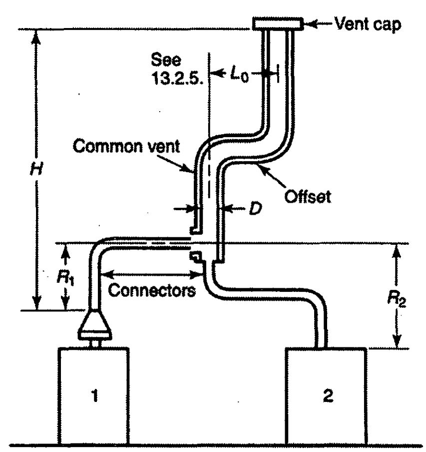
Note: This is an illustration of a typical manifolded vent connector. Different appliance, vent connector, or common vent types are possible.

FIGURE G.1(k) Use of Manifolded Common Vent Connector.



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal pipe vent serving two or more draft-hood-equipped appliances. *(See Table 5-18)*

FIGURE G.1(j) Asbestos Cement Type B or Single-Wall Metal Vent System Serving Two or More Draft-Hood-Equipped Appliances.



Example: Offset common vent

Note: This is an illustration of a typical offset vent. Different appliance, vent connector, or vent types are possible.

FIGURE G.1(l) Use of Offset Common Vent.

G.1.1 Example 1: Single Draft-Hood-Equipped Appliance. An installer has a 120,000-Btu/h input appliance with a 5-inch diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 10-foot-high Type B vent system. What size vent should be used assuming (1) a 5-foot lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with two 90-degree elbows or (2) a 5-foot lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with three 90-degree elbows in the vent system? See Figure G.1.1.

Solution
Table 5-9 should be used to solve this problem because single-wall metal vent connectors are being used with a Type B vent, as follows:

(1) Read down the first column in Table 5-9 until the row associated with a 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral is found. Read across this row until a vent capacity greater than 120,000 Btu/h is located in the shaded columns labeled NAT Max for draft-hood-equipped appliances. In this case, a 5-inch-diameter vent has a capacity of 122,000 Btu/h and can be used for this application.
(2) If three 90-degree elbows are used in the vent system, the maximum vent capacity listed in the tables must be reduced by 10 percent (see NFPA 54:13.1.3). This implies that the 5-inch-diameter vent has an adjusted capacity of only 110,000 Btu/h. In this case, the vent system must be increased to 6 inches in diameter. See the following calculations:

122,000 x 0.90 = 110,000 for 5-inch vent
From Table 5-10, select 6-inch vent.
186,000 x 0.90 = 167,000
This figure is greater than the required 120,000. Therefore, use a 6-inch vent and connector where three elbows are used.

G.1.2. Example 2: Single Fan-Assisted Appliance. An installer has an 80,000 Btu/h input fan-assisted appliance that must be installed using 10 feet of lateral connector attached to a 30-foot high Type B vent. Two 90 -degree elbows are needed for the installation. Can a single-wall metal vent connector be used for this application? See Figure G.1.2.

Solution
Table 5-9 refers to the use of single-wall metal vent connectors with Type B vent. In the first column find the row associated with a 30-foot height and a 10-foot lateral. Read across this row, looking at the

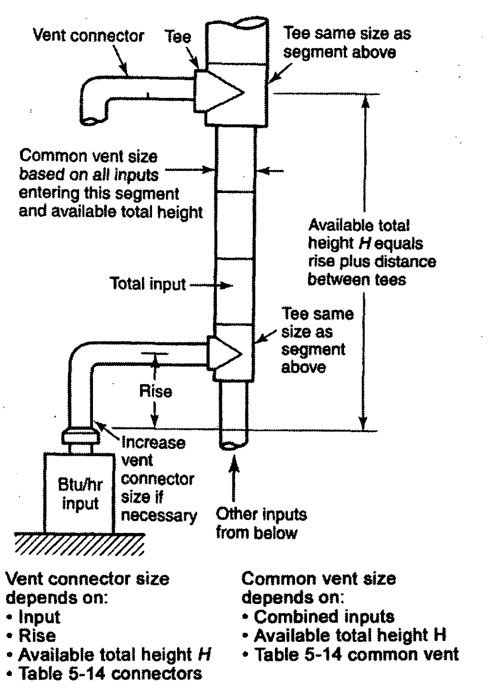


FIGURE G.1(m) Multistory Gas Vent Design Procedure for Each Segment of System.

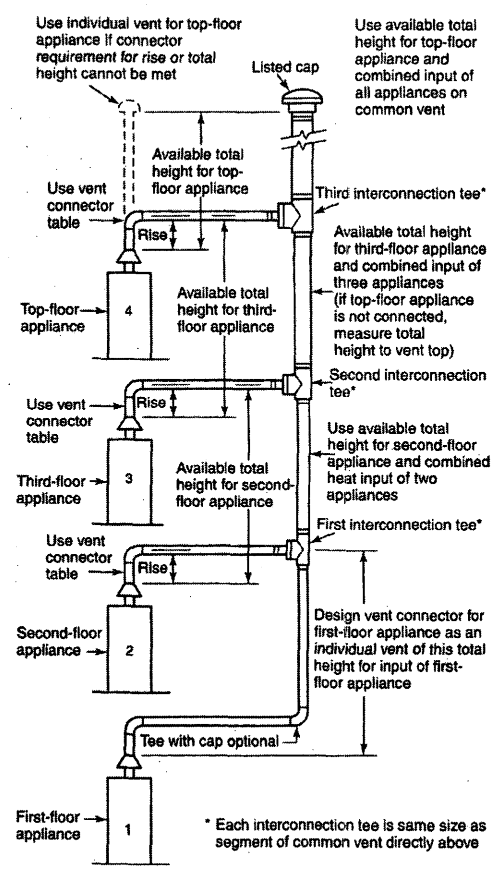


FIGURE G.1(n) Principles of Design of Multistory Vents Using Vent Connector and Common Vent Design Tables.

FAN Min and FAN Max columns, to find that a 3-inch diameter single-wall metal vent connector is not recommended. Moving to the next larger size single-wall connector (4 inch), we find that a 4-inch diameter single-wall metal connector has a recommended maximum vent capacity of 144,000 Btu/h. The 80,000 Btu/h fan-assisted appliance is outside this range, so the conclusion is that a single-wall metal connector could be used to vent the appliance. Table 5-9 shows the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4 inch vent with 5 feet of lateral to be between 72,000 Btu/h and 157,000 Btu/h.

If the appliance cannot be moved closer to the vertical vent, then a Type B vent could be used as the connector material. In this case, Table 5-8 shows that, for a 30-foot-high vent with 10 feet of lateral, the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4-inch-diameter vent attached to a fan-assisted appliance is between 37,000 Btu/h and 150,000 Btu/h.

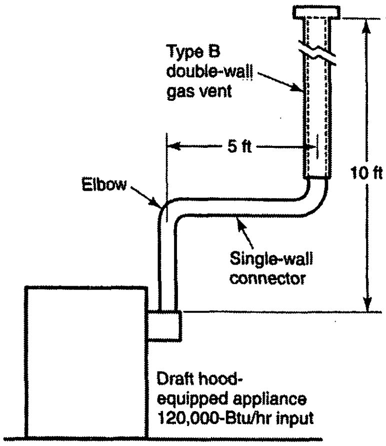
G.1.3. Example 3: Interpolating Between Table Values. An installer has an 80,000 Btu/h input appliance with a 4-inch diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 12-foot-high Type B vent. The vent connector has a 5-ft. lateral length and is also Type B. Can this appliance be vented using a 4-inch diameter vent?

Solution

Table 5-8 is used in the case of an all Type B Vent system. However, since there is no entry in Table 5-8 for a height of 12 feet, interpolation must be used. Read down the 4-inch diameter NAT Max column to the row associated with a 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral to find the capacity value of 77,000 Btu/h. Read further down to the 15-foot height, 5-foot lateral row to find the capacity value of 87,000 Btu/h. The difference between the 15-foot height capacity value and the 10-foot height capacity value is 10,000 Btu/h. The capacity for a vent system with a 12-foot height is equal to the capacity for a 10-foot height plus 2/5 of the difference between the 10-foot and 15-foot height values, or 77,000 + 2/5 x 10,000 = 81,000 Btu/h. Therefore, a 4-inch diameter vent can be used in the installation.

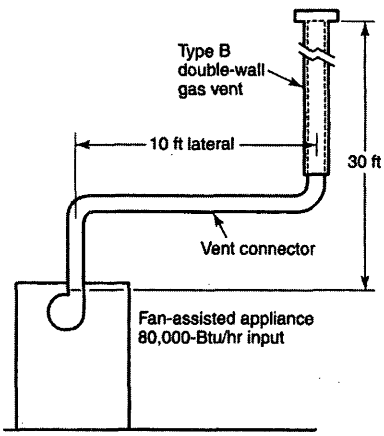
G.2 Examples Using Common Venting Tables.

G.2.1 Example 4: Common Venting Two Draft-Hood-Equipped Appliances. A 35,000-Btu/h water heater is to be common vented with a 150,000 Btu/h furnace, using a common vent with a total height of 30 feet. The connector rise is 2 feet for the water heater with a horizontal length of 4 feet. The connector rise for the furnace is 3 feet with a horizontal length of 8 feet. Assume single-wall metal connectors will be used with Type B vent. What size connectors and combined vent should be used in this installation?



For SI units, 1 ft = 0.305 m.

FIGURE G.1.1 Single Draft Hood-Equipped Appliance — Example 1.



For SI units, 1 ft = 0.305 m.

FIGURE G.1.2 Single Fan-Assisted Appliance — Example 2.

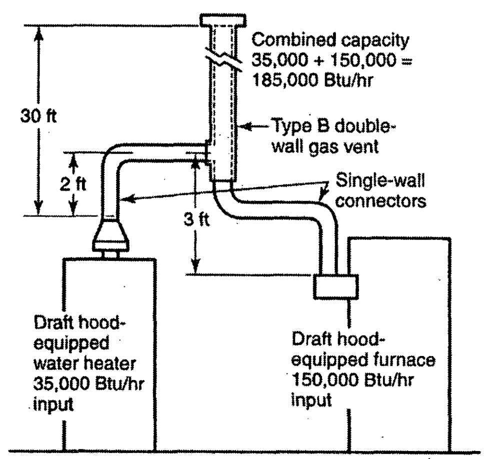


FIGURE G.2.1 Common Venting Two Draft Hood-Equipped Appliances — Example 4.

See Figure G.2.1.

Solution

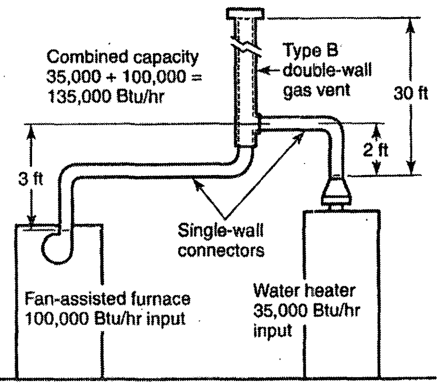
Table 5-15 should be used to size single-wall metal vent connectors attached to Type B vertical vents. In the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 5-15, find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height. For a 2-foot rise on the vent connector for the water heater, read the shaded columns for draft-hood-equipped appliances to find that a 3-inch diameter vent connector has a capacity of 37,000 Btu/h. Therefore, a 3-inch single-wall metal vent connector can be used with the water heater. For a draft-hood-equipped furnace with a 3-foot rise, read across the appropriate row to find that a 5-inch-diameter vent connector has a maximum capacity of 120,000 Btu/h (which is too small for the furnace), and a 6-inch diameter vent connector has a maximum vent capacity of 172,000 Btu/h. Therefore, a 6-inch diameter vent connector should be used with the 150,000 Btu/h furnace. Since both vent connector horizontal lengths are less than the maximum lengths listed in Table 5-8, the table values can be used without adjustments.

In the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 5-15, find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height and read over to the NAT + NAT portion of the 6-inch diameter column to find a maximum combined capacity of 257,000 Btu/h. Since the two appliances total only 185,000 Btu/h, a 6-inch common vent can be used.

G.2.2 Example 5 (a): Common Venting a Draft-Hood-Equipped Water Heater with a Fan-Assisted Furnace into a Type B Vent. In this case, a 35,000-Btu/h input draft-hood-equipped water heater with a 4-inch diameter draft hood outlet, 2-feet of connector rise, and 4-feet of horizontal length is to be common vented with a 100,000 Btu/h fan-assisted furnace with a 4-inch diameter flue collar, 3-feet of connector rise, and 6-feet of horizontal length. The common vent consists of a 30-foot height of Type B vent. What are the recommended vent diameters for each connector and the common vent? The installer would like to use a single-wall metal vent connector. See Figure G.2.2.

Solution (See Table 5-15)

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Since the water heater vent connector horizontal length of 4 feet is less than the maximum value listed in Table 5-15, the venting table values can be used without adjustment. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 5-15, read down the Total Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet and read across the 2-feet Connector Rise *(R)* row to the first Btu/h rating



For SI units, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 ft = 0.305 m.

FIGURE G.2.2 Common Venting a Draft Hood-Equipped Water Heater with a Fan-Assisted Furnace into a Type B Double-Wall Common Vent — Example 5(a).

TABLE G.2.3
Masonry Chimney Liner Dimensions with Circular Equivalents

Nominal Liner Size (in.)	Inside Dimensions of Liner (in.)	Inside Diameter or Equivalent Diameter (in.)	Equivalent Area (in.²)
4 x 8	2-1/2 x 6-1/2	4.0	12.2
		5.0	19.6
		6.0	28.3
		7.0	38.3
8 x 8	6-3/4 x 6-3/4	7.4	42.7
		8.0	50.3
8 x 12	6-1/2 x 10-1/2	9.0	63.6
		10.0	78.5
12 x 12	9-3/4 x 9-3/4	10.4	83.3
		11.0	95.0
12 x 16	9-1/2 x 13-1/2	11.8	107.5
		12.0	113.0
		14.0	153.9
16 x 16	13-1/4 x 13-1/4	14.5	162.9
		15.0	176.7
16 x 20	13 x 17	16.2	206.1
		18.0	254.4
20 x 20	16-3/4 x 16-3/4	18.2	260.2
		20.0	314.1
20 x 24	16-1/2 x 20-1/2	20.1	314.2
		22.0	380.1
24 x 24	20-1/4 x 20-1/4	22.1	380.1
		24.0	452.3
24 x 28	20-1/4 x 24-1/4	24.1	456.2
28 x 28	24-1/4 x 24-1/4	26.4	543.3
		27.0	572.5
30 x 30	25-1/2 x 25-1/2	27.9	607.0
		30.0	706.8
30 x 36	25-1/2 x 31-1/2	30.9	749.9
		33.0	855.3
36 x 36	31-1/2 x 31-1/2	34.4	929.4
		36.0	1017.9

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.² = 645 mm².

Note: When liner sizes differ dimensionally from those shown in this table, equivalent diameters can be determined from published tables for square and rectangular ducts of equivalent carrying capacity or by other engineering methods.

in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 37,000 Btu/h. Although this rating is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3-inch vent connector is prohibited by Section 511.1.1(5). A 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 67,000 Btu/h and is equal to the draft hood outlet diameter. A 4-inch vent connector is selected. Since the water heater is equipped with a draft hood, there are no minimum input rating restrictions.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 5-15, read down the Total Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet and across the 3-foot Connector Rise *(R)* row. Since the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu/h rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 119,000 Btu/h and a minimum input rating of 85,000 Btu/h.

The 100,000-Btu/h furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate. Since the furnace vent connector horizontal length of 6 feet is less than the maximum value listed in Table 5-8, the venting table values can be used without adjustment. If the furnace had an input rating of 80,000 Btu/h, then a Type B vent connector would be needed in order to meet the minimum capacity limit. (see Table 5-14)

Common Vent Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu/h. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 5-15, read down the Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN + NAT column that has a Btu/h rating equal to or greater than 135,000 Btu/h. The 4-inch common vent has a capacity of 132,000 Btu/h and the 5-inch common vent has a capacity of 202,000 Btu/h. Therefore, the 5-inch common vent should be used in this example.

Summary: In this example, the installer can use a 4-inch diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the water heater and a 4-inch-diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the furnace. The common vent should be a 5-inch-diameter Type B vent.

G.2.3 Example 5 (b): Common Venting into an Interior Masonry Chimney. In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Example 5 (a) are to be common-vented into a clay-tile-lined masonry chimney with a 30-foot height. The chimney is not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. The internal dimensions of the clay tile liner are nominally 8 inches x 12 inches. Assuming the same vent connector heights, laterals, and materials found in example 5 (a), what are the recommended vent connector diameters, and is this an acceptable installation?

Solution

Table 5-17 is used to size common venting installations involving single-wall connectors into masonry chimneys.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 5-17, Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise *(R)* row to the first Btu/h rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch vent connector has a maximum input of only 31,000 Btu/h, while a 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input of 57,000 Btu/h. A 4-inch vent connector must therefore be used.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 5-17, read down the total Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet and across the 3-feet Connector Rise *(R)* row. Because the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu/h rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4-inch vent connector has a maximum input rating of 127,000 Btu/h and a minimum input rating of 95,000 Btu/h. The 100,000 Btu/h furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

Masonry Chimney. From Table G.2.3, the equivalent area for a nominal liner size of 8 inches x 12 inches is 63.6 inches^2. Using Table 5-17, Common Vent Capacity, read down the FAN + NAT column under the Minimum Internal Area of Chimney value of 63 to the row for 30-foot height to find a capacity value of 739,000 Btu/h. The combined input rating of the furnace and water heater, 135,000 Btu/h, is less than the table value so this is an acceptable installation.

Section 511.1.9 requires the common vent area to be no greater than seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area. Both appliances in this installation have 4-inch-diameter outlets. From Table G.2.3, the equivalent area for an inside diameter of 4-inch is 12.2 in.^{2}. Seven times 12.2 equals 85.4, which is greater than 63.6, so this configuration is acceptable.

G.2.4 Example 5 (c): Common Venting into an Exterior Masonry Chimney. In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Examples 5(a) and 5(b) are to be common-vented into an exterior masonry chimney. The chimney height, clay-tile-liner dimensions, and vent connector heights and laterals are the same as in Example 5(b). This system is being installed in Charlotte, North Carolina. Does this exterior masonry chimney need to be relined? If

so, what corrugated metallic liner size is recommended? What vent connector diameters are recommended? See Table G.2.3 and Figure 5-13.

Solution

According to 511.2.18, Type B vent connectors are required to be used with exterior masonry chimneys. Use Table 5-21 and Table 5-22 to size FAN+NAT common venting installations involving Type-B double-wall connectors into exterior masonry chimneys.

The local 99 percent winter design temperature needed to use Table 5-21 and Table 5-22 can be found in the *ASHRAE Handbook – Fundamentals.* For Charlotte, North carolina, this design temperature is 19°F.

Chimney Liner Requirement. As in Example 5 (b), use the 63 in.^{2} column of Table 5-21 to the 30 ft height row to find that the combined appliance maximum input is 747,000 Btu/h. The combined input rating of the appliance in this installation, 135,000 Btu/h, is less than the maximum value, so this criterion is satisfied. Table 5-22, at a 19°F design temperature, and at the same vent height and internal area used earlier, shows that the minimum allowable input rating of a space-heating appliance is 470,000 Btu/h. The furnace input rating of 100,000 Btu/h is less than this minimum value. So this criterion is not satisfied, and an alternative venting design needs to be used, such as a Type B vent shown in Example 5(a) or a listed chimney liner system shown in the rest of the example.

According to Section 511.1.6, Table 5-9 or Table 5-10 are used for sizing corrugated metallic liners in masonry chimneys, with the maximum common vent capacities reduced by 20 percent. This example will be continued assuming Type B vent connectors.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 5-14 Connector Capacity, read down the total Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise *(R)* row to the first Btu/hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3 in. vent connector has a maximum capacity of 39,000 Btu/h. Although this rating is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3-inch vent connector is prohibited by 511.1.6. A 4 in. vent connector has a maximum input rating of 70,000 Btu/h and is equal to the draft hood outlet diameter. A 4-inch vent connector is selected.

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 5-14, Vent Connector Capacity, read down the total Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet, and read across the 3-foot Connector Rise *(R)* row to the first Btu/h rating in the FAN MAX column that is equal to or greater than the furnace input rating. The 100,000 Btu/h furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

Chimney Liner Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu/h. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 5-14, read down the total Vent Height *(H)* column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN + NAT column that has a Btu/h rating greater than 135,000 Btu/h. The 4 in. common vent has a capacity of 138,000 Btu/h. Reducing the maximum capacity by 20 percent (see 511.2.19) results in a maximum capacity for a 4-inch corrugated liner of 110,000 Btu/h, less than the total input of 135,000 Btu/h. So a larger liner is needed. The 5-inch common vent capacity listed in Table 5-14 is 210,000 Btu/h, and after reducing by 20 percent is 168,000 Btu/h. Therefore, a 5-inch corrugated metal liner should be used in this example.

Single Wall Connectors. Once it has been established that relining the chimney is necessary, Type B double-wall vent connectors are not specifically required. This example could be redone using Table 5-15 for single-wall vent connectors. For this case, the vent connector and liner diameters would be the same as found for Type B double-wall connectors.

The following is originally from NFPA 54, which contains additional reference.

Example of Combination of Indoor and Outdoor Combustion and Ventilation Opening Design.

J.1 Example of Combination Indoor and Outdoor Combustion Air Opening. Determine the required combination of indoor and outdoor combustion air opening sizes for the following equipment installation example.

Example Installation: A fan-assisted furnace and a draft-hood-equipped water heater with the following inputs are located in a 15-foot x 30-foot basement with an 8-foot ceiling. No additional indoor spaces can be used to help meet the equipment combustion air needs.

Fan-Assisted Furnace Input: 100,000 Btu/h
Draft-Hood-Equipped Water Heater Input: 40,000 Btu/h

Solution

(1) Determine the total available room volume: Equipment room volume: 15 feet x 30 feet with an 8-foot ceiling = 3,600 feet^3
(2) Determine the total required volume: The standard method to determine combustion air will be used to calculate the required volume.

the basement is calculated as follows:
100,000 Btu/h +40,000 Btu/h = 140,000 Btu/h
The Standard Method requires that the required volume be determined based on 50 cubic feet per 1,000 Btu/hour. Using Table A.9.3.2.1, the required volume for a 140,000 Btu/h water heater is 7,000 feet^3.

Conclusion: Indoor volume is insufficient to supply combustion air since the total of 3,600 feet^3 does not meet the required volume of 7000 feet^3. Therefore, additional combustion air must be provided from the outdoors.

(3) Determine ratio of the available volume to the required volume:

3,600 ft.^{3} = 0.51
7000 ft.^{3}

(4) Determine the reduction factor to be used to reduce the full outdoor air opening size to the minimum required based on ratio of indoor spaces:
1.00 – 0.51 (from Step 3) = 0.49

(5) Determine the single outdoor combustion air opening size as if all combustion air is to come from outdoors. In this example, the combustion air opening directly communicates with the outdoors.

140,000 Btu/h= 47 in.^{2}
3,000 Btu/in.^{2}

(6) Determine the minimum outdoor combustion air opening area:
Outdoor opening area = 0.49 (from Step 4) x 47 in.^{2}= 23 in.^{2}

Section 507.3 requires the minimum dimension of the air opening should not be less than 3 inches.

TABLE A.9.3.2.1
Standard Method Volume, All Appliances

Appliance Input (Btu/h)	Required Volume (ft.^{3})
5,000	250
10,000	500
15,000	750
20,000	1,000
25,000	1,250
30,000	1,500
35,000	1,750
40,000	2,000
45,000	2,250
50,000	2,500
55,000	2,750
60,000	3,000
65,000	3,250
70,000	3,500
75,000	3,750
80,000	4,000
85,000	4,250
90,000	4,500
95,000	4,750
100,000	5,000
105,000	5,250
110,000	5,500
115,000	5,750
120,000	6,000
125,000	6,250
130,000	6,500
135,000	6,750
140,000	7,000
145,000	7,250
150,000	7,500
160,000	8,000
170,000	8,500
180,000	9,000
190,000	9,500
200,000	10,000
210,000	10,500
220,000	11,000
230,000	11,500
240,000	12,000
250,000	12,500
260,000	13,000
270,000	13,500
280,000	14,000
290,000	14,500
300,000	15,000

507.4.1 See Figure 5-8 • 507.4.1(1) See Figure 5-9 and Figure 5-10 • 507.4.1(2) See Figure 5-11 • 507.4.2 See Figure 5-12 • For information on gas convenience outlets, see AGA 7-90, *Requirements for Gas Convenience Outlets*.

CHAPTER 6

WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

601.0 Running Water Required.

601.1 Except where not deemed necessary for safety or sanitation by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, each plumbing fixture shall be provided with an adequate supply of potable running water piped thereto in an approved manner, so arranged as to flush and keep it in a clean and sanitary condition without danger of backflow or cross-connection. Water closets and urinals shall be flushed by means of an approved flush tank or flushometer valve. In jurisdictions that adopt Chapter 16, water closets, urinals, and trap primers in designated non-residential buildings may be provided with reclaimed water as defined and regulated by Chapter 16 of this code.

Exception: Listed fixtures that do not require water for their operation and are not connected to the water supply.

601.2 Identification of a Potable and Nonpotable Water System. In all buildings where potable water and nonpotable water systems are installed, each system shall be clearly identified. Each system shall be color coded as follows:

601.2.1 Potable Water – Green background with white lettering.

601.2.2 Nonpotable Water – Yellow background with black lettering, with the words "Caution: Nonpotable water, do not drink."

Each system shall be identified with a colored band to designate the liquid being conveyed, and the direction of normal flow shall be clearly shown. The minimum size of the letters and length of the color field shall conform to Table 6-1.

A colored identification band shall be indicated every twenty (20) feet (6096 mm) but at least once per room, and shall be visible from the floor level.

Where vacuum breakers or backflow preventers are installed with fixtures listed in Table 14-1, identification of the discharge side may be omitted. Each outlet on the nonpotable water line that could be used for special purposes shall be posted as follows:

"Caution: Nonpotable water, do not drink."

601.2.3 Reclaimed Water – Purple (Pantone color #512) background and shall be imprinted in nominal 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) high, black upper-case letters, with the words "Caution: Reclaimed water, do not drink."

601.3 Faucets and diverters shall be connected to the water distribution system so that hot water corresponds to the left side of the fittings.

TABLE 6-1
Minimum Length of Color Field and Size of Letters

Outside Diameter of Pipe or Covering inches	(mm)	Minimum Length of Color Field inches	(mm)	Minimum Size of Letters inches	(mm)
1/2 to 1-1/4	(15 to 32)	8	(203)	1/2	(12.7)
1-1/2 to 2	(40 to 50)	8	(203)	3/4	(19.1)
2-1/2 to 6	(65 to 150)	12	(305)	1-1/4	(32)
8 to 10	(200 to 250)	24	(619)	2-1/2	(64)
Over 10	(Over 250)	32	(813)	3-1/2	(89)

602.0 Unlawful Connections

602.1 No installation of potable water supply piping or part thereof shall be made in such a manner that it will be possible for used, unclean, polluted, or contaminated water, mixtures, or substances to enter any portion of such piping from any tank, receptor, equipment, or plumbing fixture by reason of back-siphonage, suction, or any other cause, either during normal use and operation thereof, or when any such tank, receptor, equipment, or plumbing fixture is flooded or subject to pressure in excess of the operating pressure in the hot or cold water piping.

602.2 No person shall make a connection or allow one to exist between pipes or conduits carrying domestic water supplied by any public or private water service system, and any pipes, conduits, or fixtures containing or carrying water from any other source or containing or carrying water that has been used for any purpose whatsoever, or any piping carrying chemicals, liquids, gases, or any substances whatsoever, unless there is provided a backflow prevention device approved for the potential hazard and maintained in accordance with this code. Each point of use shall be separately protected when potential cross-contamination of individual units exists.

602.3 No plumbing fixture, device, or construction shall be installed or maintained or shall be connected to any domestic water supply when such installation or connection may provide a possibility of polluting such water supply or may provide a cross-connection between a distributing system of water for drinking and domestic purposes and water that

may become contaminated by such plumbing fixture, device, or construction unless there is provided a backflow prevention device approved for the potential hazard.

602.4 No water piping supplied by any private water supply system shall be connected to any other source of supply without the approval of the Authority Having Jurisdiction, Health Department, or other department having jurisdiction.

603.0 Cross-Connection Control.

Cross-connection control shall be provided in accordance with the provisions of this chapter.

No person shall install any water-operated equipment or mechanism, or use any water-treating chemical or substance, if it is found that such equipment, mechanism, chemical, or substance may cause pollution or contamination of the domestic water supply. Such equipment or mechanism may be permitted only when equipped with an approved backflow prevention device or assembly.

603.1 Approval of Devices or Assemblies. Before any device or assembly is installed for the prevention of backflow, it shall have first been approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Devices or assemblies shall be tested for conformity with recognized standards or other standards acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction that are consistent with the intent of this code.

All devices or assemblies installed in a potable water supply system for protection against backflow

TABLE 6-2
Backflow Prevention Devices, Assemblies, and Methods

Device, Assembly, or Method[1]	Degree of Hazard				Installation [2,3]
	Pollution (Low Hazard)		Contamination (High Hazard)		
	Back Siphonage	Back Pressure	Back Siphonage	Back Pressure	
Airgap	x		x		See Table 6-3 in this chapter.
Atmospheric Vacuum Breaker	x		x		Upright position. No valve downstream. Minimum of six (6) inches (152 mm) or listed distance above all downstream piping and flood-level rim of receptor.[4,5]
Spill-Resistant Pressure-Type Vacuum Breaker	x	x	x		Upright position. Minimum of six (6) inces (152 mm) or listed distance above all downstream piping and flood-level rim of receptor.[5]
Double Check Valve Backflow Preventer	x	x			Horizontal, unless otherwise listed. Requires one (1) foot minimum clearance at bottom for maintenance. May need platform/ladder for test and repair. Does not discharge water.
Pressure Vacuum Breaker	x		x		Upright position. May have valves downstream. Minimum of twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above all downstream, piping and flood-level rim of receptor. May discharge water.
Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventer	x	x	x	x	Horizontal unless otherwise listed. Requires one (1) foot (305 mm) minimum clearance at bottom for maintenance. May need platform ladder for test and repair. May discharge water.

[1] See description of devices and assemblies in this chapter.
[2] Installation in pit or vault requires previous approval by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
[3] Refer to general and specific requirement for installation.
[4] Not to be subjected to operating pressure for more than 12 hours in any 24-hour period.
[5] For deck-mounted and equipment-mounted vacuum breaker, see Section 603.4.15.

shall be maintained in good working condition by the person or persons having control of such devices or assemblies. Such devices or assemblies shall be tested at the time of installation, repair, or relocation and at least on an annual schedule thereafter, or more often when required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. If found to be defective or inoperative, the device or assembly shall be repaired or replaced. No device or assembly shall be removed from use or relocated or other device or assembly substituted, without the approval of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Testing shall be performed by a certified backflow assembly tester.

603.2 Backflow Prevention Devices, Assemblies, and Methods.

603.2.1 Airgap. The minimum airgap to afford backflow protection shall be in accordance with Table 6-3.

603.2.2 Atmospheric Vacuum Breaker (AVB). An atmospheric vacuum breaker consists of a body, a checking member, and an atmospheric opening.

603.2.3 Hose Connection Backflow Preventer. A hose connection backflow preventer consists of two independent check valves with an independent atmospheric vent between and a means of field testing and draining.

603.2.4 Double Check Valve Backflow Prevention Assembly (DC). A double check valve backflow prevention assembly consists of two independently acting internally loaded check valves, four properly located test cocks, and two isolation valves.

603.2.5 Pressure Vacuum Breaker Backflow Prevention Assembly (PVB). A pressure vacuum breaker backflow prevention assembly consists of a loaded air inlet valve, an internally loaded check valve, two (2) properly located test

TABLE 6-3
Minimum Airgaps for Water Distribution[4]

Fixtures	When not affected by sidewalls[1]		When affected by sidewall[2]	
	Inches	(mm)	Inches	(mm)
Effective openings[3] not greater than one-half (1/2) inch (12.7 mm) in diameter	1	(25.4)	1-1/2	(38)
Effective openings[3] not greater than three-quarters (3/4) inch (20 mm) in diameter	1-1/2	(38)	2-1/4	(57)
Effective openings[3] not greater than one (1) inch (25 mm) in diameter	2	(51)	3	(76)
Effective openings[3] greater than one (1) inch (25 mm) in diameter	Two (2) times diameter of effective opening		Three (3) times diameter of effective opening	

[1] Sidewalls, ribs, or similar obstructions do not affect airgaps when spaced from the inside edge of the spout opening a distance greater than three times the diameter of the effective opening for a single wall, or a distance greater than four times the effective opening for two intersecting walls.

[2] Vertical walls, ribs, or similar obstructions extending from the water surface to or above the horizontal plane of the spout opening other than specified in Note 1 above. The effect of three or more such vertical walls or ribs has not been determined. In such cases, the airgap shall be measured from the top of the wall.

[3] The effective opening shall be the minimum cross-sectional area at the seat of the control valve or the supply pipe or tubing that feeds the device or outlet. If two or more lines supply one outlet, the effective opening shall be the sum of the cross-sectional areas of the individual supply lines or the area of the single outlet, whichever is smaller.

[4] Airgaps less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm) shall be approved only as a permanent part of a listed assembly that has been tested under actual backflow conditions with vacuums of 0 to 25 inches (635 mm) of mercury.

cocks, and two (2) isolation valves. This device shall be installed indoors only if provisions for spillage are provided.

603.2.6 Pressure Vacuum Breaker Spill-Resistant-Type Backflow Prevention Assembly (SVB). A pressure-type vacuum breaker backflow prevention assembly consists of one (1) check valve force-loaded closed and an air inlet vent valve force-loaded open to atmosphere, positioned downstream of the check valve, and located between and including two (2) tightly closing shutoff valves and test cocks.

603.2.7 Reduced-Pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly (RP). A reduced-pressure principle backflow prevention assembly consists of two independently acting internally loaded check valves, a differential pressure-relief valve, four properly located test cocks, and two isolation valves.

603.3 General Requirements.

603.3.1 All assemblies shall conform to listed standards and be acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, with jurisdiction over the selection and installation of backflow prevention assemblies.

603.3.2 Where more than one (1) backflow prevention valve is installed on a single premise, and the valves are installed in one location, each separate valve shall be permanently identified by the permittee in a manner satisfactory to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

603.3.3 The premise owner or responsible person shall have the backflow prevention assembly tested by a certified backflow assembly tester at the time of installation, repair, or relocation and at least on an annual schedule thereafter, or more often when required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The periodic testing shall be performed in accordance with the procedures referenced in Table 14-1 by a tester qualified in accordance with those standards.

603.3.4 Access and clearance shall be provided for the required testing, maintenance, and repair. Access and clearance shall require a minimum of one (1) foot (305 mm) between the lowest portion of the assembly and grade, floor, or platform. Installations elevated more than five (5) feet (1524 mm) above the floor or grade shall be provided with a permanent platform capable of supporting a tester or maintenance person.

603.3.5 Direct connections between potable water piping and sewer-connected wastes shall not exist under any condition with or without backflow protection. Where potable water is discharged to the drainage system, it shall be by means of an approved airgap of two (2) pipe diameters of the supply inlet, but in no case shall the gap be less than one (1) inch (25 mm). Connection may be made to the inlet side of a trap provided that an approved vacuum breaker is installed not less than six (6) inches (152 mm), or the distance according to the device's listing, above the flood-level rim of such trapped fixture, so that at no time will any such device be subjected to any back-pressure.

603.3.6 Backflow preventers for hot water over 110°F (43.3°C) shall be a type designed to operate at temperatures of 110°F (43.3°C) or more without rendering any portion of the assembly inoperative.

603.3.7 Fixtures, appliances, or appurtenances with integral backflow preventers or integral airgaps manufactured as a unit shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements and the manufacturers' instructions.

603.3.8 In cold climate areas, backflow assemblies and devices shall be protected from freezing with an outdoor enclosure or by a method acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

603.3.9 All drain lines serving backflow devices or assemblies shall be sized in accordance with the discharge rates of the manufacturers' flow charts of such devices or assemblies.

603.3.10 Design and Installation of Plumbing Fixtures. Plumbing fixtures shall be installed such that fixture fittings, complying with the backflow prevention requirements of ASME A112.18.1, do not have these requirements compromised by the designated fixture fitting mounting surface.

603.4 Specific Requirements.

603.4.1 Water closet and urinal flushometer valves shall be equipped with an atmospheric vacuum breaker. The vacuum breaker shall be installed on the discharge side of the flushometer valve with the critical level at least six (6) inches (152 mm), or the distance according to its listing, above the overflow rim of a water closet bowl or the highest part of a urinal.

603.4.2 Water closet and urinal tanks shall be equipped with a ballcock. The ballcock shall be installed with the critical level at least one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the full opening of the overflow pipe. In cases where the ballcock has no hush tube, the bottom of the water supply inlet shall be installed one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the full opening of the overflow pipe.

603.4.3 Water closet flushometer tanks shall be protected against backflow by an approved backflow prevention assembly, device, or method.

603.4.4 Heat Exchangers.

603.4.4.1 Heat exchangers used for heat transfer, heat recovery, or solar heating shall protect the potable water system from being contaminated by the heat transfer medium. Single-wall heat exchangers used in indirect-fired water heaters shall meet the requirements of Section 506.4.2. Double-wall heat exchangers shall separate the potable water from the heat-transfer medium by providing a space between the two walls that is vented to the atmosphere.

603.4.5 Water supply inlets to tanks, vats, sumps, swimming pools, and other receptors shall be protected by one of the following means:

(1) An approved airgap.

(2) A listed vacuum breaker installed on the discharge side of the last valve with the critical level not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) or in accordance with its listing.

(3) A backflow preventer suitable for the contamination or pollution, installed in accordance with the requirements for that type of device or assembly as set forth in this chapter.

603.4.6 Protection from Lawn Sprinklers and Irrigation Systems.

603.4.6.1 Potable water supplies to systems having no pumps or connections for pumping equipment, and no chemical injection or provisions for chemical injection, shall be protected from backflow by one of the following devices:

(1) Atmospheric vacuum breaker

(2) Pressure vacuum breaker

(3) Spill-resistant pressure vacuum breaker

(4) Reduced-pressure backflow preventer

603.4.6.2 Where sprinkler and irrigation systems have pumps, connections for pumping equipment, or auxiliary air tanks, or are otherwise capable of creating back-pressure, the potable water supply shall be protected by the following type of device if the backflow device is located upstream from the source of back-pressure:

(1) Reduced-pressure backflow preventer

603.4.6.3 Where systems have a backflow device installed downstream from a potable water supply pump or a potable water supply pump connection, the device shall be one of the following:

(1) Atmospheric vacuum breaker

(2) Pressure vacuum breaker

(3) Spill-resistant pressure vacuum breaker

(4) Reduced-pressure backflow preventer

603.4.6.4 Where systems include a chemical injector or any provisions for chemical injection, the potable water supply shall be protected by the following:

(1) Reduced-pressure backflow preventer

603.4.7 Potable water outlets with hose attachments, other than water heater drains, boiler drains, and clothes washer connections, shall be protected by a nonremovable hose-bibb-type backflow preventer, a nonremovable hose bibb-type vacuum breaker, or by an atmospheric vacuum breaker installed at least six (6) inches (152 mm) above the highest point of usage located on the discharge side of the last valve. In climates where freezing temperatures occur, a listed self-draining frost-proof hose bibb with an integral backflow preventer or vacuum breaker shall be used.

603.4.8 Water-cooled compressors, degreasers, or any other water-cooled equipment shall be protected by a backflow preventer installed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter.

Note:

Water-cooled equipment that produces back-pressure shall be equipped with the appropriate protection.

603.4.9 Water inlets to water-supplied aspirators shall be equipped with a vacuum breaker installed in accordance with its listing requirements and this chapter. The discharge shall drain through an airgap. When the tailpiece of a fixture to receive the discharge of an aspirator is used, the airgap shall be located above the flood-level rim of the fixture.

603.4.10 Potable water makeup connections to steam or hot water boilers shall be provided with a listed backflow protection assembly.

603.4.11 Nonpotable Water Piping. In cases where it is impractical to correct individual cross-connections on the domestic waterline, the line supplying such outlets shall be considered a nonpotable water line. No drinking or domestic water outlets shall be connected to the nonpotable waterline. Whenever possible, all portions of the nonpotable waterline shall be exposed, and all exposed portions shall be properly identified in a manner satisfactory to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Each outlet on the nonpotable waterline that may be used for drinking or domestic purposes shall be posted: "Caution: Nonpotable water, do not drink."

603.4.12 Potable water supply to carbonators shall be protected by either an airgap or a vented

backflow preventer for carbonated beverage dispensers installed within the carbonated beverage dispenser. The carbonated beverage dispenser shall bear the label of an approved testing agency, certifying and attesting that such equipment has been tested and inspected and meets the requirements of the approved applicable standard. Carbonated beverage dispensers without an approved internal airgap or vented backflow preventer for carbonated beverage dispensers and carbonated beverage dispensing systems shall have the water supply protected with a vented backflow preventer for carbonated beverage dispensers.

603.4.13 Water Treatment Units. Reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units shall meet the requirements of the appropriate standards referenced in Table 14-1. Waste or discharge from reverse osmosis or other types of water treatment units shall enter the drainage system through an airgap.

603.4.14 Backflow preventers shall not be located in any area containing fumes that are toxic, poisonous, or corrosive.

603.4.15 Deck-mounted or equipment-mounted vacuum breakers shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturers' instructions, with the critical level not less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the flood-level rim.

603.4.16 Protection from Fire Systems.

603.4.16.1 Except as provided under Sections 603.4.16.2 and 603.4.16.3, potable water supplies to fire protection systems that are normally under pressure, including but not limited to standpipes and automatic sprinkler systems, except in one- or two-family residential sprinkler systems, piped in materials approved for potable water distribution systems shall be protected from back-pressure and back-siphonage by one of the following testable devices:

(1) Double check valve assembly

(2) Double check detector assembly

(3) Reduced pressure backflow preventer

(4) Reduced pressure detector assembly

Potable water supplies to fire protection systems that are not normally under pressure shall be protected from backflow and shall meet the requirements of the appropriate standards referenced in Table 14-1.

603.4.16.2 Where fire protection systems supplied from a potable water system include a fire department (siamese) connection that is located less than seventeen hundred (1,700) feet (518.2 m) from a non-potable water source that could be used by the fire department as a secondary water supply, the potable water supply shall be protected by one of the following:

(1) Reduced pressure backflow preventor

(2) Reduced pressure detector assembly

Note:

Nonpotable water sources include fire department vehicles carrying water of questionable quality or water that is treated with antifreeze, corrosion inhibitors, or extinguishing agents.

603.4.16.3 Where antifreeze, corrosion inhibitors, or other chemicals are added to a fire protection system supplied from a potable water supply, the potable water system shall be protected by one of the following:

(1) Reduced pressure backflow preventer

(2) Reduced pressure detector assembly

603.4.16.4 Whenever a backflow device is installed in the potable water supply to a fire protection system, the hydraulic design of the system shall account for the pressure drop through the backflow device. If such devices are retrofitted for an existing fire protection system, the hydraulics of the sprinkler system design shall be checked to verify that there will be sufficient water pressure available for satisfactory operation of the fire sprinklers.

603.4.16.5 Residential Sprinkler Systems. When residential sprinkler systems are installed using the potable water system, they shall be installed in accordance with the standards listed in Table 14-1.

603.4.17 Special Equipment, Water Supply Protection. Vacuum breakers for washer-hose bedpans shall be located not less than five (5) feet (1,524 mm) above the floor. Hose connections in health care or laboratory areas shall not be less than six (6) feet (1,829 mm) above the floor.

603.4.18 Portable cleaning equipment, dental vacuum pumps, and chemical dispensers shall be protected from backflow by an airgap, an atmospheric vacuum breaker, a spill-proof vacuum breaker, or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer.

603.4.19 Water Heater Connectors. Flexible metallic water heater connectors or reinforced flexible water heater connectors connecting water heaters to the piping system shall be in

compliance with the appropriate standards listed in Table 14-1.

603.4.20 Combination stop-and-waste valves or cocks shall not be installed underground.

TIA **603.4.21 Pure Water Process Systems.** The water supply to a pure water process system, such as dialysis water systems, semiconductor washing systems, and similar process piping systems, shall be protected from back-pressure and back-siphonage by a reduced-pressure principle backflow preventer.

TIA **603.4.21.1 Dialysis Water Systems.** The individual connections of the dialysis related equipment to the dialysis pure water system do not require additional backflow protection.

603.4.22 Plumbing Fixture Fittings. Plumbing fixture fittings with integral backflow protection shall comply with ASME A112.18.1.

604.0 Materials.

604.1 All pipe, tube, and fittings carrying water used in potable water systems intended to supply drinking water shall meet the requirements of NSF 61 as found in Table 14-1. All materials used in the water supply system, except valves and similar devices, shall be of a like material, except where otherwise approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Materials for building water piping and building supply piping shall be in accordance with Table 6-4 and the standards in Table 14-1.

604.2 Copper tube for water piping shall have a weight of not less than Type L.

> **Exception:** Type M copper tubing may be used for water piping when piping is aboveground in, or on, a building or underground outside of structures.

604.3 All hard-drawn copper tubing for water supply and distribution in addition to the required incised marking, shall be marked in accordance with ASTM B 88 *Seamless Copper Water Tube* as listed in Table 14-1. The colors shall be: Type K, green; Type L, blue; Type M, red.

604.4 Listed flexible copper water connectors shall be installed in readily accessible locations, unless otherwise listed.

604.5 Cast-iron fittings up to and including two (2) inches (51 mm) in size, when used in connection with potable water piping, shall be galvanized.

604.6 All malleable iron water fittings shall be galvanized.

604.7 Piping and tubing that has previously been used for any purpose other than for potable water systems shall not be used.

604.8 Approved plastic materials may be used in water service piping, provided that where metal water service piping is used for electrical grounding purposes, replacement piping therefore shall be of like materials.

> **Exception:** Where a grounding system acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction is installed, inspected, and approved, metallic pipe may be replaced with nonmetallic pipe.

604.9 Solder shall conform to the requirements of Section 316.1.3.

604.10 Water pipe and fittings with a lead content which exceeds eight (8) percent shall be prohibited in piping systems used to convey potable water.

604.11 PEX. Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing shall be marked with the appropriate standard designation(s) listed in Table 14-1 for which the tubing has been approved. PEX tubing shall be installed in compliance with the provisions of this section.

604.11.1 PEX Fittings. Metal insert fittings, metal compression fittings, and cold expansion fittings used with PEX tubing shall be manufactured to and marked in accordance with the standards for the fittings in Table 14-1.

604.11.2 Water Heater Connections. PEX tubing shall not be installed within the first eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) of piping connected to a water heater.

604.12 Flexible Corrugated Connectors. Flexible corrugated connectors of copper or stainless steel shall be limited to the following connector lengths:

Water Heater Connectors – twenty-four (24) inches (609 mm).

Fixture Connectors – thirty (30) inches (762 mm).

Washing Machine Connectors – seventy-two (72) inches (1827 mm).

Dishwasher and Icemaker Connectors – one hundred twenty (120) inches (3048 mm).

604.13 PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE. Crosslinked polyethylene-aluminum-crosslinked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) and polyethylene-aluminum-polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) composite pipe shall be marked with the appropriate standard designations listed in Table 14-1 for which the piping has been listed or approved. PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE piping shall be installed in compliance with the provisions of this section.

604.13.1 PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE. Fittings used with PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE piping shall be manufactured to and marked in

TABLE 6-4

Material	Water Distribution Pipe and Fittings Hot	Water Distribution Pipe and Fittings Cold	Building Supply Pipe and Fittings
Asbestos – Cement			X
Brass	X	X	X
Copper	X	X	X
Cast Iron	X	X	X
CPVC	X	X	X
Galvanized Malleable Iron	X	X	X
Galvanized Wrought Iron	X	X	X
Galvanized Steel	X	X	X
PE			X
PE-AL-PE	X	X	X
PEX	X	X	X
PEX-AL-PEX	X	X	X
PVC			X

accordance with the standard for the fittings in Table 14-1.

604.13.2 Water Heater Connections. PEX-AL-PEX or PE-AL-PE tubing shall not be installed within the first eighteen inches (18) (457 mm) of piping connected to a water heater.

604.14 Water Heater Connectors. Flexible metallic water heater connectors or reinforced flexible water heater connectors connecting water heating to the piping system shall be in compliance with the appropriate standards listed in Table 14-1.

605.0 Valves.

605.1 Valves up to and including two (2) inches (51 mm) in size shall be brass or other approved material. Sizes over two (2) inches (51 mm) may have cast-iron or brass bodies. Each gate or ball valve shall be a fullway type with working parts of non-corrosive material.

605.2 A fullway valve controlling all outlets shall be installed on the discharge side of each water meter and on each unmetered water supply. Water piping supplying more than one building on any one premises shall be equipped with a separate fullway valve to each building, so arranged that the water supply can be turned on or off to any individual or separate building provided; however, that supply piping to a single-family residence and building accessory thereto may be controlled on one valve. Such shutoff valves shall be accessible at all times. A fullway valve shall be installed on the discharge piping from water supply tanks at or near the tank. A fullway valve shall be installed on the cold water supply pipe to each water heater at or near the water heater.

605.3 In multidwelling units, one (1) or more shutoff valves shall be provided in each dwelling unit so that the water supply to any plumbing fixture or group of fixtures in that dwelling unit can be shut off without stopping water supply to fixtures in other dwelling units. These valves shall be accessible in the dwelling unit that they control.

605.4 All valves used to control two (2) or more openings shall be fullway gate valves, ball valves, or other approved valves designed and approved for the service intended.

605.5 A control valve shall be installed immediately ahead of each water-supplied appliance and immediately ahead of each slip joint or appliance supply.

Parallel water distribution systems shall provide a control valve either immediately ahead of each fixture being supplied or installed at the manifold and shall be identified with the fixture being supplied.

605.6 All required shutoff or control valves shall be accessible.

605.7 A single control valve shall be installed on a water supply line ahead of any automatic metering valve that supplies a battery of fixtures.

606.0 Joints and Connections.

606.1 Types of Joints.

606.1.1 Flared Joints. Flared joints for soft copper water tubing shall be made with fittings meeting approved standards. The tubing shall be reamed to the full bore, resized to round, and expanded with a proper flaring tool.

606.1.2 Mechanical Joints. Mechanical joints for cast-iron water pipe shall conform to nationally recognized standards.

606.1.3 Mechanically Formed Tee Fittings. Mechanically extracted collars shall be formed in a continuous operation consisting of drilling a pilot hole and drawing out the tube surface to form a collar having a height not less than three (3) times the thickness of the branch tube wall.

The branch tube shall be notched to conform with the inner curve of the run tube and shall have two (2) dimple/depth stops to ensure that penetration of the branch tube into the collar is of sufficient depth for brazing and that the branch tube does not obstruct the flow in the main line tube. Dimple/depth stops shall be in line with the run of the tube. The second dimple shall be one quarter (1/4) inch (6.35 mm) above the first and shall serve as a visual point of inspection.

All joints shall be brazed in accordance with Section 316.1.7. Soldered joints shall not be allowed.

606.2 Use of Joints.

606.2.1 Copper Water Tube. Joints in copper tubing shall be made by the appropriate use of approved fittings properly soldered or brazed together as provided in Section 316.1.3 or 316.1.7 or by means of approved flared or compression fittings in Section 606.1.1 or 316.1.5. Solder and soldering flux shall conform to the requirements of Section 316.1.3. Mechanically formed tee fittings shall be made by brazing only and shall conform to the requirements of Section 316.1.7.

606.2.2 Plastic Fittings. Female PVC screwed fittings for water piping shall be used with plastic male fittings and plastic male threads only.

606.2.3 Slip Joints. In water piping, slip joints may be used only on the exposed fixture supply.

607.0 Gravity Supply Tanks.

Gravity tanks for potable water shall be tightly covered, and have not less than a sixteen (16) square-inch (10,323 mm^2) overflow screened with copper screen having not less than fourteen (14) nor more than eighteen (18) openings per linear inch (25.4 mm).

608.0 Water Pressure, Pressure Regulators, Pressure Relief Valves, and Vacuum Relief Valves.

608.1 Inadequate Water Pressure. Whenever the water pressure in the main or other source of supply will not provide a residual water pressure of at least fifteen (15) pounds per square inch (103.4 kPa), after allowing for friction and other pressure losses, a tank and a pump or other means that will provide said fifteen (15) pound (103.4 kPa) pressure shall be installed. Whenever fixtures and/or fixture fittings are installed that require residual pressure higher than fifteen (15) pounds per square inch (103.4 kPa), that minimum residual pressure shall be provided.

608.2 Excessive Water Pressure. Where static water pressure in the water supply piping is in excess of eighty (80) pounds per square inch (552 kPa), an approved-type pressure regulator preceded by an adequate strainer shall be installed and the static pressure reduced to eighty (80) pounds per square inch (552 kPa) or less. Such regulator(s) shall control the pressure to all water outlets in the building unless otherwise approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Each such regulator and strainer shall be accessibly located aboveground or in a vault equipped with a properly sized and sloped bore-sighted drain to daylight, shall be protected from freezing, and shall have the strainer readily accessible for cleaning without removing the regulator or strainer body or disconnecting the supply piping. All pipe size determinations shall be based on eighty (80) percent of the reduced pressure when using Table 6-6.

608.3 Any water system provided with a check valve, backflow preventer, or any other normally closed device that prevents dissipation of building pressure back into the water main shall be provided with an approved, listed, and adequately sized expansion tank or other approved device having a similar function to control thermal expansion. Such expansion tank or other approved device shall be installed on the building side of the check valve, backflow preventer, or other device and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Any water system containing storage water heating equipment shall be provided with an approved, listed, adequately sized combination pressure and temperature relief valve, except for listed nonstorage instantaneous heaters having an inside diameter of not more than three (3) inches (80 mm). Each such approved combination temperature and pressure relief valve shall be installed on the water-heating device in an approved location based on its listing requirements and the manufacturer's instructions. Each such combination temperature and pressure relief valve shall be provided with a drain as required in Section 608.5.

608.4 Each pressure relief valve shall be an approved automatic type with drain, and each such relief valve shall be set at a pressure of not more than one hundred fifty (150) pounds per square inch (1035

kPa). No shutoff valve shall be installed between the relief valve and the system or in the drain line.

608.5 Relief valves located inside a building shall be provided with a drain, not smaller than the relief valve outlet, of galvanized steel, hard-drawn copper piping and fittings, CPVC, or listed relief valve drain tube with fittings that will not reduce the internal bore of the pipe or tubing (straight lengths as opposed to coils) and shall extend from the valve to the outside of the building, with the end of the pipe not more than two (2) feet (610 mm) nor less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the ground or the flood level of the area receiving the discharge and pointing downward. Such drains may terminate at other approved locations. Relief valve drains shall not terminate in a building's crawl space. No part of such drain pipe shall be trapped or subject to freezing. The terminal end of the drain pipe shall not be threaded.

608.6 Any water-heating device connected to a separate storage tank and having valves between said heater and tank shall be provided with an approved water pressure relief valve.

608.7 Vacuum Relief Valves. Where a hot-water storage tank or an indirect water heater is located at an elevation above the fixture outlets in the hot-water system, a vacuum relief valve shall be installed on the storage tank or heater.

609.0 Installation, Testing, Unions, and Location.

609.1 Installation. All water piping shall be adequately supported in accordance with Section 314.0. Burred ends shall be reamed to the full bore of the pipe or tube. Changes in direction shall be made by the appropriate use of fittings, except that changes in direction in copper tubing may be made with bends, provided that such bends are made with bending equipment that does not deform or create a loss in the cross-sectional area of the tubing. Changes in direction are allowed with flexible pipe and tubing without fittings in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Provisions shall be made for expansion in hot-water piping. All piping, equipment, appurtenances, and devices shall be installed in a workmanlike manner in conformity with the provisions and intent of the code. All water service yard piping shall be at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) below the average local frost depth. The minimum cover shall be twelve (12) inches (305 mm) below finish grade.

609.2 Water pipes shall not be run or laid in the same trench as building sewer or drainage piping constructed of clay or materials that are not approved for use within a building unless both of the following conditions are met:

609.2.1 The bottom of the water pipe, at all points, shall be at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above the top of the sewer or drain line.

609.2.2 The water pipe shall be placed on a solid shelf excavated at one side of the common trench with a minimum clear horizontal distance of at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) from the sewer or drain line.

Water pipes crossing sewer or drainage piping constructed of clay or materials that are not approved for use within a building shall be laid a minimum of twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above the sewer or drain pipe.

609.3 Water piping installed within a building and in or under a concrete floor slab resting on the ground shall be installed in accordance with the following requirements:

609.3.1 Ferrous piping shall have a protective coating of an approved type, machine applied and conforming to recognized standards. Field wrapping shall provide equivalent protection and shall be restricted to those short sections and fittings necessarily stripped for threading. Zinc coating (galvanizing) shall not be deemed adequate protection for piping or fittings. Approved nonferrous piping shall not be required to be wrapped.

609.3.2 Copper tubing shall be installed without joints where possible. Where joints are permitted, they shall be brazed, and fittings shall be wrought copper.

Note: For the purpose of this section, "within the building" shall mean within the fixed limits of the building foundation.

609.4 Testing. Upon completion of a section or of the entire hot and cold water supply system, it shall be tested and proved tight under a water pressure not less than the working pressure under which it is to be used. The water used for tests shall be obtained from a potable source of supply. Except for plastic piping, a fifty (50) pound-per-square-inch (344.5 kPa) air pressure may be substituted for the water test. In either method of test, the piping shall withstand the test without leaking for a period of not less than fifteen (15) minutes.

609.5 Unions. Unions shall be installed in the water supply piping within twelve (12) inches (305 mm) of regulating equipment, water heating, conditioning tanks, and similar equipment that may require service by removal or replacement in a manner that will facilitate its ready removal.

609.6 Location. Except as provided in Section 609.7, no building supply shall be located in any lot other than the lot that is the site of the building or structure served by such building supply.

609.7 Nothing contained in this code shall be construed to prohibit the use of all or part of an abutting lot to:

609.7.1 Provide access to connect a building supply to an available public water service when proper cause and legal easement not in violation of other requirements have been first established to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

609.7.2 Provide additional space for a building supply when proper cause, transfer of ownership, or change of boundary not in violation of other requirements have been first established to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The instrument recording such action shall constitute an agreement with the Authority Having Jurisdiction, which shall clearly state and show that the areas so joined or used shall be maintained as a unit during the time they are so used. Such an agreement shall be recorded in the office of the County Recorder as a part of the conditions of ownership of said properties, and shall be binding on all heirs, successors, and assigns to such properties. A copy of the instrument recording such proceedings shall be filed with the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

609.8 Low-Pressure Cutoff Required on Booster Pumps for Water Distribution Systems. When a booster pump – excluding a fire pump – is connected to a water service or underground water pipe, a low-pressure cutoff switch on the inlet side of the pump shall be installed within five (5) feet (1,524 mm) of the inlet. The cutoff switch shall be set for not less than ten (10) psi (68.9 kPa). A pressure gauge shall be installed between the shutoff valve and the pump.

609.9 Disinfection of Potable Water System. New or repaired potable water systems shall be disinfected prior to use whenever required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The method to be followed shall be that prescribed by the Health Authority or, in case no method is prescribed by it, the following:

609.9.1 The pipe system shall be flushed with clean, potable water until only potable water appears at the points of outlet.

609.9.2 The system or parts thereof shall be filled with a water-chlorine solution containing at least fifty (50) parts per million of chlorine, and the system or part thereof shall be valved-off and allowed to stand for twenty-four (24) hours; or, the system or part thereof shall be filled with a water-chlorine solution containing at least two hundred (200) parts per million of chlorine and allowed to stand for three (3) hours.

609.9.3 Following the allowed standing time, the system shall be flushed with clean, potable water until the chlorine residual in the water coming from the system does not exceed the chlorine residual in the flushing water.

609.9.4 The procedure shall be repeated if it is shown by bacteriological examination made by an approved agency that contamination persists in the system.

609.10 Water Hammer. All building water supply systems in which quick-acting valves are installed shall be provided with devices to absorb the hammer caused by high pressures resulting from the quick closing of these valves. These pressure-absorbing devices shall be approved mechanical devices. Water pressure-absorbing devices shall be installed as close as possible to quick-acting valves.

609.10.1 Mechanical Devices. When listed mechanical devices are used, the manufacturers' specifications as to location and method of installation shall be followed.

610.0 Size of Potable Water Piping.

610.1 The size of each water meter and each potable water supply pipe from the meter or other source of supply to the fixture supply branches, risers, fixtures, connections, outlets, or other uses shall be based on the total demand and shall be determined according to the methods and procedures outlined in this section. Water piping systems shall be designed to ensure that the maximum velocities allowed by the code and the applicable standard are not exceeded.

610.2 Whenever a water filter, water softener, backflow prevention device, or similar device is installed in any water supply line, the pressure loss through such devices shall be included in the pressure loss calculations of the system, and the water supply pipe and meter shall be adequately sized to provide for any such pressure loss.

No water filter, water softener, backflow prevention device, or similar device regulated by this code shall be installed in any potable water supply piping when the installation of such device produces an excessive pressure drop in any such water supply piping. In the absence of specific pressure drop information, the diameter of the inlet or outlet of any such device or its connecting piping shall not be less than the diameter of such water distribution piping to the fixtures served by the device.

All such devices shall be of a type approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and shall be tested for flow rating and pressure loss by an approved laboratory or recognized testing agency to standards consistent with the intent of this chapter.

610.3 The quantity of water required to be supplied to every plumbing fixture shall be represented by fixture units, as shown in Table 6-5. Equivalent fixture values shown in Table 6-5 include both hot and cold water demand.

610.4 Systems within the range of Table 6-6 may be sized from that table or by the method set forth in Section 610.5.

Listed parallel water distribution systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing, but at no time shall any portion of the system exceed the maximum velocities allowed by the code.

610.5 Except as provided in Section 610.4, the size of each water piping system shall be determined in accordance with the procedure set forth in Appendix A. For alternate methods of sizing water supply systems, see Appendix L.

610.6 Except where the type of pipe used and the water characteristics are such that no decrease in capacity due to length of service (age of system) may be expected, all friction-loss data shall be obtained from the "Fairly Rough" or "Rough" charts in Appendix A of this code. Friction or pressure losses in water meter, valve, and fittings shall be obtained from the same sources. Pressure losses through water-treating equipment, backflow prevention devices, or other flow-restricting devices shall be computed as required by Section 610.2.

610.7 On any proposed water piping installation sized using Table 6-6, the following conditions shall be determined:

(1) Total number of fixture units as determined from Table 6-5, Equivalent Fixture Units, for the fixtures to be installed.

(2) Developed length of supply pipe from meter to most remote outlet.

(3) Difference in elevation between the meter or other source of supply and the highest fixture or outlet.

(4) Pressure in the street main or other source of supply at the locality where the installation is to be made.

(5) In localities where there is a fluctuation of pressure in the main throughout the day, the water piping system shall be designed on the basis of the minimum pressure available.

610.8 Size of Meter and Building Supply Pipe Using Table 6-6. The size of the meter and the building supply pipe shall be determined as follows:

(1) Determine the available pressure at the water meter or other source of supply.

(2) Subtract one-half (1/2) pound per square inch pressure (3.4 kPa) for each foot (305 mm) of difference in elevation between such source of supply and the highest water supply outlet in the building or on the premises.

(3) Use the "pressure range" group within which this pressure will fall using Table 6-6.

(4) Select the "length" column that is equal to or longer than the required length.

(5) Follow down the column to a fixture unit value equal to or greater than the total number of fixture units required by the installation.

(6) Having located the proper fixture unit value for the required length, sizes of meter and building supply pipe as found in the two left-hand columns shall be applied.

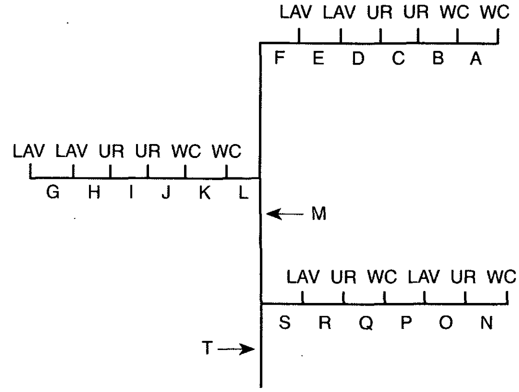
No building supply pipe shall be less than three-quarter (3/4) inch (20 mm) in diameter.

610.9 Size of Branches. When Table 6-6 is used, the minimum size of each branch shall be determined by the number of fixture units to be served by that branch, the total developed length of the system, and the meter and street service size as per Section 610.8. No branch piping is required to be larger in size than that required by Table 6-6 for the building supply pipe.

610.10 Sizing for Flushometer Valves. When using Table 6-6 to size water supply systems serving flushometer valves, the number of flushometer fixture units assigned to every section of pipe, whether branch or main, shall be determined by the number and category of flushometer valves served by that section of pipe, in accordance with Table 6-7. Piping supplying a flushometer valve shall not be less in size than the valve inlet.

When using Table 6-7 to size water piping, care must be exercised to assign flushometer fixture units based on the number and category of fixtures served. In the example below, fixture units assigned to each

Sizing Method
Example Using TABLE 6-7
Public Use Fixtures



section of pipe are computed as follows: Note: Each capital letter refers to the section of pipe above it, unless otherwise shown.

A: 1 WC = 40 F.U.

B: 2 WC = 70 F.U.

C: 2 WC (70) + 1 UR (20) = 90 F.U.

D: 2 WC (70) + 2 UR (35) = 105 F.U.

E: 2 WC (70) + 2 UR (35) + 1 LAV (1) = 106 F.U.

F: 2 WC (70) + 2 UR (35) + 2 LAV (2) = 107 F.U.

G: 1 LAV = 1 F.U.

H: 2 LAV = 2 F.U.

I: 2 LAV (2) + 1 UR (20) = 22 F.U.

J: 2 LAV (2)+ 2 UR (35) = 37 F.U.

K: 2 LAV (2) + 2 UR (35) + 1 WC (40) = 77 F.U.

L: 2 LAV (2) + 2 UR (35) + 2 WC (70) = 107 F.U.

M: 4 WC (105) + 4 UR (53) + 4 LAV (4) = 162 F.U.

N: 1 WC = 40 F.U.

O: 1 WC (40) + 1 UR (20) = 60 F.U.

P: 1 WC (40) + 1 UR (20) + 1 LAV (1) = 61 F.U.

Q: 2 WC (70) + 1 UR (20) + 1 LAV (1) = 91 F.U.

R: 2 WC (70) + 2 UR (35) + 1 LAV (1) = 106 F.U.

S: 2 WC (70) + 2 UR (35) + 2 LAV (2) = 107 F.U.

T: 6 WC (125) + 6 UR (63) + 6 LAV (6) = 194 F.U.

610.11 Sizing Systems for Flushometer Tanks. The size of branches and mains serving flushometer tanks shall be consistent with the sizing procedures for flush tank water closets.

610.12 Sizing for Velocity. Water piping systems shall not exceed the maximum velocities listed in this section or Appendix A.

610.12.1 Copper Tube Systems. Maximum velocities in copper and copper alloy tube and fitting systems shall be limited to a maximum of eight (8) feet per second (fps) (2.4 mps) in cold water and five (5) fps in hot water (1.52 mps).

610.12.2 Tubing Systems Using Copper Alloy Fittings. Maximum velocities through copper alloy fittings in tubing other than copper shall be limited to a maximum of eight (8) feet per second (fps) (2.4 mps) in cold water and five (5) fps in hot water (1.52 mps).

610.13 Exceptions. The provisions of this section relative to size of water piping shall not apply to the following:

(1) Water supply piping systems designed in accordance with recognized engineering procedures acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(2) Alteration of or minor additions to existing installations, provided the Authority Having Jurisdiction finds that there will be an adequate supply of water to operate all fixtures.

(3) Replacement of existing fixtures or appliances.

(4) Piping that is part of fixture equipment.

(5) Unusual conditions where, in the judgment of the Authority Having Jurisdiction, an adequate supply of water is provided to operate fixtures and equipment.

(6) Nonpotable waterlines as defined in Sections 601.2.2 and 601.2.3.

(7) The size and material of irrigation water piping installed outside of any building or structure and separated from the potable water supply by means of an approved airgap or backflow prevention device is not regulated by this code. The potable water piping system supplying each such irrigation system shall be adequately sized as required elsewhere in this chapter to deliver the full connected demand of both the domestic use and the irrigation systems.

611.0 Drinking Water Treatment Units.

611.1 Compliance with Standard. Drinking water treatment units shall meet the requirements of the appropriate standard referenced in Table 14-1.

611.2 Airgap Discharge. Discharge from all drinking water treatment units shall enter the drainage system through an airgap or an airgap device that meets the requirements of the appropriate standards referenced in Table 14-1.

611.3 Connection Tubing. The tubing to and from drinking water treatment units shall be of a size and material as recommended by the manufacturer. The tubing shall comply with the requirements of the appropriate standards referenced in Table 14-1.

611.4 Sizing of Residential Softeners. Residential-use water softeners shall be sized per Table 6-8.

Inch	mm
1/2	15
3/4	20
1	25

TABLE 6-5
Water Supply Fixture Units (WSFU) and Minimum Fixture Branch Pipe Sizes[3]

Appliances, Appurtenances or Fixtures[2]	Minimum Fixture Branch Pipe Size[1,4]	Private	Public	Assembly[6]
Bathtub or Combination Bath/Shower (fill)	1/2"	4.0	4.0	
3/4" Bathtub Fill Valve	3/4"	10.0	10.0	
Bidet	1/2"	1.0		
Clothes washer	1/2"	4.0	4.0	
Dental Unit, cuspidor	1/2"		1.0	
Dishwasher, domestic	1/2"	1.5	1.5	
Drinking Fountain or Watercooler	1/2"	0.5	0.5	0.75
Hose Bibb	1/2"	2.5	2.5	
Hose Bibb, each additional[8]	1/2"	1.0	1.0	
Lavatory	1/2"	1.0	1.0	1.0
Lawn Sprinkler, each head[5]		1.0	1.0	
Mobile Home, each (minimum)		12.0		
Sinks				
Bar	1/2"	1.0	2.0	
Clinic Faucet	1/2"		3.0	
Clinic Flushometer Valve with or without faucet	1"		8.0	
Kitchen, domestic	1/2"	1.5	1.5	
Laundry	1/2"	1.5	1.5	
Service or Mop Basin	1/2"	1.5	3.0	
Washup, each set of faucets	1/2"		2.0	
Shower, per head	1/2"	2.0	2.0	
Urinal, 1.0 GPF Flushometer Valve	3/4"	See Footnote [7]		
Urinal, greater than 1.0 GPF Flushometer Valve	3/4"	See Footnote [7]		
Urinal, flush tank	1/2"	2.0	2.0	3.0
Washfountain, circular spray	3/4"		4.0	
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Gravity Tank	1/2"	2.5	2.5	3.5
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Flushometer Tank	1/2"	2.5	2.5	3.5
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve	1"	See Footnote [7]		
Water Closet, greater than 1.6 GPF Gravity Tank	1/2"	3.0	5.5	7.0
Water Closet, greater than 1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve	1"	See Footnote [7]		

Notes:

1. Size of the cold branch pipe, or both the hot and cold branch pipes.
2. Appliances, Appurtenances or Fixtures not included in this Table may be sized by reference to fixtures having a similar flow rate and frequency of use.
3. The listed fixture unit values represent their load on their cold water service. The separate cold water and hot water fixture unit value for fixtures having both hot and cold water connections may each be taken as three-quarter (3/4) of the listed total value of the fixture.
4. The listed minimum supply branch pipe sizes for individual fixtures are the nominal (I.D.) pipe size.
5. For fixtures or supply connections likely to impose continuous flow demands, determine the required flow in gallons per minute (GPM), and add it separately to the demand (in GPM) for the distribution system or portions thereof.
6. Assembly [Public Use (See Table 4-1)].
7. When sizing flushometer systems, see Section 610.10.
8. Reduced fixture unit loading for additional hose bibbs is to be used only when sizing total building demand and for pipe sizing when more than one hose bibb is supplied by a segment of water-distributing pipe. The fixture branch to each hose bibb shall be sized on the basis of 2.5 fixture units.

Inch	mm
1/2	15
3/4	20
1	25
1-1/4	32
1-1/2	40
2	50
2-1/2	65

TABLE 6-6
Fixture Unit Table for Determining Water Pipe and Meter Sizes

Pressure Range – 30 to 45 psi (207 to 310 kPa)**

Meter and Street Service, Inches	Building Supply and Branches, Inches	Maximum Allowable Length in Feet (meters) 40 (12)	60 (18)	80 (24)	100 (30)	150 (46)	200 (61)	250 (76)	300 (91)	400 (122)	500 (152)	600 (183)	700 (213)	800 (244)	900 (274)	1000 (305)
3/4	1/2***	6	5	4	3	2	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
3/4	3/4	16	16	14	12	9	6	5	5	4	4	3	2	2	2	1
3/4	1	29	25	23	21	17	15	13	12	10	8	6	6	6	6	6
1	1	36	31	27	25	20	17	15	13	12	10	8	6	6	6	6
3/4	1-1/4	36	33	31	28	24	23	21	19	17	16	13	12	12	11	11
1	1-1/4	54	47	42	38	32	28	25	23	19	17	14	12	12	11	11
1-1/2	1-1/4	78	68	57	48	38	32	28	25	21	18	15	12	12	11	11
1	1-1/2	85	84	79	65	56	48	43	38	32	28	26	22	21	20	20
1-1/2	1-1/2	150	124	105	91	70	57	49	45	36	31	26	23	21	20	20
2	1-1/2	151	129	129	110	80	64	53	46	38	32	27	23	21	20	20
1	2	85	85	85	85	85	85	82	80	66	61	57	52	49	46	43
1-1/2	2	220	205	190	176	155	138	127	120	104	85	70	61	57	54	51
2	2	370	327	292	265	217	185	164	147	124	96	70	61	57	54	51
2	2-1/2	445	418	390	370	330	300	280	265	240	220	198	175	158	143	133

Pressure Range – 46 to 60 psi (317 to 414 kPa)**

3/4	1/2***	7	7	6	5	4	3	2	2	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
3/4	3/4	20	20	19	17	14	11	9	8	6	5	4	4	3	3	3
3/4	1	39	39	36	33	28	23	21	19	17	14	12	10	9	8	8
1	1	39	39	39	36	30	25	23	20	18	15	12	10	9	8	8
3/4	1-1/4	39	39	39	39	39	39	34	32	27	25	22	19	19	17	16
1	1-1/4	78	78	76	67	52	44	39	36	30	27	24	20	19	17	16
1-1/2	1-1/4	78	78	78	78	66	52	44	39	33	29	24	20	19	17	16
1	1-1/2	85	85	85	85	85	85	80	67	55	49	41	37	34	32	30
1-1/2	1-1/2	151	151	151	151	128	105	90	78	62	52	42	38	35	32	30
2	1-1/2	151	151	151	151	150	117	98	84	67	55	42	38	35	32	30
1	2	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	83	80
1-1/2	2	370	370	340	318	272	240	220	198	170	150	135	123	110	102	94
2	2	370	370	370	370	368	318	280	250	205	165	142	123	110	102	94
2	2-1/2	654	640	610	580	535	500	470	440	400	365	335	315	285	267	250

Pressure Range – Over 60 psi (414 kPa)**

3/4	1/2***	7	7	7	6	5	4	3	3	2	1	1	1	1	1	0
3/4	3/4	20	20	20	20	17	13	11	10	8	7	6	6	5	4	4
3/4	1	39	39	39	39	35	30	27	24	21	17	14	13	12	12	11
1	1	39	39	39	39	38	32	29	26	22	18	14	13	12	12	11
3/4	1-1/4	39	39	39	39	39	39	39	39	34	28	26	25	23	22	21
1	1-1/4	78	78	78	78	74	62	53	47	39	31	26	25	23	22	21
1-1/2	1-1/4	78	78	78	78	78	74	65	54	43	34	26	25	23	22	21
1	1-1/2	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	81	64	51	48	46	43	40
1-1/2	1-1/2	151	151	151	151	151	151	130	113	88	73	51	51	46	43	40
2	1-1/2	151	151	151	151	151	151	142	122	98	82	64	51	46	43	40
1	2	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85	85
1-1/2	2	370	370	370	370	360	335	305	282	244	212	187	172	153	141	129
2	2	370	370	370	370	370	370	370	340	288	245	204	172	153	141	129
2	2-1/2	654	654	654	654	654	650	610	570	510	460	430	404	380	356	329

**Available static pressure after head loss.

***Building supply, three-quarter (3/4) inch (20 mm) nominal size minimum.

Table 6-7
Flushometer Fixture Units for Water Sizing Using Table 6-5

Fixture Category: Water Closet w/ Flushometer Valves

Number of Flushometer Valves	Individual Fixture Units Assigned in Decreasing Value	Fixture Units Assigned for Water Closets and Similar 10-Unit Fixtures in Accumulative Values
1	40	40
2	30	70
3	20	90
4	15	105
5 or more	10 each	115 plus 10 for each additional fixture in excess of 5

Fixture Category: Urinals w/ Flushometer Valves

Number of Flushometer Valves	Individual Fixture Units Assigned in Decreasing Value	Fixture Units Assigned for Urinals and Similar 5-Unit Fixtures in Accumulative Values
1	20	20
2	15	35
3	10	45
4	8	53
5 or more	5 each	58 plus 5 for each additional fixture in excess of 5

TABLE 6-8
Sizing of Residential Water Softeners

Required Size of Softener Connection	Number of Bathroom Groups Served[1]
3/4 in.	up to 2[2]
1 in.	up to 4[3]

[1] Installation of a kitchen sink and dishwasher, laundry tray, and automatic clothes washer permitted without additional size increase.

[2] An additional water closet and lavatory permitted.

[3] Over four bathroom groups, the softener size shall be engineered for the specific installation.

See also Appendix A, Recommended Rules for Sizing the Water Supply System, and Appendix L, Alternate Plumbing Systems, for alternate methods of sizing water supply systems.

CHAPTER 7

SANITARY DRAINAGE

Part I – Drainage Systems.

701.0 Materials.

701.1 Drainage piping shall be cast iron, galvanized steel, galvanized wrought iron, lead, copper, brass, Stainless Steel 304 or 316L, Schedule 40 ABS DWV, Schedule 40 PVC DWV, extra-strength vitrified clay pipe, or other approved materials having a smooth and uniform bore, except that:

701.1.1 No galvanized wrought-iron or galvanized steel pipe shall be used underground and shall be kept at least six (6) inches (152 mm) aboveground.

701.1.2 ABS and PVC DWV piping installations shall be installed in accordance with IS 5, IS 9, and Chapter 15 "Firestop Protection." Except for individual single-family dwelling units, materials exposed within ducts or plenums shall have a flame-spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50, when tested in accordance with the Test for Surface - Burning Characteristics of the Building Materials. (See the Building Code standards based on ASTM E-84 and ANSI/UL 723.)

701.1.3 No vitrified clay pipe or fittings shall be used aboveground or where pressurized by a pump or ejector. They shall be kept at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) belowground.

701.1.4 Copper tube for drainage and vent piping shall have a weight of not less than that of copper drainage tube type DWV.

701.1.5 Stainless steel 304 pipe and fittings shall not be installed underground and shall be kept at least 6 inches (152 mm) aboveground.

701.2 Drainage fittings shall be of cast iron, malleable iron, lead, brass, copper, ABS, PVC, vitrified clay, stainless steel 304 and 316L (304 shall not be installed underground and shall be kept at least 6 inches (152 mm) aboveground), or other approved materials having a smooth interior waterway of the same diameter as the piping served, and all such fittings shall be compatible with the type of pipe used.

701.2.1 Fittings on screwed pipe shall be of the recessed drainage type. Burred ends shall be reamed to the full bore of the pipe.

701.2.2 The threads of drainage fittings shall be tapped so as to allow one-quarter (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) grade.

701.2.3 Fittings used for drainage shall be of the drainage type, have a smooth interior waterway, and be constructed so as to allow one fourth (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) grade.

701.3 Lead.

See Table 14-1. Sheet lead shall be not less than the following:

For safe pans – not less than four (4) pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m²) or 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

TABLE 7-1
Caulking Ferrules

Pipe Size (inches)	Inside Diameter (inches)	Length (inches)	Minimum Weight Each lb.	oz.
2	2-1/4	4-1/2	1	0
3	3-1/4	4-1/2	1	12
4	4-1/4	4-1/2	2	8

Caulking Ferrules (Metric)

Pipe Size (mm)	Inside Diameter (mm)	Length (mm)	Minimum Weight Each (kg)
50	57	114	0.454
80	83	114	0.790
100	108	114	1.132

TABLE 7-2
Soldering Bushings

Pipe Size (inches)	Minimum Weight Each lb.	oz.	Pipe Size (inches)	Minimum Weight Each lb.	oz.
1-1/4	0	6	2-1/2	1	6
1-1/2	0	8	3	2	0
2	0	14	4	3	8

Soldering Bushings (Metric)

Pipe Size (mm)	Minimum Weight Each (kg)	Pipe Size (mm)	Minimum Weight Each (kg)
32	0.168	65	0.622
40	0.224	80	0.908
50	0.392	100	1.586

TABLE 7-3
Drainage Fixture Unit Values (DFU)

Inch	mm
1-1/4	32
1-1/2	40
2	50
2-1/2	65
3	80

Plumbing Appliance, Appurtenance, or Fixture	Min. Size Trap and Trap Arm[7]	Private	Public	Assembly[8]
Bathtub or Combination Bath/Shower	1-1/2"	2.0	2.0	
Bidet	1-1/4"	1.0		
Bidet	1-1/2"	2.0		
Clothes Washer, domestic, standpipe[5]	2"	3.0	3.0	3.0
Dental Unit, cuspidor	1-1/4"		1.0	1.0
Dishwasher, domestic, with independent drain	1-1/2"[2]	2.0	2.0	2.0
Drinking Fountain or Watercooler (per head)	1-1/4"	0.5	0.5	1.0
Food-Waste-Grinder, commercial	2"		3.0	3.0
Floor Drain, emergency	2"		0.0	0.0
Floor Drain (for additional sizes see Section 702)	2"	2.0	2.0	2.0
Shower, single-head trap	2"	2.0	2.0	2.0
Multi-head, each additional	2"	1.0	1.0	1.0
Lavatory, single	1-1/4"	1.0	1.0	1.0
Lavatory, in sets of two or three	1-1/2"	2.0	2.0	2.0
Washfountain	1-1/2"		2.0	2.0
Washfountain	2"		3.0	3.0
Mobile Home, trap	3"	12.0		
Receptor, indirect waste[1,3]	1-1/2"		See footnote [1,3]	
Receptor, indirect waste[1,4]	2"		See footnote [1,4]	
Receptor, indirect waste[1]	3"		See footnote [1]	
Sinks				
Bar	1-1/2"	1.0		
Bar	1-1/2"[2]		2.0	2.0
Clinical	3"		6.0	6.0
Commercial with food waste	1-1/2"[2]		3.0	3.0
Special Purpose	1-1/2"	2.0	3.0	3.0
Special Purpose	2"	3.0	4.0	4.0
Special Purpose	3"		6.0	6.0
Kitchen, domestic (with or without food-waste grinder and/or dishwasher)	1-1/2"[2]	2.0	2.0	
Laundry (with or without discharge from a clothes washer)	1-1/2"	2.0	2.0	2.0
Service or Mop Basin	2"		3.0	3.0
Service or Mop Basin	3"		3.0	3.0
Service, flushing rim	3"		6.0	6.0
Wash, each set of faucets			2.0	2.0
Urinal, integral trap 1.0 GPF[2]	2"	2.0	2.0	5.0
Urinal, integral trap greater than 1.0 GPF	2"	2.0	2.0	6.0
Urinal, exposed trap	1-1/2"[2]	2.0	2.0	5.0
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Gravity Tank[6]	3"	3.0	4.0	6.0
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Flushometer Tank[6]	3"	3.0	4.0	6.0
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve[6]	3"	3.0	4.0	6.0
Water Closet, greater than 1.6 GPF Gravity Tank[6]	3"	4.0	6.0	8.0
Water Closet, greater than 1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve[6]	3"	4.0	6.0	8.0

1 Indirect waste receptors shall be sized based on the total drainage capacity of the fixtures that drain therein to, in accordance with Table 7-4.

2 Provide a 2" (51 mm) minimum drain.

3 For refrigerators, coffee urns, water stations, and similar low demands.

4 For commercial sinks, dishwashers, and similar moderate or heavy demands.

5 Buildings having a clothes-washing area with clothes washers in a battery of three (3) or more clothes washers shall be rated at six (6) fixture units each for purposes of sizing common horizontal and vertical drainage piping.

6 Water closets shall be computed as six (6) fixture units when determining septic tank sizes based on Appendix K of this code.

7 Trap sizes shall not be increased to the point where the fixture discharge may be inadequate to maintain their self-scouring properties.

8 Assembly [Public Use (See Table 4-1)].

For flashings or vent terminals – not less than three (3) pounds per square foot (15 kg/m^2) or 1.2 mm thick.

Lead bends and lead traps shall not be less than one-eighth (1/8) inch (3.2 mm) wall thickness.

701.4 Ferrules and Bushings

701.4.1 Caulking ferrules shall be manufactured from bronze or copper and shall be in accordance with Table 7-1.

701.4.2 Soldering bushings shall be of bronze or copper in accordance with Table 7-2.

702.0 Fixture Unit Equivalents.

The unit equivalent of plumbing fixtures shown in Table 7-3 shall be based on the size of the trap required, and the unit equivalent of fixtures and devices not shown in Table 7-3 shall be based on the rated discharge capacity in gpm (gallons per minute) (liters per second) in accordance with Table 7-4.

Maximum trap loadings for sizes up to four (4) inches (102 mm) are as follows:

1-1/4 in.	(32 mm)	—	1 unit
1-1/2 in.	(40 mm)	—	3 units
2 in.	(50 mm)	—	4 units
3 in.	(80 mm)	—	6 units
4 in.	(100 mm)	—	8 units

Exception: On self-service laundries.

703.0 Size of Drainage Piping.

703.1 The minimum sizes of vertical and/or horizontal drainage piping shall be determined from the total of all fixture units connected thereto, and additionally, in the case of vertical drainage pipes, in accordance with their length.

703.2 Table 7-5 shows the maximum number of fixture units allowed on any vertical or horizontal drainage pipe, building drain, or building sewer of a given size; the maximum number of fixture units allowed on any branch interval of a given size; and the maximum length (in feet and meters) of any vertical drainage pipe of a given size.

TABLE 7-4
Discharge Capacity in Gallons per Minute (Liters per Second)
For Intermittent Flow Only

GPM	(L/sec)		
Up to 7-1/2	(Up to 0.47)	Equals	1 Unit
8 to 15	(0.50 to 0.95)	Equals	2 Units
16 to 30	(1.00 to 1.89)	Equals	4 Units
31 to 50	(1.95 to 3.15)	Equals	6 Units

Discharge capacity for over 50 gallons per minute (3.15 L/sec.) shall be determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

For a continuous flow into a drainage system, such as from a pump, sump ejector, air conditioning equipment, or similar device, two (2) fixture units shall be allowed for each gallon per minute (0.06 L/sec.) of flow.

703.3 For alternate method of sizing drainage piping, see Appendix L.

704.0 Fixture Connections (Drainage).

704.1 Drainage piping shall be provided with approved inlet fittings for fixture connections, correctly located according to the size and type of fixture proposed to be connected.

704.2 Two fixtures set back-to-back, or side-by-side, within the distance allowed between a trap and its vent may be served by a single vertical drainage pipe provided that each fixture wastes separately into an approved double-fixture fitting having inlet openings at the same level.

704.3 Pot sinks, scullery sinks, dishwashing sinks, silverware sinks, commercial dishwashing machines, silverware-washing machines, and other similar fixtures shall be connected directly to the drainage system. A floor drain shall be provided adjacent to the fixture, and the fixture shall be connected on the sewer side of the floor drain trap, provided that no other drainage line is connected between the floor drain waste connection and the fixture drain. The fixture and floor drain shall be trapped and vented as required by this code.

704.4 Closet Rings (Closet Flanges).

704.4.1 Closet rings (closet flanges) for water closets or similar fixtures shall be of an approved type and shall be bronze, copper, hard lead, cast iron, galvanized malleable iron, ABS, PVC, or other approved materials. Each such closet ring (closet flange) shall be approximately seven (7) inches (175 mm) in diameter and, when installed, shall, together with the soil pipe, present a one and one-half (1-1/2) inch (38 mm) wide flange or face to receive the fixture gasket or closet seal.

704.4.2 Caulked-on closet rings (closet flanges) shall be not less than one-fourth (1/4) inch (6.4mm) thick and not less than two (2) inches (51mm) in overall depth.

704.4.3 Closet rings (closet flanges) shall be burned or soldered to lead bends or stubs, shall be caulked to cast-iron soil pipe, shall be solvent cemented to ABS and PVC, and shall be screwed

TABLE 7-5
Maximum Unit Loading and Maximum Length of Drainage and Vent Piping

Size of Pipe, inches (mm)	**1-1/4** (32)	**1-1/2** (40)	**2** (50)	**2-1/2** (65)	**3** (80)	**4** (100)	**5** (125)	**6** (150)	**8** (200)	**10** (250)	**12** (300)
Maximum Units											
Drainage Piping[1]											
Vertical	1	2[2]	16[3]	32[3]	48[4]	256	600	1,380	3,600	5,600	8,400
Horizontal	1	1	8[3]	14[3]	35[4]	216[5]	428[5]	720[5]	2,640[5]	4,680[5]	8,200[5]
Maximum Length											
Drainage Piping											
Vertical, feet	45	65	85	148	212	300	390	510	750		
(m)	(14)	(20)	(26)	(45)	(65)	(91)	(119)	(155)	(228)		
Horizontal (unlimited)											
Vent Piping (See note)											
Horizontal and Vertical											
Maximum Units	1	8[3]	24	48	84	256	600	1,380	3,600		
Maximum Lengths, feet	45	60	120	180	212	300	390	510	750		
(m)	(14)	(18)	(37)	(55)	(65)	(91)	(119)	(155)	(228)		

[1] Excluding trap arm.
[2] Except sinks, urinals, and dishwashers.
[3] Except six-unit traps or water closets.
[4] Only four (4) water closets or six-unit traps allowed on any vertical pipe or stack; and not to exceed three (3) water closets or six-unit traps on any horizontal branch or drain.
[5] Based on one-fourth (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) slope. For one-eighth (1/8) inch per foot (10.4 mm/m) slope, multiply horizontal fixture units by a factor of 0.8.

Note: The diameter of an individual vent shall not be less than one and one-fourth (1-1/4) inches (31.8 mm) nor less than one-half (1/2) the diameter of the drain to which it is connected. Fixture unit load values for drainage and vent piping shall be computed from Tables 7-3 and 7-4. Not to exceed one-third (1/3) of the total permitted length of any vent may be installed in a horizontal position. When vents are increased one (1) pipe size for their entire length, the maximum length limitations specified in this table do not apply.

or fastened in an approved manner to other materials.

704.4.4 All such closet rings (closet flanges) shall be adequately designed and secured to support fixtures connected thereto.

704.4.5 Closet screws, bolts, washers, and similar fasteners shall be of brass, copper, or other listed, equally corrosion-resistant materials. All such screws and bolts shall be of adequate size and number to properly support the fixture installed.

705.0 Joints and Connections.

705.1 Types of Joints.

705.1.1 Caulked Joints. Caulked joints for cast-iron bell-and-spigot soil pipe and other similar joints shall be firmly packed with oakum or hemp and filled with molten lead to a depth of not less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm). The lead shall be caulked thoroughly at the inside and outside edges of the joint. After caulking, the finished joint shall not extend more than one-eighth (1/8) inch (3.2 mm) below the rim of the hub. No paint, varnish, or other coatings shall be permitted on the joining material until after the joint has been tested and approved. Caulked joints in cast-iron bell-and-spigot water piping shall be made with nontoxic materials.

705.1.2 Cement Mortar Joints. Except for repairs and connections to existing lines constructed with such joints, cement mortar joints shall be prohibited on building sewers.

705.1.3 Burned Lead Joints. Burned (welded) lead joints shall be lapped, and the lead shall be fused together to form a uniform weld at least as thick as the lead being joined.

705.1.4 Asbestos Cement Sewer Pipe Joints. Joints in asbestos cement pipe shall be a sleeve coupling of the same composition as the pipe or of other approved materials, and sealed with rubber rings or joined by an approved-type compression coupling. Joints between asbestos cement pipe and other approved pipe shall be made by means of an approved adapter coupling.

705.1.5 Packing Additives Prohibited. The addition of leak-sealing additives to joint packing shall be prohibited.

705.1.6 Molded Rubber Coupling Joints. When pipe is joined by means of molded rubber coupling joints, such joints shall conform to approved standards and shall not be considered as slip joints. When required, appropriate rubber bushings shall be used to allow for any difference in piping material diameters.

705.1.7 Elastomeric Gasketed and Rubber-Ring Joints. Elastomeric gasketed and rubber-ring joints shall comply with the applicable Installation Standard listed in Appendix I.

705.1.8 Shielded Coupling Joints. When piping systems are joined by means of shielded couplings, such couplings shall conform to approved standards and shall not be considered as slip joints.

705.1.9 Hubless Cast-Iron Pipe Joints. Joints for hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings shall conform to appropriate Installation Standards listed in Appendix I and shall not be considered as slip joints.

705.2 Use of Joints.

705.2.1 Clay and Sewer Pipe. Joints in vitrified clay pipe or between such pipe and metal pipe shall be made as provided in Section 316.1.5, 705.1.2, 705.1.6, or 705.1.8.

705.2.2 Cast-Iron Pipe. Joints in cast-iron pipe shall be made as provided in Section 316.1.1, 316.1.5, 606.1.2, 705.1.1, 705.1.8, or 705.1.9.

705.2.3 Screw Pipe to Cast Iron. Joints between wrought iron, steel, brass, or copper pipe and cast-iron pipe shall be either caulked or threaded joints made as provided in Section 316.1.1 or 705.1.1, or shall be made with approved adapter fittings.

705.2.4 Lead to Cast Iron, Wrought Iron, or Steel. Joints between lead and cast-iron, wrought-iron, or steel pipe shall be made by means of wiped joints to a caulking ferrule, soldering nipple, or bushing as provided in Section 316.1.2.

705.3 Special Joints.

705.3.1 Slip Joints. In fixture drains and traps, slip joints of approved materials may be used in accordance with their approvals.

705.3.2 Expansion Joints. Expansion joints shall be accessible, except when in vent piping or drainage stacks, and may be used where necessary to provide for expansion and contraction of the pipes.

705.3.3 Ground Joint, Flared, or Ferrule Connections. Brass or copper ground joint, flared, or ferrule-type connections that allow adjustment of tubing, but provide a rigid joint when made up, shall not be considered as slip joints.

706.0 Changes in Direction of Drainage Flow.

706.1 Changes in direction of drainage piping shall be made by the appropriate use of approved fittings and shall be of the angles presented by a one-sixteenth (1/16) bend, one-eighth (1/8) bend, or one-sixth (1/6) bend, or other approved fittings of equivalent sweep.

706.2 Horizontal drainage lines, connecting with a vertical stack, shall enter through forty-five (45) degree (0.79 rad) wye branches, sixty (60) degree (1.05 rad) wye branches, combination wye and 1/8 bend branches, sanitary tee or sanitary tapped tee branches, or other approved fittings of equivalent sweep. No fitting having more than one (1) inlet at the same level shall be used unless such fitting is constructed so that the discharge from one (1) inlet cannot readily enter any other inlet. Double sanitary tees may be used when the barrel of the fitting is at least two (2) pipe sizes larger than the largest inlet, (pipe sizes recognized for this purpose are 2 in., 2-1/2 in., 3 in., 3-1/2 in., 4 in., 4-1/2 in., 5 in., 6 in., etc.) (50, 65, 80, 90, 100, 115, 125, 150 mm, etc.).

706.3 Horizontal drainage lines connecting with other horizontal drainage lines shall enter through forty-five (45) degree (0.79 rad) wye branches, combination wye and one-eighth (1/8) bend branches, or other approved fittings of equivalent sweep.

706.4 Vertical drainage lines connecting with horizontal drainage lines shall enter through forty-five (45) degree (0.79 rad) wye branches, combination wye and one-eighth (1/8) bend branches, or other approved fittings of equivalent sweep. Sixty (60) degree (1.05 rad) branches or offsets may be used only when installed in a true vertical position.

707.0 Cleanouts.

707.1 Each cleanout fitting for cast-iron pipe shall consist of a cast-iron or brass body and an approved plug. Each cleanout for galvanized wrought-iron, galvanized steel, copper, or brass pipe shall consist of a brass plug as specified in Table 7-6, or a standard weight brass cap, or an approved ABS or PVC plastic plug, or an approved stainless steel cleanout or plug. Plugs shall have raised square heads or approved countersunk rectangular slots.

707.2 Each cleanout fitting and each cleanout plug or cap shall be of an approved type.

707.3 Cleanouts shall be designed to be gas and watertight.

707.4 Each horizontal drainage pipe shall be provided with a cleanout at its upper terminal, and each run of piping, that is more than one hundred (100) feet (30,480 mm) in total developed length, shall be provided with a cleanout for each one hundred (100) feet (30,480 mm), or fraction thereof, in length of such piping.

Exceptions:

(1) Cleanouts may be omitted on a horizontal drain line less than five (5) feet (1524 mm) in length unless such line is serving sinks or urinals.

(2) Cleanouts may be omitted on any horizontal drainage pipe installed on a slope of seventy-two (72) degrees (1.26 rad) or less from the vertical angle (angle of one-fifth (1/5) bend).

(3) Excepting the building drain and its horizontal branches, a cleanout shall not be required on any pipe or piping that is above the floor level of the lowest floor of the building.

(4) An approved type of two-way cleanout fitting, installed inside the building wall near the connection between the building drain and the building sewer or installed outside of a building at the lower end of a building drain and extended to grade, may be substituted for an upper terminal cleanout.

707.5 An additional cleanout shall be provided in a drainage line for each aggregate horizontal change of direction exceeding one hundred and thirty-five (135) degrees (2.36 rad).

707.6 Each cleanout shall be installed so that it opens to allow cleaning in the direction of flow of the soil or waste or at right angles thereto and, except in the case of wye branch and end-of-line cleanouts, shall be installed vertically above the flow line of the pipe.

707.7 Each cleanout extension shall be considered as drainage piping and each ninety (90) degree (1.6 rad) cleanout extension shall be extended from a wye-type fitting or other approved fitting of equivalent sweep.

707.8 Each cleanout for an interceptor shall be outside of such interceptor.

707.9 Each cleanout, unless installed under an approved cover plate, shall be above grade, readily accessible, and so located as to serve the purpose for which it is intended. Cleanouts located under cover plates shall be so installed as to provide the clearances and accessibility required by this section.

707.10 Each cleanout in piping two (2) inches (50 mm) or less in size shall be so installed that there is a clearance of not less than twelve (12) inches (305 mm) in front of the cleanout. Cleanouts in piping larger than two (2) inches (50 mm) shall have a clearance of not less than eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) in front of the cleanout. Cleanouts in under-floor piping shall be extended to or above the finished floor or shall be extended outside the building when there is less than eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) vertical overall, allowing for obstructions such as ducts, beams, and piping, and thirty (30) inches of (762 mm) horizontal clearance from the means of access to such cleanout. No under-floor cleanout shall be located more than twenty (20) feet (6096 mm) from an access door, trap door, or crawl hole.

707.11 Cleanout fittings shall be not less in size than those given in Table 7-6.

707.12 Cleanouts shall be provided for pressure drainage systems as classified under Section 710.7.

707.13 Countersunk cleanout plugs shall be installed where raised heads may cause a hazard.

707.14 When a hubless blind plug is used for a required cleanout, the complete coupling and plug shall be accessible for removal or replacement.

708.0 Grade of Horizontal Drainage Piping.

Horizontal drainage piping shall be run in practical alignment and a uniform slope of not less than one-fourth (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) or two (2) percent toward the point of disposal provided that, where it is impractical due to the depth of the street sewer or to the structural features or to the

Table 7-6
Cleanouts

Size of Pipe (inches)	Size of Cleanout (inches)	Threads (per inches)
1-1/2	1-1/2	11-1/2
2	1-1/2	11-1/2
2-1/2	2-1/2	8
3	2-1/2	8
4 & larger	3-1/2	8

TABLE 7-6
Cleanouts (Metric)

Size of Pipe (mm)	Size of Cleanout (mm)	Threads (per 25.4 mm)
40	38	11-1/2
50	38	11-1/2
65	64	8
80	64	8
100 & larger	89	8

arrangement of any building or structure to obtain a slope of one-fourth (1/4) of an inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) or two (2) percent, any such pipe or piping four (4) inches (100 mm) or larger in diameter may have a slope of not less than one-eighth (1/8) of an inch per foot (10.5 mm/m) or one (1) percent, when first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

709.0 Gravity Drainage Required.

Wherever practicable, all plumbing fixtures shall be drained to the public sewer or private sewage disposal system by gravity.

710.0 Drainage of Fixtures Located Below the Next Upstream Manhole or Below the Main Sewer Level.

710.1 Where a fixture is installed on a floor level that is lower than the next upstream manhole cover of the public or private sewer, serving such drainage piping, shall be protected from backflow of sewage by installing an approved type of backwater valve. Fixtures on floor levels above such elevation shall not discharge through the backwater valve.

710.2 Drainage piping serving fixtures that are located below the crown level of the main sewer shall discharge into an approved watertight sump or receiving tank, so located as to receive the sewage or wastes by gravity. From such sump or receiving tank, the sewage or other liquid wastes shall be lifted and discharged into the building drain or building sewer by approved ejectors, pumps, or other equally efficient approved mechanical devices.

710.3 A sewage ejector or sewage pump receiving the discharge of water closets or urinals:

710.3.1 Shall have a minimum discharge capacity of twenty (20) gallons (75.7 liters) per minute.

710.3.2 In single dwelling units, the ejector or pump shall be capable of passing a one and one-half (1-1/2) inch (38 mm) diameter solid ball, and the discharge piping of each ejector or pump shall have a backwater valve and gate valve, and be a minimum of two (2) inches (51mm) in diameter.

710.3.3 In other than single-dwelling units, the ejector or pump shall be capable of passing a two (2) inch (51 mm) diameter solid ball, and the discharge piping of each ejector or pump shall have a backwater valve and gate valve, and be a minimum of three (3) inches (80 mm) in diameter.

710.4 The discharge line from such ejector, pump, or other mechanical device shall be provided with an accessible backwater or swing check valve and gate or ball valve. If the gravity drainage line to which such discharge line connects is horizontal, the method of connection shall be from the top through a wye branch fitting. The gate or ball valve shall be located on the discharge side of the backwater or check valve.

Gate or ball valves, when installed in drainage piping, shall be fullway type with working parts of corrosion-resistant metal. Sizes four (4) inches (100mm) or more in diameter shall have cast-iron bodies, and sizes less than four (4) inches (100 mm), cast-iron or brass bodies.

710.5 Building drains or building sewers receiving discharge from any pump or ejector shall be adequately sized to prevent overloading. Two (2) fixture units shall be allowed for each gallon per minute (0.06 L/s) of flow.

710.6 Backwater valves, gate valves, fullway ball valves, unions, motors, compressors, air tanks, and other mechanical devices required by this section shall be located where they will be accessible for inspection and repair at all times and, unless continuously exposed, shall be enclosed in a masonry pit fitted with an adequately sized removable cover.

Backwater valves shall have bodies of cast iron, plastic, brass, or other approved materials; shall have noncorrosive bearings, seats, and self-aligning discs; and shall be constructed so as to ensure a positive mechanical seal. Such backwater valves shall remain sufficiently open during periods of low flows to avoid screening of solids and shall not restrict capacities or cause excessive turbulence during peak loads. Unless otherwise listed, valve access covers shall be bolted type with gasket, and each valve shall bear the manufacturer's name cast into the body and the cover.

710.7 The drainage and venting systems, in connection with fixtures, sumps, receiving tanks, and mechanical waste-lifting devices, shall be installed under the same requirements as provided for in this code for gravity systems.

710.8 Sumps and receiving tanks shall be watertight and shall be constructed of concrete, metal, or other approved materials. If constructed of poured concrete, the walls and bottom shall be adequately reinforced and designed to recognized acceptable standards. Metal sumps or tanks shall be of such thickness as to serve their intended purpose and shall be treated internally and externally to resist corrosion.

710.9 All such sumps and receiving tanks shall be automatically discharged and, when in any "public use" occupancy, shall be provided with dual pumps or ejectors arranged to function alternately in normal use and independently in case of overload or mechanical failure. The pumps shall have an audio and visual alarm, readily accessible, that signals

pump failure or an overload condition. The lowest inlet shall have a minimum clearance of two (2) inches (51 mm) from the high-water or "starting" level of the sump.

710.10 Sumps and receiving tanks shall be provided with substantial covers having a bolt-and-gasket-type manhole or equivalent opening to permit access for inspection, repairs, and cleaning. The top shall be provided with a vent pipe that shall extend separately through the roof or, when permitted, may be combined with other vent pipes. Such vent shall be large enough to maintain atmospheric pressure within the sump under all normal operating conditions and, in no case, shall be less in size than that required by Table 7-5 for the number and type of fixtures discharging into the sump, nor less than one and one-half (1-1/2) inches (40 mm) in diameter. When the foregoing requirements are met and the vent, after leaving the sump, is combined with vents from fixtures discharging into the sump, the size of the combined vent need not exceed that required for the total number of fixtures discharging into the sump. No vent from an air-operating sewage ejector shall combine with other vents.

710.11 Air tanks shall be so proportioned as to be of equal cubical capacity to the ejectors connected therewith in which there shall be maintained an air pressure of not less than two (2) pounds for each foot (3 kg for each m) of height the sewage is to be raised. No water-operated ejectors shall be permitted.

710.12 Grinder Pump Ejector. Grinder pumps shall be permitted to be used.

710.13 Macerating Toilet Systems. Listed macerating toilet systems shall be permitted as an alternate to a sewage pump system when approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

710.13.1 Sumps. The sump shall be water- and gastight.

710.13.2 Discharge Piping. The discharge piping shall be sized per manufacturer's instructions and shall be not less than 3/4 inches (20 mm) in diameter. The developed length of the discharge piping shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommendations. A check valve and fullway-type shutoff valve shall be located within the discharge line or internally within the device.

710.13.3 Venting. The plumbing fixtures that discharge into the macerating device shall be vented per this code. The sump shall be vented per manufacturer's instructions and such vent shall be permitted to connect to the fixture venting.

711.0 Suds Relief.

Drainage connections shall not be made into a drainage piping system within eight (8) feet (2438 mm) of any vertical to horizontal change of direction of a stack containing suds-producing fixtures. Bathtubs, laundries, washing machine standpipes, kitchen sinks, and dishwashers shall be considered suds-producing fixtures. Where parallel vent stacks are required, they shall connect to the drainage stack at a point eight (8) feet (2,438 mm) above the lowest point of the drainage stack.

Exceptions:

(1) Single-family residences.

(2) Stacks receiving the discharge from less than three (3) stories of plumbing fixtures.

712.0 Testing.

712.1 Media. The piping of the plumbing, drainage, and venting systems shall be tested with water or air except that plastic pipe shall not be tested with air. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may require the removal of any cleanouts, etc., to ascertain whether the pressure has reached all parts of the system. After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, they shall be submitted to a final test.

712.2 Water Test. The water test shall be applied to the drainage and vent systems either in its entirety or in sections. If the test is applied to the entire system, all openings in the piping shall be tightly closed, except the highest opening, and the system filled with water to point of overflow. If the system is tested in sections, each opening shall be tightly plugged, except the highest opening of the section under test, and each section shall be filled with water, but no section shall be tested with less than a ten (10) foot (3048 mm) head of water. In testing successive sections, at least the upper ten (10) feet (3048 mm) of the next preceding section shall be tested, so that no joint or pipe in the building (except the uppermost ten (10) feet (3048 mm) of the system) shall have been submitted to a test of less than a ten (10) foot (3048 mm) head of water. The water shall be kept in the system, or in the portion under test, for at least fifteen (15) minutes before inspection starts. The system shall then be tight at all points.

712.3 Air Test. The air test shall be made by attaching an air compressor testing apparatus to any suitable opening and, after closing all other inlets and outlets to the system, forcing air into the system until there is a uniform gauge pressure of five (5) pounds per square inch (34.5 kPa) or sufficient to balance a column of mercury ten (10) inches (254 mm) in height. The pressure shall be held without introduction of additional air for a period of at least fifteen (15) minutes.

Part II – Building Sewers.

713.0 Sewer Required.

713.1 Every building in which plumbing fixtures are installed and every premises having drainage piping thereon shall have a connection to a public or private sewer, except as provided in Sections 101.4.1.3, 713.2, and 713.4.

713.2 When no public sewer intended to serve any lot or premises is available in any thoroughfare or right of way abutting such lot or premises, drainage piping from any building or works shall be connected to an approved private sewage disposal system.

713.3 Within the limits prescribed by Section 713.4 hereof, the rearrangement or subdivision into smaller parcels of a lot that abuts and is served by a public sewer shall not be deemed cause to permit the construction of a private sewage disposal system, and all plumbing or drainage systems on any such smaller parcel or parcels shall connect to the public sewer.

713.4 The public sewer may be considered as not being available when such public sewer or any building or any exterior drainage facility connected thereto is located more than two hundred (200) feet (60.8 m) from any proposed building or exterior drainage facility on any lot or premises that abuts and is served by such public sewer.

713.5 No permit shall be issued for the installation, alteration, or repair of any private sewage disposal system, or part thereof, on any lot for which a connection with a public sewer is available.

713.6 On every lot or premises hereafter connected to a public sewer, all plumbing and drainage systems or parts thereof on such lot or premises shall be connected with such public sewer.

> **Exception:** Single-family dwellings and buildings or structures accessory thereto, existing and connected to an approved private sewage disposal system prior to the time of connecting the premises to the public sewer may, when no hazard, nuisance, or insanitary condition is evidenced and written permission has been obtained from the Authority Having Jurisdiction, remain connected to such properly maintained private sewage disposal system when there is insufficient grade or fall to permit drainage to the sewer by gravity.

714.0 Damage to Public Sewer or Private Sewage Disposal System.

714.1 It shall be unlawful for any person to deposit, by any means whatsoever, into any plumbing fixture, floor drain, interceptor, sump, receptor, or device which is connected to any drainage system, public sewer, private sewer, septic tank, or cesspool, any ashes; cinders; solids; rags; flammable, poisonous, or explosive liquids or gases; oils; grease; and any other thing whatsoever that would or could cause damage to the public sewer, private sewer, or private sewage disposal system.

714.2 No rain, surface, or subsurface water shall be connected to or discharged into any drainage system, unless first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

714.3 No cesspool, septic tank, seepage pit, or drainfield shall be connected to any public sewer or to any building sewer leading to such public sewer.

714.4 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall review before approval, the installation of a commercial food waste grinder connecting to a private sewage disposal system.

714.5 An approved-type watertight sewage or wastewater holding tank, the contents of which, due to their character, must be periodically removed and disposed of at some approved off-site location, shall be installed only when required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction or the Health Officer to prevent anticipated surface or subsurface contamination or pollution, damage to the public sewer, or other hazardous or nuisance conditions.

715.0 Building Sewer Materials.

715.1 The building sewer, beginning two (2) feet (610 mm) from any building or structure, shall be of such materials as prescribed in this code.

715.2 Joining methods and materials shall be as prescribed in this code.

715.3 Replacement of existing building sewer and building storm sewers using trenchless methodology and materials shall be installed in accordance with IAPMO IS-26. TIA TIA TIA TIA TIA

716.0 Markings.

All pipe, brick, block, prefabricated septic tanks, prefabricated septic tank or seepage pit covers, or other parts or appurtenances incidental to the installation of building sewers or private sewage disposal systems shall conform to the approval requirements of Chapter 3 of this code.

717.0 Size of Building Sewers.

The minimum size of any building sewer shall be determined on the basis of the total number of

fixture units drained by such sewer, in accordance with Table 7-8. No building sewer shall be smaller than the building drain.

For alternate methods of sizing building sewers, see Appendix L.

718.0 Grade, Support, and Protection of Building Sewers.

718.1 Building sewers shall be run in practical alignment and at a uniform slope of not less than one-fourth (1/4) of an inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) toward the point of disposal.

> **Exception:** When approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and where it is impractical, due to the depth of the street sewer or to the structural features or to the arrangement of any building or structure, to obtain a slope of one-fourth (1/4) of an inch per foot (20.9 mm/m), any such pipe or piping four (4) inches (100 mm) through six (6) inches (150 mm) may have a slope of not less than one-eighth (1/8) inch per foot (10.5 mm/m) and any such piping eight (8) inches (200 mm) and larger may have a slope of not less than one-sixteenth (1/16) of an inch per foot (5.3 mm/m).

718.2 Building sewer piping shall be laid on a firm bed throughout its entire length, and any such piping laid in made or filled-in ground shall be laid on a bed of approved materials and shall be properly supported as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

718.3 No building sewer or other drainage piping or part thereof, which is constructed of materials other than those approved for use under or within a building, shall be installed under or within two (2) feet (610 mm) of any building or structure, or part thereof, nor less than one (1) foot (305 mm) below the surface of the ground. The provisions of this subsection include structures such as porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered; breezeways; roofed porte cocheres; roofed patios; carports; covered walks; covered driveways; and similar structures or appurtenances.

719.0 Cleanouts.

719.1 Cleanouts shall be placed inside the building near the connection between the building drain and the building sewer or installed outside the building at the lower end of the building drain and extended to grade.

Additional building sewer cleanouts shall be installed at intervals not to exceed one hundred (100) feet (30,480 mm) in straight runs and for each aggregate horizontal change in direction exceeding one hundred thirty-five (135) degrees (2.36 rad).

719.2 When a building sewer or a branch thereof does not exceed ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) in length and is a straight-line projection from a building drain that is provided with a cleanout, no cleanout will be required at its point of connection to the building drain.

719.3 All required building sewer cleanouts shall be extended to grade and shall comply with all appropriate sections of Cleanouts, Section 707.0, for sizing, construction, and materials. When building sewers are located under buildings, the cleanout requirements of Section 707.0 shall apply.

719.4 Each cleanout shall be installed so that it opens to allow cleaning in the direction of flow of the soil or waste or at right angles thereto and, except in the case of wye branch and end-of-line cleanouts, shall be installed vertically above the flow line of the pipe.

719.5 Cleanouts installed under concrete or asphalt paving shall be made accessible by yard boxes or by extending flush with paving with approved materials and shall be adequately protected.

719.6 Approved manholes may be installed in lieu of cleanouts, when first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The maximum distance between manholes shall not exceed three hundred (300) feet (91.4 m).

The inlet and outlet connections shall be made by the use of a flexible compression joint no closer than twelve (12) inches (305 mm) to and not farther than three (3) feet (914 mm) from the manhole. No flexible compression joints shall be embedded in the manhole base.

720.0 Sewer and Water Pipes.

Building sewers or drainage piping of clay or materials that are not approved for use within a building shall not be run or laid in the same trench as the water pipes unless both of the following requirements are met:

(1) The bottom of the water pipe, at all points, shall be at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above the top of the sewer or drain line.

(2) The water pipe shall be placed on a solid shelf excavated at one side of the common trench with a minimum clear horizontal distance of at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) from the sewer or drain line.

Water pipes crossing sewer or drainage piping constructed of clay or materials that are not approved for use within a building shall be laid a minimum of twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above that sewer or drain pipe.

Note:

For the purpose of this section, "within the building" shall mean within the fixed limits of the building foundation.

721.0 Location.

721.1 Except as provided in Section 721.2, no building sewer shall be located in any lot other than the lot that is the site of the building or structure served by such sewer nor shall any building sewer be located at any point having less than the minimum distances indicated in Table 7-7.

721.2 Nothing contained in this code shall be construed to prohibit the use of all or part of an abutting lot to:

(1) Provide access to connect a building sewer to an available public sewer when proper cause and legal easement, not in violation of other requirements, has been first established to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(2) Provide additional space for a building sewer when proper cause, transfer of ownership, or change of boundary, not in violation of other requirements, has been first established to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The instrument recording such action shall constitute an agreement with the Authority Having Jurisdiction and shall clearly state and show that the areas so joined or used shall be maintained as a unit during the time they are so used. Such an agreement shall be recorded in the office of the County Recorder as part of the conditions of ownership of said properties, and shall be binding on all heirs, successors, and assigns to such properties. A copy of the instrument recording such proceedings shall be filed with the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

TABLE 7-7
Minimum Horizontal Distance Required From Building Sewer

Buildings or structures[1]	2 feet	(610 mm)
Property line adjoining private property	Clear[2]	
Water supply wells	50 feet[3]	(15,240 mm)
Streams	50 feet	(15,240 mm)
On-site domestic water service line	1 foot[4]	(305 mm)
Public water main	10 feet[5,6]	(3,048 mm)

Note:

1 Including porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered; breezeways; roofed portecocheres; roofed patios; carports; covered walks; covered driveways; and similar structures or appurtenances.

2 See also Section 313.3.

3 All drainage piping shall clear domestic water supply wells by at least fifty (50) feet (15,240 mm). This distance may be reduced to not less than twenty-five (25) feet (7,620 mm) when the drainage piping is constructed of materials approved for use within a building.

4 See Section 720.0.

5 For parallel construction.

6 For crossings, approval by the Health Department or Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be required.

TABLE 7-8
Maximum/Minimum Fixture Unit Loading on Building Sewer Piping

Size of Pipe, Inches (mm)	Slope, Inches per Foot (mm/m) 1/16 (5.3)	1/8 (10.5)	1/4 (20.9)
6 and smaller (150)	(As specified in Table 7-5/No minimum loading)		
8 (200)	1,950/1,500	2,800/625	3,900/275
10 (250)	3,400/1,600	4,900/675	6,800/300
12 (300)	5,600/1,700	8,000/725	11,200/325

See also Appendix K, Private Sewage Disposal Systems. For alternate methods of sizing drainage piping, see Appendix L.

722.0 Abandoned Sewers and Sewage Disposal Facilities.

722.1 Every abandoned building (house) sewer, or part thereof, shall be plugged or capped in an approved manner within five (5) feet (1,524 mm) of the property line.

722.2 Every cesspool, septic tank, and seepage pit that has been abandoned or has been discontinued otherwise from further use, or to which no waste or soil pipe from a plumbing fixture is connected, shall have the sewage removed therefrom and be completely filled with earth, sand, gravel, concrete, or other approved material.

722.3 The top cover or arch over the cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit shall be removed before filling, and the filling shall not extend above the top of the vertical portions of the sidewalls or above the level of any outlet pipe until inspection has been called and the cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit has been inspected. After such inspection, the cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit shall be filled to the level of the top of the ground.

722.4 No person owning or controlling any cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit on the premises of such person or in that portion of any public street, alley, or other public property abutting such premises, shall fail, refuse, or neglect to comply with the provisions of this section or upon receipt of notice so to comply from the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

722.5 Where disposal facilities are abandoned consequent to connecting any premises with the public sewer, the permittee making the connection shall fill all abandoned facilities as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction within thirty (30) days from the time of connecting to the public sewer.

723.0 Building Sewer Test.

Building sewers shall be tested by plugging the end of the building sewer at its points of connection with the public sewer or private sewage disposal system and completely filling the building sewer with water from the lowest to the highest point thereof, or by approved equivalent low-pressure air test. The building sewer shall be watertight at all points.

CHAPTER 8

INDIRECT WASTES

801.0 Indirect Wastes.

801.1 Airgap or Airbreak Required. All indirect waste piping shall discharge into the building drainage system through an airgap or airbreak as set forth in this code. Where a drainage airgap is required by this code, the minimum vertical distance as measured from the lowest point of the indirect waste pipe or the fixture outlet to the flood-level rim of the receptor shall be not less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm).

801.2 Food and Beverage Handling Establishments. Establishments engaged in the storage, preparation, selling, serving, processing, or other handling of food and beverage involving the following equipment that requires drainage shall provide indirect waste piping for refrigerators, refrigeration coils, freezers, walk-in coolers, iceboxes, ice-making machines, steam tables, egg boilers, coffee urns and brewers, hot-and-cold drink dispensers, and similar equipment.

801.2.1 Except for refrigeration coils and ice-making machines, the minimum size of the indirect waste pipe shall not be smaller than the drain on the unit, but shall not be smaller than one (1) inch (25 mm), and the maximum developed length shall not exceed fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm). Indirect waste pipe for ice-making machines shall not be less than the drain on the unit, but shall not be less than three-quarters (3/4) inch (20 mm).

801.2.2 For walk-in coolers, floor drains may be connected to a separate drainage line discharging into an outside receptor. The flood-level rim of the receptor shall be a minimum of six (6) inches (152 mm) lower than the lowest floor drain. Such floor drains shall be trapped and individually vented. Cleanouts shall be provided at every ninety (90) degree (1.6 rad) turn and shall be accessibly located. Such waste shall discharge through an airgap or airbreak into a trapped and vented receptor, except that a full-size airgap is required where the indirect waste pipe may be under vacuum.

801.2.3 Food-preparation sinks, steam kettles, potato peelers, ice cream dipper wells, and similar equipment shall be indirectly connected to the drainage system by means of an airgap. Bins, sinks, and other equipment having drainage connections and used for the storage of unpackaged ice used for human ingestion, or used in direct contact with ready-to-eat food, shall be indirectly connected to the drainage system by means of an airgap. Each indirect waste pipe from food-handling fixtures or equipment shall be separately piped to the indirect waste receptor and shall not combine with other indirect waste pipes. The piping from the equipment to the receptor shall not be smaller than the drain on the unit, and it shall not be smaller than one-half (1/2) inch (15 mm).

801.3 Bar and Fountain Sink Traps. Where the sink in a bar, soda fountain, or counter is so located that the trap serving the sink cannot be vented, the sink drain shall discharge through an airgap or airbreak (see Section 801.2.3) into an approved receptor that is vented. The developed length from the fixture outlet to the receptor shall not exceed five (5) feet (1524 mm).

801.4 Connections from Water Distribution System. Indirect waste connections shall be provided for drains, overflows, or relief pipes from potable water pressure tanks, water heaters, boilers, and similar equipment that is connected to the potable water distribution system. Such indirect waste connections shall be made by means of a water-distribution airgap constructed in accordance with Table 6-3.

801.5 Sterilizers. Lines, devices, or apparatus such as stills, sterilizers, and similar equipment requiring waste connections and used for sterile materials shall be indirectly connected by means of an airgap. Each such indirect waste pipe shall be separately piped to the receptor and shall not exceed fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm). Such receptors shall be located in the same room.

801.6 Drip or Drainage Outlets. Appliances, devices, or apparatus not regularly classed as plumbing fixtures, but which have drip or drainage outlets, may be drained by indirect waste pipes discharging into an open receptor through either an airgap or airbreak (see Section 801.2.1).

802.0 Approvals.

No plumbing fixtures served by indirect waste pipes or receiving discharge therefrom shall be installed until first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

803.0 Indirect Waste Piping.

Except as hereinafter provided, the size and construction of indirect waste piping shall be in accordance with other sections of this code applicable to drainage and vent piping. No vent from indirect waste piping shall combine with any sewer-connected vent, but shall extend separately to the outside air. Indirect waste pipes exceeding five (5) feet (1524 mm), but less than fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm) in length shall be directly trapped, but such traps need not be vented.

Indirect waste pipes less than fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm) in length shall not be less than the diameter of the drain outlet or tailpiece of the fixture, appliance, or equipment served, and in no case less than one-half (1/2) inch (15 mm) in size. Angles and changes of direction in such indirect waste pipes shall be provided with cleanouts so as to permit flushing and cleaning.

804.0 Indirect Waste Receptors.

804.1 All plumbing fixtures or other receptors receiving the discharge of indirect waste pipes shall be approved for the use proposed and shall be of such shape and capacity as to prevent splashing or flooding and shall be located where they are readily accessible for inspection and cleaning. No standpipe receptor for any clothes washer shall extend more than thirty (30) inches (762 mm), nor less than eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) above its trap. No trap for any clothes washer standpipe receptor shall be installed below the floor, but shall be roughed in not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) and not more than eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) above the floor. No indirect waste receptor shall be installed in any toilet room, closet, cupboard, or storeroom, nor in any other portion of a building not in general use by the occupants thereof; except standpipes for clothes washers may be installed in toilet and bathroom areas when the clothes washer is installed in the same room.

804.2 Where water service connections are installed for a clothes washer, an approved method of waste disposal shall be provided.

805.0 Pressure Drainage Connections.

Indirect waste connections shall be provided for drains, overflows, or relief vents from the water supply system, and no piping or equipment carrying wastes or producing wastes or other discharges under pressure shall be directly connected to any part of the drainage system.

The foregoing shall not apply to any approved sump pump or to any approved pressure-wasting plumbing fixture or device when the Authority Having Jurisdiction has been satisfied that the drainage system is adequately sized to accommodate the anticipated discharge thereof.

806.0 Sterile Equipment.

Appliances, devices, or apparatus such as stills, sterilizers, and similar equipment requiring water and waste and used for sterile materials shall be drained through an airgap.

807.0 Appliances.

807.1 Appliances, devices, equipment, or other apparatus not regularly classed as plumbing fixtures, which are equipped with pumps, drips, or drainage outlets, may be drained by indirect waste pipes discharging into an approved type of open receptor.

807.2 When the condensate waste from air-conditioning coils discharges by direct connection to a lavatory tailpiece or to an approved accessible inlet on a bathtub overflow, the connection shall be located in the area controlled by the same person controlling the air-conditioned space.

807.3 When undiluted condensate waste from a fuel-burning condensing appliance is discharged into the drainage system, the material in the drainage system shall be cast iron, galvanized iron, plastic, or other materials approved for this use.

Exceptions:

(1) When the above condensate is discharged to an exposed fixture tailpiece and trap, such tailpiece and trap may be brass.

(2) Any materials approved in Section 701.0 may be used when data is provided that the condensate waste is adequately diluted.

807.4 No domestic dishwashing machine shall be directly connected to a drainage system or food waste disposer without the use of an approved dishwasher airgap fitting on the discharge side of the dishwashing machine. Listed airgaps shall be installed with the flood-level (FL) marking at or above the flood level of the sink or drainboard, whichever is higher.

808.0 Cooling Water.

When permitted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, clean running water used exclusively as a cooling medium in an appliance, device, or apparatus may discharge into the drainage system through the inlet side of a fixture trap in the event that a suitable fixture is not available to receive such discharge. Such trap connection shall be by means of a pipe connected to the inlet side of an approved fixture trap, the upper end terminating in a funnel-shaped receptacle set

adjacent, and not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the overflow rim of the fixture.

809.0 Drinking Fountains.

Drinking fountains may be installed with indirect wastes.

810.0 Steam and Hot Water Drainage Condensers and Sumps.

810.1 No steam pipe shall be directly connected to any part of a plumbing or drainage system, nor shall any water having a temperature above one hundred and forty (140)°F (60°C) be discharged under pressure directly into any part of a drainage system. Pipes from boilers shall discharge by means of indirect waste piping, as determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction or the boiler manufacturer's recommendations. Such pipes may be indirectly connected by discharging into an open or closed condenser or an intercepting sump of an approved type that will prevent the entrance of steam or such water under pressure into the drainage system. All closed condensers or sumps shall be provided with a vent that shall be taken off the top and extended separately, full size above the roof. All condensers and sumps shall be properly trapped at the outlet with a deep seal trap extending to within six (6) inches (152 mm) of the bottom of the tank. The top of the deep seal trap shall have a three-fourths (3/4) inch (19.1 mm) opening located at the highest point of the trap to serve as a siphon breaker. Outlets shall be taken off from the side in such a manner as to allow a waterline to be maintained that will permanently occupy not less than one-half (1/2) the capacity of the condenser or sump. All inlets shall enter above the waterline. Wearing plates or baffles shall be installed in the tank to protect the shell. The sizes of the blowoff line inlet, the water outlets, and the vent shall be as shown in Table 8-1. The contents of condensers receiving steam or hot water under pressure must pass through an open sump before entering the drainage system.

810.2 Sumps, condensers, or intercepting tanks that are constructed of concrete shall have walls and bottom not less than four (4) inches (102 mm) in thickness, and the inside shall be cement plastered not less than one-half (1/2) inch (12.7 mm) in thickness. Condensers constructed of metal shall be not less than No. 12 U.S. standard gauge (0.109 inch) (2.77 mm), and all such metal condensers shall be protected from external corrosion by an approved bituminous coating.

810.3 Sumps and condensers shall be provided with suitable means of access for cleaning and shall contain a volume of not less than twice the volume of water removed from the boiler or boilers connected thereto when the normal water level of such boiler or boilers is reduced not less than four (4) inches (102 mm).

TABLE 8-1
Pipe Connections in Blowoff Condensers and Sumps

Boiler Blowoff		Water Outlet		Vent	
3/4 in.*	(20 mm)	3/4 in.*	(20 mm)	2 in.	(50 mm)
1 in.	(25 mm)	1 in.	(25 mm)	2-1/2 in.	(65 mm)
1-1/4 in.	(32 mm)	1-1/4 in.	(32 mm)	3 in.	(80 mm)
1-1/2 in.	(40 mm)	1-1/2 in.	(40 mm)	4 in.	(100 mm)
2 in.	(50 mm)	2 in.	(50 mm)	5 in.	(125 mm)
2-1/2 in.	(65 mm)	2-1/2 in.	(65 mm)	6 in.	(150 mm)

*To be used only with boilers of 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of heating surface or less.

810.4 Strainers. Every indirect waste interceptor receiving discharge-containing particles that would clog the receptor drain shall have a readily removable beehive strainer.

811.0 Chemical Wastes.

811.1 Chemical or industrial liquid wastes that are likely to damage or increase maintenance costs on the sanitary sewer system, detrimentally affect sewage treatment, or contaminate surface or subsurface waters shall be pretreated to render them innocuous prior to discharge into a drainage system. Detailed plans and specifications of the pretreatment facilities shall be required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Piping conveying industrial, chemical, or process wastes from their point of origin to sewer-connected pretreatment facilities shall be of such material and design as to adequately perform its intended function to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Drainage discharge piping from pretreatment facilities or interceptors shall conform to standard drainage installation procedures.

Copper tube shall not be used for chemical or industrial wastes as defined in this section.

811.2 Each waste pipe receiving or intended to receive the discharge of any fixture into which acid or corrosive chemical is placed, and each vent pipe connected thereto, shall be constructed of PP, PVDF, chemical-resistant glass, high-silicon iron pipe, or lead pipe with a wall thickness of not less than one-eighth (1/8) inch (3.2 mm); an approved type of ceramic glazed or unglazed vitrified clay; or other approved corrosion-resistant materials.

811.3 All jointing materials shall be of approved type and quality.

811.4 Wherever practicable, all piping shall be readily accessible and installed with the maximum of clearance from other services.

811.5 The owner shall make and keep a permanent record of the location of all piping and venting carrying chemical waste.

811.6 No chemical vent shall intersect vents for other services.

811.7 Chemical wastes shall be discharged in a manner approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

811.8 The provisions in this section relative to materials and methods of construction shall not apply to installations such as photographic or X-ray dark rooms or research or control laboratories where minor amounts of adequately diluted chemicals are discharged.

812.0 Clear Water Wastes.

Water lifts, expansion tanks, cooling jackets, sprinkler systems, drip or overflow pans, or similar devices that discharge clear wastewater into the building drainage system shall discharge through an indirect waste.

813.0 Swimming Pools.

Pipes carrying wastewater from swimming or wading pools, including pool drainage and backwash from filters, shall be installed as an indirect waste. Where a pump is used to discharge waste pool water to the drainage system, the pump discharge shall be installed as an indirect waste.

814.0 Condensate Wastes and Control.

814.1 Condensate Disposal. Condensate from air washers, air-cooling coils, fuel-burning condensing appliances, the overflow from evaporative coolers, and similar water-supplied equipment or similar air-conditioning equipment shall be collected and discharged to an approved plumbing fixture or disposal area. If discharged into the drainage system, equipment shall drain by means of an indirect waste pipe. The waste pipe shall have a slope of not less than 1/8 inch per foot (10.5 mm/m) or one percent slope and shall be of approved corrosion-resistant material not smaller than the outlet size as required in Table 8-2 for air-cooling coils or condensing fuel-burning appliances, respectively. Condensate or wastewater shall not drain over a public way.

814.2 Size. Air-conditioning condensate waste pipes shall be independent of any drainage and waste system and shall not be smaller than shown in Table 8-2.

TABLE 8-2
Minimum Condensate Pipe Size

Equipment Capacity in Tons of Refrigeration	(kW)	Minimum Condensate Pipe Diameter in Inches	(mm)
Up to 20	(Up to 70.34)	3/4	(20)
21–40	(73.85–140.67)	1	(25)
41–90	(144.19–316.6)	1-1/4	(32)
91–125	(320.03–439.6)	1-1/2	(40)
126–250	(443.12–879.2)	2	(50)

The size of condensate waste pipes may be for one unit or a combination of units, or as recommended by the manufacturer. The capacity of waste pipes assumes a one-eighth (1/8) inch per foot (10.5 mm/m) or one percent slope, with the following pipe conditions:

Outside Air – 20%		Room Air – 80%	
DB	WB	DB	WB
90°F	73°F	75°F	62.5°F
(32°C)	(23°C)	(24°C)	(17°)

Condensate drain sizing for other slopes or other conditions shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Air-conditioning waste pipes shall be constructed of materials specified in Chapter 7.

814.3 Point of Discharge. Air-conditioning condensate waste pipes shall connect indirectly to the drainage system through an airgap or airbreak to a properly trapped and vented receptors dry wells, leach pits, or the tailpiece of plumbing fixtures.

Condensate waste shall not drain over a public way.

CHAPTER 9

VENTS

901.0 Vents Required.

Each plumbing fixture trap, except as otherwise provided in this code, shall be protected against siphonage and back-pressure, and air circulation shall be ensured throughout all parts of the drainage system by means of vent pipes installed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and as otherwise required by this code.

902.0 Vents Not Required.

902.1 Vent piping may be omitted on an interceptor when such interceptor acts as a primary settling tank and discharges through a horizontal indirect waste pipe into a secondary interceptor. The second interceptor shall be properly trapped and vented.

902.2 Traps serving sinks that are part of the equipment of bars, soda fountains, and counters need not be vented when the location and construction of such bars, soda fountains, and counters is such as to make it impossible to do so. When such conditions exist, said sinks shall discharge by means of approved indirect waste pipes into a floor sink or other approved type of receptor.

903.0 Materials.

903.1 Vent pipe shall be cast iron, galvanized steel, galvanized wrought iron, copper, brass, Schedule 40 ABS DWV, Schedule 40 PVC DWV, stainless steel 304 or 316L (stainless steel 304 pipe and fittings shall not be installed underground and shall be kept at least six inches (152 mm) aboveground), or other approved materials having a smooth and uniform bore except that:

903.1.1 No galvanized wrought-iron or galvanized steel pipe shall be used underground and shall be kept at least six (6) inches (152 mm) aboveground.

903.1.2 ABS and PVC DWV piping installations shall be installed in accordance with IS 5, IS 9, and Chapter 15 "Firestop Protection." Except for individual single-family dwelling units, materials exposed within ducts or plenums shall have a flame-spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with the Test for Surface-Burning Characteristics of the Building Materials (see the Building Code standards based on ASTM E-84 and ANSI/UL 723).

903.2 Use of Copper Tubing.

903.2.1 Copper tube for underground drainage and vent piping shall have a weight of not less than that of copper drainage tube type DWV.

903.2.2 Copper tube for aboveground drainage and vent piping shall have a weight of not less than that of copper drainage tube type DWV.

903.2.3 Copper tube shall not be used for chemical or industrial wastes as defined in Section 811.0.

903.2.4 All hard-drawn copper tubing, in addition to the required incised marking, shall be marked in accordance with either ASTM B306, Copper Drainage Tube (DWV), or ASTM B88 Seamless Copper Water Tube as listed in Table 14-1. The colors shall be: Type K, green; Type L, blue; Type M, red; Type DWV, yellow.

903.3 Vent fittings shall be cast iron, galvanized malleable iron or galvanized steel, copper, brass, ABS, PVC, stainless steel 304 or 316L, or other approved materials, except that no galvanized malleable iron or galvanized steel, or 304 stainless steel shall be used underground and shall be kept at least six (6) inches (152 mm) aboveground. Stainless steel 304 pipe and fittings shall not be installed underground and shall be kept at least 6 inches (152 mm) aboveground.

903.4 Changes in direction of vent piping shall be made by the appropriate use of approved fittings, and no such pipe shall be strained or bent. Burred ends shall be reamed to the full bore of the pipe.

904.0 Size of Vents.

904.1 The size of vent piping shall be determined from its length and the total number of fixture units connected thereto, as set forth in Table 7-5. The diameter of an individual vent shall not be less than one and one-fourth (1-1/4) inches (32 mm) nor less than one-half (1/2) the diameter of the drain to which it is connected. In addition, the drainage piping of each building and each connection to a public sewer or a private sewage disposal system shall be vented by means of one or more vent pipes, the aggregate cross-sectional area of which shall not be less than that of the largest required building

sewer, as determined from Table 7-5. Vent pipes from fixtures located upstream from pumps, ejectors, backwater valves, or other devices that in any way obstruct the free flow of air and other gases between the building sewer and the outside atmosphere shall not be used for meeting the cross-sectional area venting requirements of this section.

Exception: When connected to a common building sewer, the drainage piping of two (2) or more buildings located on the same lot and under one (1) ownership may be vented by means of piping sized in accordance with Table 7-5, provided the aggregate cross-sectional area of all vents is not less than that of the largest required common building sewer.

904.2 No more than one-third (1/3) of the total permitted length, per Table 7-5, of any minimum-sized vent shall be installed in a horizontal position.

Exception: When a minimum-sized vent is increased one (1) pipe size for its entire length, the maximum length limitation does not apply.

905.0 Vent Pipe Grades and Connections.

905.1 All vent and branch vent pipes shall be free from drops or sags, and each such vent shall be level or shall be so graded and connected as to drip back by gravity to the drainage pipe it serves.

905.2 Where vents connect to a horizontal drainage pipe, each vent pipe shall have its invert taken off above the drainage centerline of such pipe downstream of the trap being served.

905.3 Unless prohibited by structural conditions, each vent shall rise vertically to a point not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the flood-level rim of the fixture served before offsetting horizontally, and whenever two or more vent pipes converge, each such vent pipe shall rise to a point at least six (6) inches (152 mm) in height above the flood-level rim of the plumbing fixture it serves before being connected to any other vent. Vents less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the flood-level rim of the fixture shall be installed with approved drainage fittings, material, and grade to the drain.

905.4 All vent pipes shall extend undiminished in size above the roof, or shall be reconnected with a soil or waste vent of proper size.

905.5 The vent pipe opening from a soil or waste pipe, except for water closets and similar fixtures, shall not be below the weir of the trap.

905.6 Two (2) fixtures may be served by a common vertical pipe when each such fixture wastes separately into an approved double fitting having inlet openings at the same level.

906.0 Vent Termination.

906.1 Each vent pipe or stack shall extend through its flashing and shall terminate vertically not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the roof nor less than one (1) foot (305 mm) from any vertical surface.

906.2 Each vent shall terminate not less than ten (10) feet (3048 mm) from, or at least three (3) feet (914 mm) above, any openable window, door, opening, air intake, or vent shaft, nor less than three (3) feet (914 mm) in every direction from any lot line, alley and street excepted.

906.3 Vent pipes shall be extended separately or combined, of full required size, not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the roof or fire wall. Flagpoling of vents shall be prohibited except where the roof is used for purposes other than weather protection. All vents within ten (10) feet (3048 mm) of any part of the roof that is used for such other purposes shall extend not less than seven (7) feet (2,134 mm) above such roof and shall be securely stayed.

906.4 Vent pipes for outdoor installations shall extend at least ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) above the surrounding ground and shall be securely supported.

906.5 Joints at the roof around vent pipes shall be made watertight by the use of approved flashings or flashing material.

906.6 Lead. See Table 14-1. Sheet lead shall be not less than the following:

For safe pans – not less than four (4) pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m^2) or 1/16-inch (1.6 mm) thick.

For flashings or vent terminals – not less than three (3) pounds per square foot (14.7 kg/m^2) or 1.2 mm thick.

Lead bends and lead traps shall not be less than one-eighth (1/8) inch (3.2 mm) wall thickness.

906.7 Frost or Snow Closure. Where frost or snow closure is likely to occur in locations having minimum design temperature below 0°F (–17.8°C), vent terminals shall be a minimum of two (2) inches (51 mm) in diameter, but in no event smaller than the required vent pipe. The change in diameter shall be made inside the building at least one (1) foot (305 mm) below the roof in an insulated space and terminate not less than ten (10) inches (254 mm) above the roof, or as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

907.0 Vent Stacks and Relief Vents.

907.1 Each drainage stack that extends ten (10) or more stories above the building drain or other horizontal drain, shall be served by a parallel vent

stack, which shall extend undiminished in size from its upper terminal and connect to the drainage stack at or immediately below the lowest fixture drain. Each such vent stack shall also be connected to the drainage stack at each fifth floor, counting down from the uppermost fixture drain, by means of a yoke vent, the size of which shall be not less in diameter than either the drainage or the vent stack, whichever is smaller.

907.2 The yoke vent connection to the vent stack shall be placed not less than forty-two (42) inches (1,067 mm) above the floor level, and the yoke vent connection to the drainage stack shall be by means of a wye-branch fitting placed below the lowest drainage branch connection serving that floor.

908.0 Vertical Wet Venting.

908.1 Wet venting is limited to vertical drainage piping receiving the discharge from the trap arm of one (1) and two (2) fixture unit fixtures that also serves as a vent for not to exceed four (4) fixtures. All wet-vented fixtures shall be within the same story; provided, further, that fixtures with a continuous vent discharging into a wet vent shall be within the same story as the wet-vented fixtures. No wet vent shall exceed six (6) feet (1829 mm) in developed length.

908.2 The vertical piping between any two (2) consecutive inlet levels shall be considered a wet-vented section. Each wet-vented section shall be a minimum of one (1) pipe size larger than the required minimum waste pipe size of the upper fixture or shall be one (1) pipe size larger than the required minimum pipe size for the sum of the fixture units served by such wet-vented section, whichever is larger, but in no case less than two (2) inches (51 mm).

908.3 Common vent sizing shall be the sum of the fixture units served but, in no case, smaller than the minimum vent pipe size required for any fixture served, or by Section 904.0.

908.4 Bathroom Wet Venting.

908.4.1 Where permitted. Any combination of fixtures within one (1) or two (2) bathrooms located on the same floor level in dwellings and guest rooms shall be permitted to be vented by a wet vent. The wet vent shall be considered the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent along the direction of the flow in the drain pipe to the most downstream fixture drain connection to the horizontal branch drain. Only the fixtures within the bathroom(s) shall connect to the wet-vented horizontal branch drain. Any additional fixtures shall discharge downstream of the wet vent system and be conventionally vented.

908.4.2 Vent Connection. The dry vent connection to the wet vent shall be an individual vent or common vent for the lavatory, bidet, shower, or bathtub.

908.4.3 Size. The wet vent shall be sized based on the fixture unit discharge into the wet vent. The wet vent shall be a minium size of 2 inches for 4 dfu or less, and 3 inches for more than 4 dfu.

909.0 Special Venting for Island Fixtures.

Traps for island sinks and similar equipment shall be roughed in above the floor and may be vented by extending the vent as high as possible, but not less than the drainboard height and then returning it downward and connecting it to the horizontal sink drain immediately downstream from the vertical fixture drain. The return vent shall be connected to the horizontal drain through a wye-branch fitting and shall, in addition, be provided with a foot vent taken off the vertical fixture vent by means of a wye branch immediately below the floor and extending to the nearest partition and then through the roof to the open air, or may be connected to other vents at a point not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the flood-level rim of the fixtures served. Drainage fittings shall be used on all parts of the vent below the floor level, and a minimum slope of one-quarter (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) back to the drain shall be maintained. The return bend used under the drainboard shall be a one (1) piece fitting or an assembly of a forty-five (45) degree (0.79 rad), a ninety (90) degree (1.6 rad), and a forty-five (45) degree (0.79 rad) elbow in the order named. Pipe sizing shall be as elsewhere required in this code. The island sink drain, upstream of the returned vent, shall serve no other fixtures. An accessible cleanout shall be installed in the vertical portion of the foot vent.

910.0 Combination Waste and Vent Systems.

910.1 Combination waste and vent systems shall be permitted only where structural conditions preclude the installation of conventional systems as otherwise prescribed by this code.

910.2 Plans and specifications for each combination waste and vent system shall first be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction before any portion of any such system is installed.

910.3 Each combination waste and vent system, as defined in Chapter 2, shall be provided with a vent or vents adequate to ensure free circulation of air.

Any branch more than fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm) in length shall be separately vented in an approved manner. The minimum area of any vent installed in a combination waste and vent system shall be at least one-half (1/2) the inside cross-sectional area of the drain pipe served. The vent connection shall be downstream of the uppermost fixture.

910.4 Each waste pipe and each trap in any such system shall be at least two (2) pipe sizes larger than the sizes required by Chapter 7 of this code, and at least two (2) pipe sizes larger than any fixture tailpiece or connection.

910.5 No vertical waste pipe shall be used in any such system, except the tailpiece or connection between the outlet of a plumbing fixture and the trap. Such tailpieces or connections shall be as short as possible, and in no case shall exceed two (2) feet (610 mm).

> **Exception:** Branch lines may have forty-five (45) degree (0.79 rad) vertical offsets.

910.6 An accessible cleanout shall be installed in each vent for the combination waste and vent system. Cleanouts may not be required on any wet-vented branch serving a single trap when the fixture tailpiece or connection is not less than two (2) inches (50 mm) in diameter and provides ready access for cleaning through the trap.

910.7 No water closet or urinal shall be installed on any such system. Other one (1), two (2), or three (3) unit fixtures remotely located from the sanitary system and adjacent to a combination waste and vent system may be connected to such system in the conventional manner by means of waste and vent pipes of regular sizes, providing that the two (2) pipe size increase required in Section 910.4 is based on the total fixture unit load connected to the system.

Note:

See Appendix B of this code for explanatory notes on the design of combination waste and vent systems.

CHAPTER 10

TRAPS AND INTERCEPTORS

1001.0 Traps Required.

1001.1 Each plumbing fixture, excepting those having integral traps or as permitted in Section 1001.2, shall be separately trapped by an approved type of waterseal trap. Not more than one (1) trap shall be permitted on a trap arm.

1001.2 One (1) trap may serve a set of not more than three (3) single compartment sinks or laundry tubs of the same depth or three (3) lavatories immediately adjacent to each other and in the same room if the waste outlets are not more than thirty (30) inches (762 mm) apart and the trap is centrally located when three (3) compartments are installed.

1001.3 No food waste disposal unit shall be installed with any set of restaurant, commercial, or industrial sinks served by a single trap; each such food waste disposal unit shall be connected to a separate trap. Each domestic clothes washer and each laundry tub shall be connected to a separate and independent trap, except that a trap serving a laundry tub may also receive the waste from a clothes washer set adjacent thereto. No clothes washer or laundry tub shall be connected to any trap for a kitchen sink.

1001.4 The vertical distance between a fixture outlet and the trap weir shall be as short as practicable, but in no case shall the tailpiece from any fixture exceed twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm) in length.

1002.0 Traps Protected by Vent Pipes.

1002.1 Each plumbing fixture trap, except as otherwise provided in this code, shall be protected against siphonage and back-pressure, and air circulation shall be assured throughout all parts of the drainage system by means of a vent pipe installed in accordance with the requirements of this code.

1002.2 Each fixture trap shall have a protecting vent so located that the developed length of the trap arm from the trap weir to the inner edge of the vent shall be within the distance given in Table 10-1, but in no case less than two (2) times the diameter of the trap arm.

1002.3 A trap arm may change direction without the use of a cleanout when such change of direction does not exceed ninety (90) degrees (1.6 rad). All horizontal changes in direction of trap arms shall comply with Section 706.3.

> **Exception:** For trap arms three (3) inches (80 mm) in diameter and larger, the change of direction shall not exceed one hundred and thirty-five (135) degrees (2.36 rad) without the use of a cleanout.

1002.4 The vent pipe opening from a soil or waste pipe, except for water closets and similar fixtures, shall not be below the weir of the trap.

TABLE 10-1
Horizontal Distance of Trap Arms
(Except for water closets and similar fixtures)*

Trap Arm Inches	Distance Trap to Vent Feet	Distance Trap to Vent Inches	Trap Arm mm	Distance Trap to Vent mm
1-1/4	2	6	32	762
1-1/2	3	6	40	1067
2	5	0	50	1524
3	6	0	80	1829
4 & larger	10	0	100 & larger	3048

Slope one-fourth (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m)

*The developed length between the trap of a water closet or similar fixture (measured from the top of the closet ring [closet flange] to the inner edge of the vent) and its vent shall not exceed six (6) feet (1829 mm).

1003.0 Traps — Described.

1003.1 Each trap, except for traps within an interceptor or similar device, shall be self-cleaning. Traps for bathtubs, showers, lavatories, sinks, laundry tubs, floor drains, urinals, drinking fountains, dental units, and similar fixtures shall be of standard design and weight and shall be of ABS, cast brass, cast iron, lead, PP, PVC, or other approved material. An exposed and readily accessible drawn-brass tubing trap, not less than 17 B&S Gauge (0.045 inch) (1.1 mm), may be used on fixtures discharging domestic sewage.

> **Exception:** Drawn-brass tubing traps shall not be used for urinals. Each trap shall have the manufacturer's name stamped legibly in the metal of the trap, and each tubing trap shall have the gauge of the tubing in addition to the manufacturer's name. Every trap shall have a smooth and uniform interior waterway.

1003.2 No more than one (1) approved slip joint fitting may be used on the outlet side of a trap, and no tubing trap shall be installed without a listed tubing trap adapter. Listed plastic trap adapters may be used to connect listed metal tubing traps.

1003.3 The size (nominal diameter) of a trap for a given fixture shall be sufficient to drain the fixture rapidly, but in no case less than nor more than one (1) pipe size larger than given in Table 7-3. The trap shall be the same size as the trap arm to which it is connected.

1004.0 Traps — Prohibited.

No form of trap that depends for its seal upon the action of movable parts shall be used. No trap that has concealed interior partitions, except those of plastic, glass, or similar corrosion-resisting material, shall be used. "S" traps, bell traps, and crown-vented traps shall be prohibited. No fixture shall be double trapped. Drum and bottle traps shall be installed only for special conditions. No trap shall be installed without a vent, except as otherwise provided in this code.

1005.0 Trap Seals.

Each fixture trap shall have a water seal of not less than two (2) inches (51 mm) and not more than four (4) inches (102 mm), except where a deeper seal is found necessary by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Traps shall be set true with respect to their water seals and, where necessary, they shall be protected from freezing.

1006.0 Floor Drain Traps.

Floor drains shall connect into a trap so constructed that it can be readily cleaned and of a size to serve efficiently the purpose for which it is intended. The drain inlet shall be so located that it is at all times in full view. When subject to reverse flow of sewage or liquid waste, such drains shall be equipped with an approved backwater valve.

1007.0 Trap Seal Protection.

Floor drain or similar traps directly connected to the drainage system and subject to infrequent use shall be protected with a trap seal primer, except where not deemed necessary for safety or sanitation by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Trap seal primers shall be accessible for maintenance.

1008.0 Building Traps.

Building traps shall not be installed except where required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Each building trap when installed shall be provided with a cleanout and with a relieving vent or fresh-air intake on the inlet side of the trap, which need not be larger than one-half the diameter of the drain to which it connects. Such relieving vent or fresh-air intake shall be carried above grade and terminate in a screened outlet located outside the building.

1009.0 Industrial Interceptors (Clarifiers) and Separators.

1009.1 When Required. Interceptors (clarifiers) (including grease, oil, sand interceptors [clarifiers], etc.) shall be required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction when they are necessary for the proper handling of liquid wastes containing grease, flammable wastes, sand, solids, acid or alkaline substances, or other ingredients harmful to the building drainage system, the public or private sewer, or to public or private sewage disposal.

1009.2 Approval. The size, type, and location of each interceptor (clarifier) or separator shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Except where otherwise specifically permitted, no wastes other than those requiring treatment or separation shall be discharged into any interceptor (clarifier).

1009.3 Design. Interceptors (clarifiers) for sand and similar heavy solids shall be so designed and located as to be readily accessible for cleaning and shall have a water seal of not less than six (6) inches (152 mm).

1009.4 Relief Vent. Interceptors (clarifiers) shall be so designed that they will not become air-bound if closed covers are used. Each interceptor (clarifier) shall be properly vented.

1009.5 Location. Each interceptor (clarifier) cover shall be readily accessible for servicing and maintaining the interceptor (clarifier) in working and operating condition. The use of ladders or the removal of bulky equipment in order to service interceptors (clarifiers) shall constitute a violation of accessibility. Location of all interceptors (clarifiers) shall be shown on the approved building plan.

1009.6 Maintenance of Interceptors. Interceptors shall be maintained in efficient operating condition by periodic removal of accumulated grease, scum, oil, or other floating substances and solids deposited in the interceptor.

1009.7 Discharge. The waste pipe from oil and sand interceptors shall discharge as approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1010.0 Slaughterhouses, Packing Establishments, etc.

Every fish, fowl, and animal slaughterhouse or establishment; every fish, fowl, and meat packing or curing establishment; every soap factory, tallow-rendering, fat-rendering, and hide-curing establishment shall be connected to and shall drain or discharge into an approved grease interceptor (clarifier).

1011.0 Minimum Requirements for Auto Wash Racks.

Every private or public wash rack and/or floor or slab used for cleaning machinery or machine parts shall be adequately protected against storm or surface water and shall drain or discharge into an approved interceptor (clarifier).

1012.0 Commercial and Industrial Laundries. Laundry equipment in commercial and industrial buildings that does not have integral strainers shall discharge into an interceptor having a wire basket or similar device that is removable for cleaning and that will prevent passage into the drainage system of solids one-half (1/2) inch (12.7 mm) or larger in maximum dimension, such as string, rags, buttons, or other solid materials detrimental to the public sewerage system.

1013.0 Bottling Establishments. Bottling plants shall discharge their process wastes into an interceptor that will provide for the separation of broken glass or other solids, before discharging liquid wastes into the drainage system.

1014.0 Grease Interceptors.

1014.1 Where it is determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction that waste pretreatment is required, an approved type of grease interceptor(s) complying with the provisions of this section shall be correctly sized and properly installed in grease waste line(s) leading from sinks and drains, such as floor drains and floor sinks and other fixtures or equipment in serving establishments such as restaurants, cafes, lunch counters, cafeterias, bars and clubs, hotels, hospitals, sanitariums, factory or school kitchens, or other establishments where grease may be introduced into the drainage or sewage system in quantities that can effect line stoppage or hinder sewage treatment or private sewage disposal. A grease interceptor shall not be required for individual dwelling units or for any private living quarters. Water closets, urinals, and other plumbing fixtures conveying human waste shall not drain into or through the grease interceptor.

1014.1.1 Each fixture discharging into a grease interceptor shall be individually trapped and vented in an approved manner.

1014.1.2 All grease interceptors shall be maintained in efficient operating condition by periodic removal of the accumulated grease and latent material. No such collected grease shall be introduced into any drainage piping or public or private sewer. If the Authority Having Jurisdiction determines that a grease interceptor is not being properly cleaned or maintained, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall have the authority to mandate the installation of additional equipment or devices and to mandate a maintenance program.

1014.1.3 Food Waste Disposal Units and Dishwashers. Unless specifically required or permitted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, no food waste disposal unit or dishwasher shall be connected to or discharge into any grease interceptor. Commercial food waste disposers shall be permitted to discharge directly into the building's drainage system.

1014.2 Hydromechanical Grease Interceptors.

1014.2.1 Each plumbing fixture or piece of equipment connected to a hydromechanical grease interceptor shall be provided with an approved type of vented flow control installed in a readily accessible and visible location. Flow control devices shall be designed and installed so that the total flow through such device or devices shall at no time be greater than the rated flow of the grease interceptor. No flow-control device having adjustable or removable parts shall be approved. The vented flow-control device shall be located such that no system vent shall be between the flow-control and the grease trap inlet. The vent or air inlet of the flow-control device shall connect with the sanitary drainage vent system, as elsewhere required by this code, or shall terminate through the roof of the building, and shall not terminate to the free atmosphere inside the building.

Exception: Listed grease interceptors with integral flow controls or restricting devices shall be installed in an accessible location in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

1014.2.2 The total capacity in gallons (L) of fixtures discharging into any hydromechanical grease interceptor shall not exceed two and one-half (2-1/2) times the certified GPM (L/s) flow rate of the interceptor as per Table 10-2.

For the purpose of this section, the term "fixture" shall mean and include each plumbing fixture, appliance, apparatus, or other equipment required to be connected to or discharged into a grease interceptor by any provision of this section.

1014.2.3 A vent shall be installed downstream of hydromechanical grease interceptors in accordance with the requirements of this code.

Table 10-2
Hydromechanical Grease Interceptor (HGI) Sizing Chart*

DFU	HGI FLow (gpm)
8	20
10	25
13	35
20	50
35	75
172	100
216	150
342	200
428	250
576	350
720	500

*Based on intermittent potentially full flow in drainage lines.

1014.3 Gravity Grease Interceptors. Required gravity grease interceptors shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1014.3.1 through 1014.3.7.

1014.3.1 General.

The provisions of this section shall apply to the design, construction, installation, and testing of commercial kitchen gravity grease interceptors.

1014.3.2 Waste Discharge Requirements.

1014.3.2.1 Waste discharge in establishments from fixtures and equipment which may contain grease, including but not limited to, scullery sinks, pot and pan sinks, dishwashers, soup kettles, and floor drains located in areas where grease-containing materials may exist, may be drained into the sanitary waste through the interceptor when approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1014.3.2.2 Toilets, urinals, and other similar fixtures shall not drain through the interceptor.

1014.3.2.3 All waste shall enter the interceptor through the inlet pipe only.

1014.3.3 Design.

1014.3.3.1 Gravity Interceptors shall be constructed in accordance with the applicable standard in Table 14-1 or the design approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1014.3.4 Location.

1014.3.4.1 Each grease interceptor shall be so installed and connected that it shall be at all times easily accessible for inspection, cleaning, and removal of the intercepted grease. A gravity grease interceptor complying with IAPMO PS 80, shall not be installed in any part of a building where food is handled. Location of the grease interceptor shall meet the approval of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1014.3.4.2 Interceptors shall be placed as close as practical to the fixtures they serve.

1014.3.4.3 Each business establishment for which a gravity grease interceptor is required shall have an interceptor which shall serve only that establishment unless otherwise approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1014.3.4.4 Each gravity grease interceptor shall be located so as to be readily accessible to the equipment required for maintenance.

1014.3.5 Construction Requirements.

1014.3.5.1 Purpose. Gravity grease interceptors shall be designed to remove grease from effluent and shall be sized in accordance with this section. Gravity grease interceptors shall also be designed to retain grease until accumulations can be removed by pumping the interceptor. It is recommended that a sample box be located at the outlet end of all gravity grease interceptors so that the Authority Having Jurisdiction can periodically sample effluent quality.

1014.3.6 Sizing Criteria.

1014.3.6.1 Sizing. The volume of the interceptor shall be determined by using Table 10-3. If drainage fixture units (DFUs) are not known, the interceptor shall be sized based on the maximum DFUs allowed for the pipe size connected to the inlet of the interceptor. Refer to Table 7-5, Drainage Piping, Horizontal.

1014.3.7 Abandoned Gravity Grease Interceptors. Abandoned grease interceptors shall be pumped and filled as required for abandoned sewers and sewage disposal facilities in Section 722.0.

1015.0 FOG (Fats, Oils, and Greases) Disposal System.

1015.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this section is to provide the necessary criteria for the sizing, application, and installation of FOG disposal systems designated as a pretreatment or discharge water quality compliance strategy.

Table 10-3
Gravity Grease Interceptor Sizing

DFUs (1)	Interceptor Volume (2)
8	500 gallons
21 (3)	750 gallons
35	1,000 gallons
90 (3)	1,250 gallons
172	1,500 gallons
216	2,000 gallons
307 (3)	2,500 gallons
342	3,000 gallons
428	4,000 gallons
576	5,000 gallons
720	7,500 gallons
2112	10,000 gallons
2640	15,000 gallons

Notes
(1) The maximum allowable DFUs plumbed to the kitchen drain lines that will be connected to the grease interceptor.
(2) This size is based on: the DFUs, the pipe size from this code; Table 7-5; Useful Tables for flow in half-full pipes (ref: *Mohinder Nayyar Piping Handbook*, 3rd Edition, 1992).
(3) Based on 30-minute retention time (ref.: Metcalf & Eddy, Inc. *Small and Decentralized Wastewater Management Systems*, 3rd Ed. 1998). Rounded up to nominal interceptor volume.

1015.2 Scope.

FOG disposal systems shall be considered engineered systems and shall comply with the requirements of section 301.2 of this code.

1015.3 Components, Materials, and Equipment.

FOG disposal systems, including all components, materials, and equipment necessary for the proper function of the system, shall comply with sections 301.1.3 or 301.2 of this code.

1015.4 Sizing Application and Installation.

FOG disposal systems shall be engineered, sized, and installed in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications and as specified in IAPMO PS 118-2000, as listed in Chapter 14, Table 14-1 of this code.

1015.5 Performance.

FOG disposal systems shall be tested and certified as described in IAPMO PS 118-2000, as listed in Chapter 14, Table 14-1 of this code, and other national consensus standards applicable to FOG disposal systems as discharging no more than 100mg/L FOG.

Gravity Grease Interceptor Sizing Example:

Given: A restaurant with the following fixtures and equipment.

one food preparation sink; three floor drains - one in the food prep area, one in the grill area, and one receiving the indirect waste from the ice machine; a mop sink; a dishwasher with a maximum discharge flow rate of 20 gpm discharging into a dedicated receptor; and two public restrooms, each with one water closet and one lavatory.

Kitchen Drain Line DFU Count (from Table 7-3):

3 floor drains @ 2 DFUs each =	6 DFUs
Mop sink @ 3 DFUs each =	3 DFUs
Food prep sink @ 3 DFUs each =	3 DFUs
Dishwasher @ 4 DFUs (Table 7-4) =	4 DFUs
Total	16 DFUs

Using Table 10-3, the grease interceptor will be sized at 750 gallons.

1016.0 Sand Interceptors.

1016.1 Where Required.

1016.1.1 Whenever the discharge of a fixture or drain may contain solids or semi-solids heavier than water that would be harmful to a drainage system or cause a stoppage within the system, the discharge shall be through a sand interceptor. Multiple floor drains may discharge into one sand interceptor.

1016.1.2 Sand interceptors are required whenever the Authority Having Jurisdiction deems it advisable to have a sand interceptor to protect the drainage system.

1016.2 Construction and Size.

Sand interceptors shall be built of brick or concrete, prefabricated coated steel, or other watertight material. The interceptor shall have an interior baffle for full separation of the interceptor into two (2) sections. The outlet pipe shall be the same size as the inlet pipe of the sand interceptor, the minimum being three (3) inches

(80 mm), and the baffle shall have two (2) openings of the same diameter as the outlet pipe and at the same invert as the outlet pipe. These openings shall be staggered so that there cannot be a straight line flow between any inlet pipe and the outlet pipe. The invert of the inlet pipe shall be no lower than the invert of the outlet pipe.

The sand interceptor shall have a minimum dimension of two (2) feet square (0.2 m^2) for the net free opening of the inlet section and a minimum depth under the invert of the outlet pipe of two (2) feet (610 mm).

For each five (5) gallons (18.9 L) per minute flow or fraction thereof over twenty (20) gallons (75.7 L) per minute, the area of the sand interceptor inlet section is to be increased by one (1) square foot (0.09 m^2). The outlet section shall at all times have a minimum area of fifty (50) percent of the inlet section.

The outlet section shall be covered by a solid removable cover, set flush with the finished floor, and the inlet section shall have an open grating, set flush with the finished floor and suitable for the traffic in the area in which it is located.

1016.3 Separate Use. Sand and similar interceptors for every solid shall be so designed and located as to be readily accessible for cleaning, shall have a water seal of not less than six (6) inches (152 mm), and shall be vented.

1017.0 Oil and Flammable Liquid Interceptors.

1017.1 Interceptors Required. All repair garages and gasoline stations with grease racks or grease pits, and all factories that have oily, flammable, or both types of wastes as a result of manufacturing, storage, maintenance, repair, or testing processes, shall be provided with an oil or flammable liquid interceptor that shall be connected to all necessary floor drains. The separation or vapor compartment shall be independently vented to the outer air. If two (2) or more separation or vapor compartments are used, each shall be vented to the outer air or may connect to a header that is installed at a minimum of six (6) inches (152 mm) above the spill line of the lowest floor drain and vented independently to the outer air. The minimum size of a flammable vapor vent shall not be less than two (2) inches (50 mm), and, when vented through a sidewall, the vent shall not be less than ten (10) feet (3048 mm) above the adjacent level at an approved location. The interceptor shall be vented on the sewer side and shall not connect to a flammable vapor vent. All oil and flammable interceptors shall be provided with gastight cleanout covers that shall be readily accessible. The waste line shall not be less than three (3) inches (80 mm) in diameter with a full-size cleanout to grade. When an interceptor is provided with an overflow, it shall be provided with an overflow line (not less than two (2) inches (50 mm) in diameter) to an approved waste oil tank having a minimum capacity of five hundred fifty (550) gallons (2,080 L) and meeting the requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The waste oil from the separator shall flow by gravity or shall be pumped to a higher elevation by an automatic pump. Pumps shall be adequately sized and accessible. Waste oil tanks shall have a two (2) inch (50 mm) minimum pump-out connection at grade and a one and one-half (1-1/2) inch (40 mm) minimum vent to atmosphere at an approved location at least ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) above grade.

1017.2 Design of Interceptors. Each manufactured interceptor that is rated shall be stamped or labeled by the manufacturer with an indication of its full discharge rate in gpm (L/s). The full discharge rate to such an interceptor shall be determined at full flow. Each interceptor shall be rated equal to or greater than the incoming flow and shall be provided with an overflow line to an underground tank.

Interceptors not rated by the manufacturer shall have a depth of not less than two (2) feet (610 mm) below the invert of the discharge drain. The outlet opening shall have not less than an eighteen (18) inch (457 mm) water seal and shall have a minimum capacity as follows: where not more than three (3) motor vehicles are serviced and/or stored, interceptors shall have a minimum capacity of six (6) cubic feet (0.2 m^3), and one (1) cubic foot (0.03 m^3) of capacity shall be added for each vehicle up to ten (10) vehicles. Above ten (10) vehicles, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall determine the size of the interceptor required. Where vehicles are serviced only and not stored, interceptor capacity shall be based on a net capacity of one (1) cubic foot (0.03 m^3) for each one hundred (100) square feet (9.3 m^2) of surface to be drained into the interceptor, with a minimum of six (6) cubic feet (0.2 m^3).

CHAPTER 11

STORM DRAINAGE

1101.0 General.

1101.1 Where Required. All roofs, paved areas, yards, courts, and courtyards shall be drained into a separate storm sewer system, or into a combined sewer system where a separate storm sewer system is not available, or to some other place of disposal satisfactory to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. In the case of one- and two-family dwellings, storm water may be discharged on flat areas such as streets or lawns so long as the storm water shall flow away from the building and away from adjoining property, and shall not create a nuisance.

1101.2 Storm Water Drainage to Sanitary Sewer Prohibited. Storm water shall not be drained into sewers intended for sanitary drainage only.

1101.3 Material Uses. Rainwater piping placed within the interior of a building or run within a vent or shaft shall be of cast iron, galvanized steel, wrought iron, brass, copper, lead, Schedule 40 ABS DWV, Schedule 40 PVC DWV, stainless steel 304 or 316L (stainless steel 304 pipe and fittings shall not be installed underground and shall be kept at least six inches (152 mm) aboveground), or other approved materials, and changes in direction shall conform to the requirements of Section 706.0. ABS and PVC DWV piping installations shall be installed in accordance with IS 5, IS 9, and Chapter 15 "Firestop Protection." Except for individual single-family dwelling units, materials exposed within ducts or plenums shall have a flame-spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50, when tested in accordance with the Test for Surface-Burning Characteristics of the Building Materials (see the Building Code standards based on ASTM E-84 and ANSI/UL 723.).

1101.4 Expansion Joints Required. Expansion joints or sleeves shall be provided where warranted by temperature variations or physical conditions.

1101.5 Subsoil Drains.

1101.5.1 Subsoil drains shall be provided around the perimeter of buildings having basements, cellars, or crawl spaces or floors below grade. Such subsoil drains may be positioned inside or outside of the footing, shall be of perforated or open-jointed approved drain tile or pipe not less than three (3) inches (80 mm) in diameter, and shall be laid in gravel, slag, crushed rock, approved three-quarter (3/4) inch (19.1 mm) crushed recycled glass aggregate, or other approved porous material with a minimum of four (4) inches (102 mm) surrounding the pipe on all sides. Filter media shall be provided for exterior subsoil piping.

1101.5.2 Subsoil drains shall be piped to a storm drain, to an approved water course, to the front street curb or gutter, or to an alley, or the discharge from the subsoil drains shall be conveyed to the alley by a concrete gutter. Where a continuously flowing spring or groundwater is encountered, subsoil drains shall be piped to a storm drain or an approved water course.

1101.5.3 Where it is not possible to convey the drainage by gravity, subsoil drains shall discharge to an accessible sump provided with an approved automatic electric pump. The sump shall be at least fifteen (15) inches (375 mm) in diameter, eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) in depth, and provided with a fitted cover. The sump pump shall have an adequate capacity to discharge all water coming into the sump as it accumulates to the required discharge point, and the capacity of the pump shall not be less than fifteen (15) gpm (1.0 L/s). The discharge piping from the sump pump shall be a minimum of one and one-half (1-1/2) inches (40 mm) in diameter and have a union or other approved quick-disconnect assembly to make the pump accessible for servicing.

1101.5.4 For separate dwellings not serving continuously flowing springs or groundwater, the sump discharge pipe may discharge onto a concrete splash block with a minimum length of twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm). This pipe shall be within four (4) inches (102 mm) of the splash block and positioned to direct the flow parallel to the recessed line of the splash block.

1101.5.5 Subsoil drains subject to backflow when discharging into a storm drain shall be provided with a backwater valve in the drain line so located as to be accessible for inspection and maintenance.

1101.5.6 Nothing in Section 1101.5 shall prevent drains that serve either subsoil drains or areaways of a detached building from discharging to a properly graded open area, provided that:

(1) They do not serve continuously flowing springs or groundwater;

(2) The point of discharge is at least ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) from any property line; and

(3) It is impracticable to discharge such drains to a storm drain, to an approved water course, to the front street curb or gutter, or to an alley.

1101.6 Building Subdrains. Building subdrains located below the public sewer level shall discharge into a sump or receiving tank, the contents of which shall be automatically lifted and discharged into the drainage system as required for building sumps.

1101.7 Areaway Drains. All open subsurface space adjacent to a building, serving as an entrance to the basement or cellar of a building, shall be provided with a drain or drains. Such areaway drains shall be two (2) inches (50 mm) minimum diameter for areaways not exceeding one hundred (100) square feet (9.3 m^2) in area, and shall be discharged in the manner provided for subsoil drains not serving continuously flowing springs or groundwater (see Section 1101.5.2). Areaways in excess of one hundred (100) square feet (9.3 m^2) shall not drain into subsoil. Areaway drains for areaways exceeding one hundred (100) square feet (9.3 m^2) shall be sized according to Table 11-2.

1101.8 Window Areaway Drains. Window areaways not exceeding ten (10) square feet (0.9 m^2) in area may discharge to the subsoil drains through a two (2) inch (50 mm) pipe. However, window areaways exceeding ten (10) square feet (0.9 m^2) in area shall be handled in the manner provided for entrance areaways (see Section 1101.7).

1101.9 Filling Stations and Motor Vehicle Washing Establishments. Public filling stations and motor vehicle washing establishments shall have the paved area sloped toward sumps or gratings within the property lines. Curbs not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) high shall be placed where required to direct water to gratings or sumps.

1101.10 Paved Areas. Where the occupant creates surface water drainage, the sumps, gratings, or floor drains shall be piped to a storm drain or an approved water course.

1101.11 Roof Drainage.

1101.11.1 Primary Roof Drainage. Roof areas of a building shall be drained by roof drains or gutters. The location and sizing of drains and gutters shall be coordinated with the structural design and pitch of the roof. Unless otherwise required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, roof drains, gutters, vertical conductors or leaders, and horizontal storm drains for primary drainage shall be sized based on a storm of sixty (60) minutes duration and 100-year return period. Refer to Table D-1 (in Appendix D) for 100-year, 60-minute storms at various locations.

1101.11.2 Secondary drainage. Secondary (emergency) roof drainage shall be provided by one of the methods specified in Section 1101.11.2.1 or 1101.11.2.2.

1101.11.2.1 Roof Scuppers or Open Side. Secondary roof drainage shall be provided by an open-sided roof or scuppers where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped. An open-sided roof or scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1101.11.1. Scupper openings shall be a minimum of 4" high and have a width equal to the circumference of the roof drain required for the area served, sized by Table 11-1.

1101.11.2.2 Secondary Roof Drain. Secondary roof drains shall be provided. The secondary roof drains shall be located a minimum of 2 inches above the roof surface. The maximum height of the roof drains shall be a height to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1101.11.1. The secondary roof drains shall connect to a piping system conforming to Section 1101.11.2.2.1 or 1101.11.2.2.2.

1101.11.2.2.1 Separate Piping System. The secondary roof drainage system shall be a separate system of piping, independent of the primary roof drainage system. The discharge shall be above grade, in a location observable by the building occupants or maintenance personnel. Secondary roof drain systems shall be sized in accordance with Section 1101.11.1 based on the rainfall rate for which the primary system is sized.

1101.11.2.2.2 Combined System. The secondary roof drains shall connect to the vertical piping of the primary storm drainage conductor downstream of any horizontal offset below the roof. The primary storm drainage system shall connect to the building storm water that connects to an underground public storm sewer. The combined secondary and primary roof drain systems shall be sized in accordance with Section 1106.0 based on double the rainfall rate for the local area.

1101.12 Cleanouts.

1101.12.1 Cleanouts for building storm drains shall comply with the requirements of Section 719.0 of this code.

1101.12.2 Rain leaders and conductors connected to a building storm sewer shall have a cleanout installed at the base of the outside leader or outside conductor before it connects to the horizontal drain.

1101.13 All rainwater sumps serving "public use" occupancy buildings shall be provided with dual pumps arranged to function alternately in case of overload or mechanical failure.

1102.0 Materials.

1102.1 Conductors.

1102.1.1 Conductors installed aboveground in buildings shall be constructed of materials specified in Table 14-1.

1102.1.2 The inside of conductors installed above ground level shall be of seamless copper water tube, Type K, L, or M; Schedule 40 copper pipe or Schedule 40 copper alloy pipe; Type DWV copper drainage tube; service weight cast-iron soil pipe or hubless cast-iron soil pipe; standard weight galvanized steel pipe; stainless steel 304 or 316L (stainless steel 304 pipe and fittings shall not be installed underground and shall be kept at least 6 inches (152 mm) aboveground); or Schedule 40 ABS or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe.

1102.2 Leaders.

1102.2.1 Leaders shall be constructed of materials specified in Table 14-1.

1102.2.2 Leaders shall be of seamless copper water tube, Type K, L, or M; Schedule 40 copper pipe; Schedule 40 copper alloy pipe; type DWV copper drainage tube; service weight cast-iron soil pipe or hubless cast-iron soil pipe; aluminum sheet metal, galvanized steel sheet metal, or copper sheet metal; standard weight galvanized steel pipe; Class DL or XL lead pipe; stainless steel 304 or 316L (stainless steel 304 pipe and fittings shall not be installed underground and shall be kept at least 6 inches (152 mm) above-ground); or Schedule 40 ABS or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe.

1102.3 Underground Building Storm Drains. All underground building storm drains shall be constructed of materials specified in Table 14-1.

1102.4 Building Storm Sewers. Building storm sewers shall be constructed of materials specified in Table 14-1.

1102.5 Subsoil Drains.

1102.5.1 Subsoil drains shall be constructed of materials specified in Table 14-1.

1102.5.2 Subsoil drains shall be open-jointed or of perforated pipe, vitrified clay, plastic, cast iron, or porous concrete.

1103.0 Traps on Storm Drains and Leaders.

1103.1 Where Required. Leaders and storm drains, when connected to a combined sewer, shall be trapped. Floor and area drains connected to a storm drain shall be trapped.

Exception: Traps shall not be required where roof drains, rain leaders, and other inlets are at locations allowed under Section 906.0, Vent Termination.

1103.2 Where Not Required. No trap shall be required for leaders or conductors that are connected to a sewer carrying storm water exclusively.

1103.3 Trap Size. Traps, when installed for individual conductors, shall be the same size as the horizontal drain to which they are connected.

1103.4 Method of Installation of Combined Sewer. Individual storm-water traps shall be installed on the storm-water drain branch serving each storm-water inlet, or a single trap shall be installed in the main storm drain just before its connection with the combined building sewer. Such traps shall be provided with an accessible cleanout on the outlet side of the trap.

1104.0 Leaders, Conductors, and Connections.

1104.1 Improper Use. Leaders or conductors shall not be used as soil, waste, or vent pipes nor shall soil, waste, or vent pipes be used as leaders or conductors.

1104.2 Protection of Leaders. Leaders installed along alleyways, driveways, or other locations where they may be exposed to damage shall be protected by metal guards, recessed into the wall, or constructed from ferrous pipe.

1104.3 Combining Storm with Sanitary Drainage. The sanitary and storm drainage system of a building shall be entirely separate, except where a combined sewer is used, in which case the building storm drain shall be connected in the same horizontal plane through single wye fittings to the combined building sewer at least ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) downstream from any soil stack.

1105.0 Roof Drains.

1105.1 Material.

1105.1.1 Roof drains shall be constructed of materials specified in Table 14-1.

1105.1.2 Roof drains shall be of cast iron, copper or copper alloy, lead, or plastic.

1105.2 Dome or Strainer for General Use. All roof drains and overflow drains, except those draining to hanging gutters, shall be equipped with strainers extending not less than four (4) inches (102 mm) above the surface of the roof immediately adjacent to the drain. Strainers shall have a minimum inlet area above the roof level of not less than one and one-half (1-1/2) times the area of the conductor or leader to which the drain is connected.

1105.3 Strainers for Flat Decks. Roof drain strainers for use on sun decks, parking decks, and similar areas that are normally serviced and maintained may be of the flat surface type. Such roof drain strainers shall be level with the deck and shall have an available inlet area of no less than two (2) times the area of the conductor or leader to which the drain is connected.

1105.4 Roof Drain Flashings. Connection between the roof and roof drains that pass through the roof and into the interior of the building shall be made watertight by the use of proper flashing material.

1105.4.1 Where lead flashing material is used, it shall be a minimum of four (4) pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m^2).

1105.4.2 Where copper flashing material is used, it shall be a minimum of twelve (12) ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m^2).

1106.0 Size of Leaders, Conductors, and Storm Drains.

1106.1 Vertical Conductors and Leaders. Vertical conductors and leaders shall be sized on the basis of the maximum projected roof area and Table 11-1.

1106.2 Size of Horizontal Storm Drains and Sewers. The size of building storm drains or building storm sewers or any of their horizontal branches shall be based upon the maximum projected roof or paved area to be handled and Table 11-2.

1106.3 Size of Roof Gutters. The size of semi-circular gutters shall be based on the maximum projected roof area and Table 11-3.

1106.4 Side Walls Draining onto a Roof. Where vertical walls project above a roof so as to permit storm water to drain to the roof area below, the adjacent roof area may be computed from Table 11-1 as follows:

(1) For one (1) wall – add fifty (50) percent of the wall area to the roof area figures.

(2) For two (2) adjacent walls – add thirty-five (35) percent of the total wall areas.

(3) Two (2) opposite walls of same height – add no additional area.

(4) Two (2) opposite walls of differing heights– add fifty (50) percent of the wall area above the top of lower wall.

(5) Walls on three (3) sides – add fifty (50) percent of the area of the inner wall below the top of the lowest wall, plus allowance for the area of the wall above the top of the lowest wall, per (2) and (4) above.

(6) Walls on four (4) sides – no allowance for wall areas below the top of the lowest wall – add for areas above the top of the lowest wall per (1), (2), (4), and (5) above.

1107.0 Values for Continuous Flow.

Where there is a continuous or semi-continuous discharge into the building storm drain or building storm sewer, as from a pump, ejector, air-conditioning plant, or similar device, one (1) gpm (3.8 L/min.) of such discharge shall be computed as being equivalent to twenty-four (24) square feet (2.2 m^2) of roof area, based upon a rate of rainfall of four (4) inches (102 mm) per hour.

1108.0 Controlled-Flow Roof Drainage.

1108.1 Application. In lieu of sizing the storm drainage system in accordance with Section 1106.0, the roof drainage may be sized on the basis of controlled flow and storage of the storm water on the roof, provided the following conditions are met:

(1) The water from a 25-year-frequency storm shall not be stored on the roof for more than twenty-four (24) hours.

(2) During the storm, the water depth on the roof shall not exceed the depths specified in Table 11-4.

TABLE 11-4
Controlled-Flow Maximum Roof Water Depth

Roof Rise,* Inches	(mm)	Max Water Depth at Drain, Inches	(mm)
Flat	(Flat)	3	(76)
2	(51)	4	(102)
4	(102)	5	(127)
6	(152)	6	(152)

*Vertical measurement from the roof surface at the drain to the highest point of the roof surface served by the drain, ignoring any local depression immediately adjacent to the drain.

(3) No less than two (2) drains shall be installed in roof areas of ten thousand (10,000) square feet (929.0 m^2) or less, and no less than one (1) additional drain shall be installed for

each ten thousand (10,000) square feet (929.0 m^2) of roof area over ten thousand (10,000) square feet (929.0 m^2).

(4) Each roof drain shall have a precalibrated, fixed (nonadjustable), and proportional weir (notched) in a standing water collar inside the strainer. No mechanical devices or valves shall be allowed.

(5) Pipe sizing shall be based on the precalibrated rate of flow (gpm) of the precalibrated weir for the maximum allowable water depth, and Tables 11-1 and 11-2.

(6) The height of stones or other granular material above the waterproofed surface shall not be considered in water depth measurement, and the roof surface in the vicinity of the drain shall not be recessed to create a reservoir.

(7) Roof design, where controlled-flow roof drainage is used, shall be such that the minimum design roof live load is thirty (30) pounds per square foot (146.5kg/m^2) to provide a safety factor above the fifteen (15) pounds per square foot (73.2kg/m^2) represented by the depth of water stored on the roof as indicated in Table 11-4.

(8) Scuppers shall be provided in parapet walls. The distance of scupper bottoms above the roof level at the drains shall not exceed the maximum distances specified in Table 11-5.

TABLE 11-5
Distance of Scupper Bottoms Above Roof

Roof Rise,* Inches	(mm)	Maximum Distance of Scupper Bottom Above Roof Level at Drains, Inches	(mm)
Flat	(Flat)	3	(76.2)
2	(51)	4	(102.0)
4	(102)	5	(127.0)
6	(152)	6	(152.0)

*Vertical measurement from the roof surface at the drain to the highest point of the roof surface served by the drain, ignoring any local depression immediately adjacent to the drain.

(9) Scupper openings shall be a minimum of 4 inches high and have a width equal to the circumference of the roof drain required for the area served, sized by Table 11-1.

(10) Flashings shall extend above the top of the scuppers.

(11) At any wall or parapet, forty-five (45) degree (0.79 rad) cants shall be installed.

(12) Separate storm and sanitary drainage systems shall be provided within the building.

(13) Calculations for the roof drainage system shall be submitted along with the plans to the Authority Having Jurisdiction for approval.

1108.2 Setback Roofs. Drains on setback roofs may be connected to the controlled-flow drainage systems provided:

(1) The setback is designed for storing water, or

(2) The square footage of the setback drainage area is converted as outlined in Section 1108.0 to gpm, and the storm-water pipe sizes in the controlled-flow system are based on the sum of the loads.

(3) The branch from each of the roof drains that are not provided with controlled flow shall be sized in accordance with Table 11-1.

1109.0 Testing.

1109.1 Testing Required. New building storm drainage systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired shall be tested as described in Section 1109.2.1 to disclose leaks and defects.

1109.2 Methods of Testing Storm Drainage Systems. Except for outside leaders and perforated or open-jointed drain tile, the piping of storm drain systems shall be tested upon completion of the rough piping installation by water or air, and proved tight. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may require the removal of any cleanout plugs to ascertain whether the pressure has reached all parts of the system. Either of the following test methods shall be used:

1109.2.1 Water Test. After piping has been installed, the water test shall be applied to the drainage system, either to the entire system or to sections. If the test is applied to the entire system, all openings in the piping shall be tightly closed except for the highest opening, and the system shall be filled with water to the point of overflow. If the system is tested in sections, each opening shall be tightly plugged except for the highest opening of the section under test, and each section shall be filled with water, but no section shall be tested with less than a ten (10) foot (3,048 mm) head of water. In testing successive sections, at least the upper ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) of the next preceding section shall be tested so that no joint of pipe in the building (except the uppermost ten (10) foot (3,048 mm) of a roof drainage system, which shall be filled with

water to the flood level of the uppermost roof drain) shall have been submitted to a test of less than a ten (10) foot (3048 mm) head of water. The water shall be kept in the system or in the portion under test for at least fifteen (15) minutes before inspection starts; the system shall then be tight at all points.

1109.2.2 Air Test. The air test shall be made by attaching an air compressor testing apparatus to any suitable opening after closing all other inlets and outlets to the system, forcing air into the system until there is a uniform gauge pressure of five (5) psi (34.5 kPa) or sufficient pressure to balance a column of mercury ten (10) inches (254 mm) in height. This pressure shall be held without introduction of additional air for a period of at least fifteen (15) minutes. Schedule 40 plastic DWV systems shall not be tested by the air test method.

1109.2.3 Exceptions. When circumstances exist that make air and water tests described in Sections 1109.2.1 and 1109.2.2 above impractical, see Section 103.5.3.3.

TABLE 11-1
Sizing Roof Drains, Leaders, and Vertical Rainwater Piping[1,2,3]

Size of Drain, Leader, or Pipe, Inches	Flow, gpm	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
2	23	2,176	1,088	725	544	435	363
3	67	6440	3,220	2,147	1,610	1,288	1,073
4	144	13,840	6,920	4,613	3,460	2,768	2,307
5	261	25,120	12,560	8,373	6,280	5,024	4,187
6	424	40,800	20,400	13,600	10,200	8,160	6,800
8	913	88,000	44,000	29,333	22,000	17,600	14,667

TABLE 11-1 (Metric)
Sizing Roof Drains, Leaders, and Vertical Rainwater Piping[1,2,3]

Size of Drain Leader or Pipe, mm	Flow, L/s	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
50	1.5	202	101	67	51	40	34
80	4.2	600	300	200	150	120	100
100	9.1	1,286	643	429	321	257	214
125	16.5	2,334	1,117	778	583	467	389
150	26.8	3,790	1,895	1,263	948	758	632
200	57.6	8,175	4,088	2,725	2,044	1,635	1,363

Notes:
1. The sizing data for vertical conductors, leaders, and drains are based on the pipes flowing 7/24 full.
2. For rainfall rates other than those listed, determine the allowable roof area by dividing the area given in the 1 inch/hour (25 mm/hour) column by the desired rainfall rate.
3. Vertical piping may be round, square, or rectangular. Square pipe shall be sized to enclose its equivalent round pipe. Rectangular pipe shall have at least the same cross-sectional area as its equivalent round pipe, except that the ratio of its side dimensions shall not exceed 3 to 1.

TABLE 11-2
Sizing of Horizontal Rainwater Piping[1,2]

Size of Pipe, Inches	Flow at 1/8 in./ft. Slope, gpm	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
3	34	3,288	1,644	1,096	822	657	548
4	78	7,520	3,760	2,506	1,880	1,504	1,253
5	139	13,360	6,680	4,453	3,340	2,672	2,227
6	222	21,400	10,700	7,133	5,350	4,280	3,566
8	478	46,000	23,000	15,330	11,500	9,200	7,670
10	860	82,800	41,400	27,600	20,700	16,580	13,800
12	1,384	133,200	66,600	44,400	33,300	26,650	22,200
15	2,473	238,000	119,000	79,333	59,500	47,600	39,650

Size of Pipe, Inches	Flow at 1/4 in./ft. Slope, gpm	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
3	48	4,640	2,320	1,546	1,160	928	773
4	110	10,600	5,300	3,533	2,650	2,120	1,766
5	196	18,880	9,440	6,293	4,720	3,776	3,146
6	314	30,200	15,100	10,066	7,550	6,040	5,033
8	677	65,200	32,600	21,733	16,300	13,040	10,866
10	1,214	116,800	58,400	38,950	29,200	23,350	19,450
12	1,953	188,000	94,000	62,600	47,000	37,600	31,350
15	3,491	336,000	168,000	112,000	84,000	67,250	56,000

Size of Pipe, Inches	Flow at 1/2 in./ft. Slope, gpm	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Feet at Various Rainfall Rates					
		1 in./h	2 in./h	3 in./h	4 in./h	5 in./h	6 in./h
3	68	6,576	3288	2,192	1,644	1,310	1096
4	156	15,040	7,520	5,010	3,760	3,010	2500
5	278	26,720	13,360	8,900	6,680	5,320	4450
6	445	42,800	21,400	14,267	10,700	8,580	7140
8	956	92,000	46,000	30,650	23,000	18,400	15,320
10	1,721	165,600	82,800	55,200	41,400	33,150	27,600
12	2,768	266,400	133,200	88,800	66,600	53,200	44,400
15	4,946	476,000	238,000	158,700	119,000	95,200	79,300

Notes:
1. The sizing data for horizontal piping are based on the pipes flowing full.
2. For rainfall rates other than those listed, determine the allowable roof area by dividing the area given in the 1 inch/hour (25 mm/hour) column by the desired rainfall rate.

TABLE 11-2 (Metric)
Sizing of Horizontal Rainwater Piping[1,2]

Size of Pipe, mm	Flow at 10 mm/m Slope, L/s	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
80	2.1	305	153	102	76	61	51
100	4.9	700	350	233	175	140	116
125	8.8	1,241	621	414	310	248	207
150	14.0	1,988	994	663	497	398	331
200	30.2	4,273	2,137	1,424	1,068	855	713
250	54.3	7,692	3,846	2,564	1,923	1,540	1,282
300	87.3	12,375	6,187	4,125	3,094	2,476	2,062
375	156.0	22,110	11,055	7,370	5,528	4,422	3,683

Size of Pipe, mm	Flow at 20 mm/m Slope, L/s	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
80	3.0	431	216	144	108	86	72
100	6.9	985	492	328	246	197	164
125	12.4	1,754	877	585	438	351	292
150	19.8	2,806	1,403	935	701	561	468
200	42.7	6,057	3,029	2,019	1,514	1,211	1009
250	76.6	10,851	5,425	3,618	2,713	2,169	1807
300	123.2	17,465	8,733	5,816	4,366	3,493	2912
375	220.2	31,214	15,607	10,405	7,804	6,248	5202

Size of Pipe, mm	Flow at 40 mm/m Slope, L/s	Maximum Allowable Horizontal Projected Roof Areas Square Meters at Various Rainfall Rates					
		25 mm/h	50 mm/h	75 mm/h	100 mm/h	125 mm/h	150 mm/h
80	4.3	611	305	204	153	122	102
100	9.8	1,400	700	465	350	280	232
125	17.5	2,482	1,241	827	621	494	413
150	28.1	3,976	1,988	1,325	994	797	663
200	60.3	8,547	4,273	2,847	2,137	1,709	1,423
250	108.6	15,390	7,695	5,128	3,846	3,080	2,564
300	174.6	24,749	12,374	8,250	6,187	4,942	4,125
375	312.0	44,220	22,110	14,753	11,055	8,853	7,367

Notes:

1. The sizing data for horizontal piping are based on the pipes flowing full.
2. For rainfall rates other than those listed, determine the allowable roof area by dividing the area given in the 1 inch/hour (25 mm/hour) column by the desired rainfall rate.

TABLE 11-3
Size of Gutters

Diameter of Gutter in Inches 1/16 in./ft. Slope	Maximum Rainfall in Inches per Hour 2	3	4	5	6
3	340	226	170	136	113
4	720	480	360	288	240
5	1,250	834	625	500	416
6	1,920	1,280	960	768	640
7	2,760	1,840	1,380	1,100	918
8	3,980	2,655	1,990	1,590	1,325
10	7,200	4,800	3,600	2,880	2,400

Diameter of Gutter in Inches 1/8 in./ft. Slope	Maximum Rainfall in Inches per Hour 2	3	4	5	6
3	480	320	240	192	160
4	1,020	681	510	408	340
5	1,760	1,172	880	704	587
6	2,720	1,815	1,360	1,085	905
7	3,900	2,600	1,950	1,560	1,300
8	5,600	3,740	2,800	2,240	1,870
10	10,200	6,800	5,100	4,080	3,400

Diameter of Gutter in Inches 1/4 in./ft. Slope	Maximum Rainfall in Inches per Hour 2	3	4	5	6
3	680	454	340	272	226
4	1,440	960	720	576	480
5	2,500	1,668	1,250	1,000	834
6	3,840	2,560	1,920	1,536	1,280
7	5,520	3,680	2,760	2,205	1,840
8	7,960	5,310	3,980	3,180	2,655
10	14,400	9,600	7,200	5,750	4,800

Diameter of Gutter in Inches 1/2 in./ft. Slope	Maximum Rainfall in Inches per Hour 2	3	4	5	6
3	960	640	480	384	320
4	2,040	1,360	1,020	816	680
5	3,540	2,360	1,770	1,415	1,180
6	5,540	3,695	2,770	2,220	1,850
7	7,800	5,,200	3,900	3,120	2,600
8	11,200	7,460	5,600	4,480	3,730
10	20,000	13,330	10,000	8,000	6,660

TABLE 11-3 (Metric)
Size of Gutters

Diameter of Gutter in mm	Maximum Rainfall in Millimeters per Hour				
5.2 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
80	31.6	21.0	15.8	12.6	10.5
100	66.9	44.6	33.4	26.8	22.3
125	116.1	77.5	58.1	46.5	38.7
150	178.4	119.1	89.2	71.4	59.5
175	256.4	170.9	128.2	102.2	85.3
200	369.7	246.7	184.9	147.7	123.1
250	668.9	445.9	334.4	267.6	223.0

Diameter of Gutter in mm	Maximum Rainfall in Millimeters per Hour				
10.4 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
80	44.6	29.7	22.3	17.8	14.9
100	94.8	63.3	47.4	37.9	31.6
25	163.5	108.9	81.8	65.4	54.5
150	252.7	168.6	126.3	100.8	84.1
175	362.3	241.5	181.2	144.9	120.8
200	520.2	347.5	260.1	208.1	173.7
250	947.6	631.7	473.8	379	315.9

Diameter of Gutter in mm	Maximum Rainfall in Millimeters per Hour				
20.9 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
80	63.2	42.2	31.6	25.3	21.0
100	133.8	89.2	66.9	53.5	44.6
125	232.3	155.0	116.1	92.9	77.5
150	356.7	237.8	178.4	142.7	118.9
175	512.8	341.9	256.4	204.9	170.9
200	739.5	493.3	369.7	295.4	246.7
250	133.8	891.8	668.9	534.2	445.9

Diameter of Gutter in mm	Maximum Rainfall in Millimeters per Hour				
41.7 mm/m Slope	**50.8**	**76.2**	**101.6**	**127.0**	**152.4**
80	89.2	59.5	44.6	35.7	29.7
100	189.5	126.3	94.8	75.8	63.2
125	328.9	219.2	164.4	131.5	109.6
150	514.7	343.3	257.3	206.2	171.9
175	724.6	483.1	362.3	289.9	241.4
200	1,40.5	693.0	520.2	416.2	346.5
250	1,858.0	1,238.4	929.0	743.2	618.7

CHAPTER 12

FUEL PIPING

1201.0 Scope of Gas Piping.

(A) Coverage of piping systems shall extend from the point of delivery to the connections with each gas utilization device. For other than undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the point of delivery shall be considered the outlet of the service meter assembly, or the outlet of the service regulator or service shutoff valve where no meter is provided. For undiluted liquefied petroleum gas systems, the point of delivery shall be considered the outlet of the final pressure regulator, exclusive of the line gas regulators, in the system. [NFPA 54: 1.1.1.1(A)]

(B) Piping systems requirements shall include design, materials, components, fabrications, assembly, installation, testing inspection, operation, and maintenance. [NFPA 54: 1.1.1.1(C)]

(C) This code shall not apply to the following (reference standards for some of which appear in Appendix L [NFPA 54: 1.1.1.2]):

(1) Portable LP-Gas equipment of all types that is not connected to a fixed fuel piping system.

(2) Installation of farm equipment such as brooders, dehydrators, dryers, and irrigation equipment.

(3) Raw material (feedstock) applications, except for piping to special atmosphere generators.

(4) Oxygen-fuel gas cutting and welding systems.

(5) Industrial gas applications using gases such as acetylene and acetylenic compounds, hydrogen, ammonia, carbon monoxide, oxygen, and nitrogen.

(6) Petroleum refineries, pipeline compressor or pumping stations, loading terminals, compounding plants, refinery tank farms, and natural gas processing plants.

(7) Large integrated chemical plants or portions of such plants where flammable or combustible liquids or gases are produced by chemical reactions or used in chemical reactions.

(8) LP-Gas installations at utility gas plants.

(9) Liquefied natural gas (LNG) installations.

(10) Fuel gas piping in power and atomic energy plants.

(11) Proprietary items of equipment, apparatus, or instruments such as gas-generating sets, compressors, and calorimeters.

(12) LP-Gas equipment for vaporization, gas mixing, and gas manufacturing.

(13) LP-Gas piping for buildings under construction or renovations that are not to become part of the permanent building piping system—that is, temporary fixed piping for building heat.

(14) Installation of LP-Gas systems for railroad switch heating.

(15) Installation of LP-Gas and compressed natural gas systems on vehicles.

(16) Gas piping, meters, gas-pressure regulators, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-Gas.

1202.0 General.

The regulations of this chapter shall govern the installation of all fuel gas piping in or in connection with any building or structure or within the property lines of any premises up to 5 psi, other than service pipe. Fuel oil piping systems shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 31.

1203.0 Definitions.

For the purposes of this code, these definitions shall apply to this chapter. Certain terms, phrases, words, and their derivatives shall be interpreted as set forth in this section, provided, however, that whenever the words "gas meters" appear, they shall be construed to also mean valves and those devices required for the regulation of pressure and the measurement of natural gas being dispensed for any building, structure, or premises.

1203.1 Appliance Fuel Connector – An assembly of listed semi-rigid or flexible tubing and fittings to carry fuel between a fuel-piping outlet and a fuel-burning appliance.

1203.2 Fuel Gas – Natural, manufactured, liquefied petroleum, or a mixture of these.

1203.3 Gas Piping – Any installation of pipe, valves, or fittings that is used to convey fuel gas, installed on any premises or in any building, but shall not include:

(1) Any portion of the service piping.

(2) Any approved piping connection six (6) feet (1,829 mm) or less in length between an existing gas outlet and a gas appliance in the same room with the outlet.

1203.4 Gas-Piping System – Any arrangement of gas piping supplied by one (1) meter, and each arrangement of gas piping serving a building, structure, or premises, whether individually metered or not.

1203.5 Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) Facilities – Liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) facilities means tanks, containers, container valves, regulating equipment, meters, and/or appurtenances for the storage and supply of liquefied petroleum gas for any building, structure, or premises.

NFPA NFPA NFPA NFPA NFPA **1203.6 Provision for Location of Point of Delivery** - The location of the point of delivery shall be acceptable to the serving gas supplier. [NFPA 54: 5.2]

1203.7 Quick-Disconnect Device – A hand-operated device that provides a means for connecting and disconnecting an appliance or an appliance connector to a gas supply and that is equipped with an automatic means to shut off the gas supply when the device is disconnected.

1203.8 Service Piping – The piping and equipment between the street gas main and the gas piping system inlet that is installed by, and is under the control and maintenance of, the serving gas supplier.

1203.9 Transition Gas Riser – Any listed or approved section or sections of pipe and fittings used to convey fuel gas and installed in a gas piping system for the purpose of providing a transition from belowground to aboveground.

1204.0 Inspection.

1204.1 Upon completion of the installation, alteration, or repair of any gas piping, and prior to the use thereof, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be notified that such gas piping is ready for inspection.

1204.2 All excavations required for the installation of underground piping shall be kept open until such time as the piping has been inspected and approved. If any such piping is covered or concealed before such approval, it shall be exposed upon the direction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1204.3 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall make the following inspections and either shall approve that portion of the work as completed or shall notify the permit holder wherein the same fails to comply with this code.

1204.3.1 Rough Piping Inspection.

This inspection shall be made after all gas piping authorized by the permit has been installed and before any such piping has been covered or concealed or any fixture or appliance has been attached thereto. This inspection shall include a determination that the gas-piping size, material, and installation meet the requirements of this code.

1204.3.2 Final Piping Inspection.

This inspection shall be made after all piping authorized by the permit has been installed and after all portions thereof that are to be covered or concealed are so concealed and before any fixtures, appliance, or shutoff valve has been attached thereto. This inspection shall be in accordance with Section 1214.1. Test gauges used in conducting tests shall comply with Section 319.0, Test Gauges.

1204.4 In cases where the work authorized by the permit consists of a minor installation of additional piping to piping already connected to a gas meter, the foregoing inspections may be waived at the discretion of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. In this event, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall make such inspection as deemed advisable in order to be assured that the work has been performed in accordance with the intent of this code.

1205.0 Certificate of Inspection.

1205.1 If, upon final piping inspection, the installation is found to comply with the provisions of this code, a certificate of inspection may be issued by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1205.2 A copy of the certificate of such final piping inspection shall be issued to the serving gas supplier supplying gas to the premises.

1205.3 It shall be unlawful for any serving gas supplier, or person furnishing gas, to turn on or cause to be turned on, any fuel gas or any gas meter or meters, until such certificate of final inspection, as herein provided, has been issued.

1206.0 Authority to Render Gas Service.

1206.1 It shall be unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation, excepting an authorized agent or employee of a person, firm, or corporation engaged in the business of furnishing or supplying gas and whose service pipes supply or connect with the particular premises, to turn on or reconnect gas service in or on any premises where and when gas service is, at the time, not being rendered.

1206.2 It shall be unlawful to turn on or connect gas in or on any premises unless all outlets are properly and securely connected to gas appliances or capped or plugged with screw joint fittings.

1207.0 Authority to Disconnect.

1207.1 The Authority Having Jurisdiction or the serving gas supplier is hereby authorized to disconnect any gas piping or appliance or both that shall be found not to conform to the requirements of this code or that may be found defective and in such condition as to endanger life or property.

1207.2 Where such disconnection has been made, a notice shall be attached to such gas piping or appliance or both that shall state the same has been disconnected, together with the reasons thereof.

1207.3 It shall be unlawful to remove or disconnect any gas piping or gas appliance without capping or plugging with a screw joint fitting the outlet from which said pipe or appliance was removed. All outlets to which gas appliances are not connected shall be left capped gastight on any piping system that has been installed, altered, or repaired.

Exception: When an approved listed quick-disconnect device is used.

1208.0 Temporary Use of Gas.

Where temporary use of gas is desired and the Authority Having Jurisdiction deems the use necessary, a permit may be issued for such use for a period of time not to exceed that designated by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, provided that such gas-piping system otherwise conforms to the requirements of this code regarding material, sizing, and safety.

1209.0 Gas-Piping System Design, Materials, and Components.

1209.1 Piping Plan.

1209.1.1 Installation of Piping System. Where required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, a piping sketch or plan shall be prepared before proceeding with the installation. This plan shall show the proposed location of piping, the size of different branches, the various load demands, and the location of the point of delivery.

1209.1.2 Addition to Existing System. When additional gas utilization equipment is being connected to a gas-piping system, the existing piping shall be checked to determine whether it has adequate capacity (see Section 1209.4.3). If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as required, or separate gas piping of adequate capacity shall be provided.

1209.2 Provision for Location of Point of Delivery. The location of the point of delivery shall be acceptable to the serving gas supplier.

1209.3 Interconnections Between Gas-Piping Systems.

1209.3.1 Interconnections Supplying Separate Users. Where two or more meters, or two or more service regulators where meters are not provided, are located on the same premises and supply separate users, the gas-piping systems shall not be interconnected on the outlet side of the meters or service regulators.

1209.3.2 Interconnections for Standby Fuels. Where a supplementary gas for standby use is connected downstream from a meter or a service regulator where a meter is not provided, a device to prevent backflow shall be installed. A three-way valve installed to admit the standby supply and, at the same time, shut off the regular supply, shall be permitted to be used for this purpose.

1209.4 Sizing of Gas-Piping Systems.

1209.4.1 General Considerations. Gas-piping systems shall be of such size and so installed as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum demand without undue loss of pressure between the point of delivery and the gas utilization equipment.

1209.4.2 Maximum Gas Demand. The volume of gas to be provided (in cubic feet per hour) shall be determined directly from the manufacturer's input ratings of the gas utilization equipment served. Where the input rating is not indicated, the gas supplier, equipment manufacturer, or a qualified agency shall be contacted or the rating from Table 12-1 shall be used for estimating the volume of gas to be supplied. The total connected hourly load shall be used as the basis for piping sizing, assuming all equipment is operating at full capacity simultaneously.

Exception: Sizing shall be permitted to be based upon established load diversity factors.

TABLE 12-1
Approximate Gas Input for Typical Appliances

Appliance	Input Btu/h. (Approx.)
Space Heating Units	
Warm air furnace	
Single family	100,000
Multifamily, per unit	60,000
Hydronic boiler	
Single family	100,000
Multifamily, per unit	60,000
Space-and Water-Heating Units	
Hydronic boiler	
Single family	120,000
Multifamily, per unit	75,000
Water-Heating Appliances	
Water heater, automatic storage 30 to 40 gal. tank	35,000
Water heater, automatic storage 50 gal. tank	50,000
Water heater, automatic instantaneous	
Capacity at 2 gal./minute	142,800
Capacity at 4 gal./minute	285,000
Capacity at 6 gal./minute	428,400
Water heater, domestic, circulating or side-arm	35,000
Cooking Appliances	
Range, freestanding, domestic	65,000
Built-in oven or broiler unit, domestic	25,000
Built-in top unit, domestic	40,000
Other Appliances	
Refrigerator	3,000
Clothes dryer, Type 1 (domestic)	35,000
Gas fireplace direct vent	40,000
Gas log	80,000
Barbecue	40,000
Gaslight	2,500

For SI units: 1 Btu per hour = 0.293 W
[NFPA 54: Table 5.4.2.1]

1209.4.3 Sizing Methods. Gas piping shall be sized in accordance with one of the following: [NFPA 54: 5.4.3]

(1) Pipe sizing tables or sizing equations in this chapter.

(2) Other approved engineering methods acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(3) Sizing tables included in a listed piping system manufacturer's installation instructions.

1209.4.4 Allowable Pressure Drop. The design pressure loss in any piping system under maximum probable flow conditions, from the point of delivery to the inlet connection of the gas utilization equipment, shall be such that the supply pressure at the equipment is greater than the minimum pressure required for proper equipment operation. [NFPA 54: 5.4.4]

1209.5 Acceptable Piping Materials and Joining Methods.

1209.5.1 General.

1209.5.1.1 Materials. Materials used for piping systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter or shall be acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 54: 5.6.1.1]

1209.5.1.2 Used Materials. Pipe, fittings, valves, or other materials shall not be used again unless they are free of foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended. [NFPA 54: 5.6.1.2]

1209.5.1.3 Other Materials. Material not covered by the standards specifications listed herein shall be investigated and tested to determine that it is safe and suitable for the proposed service and, in addition, shall be recommended for that service by the manufacturer and shall be acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 54: 5.6.1.3]

1209.5.2 Metallic Pipe.

1209.5.2.1 Cast-iron pipe shall not be used. [NFPA 54: 5.6.2.1]

1209.5.2.2 Steel and wrought-iron pipe shall be at least of standard weight (Schedule 40) and shall comply with one of the following standards: [NFPA 54: 5.6.2.2]

(1) ANSI/ASME B36.10, *Welded and Seamless Wrought-Steel Pipe*

(2) ASTM A 53, *Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless*

(3) ASTM A 106, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service*

1209.5.2.3 Copper and brass pipe shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 scf of gas (0.7 mg/100 L). [NFPA 54: 5.6.2.3]

Threaded copper, brass, or aluminum alloy pipe shall not be used with gases corrosive to such material. [NFPA 54: 5.6.2.4]

1209.5.2.4 Aluminum alloy pipe shall comply with ASTM B 241, *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube* (except that the use of alloy 5456 is prohibited) and shall be marked at each end of each length indicating compliance. Aluminum alloy pipe shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or is subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergents, or sewage. [NFPA 54: 5.6.2.5] Aluminum alloy pipe shall not be used in exterior locations or underground. [NFPA 54: 5.6.2.6]

1209.5.3 Metallic Tubing. Seamless copper, aluminum alloy, or steel tubing shall not be used with gases corrosive to such material. [NFPA 54: 5.6.3]

1209.5.3.1 Steel tubing shall comply with ASTM A 539, *Standard Specification for Electric Resistance-Welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines*, or ASTM A 254, *Standard Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing*. [NFPA 54: 5.6.3.1]

1209.5.3.2 Copper and brass tubing shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 g of hydrogen sulfide per 100 scf of gas (0.7 mg/100 L). Copper tubing shall comply with standard Type K or L of ASTM B 88, *Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube*, or ASTM B 280, *Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service*. [NFPA 54: 5.6.3.2]

1209.5.3.3 Aluminum alloy tubing shall comply with ASTM B 210, *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes*, or ASTM B 241, *Specification for Aluminum Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube.* Aluminum alloy tubing shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or is subject to repeated wettings by liquids such as water, detergent, or sewage. Aluminum alloy tubing shall not be used in exterior locations or underground. [NFPA 54: 5.6.3.3]

1209.5.3.4 Corrugated stainless steel tubing shall be tested and listed in compliance with the construction, installation, and performance requirements of ANSI/IAS LC-1, *Standard for Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing*. [NFPA 54: 5.6.3.4]

1209.5.4 Plastic Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings. Plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be used outside underground only and shall conform with ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*. Pipe to be used shall be marked "gas" and "ASTM D 2513." [NFPA 54: 5.6.4]

Anodeless risers shall comply with the following: [NFPA 54: 5.6.4.1]

1209.5.4.1 Factory-assembled anodeless risers shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used and shall be leak-tested by the manufacturer in accordance with written procedures. [NFPA 54: 5.6.4.1(1)]

1209.5.4.2 Service head adapters and field-assembled anodeless risers incorporating service head adapters shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used by the manufacturer and shall be design-certified to meet the requirements of Category I of ASTM F 1973, *Factory Assembled Anodeless Riser and Transition Fitting on Polyethylene (PE) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems* and the code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.281(e). The manufacturer shall provide the user with qualified installation instructions as prescribed by the code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.283(b). [NFPA 54: 5.6.4.1(2)]

1209.5.4.3 The use of plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings in undiluted liquefied petroleum gas-piping systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*. [NFPA 54: 5.6.4.1(3)]

1209.5.5 Workmanship and Defects. Gas pipe or tubing and fittings shall be clear and free from cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading, and shall be thoroughly brushed and chip and scale blown. Defects in pipe, tubing, and fittings shall not be repaired. Defective pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be replaced. [NFPA 54: 5.6.5]

1209.5.6 Protective Coating. Where in contact with material or atmosphere exerting a corrosive action, metallic piping and fittings coated with a

corrosion-resistant material shall be used. External or internal coatings or linings used on piping or components shall not be considered as adding strength. [NFPA 54: 5.6.6]

1209.5.7 Metallic Pipe Threads.

(A) Specifications for Pipe Threads. Metallic pipe and fitting threads shall be taper pipe threads and shall comply with ANSI/ASME B1.20.1, *Standard for Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)*. [NFPA 54: 5.6.7.1]

(B) Damaged Threads. Pipe with threads that are stripped, chipped, corroded, or otherwise damaged shall not be used. Where a weld opens during the operation of cutting or threading, that portion of the pipe shall not be used. [NFPA 54: 5.6.7.2]

(C) Number of Threads. Field threading of metallic pipe shall be in accordance with Table 12-2. [NFPA 54: 5.6.7.3]

(D) Thread Compounds. Thread (joint) compounds (pipe dope) shall be resistant to the action of liquefied petroleum gas or to any other chemical constituents of the gases to be conducted through the piping.

TABLE 12-2
Specifications for Threading Metallic Pipe

Iron Pipe Size (in.)	Approximate Length of Threaded Portion (in.)	Approximate No. of Threads to Be Cut
1/2	3/4	10
3/4	3/4	10
1	7/8	10
1-1/4	1	11
1-1/2	1	11
2	1	11
2-1/2	1-1/2	12
3	1-1/2	12
4	1-5/8	13

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm.[NFPA 54: 5.6.7.3]

1209.5.8 Metallic Piping Joints and Fittings. The type of piping joint used shall be suitable for the pressure-temperature conditions and shall be selected giving consideration to joint tightness and mechanical strength under the service conditions. The joint shall be able to sustain the maximum end force due to the internal pressure and any additional forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, fatigue, or to the weight of the pipe and its contents. [NFPA 54: 5.6.8]

1209.5.8.1 Pipe Joints. Pipe joints shall be threaded, flanged, brazed, or welded. Where nonferrous pipe is brazed, the brazing materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus. [NFPA 54: 5.6.8.1]

1209.5.8.2 Tubing Joints. Tubing joints shall either be made with approved gas tubing fittings or be brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus. [NFPA 54: 5.6.8.2]

1209.5.8.3 Flared Joints. Flared joints shall be used only in systems constructed from nonferrous pipe and tubing where experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions and where provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints. [NFPA 54: 5.6.8.3]

1209.5.8.4 Metallic Fittings (Including Valves, Strainers, Filters). [NFPA 54: 5.6.8.4]

(1) Threaded fittings in sizes larger than 4 in. (100 mm) shall not be used unless acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(2) Fittings used with steel or wrought-iron pipe shall be steel, brass, bronze, malleable iron, or cast iron.

(3) Fittings used with copper or brass pipe shall be copper, brass, or bronze.

(4) Fittings used with aluminum alloy pipe shall be of aluminum alloy.

(5) Cast-Iron Fittings.
   - (a) Flanges shall be permitted.
   - (b) Bushings shall not be used.
   - (c) Fittings shall not be used in systems containing flammable gas-air mixtures.
   - (d) Fittings in sizes 4 inches (100 mm) and larger shall not be used indoors unless approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
   - (e) Fittings in sizes 6 inches (150 mm) and larger shall not be used unless approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(6) Aluminum Alloy Fittings. Threads shall not form the joint seal.

(7) Zinc-Aluminum Alloy Fittings. Fittings shall not be used in systems containing flammable gas-air mixtures.

(8) Special Fittings. Fittings such as couplings; proprietary-type joints; saddle tees; gland-type compression fittings; and flared, flareless, or compression-type tubing fittings shall be (1) used within the fitting manufacturers' pressure-temperature recommendations; (2) used within the service conditions anticipated with respect to vibration, fatigue, thermal expansion, or contraction; (3) installed or braced to prevent separation of the joint by gas pressure or external physical damage; and (4) acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1209.5.9 Plastic Piping, Joints, and Fittings.

Plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. The following shall be observed when making such joints: [NFPA 54: 5.6.9]

(A) The joint shall be designed and installed so that the longitudinal pullout resistance of the joint will be at least equal to the tensile strength of the plastic piping material. [NFPA 54: 5.6.9(1)]

(B) Heat-fusion joints shall be made in accordance with qualified procedures that have been established and proven by test to produce gastight joints at least as strong as the pipe or tubing being joined. Joints shall be made with the joining method recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Heat-fusion fittings shall be marked "ASTM D 2513." [NFPA 54: 5.6.9(2)]

(C) Where compression-type mechanical joints are used, the gasket material in the fitting shall be compatible with the plastic piping and with the gas distributed by the system. An internal tubular rigid stiffener shall be used in conjunction with the fitting. The stiffener shall be flush with the end of the pipe or tubing and shall extend at least to the outside end of the pipe or tubing and shall extend at least to the outside end of the compression fitting when installed. The stiffener shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be a forced fit in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used. [NFPA 54: 5.6.9(3)]

(D) Plastic piping joints and fittings for use in liquefied petroleum gas-piping systems shall be in accordance with *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, NFPA 58. [NFPA 54: 5.6.9(4)]

1209.5.10 Flanges. All flanges shall comply with ANSI/ASME B16.1, *Standard for Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings;* ANSI/ASME B16.20, *Standard for Ring-Joint Gaskets and Grooves for Steel Pipe Flanges;* or MSS SP-6, *Standard Finishes for Contact Faces of Pipe Flanges and Connecting-End Flanges of Valves and Fittings*. The pressure-temperature ratings shall equal or exceed that required by the application. [NFPA 54: 5.6.10]

(A) Flange Facings. Standard facings shall be permitted for use under this code. Where 150-psi (1,090 kPa) steel flanges are bolted to Class 125 cast-iron flanges, the raised face on the steel flange shall be removed. [NFPA 54: 5.6.10.1]

(B) Lapped Flanges. Lapped flanges shall be used only aboveground or in exposed locations accessible for inspection. [NFPA 54: 5.6.10.2]

1209.5.11 Flange Gaskets. The material for gaskets shall be capable of withstanding the design temperature and pressure of the piping system and the chemical constituents of the gas being conducted without change to its chemical and physical properties. The effects of fire exposure to the joint shall be considered in choosing the material. [NFPA 54: 5.6.11]

(1) Acceptable materials include the following: [NFPA 54: 5.6.11.1]

(a) Metal or metal-jacketed asbestos (plain or corrugated)

(b) Asbestos

(c) Aluminum "O" rings and spiral-wound metal gaskets

(2) When a flanged joint is opened, the gasket shall be replaced. [NFPA 54: 5.6.11.2]

(3) Full-face gaskets shall be used with all bronze and cast-iron flanges. [NFPA 54: 5.6.11.3]

1209.6 Gas Meters.

1209.6.1 Capacity. Gas meters shall be selected for the maximum expected pressure and permissible pressure drop. [NFPA 54: 5.7.1]

1209.6.2 Location.

(A) Gas meters shall be located in ventilated spaces readily accessible for examination, reading, replacement, or necessary maintenance. [NFPA 54: 5.7.2.1]

(B) Gas meters shall not be placed where they will be subjected to damage, such as adjacent to a driveway; under a fire escape; in public passages, halls, or coal bins; or where they will be subject to excessive corrosion or vibration. [NFPA 54: 5.7.2.2]

(C) Gas meters shall be located at least 3 feet (0.9 m) from sources of ignition. [NFPA 54: 5.7.2.3]

(D) Gas meters shall not be located where they will be subjected to extreme temperatures or sudden extreme changes in temperature. Meters shall not be located in areas where they are subjected to temperatures beyond those recommended by the manufacturer. [NFPA 54: 5.7.2.4]

1209.6.3 Supports. Gas meters shall be supported or connected to rigid piping so as not to exert a strain on the meters. Where flexible connectors are used to connect a gas meter to downstream piping at mobile homes in mobile home parks, the meter shall be supported by a post or bracket placed in a firm footing or by other means providing equivalent support. [NFPA 54: 5.7.3]

1209.6.4 Meter Protection. Meters shall be protected against overpressure, back-pressure, and vacuum where such conditions are anticipated. [NFPA 54: 5.7.4]

1209.6.5 Identification. Gas piping at multiple meter installations shall be marked by a metal tag or other permanent means attached by the installing agency, designating the building or the part of the building being supplied. [NFPA 54: 5.7.5]

1209.7 Gas Pressure Regulators.

1209.7.1 Where Required. A line gas pressure regulator or gas equipment pressure regulator, as applicable, shall be installed where the gas supply pressure is higher than that at which the branch supply line or gas utilization equipment is designed to operate or varies beyond design pressure limits. [NFPA 54: 5.8.1]

1209.7.2 Listing. The line gas pressure regulator shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.80. [NFPA 54: 5.8.2]

1209.7.3 Location. The gas pressure regulator shall be accessible for servicing. [NFPA 54: 5.8.3]

1209.7.4 Regulator Protection. Pressure regulators shall be protected against physical damage. [NFPA 54: 5.8.4]

1209.7.5 Venting.

(A) Line Gas Pressure Regulators. [NFPA 54: 5.8.5.1]

(1) An independent vent to the outside of the building, sized in accordance with the regulator manufacturer's instructions, shall be provided where the location of a regulator is such that a ruptured diaphragm will cause a hazard. Where there is more than one regulator at a location, each regulator shall have a separate vent to the outside or, if approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, the vent lines shall be permitted to be manifolded in accordance with accepted engineering practices to minimize back-pressure in the event of diaphragm failure. [See NFPA 54:5.9.7] for information on properly locating the vent.) Materials for vent piping shall be in accordance with Section 1209.5.

Exception: A regulator and vent-limiting means combination listed as complying with ANSI Z21.80, Standard for Line Pressure Regulators, shall be permitted to be used without a vent to the outdoors.

(2) The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects, or other foreign materials that could cause blockage.

(3) At locations where regulators might be submerged during floods, a special antiflood-type breather vent fitting shall be installed, or the vent line shall be extended above the height of the expected flood waters.

(4) A regulator shall not be vented to the gas equipment flue or exhaust system.

(B) Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. *Venting of Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. Venting of gas appliance pressure regulators shall comply with the following requirements: [NFPA 54:9.1.19]*

(1) Gas appliance pressure regulators requiring access to the atmosphere for successful operation shall be equipped with vent piping leading outdoors or, if the regulator vent is an integral part of the equipment, into the combustion chamber adjacent to a continuous pilot, unless constructed or equipped with a vent-limiting means to limit the escape of gas from the vent opening in the event of diaphragm failure.

(2) Vent-limiting means shall be employed on listed gas appliance pressure regulators only.

(3) *In the case of vents leading outdoors, means shall be employed to prevent water from entering this piping and also to prevent blockage of vents by insects and foreign matter.*

(4) *Under no circumstances shall a regulator be vented to the gas utilization equipment flue or exhaust system.*

(5) *In the case of vents entering the combustion chamber, the vent shall be located so the escaping gas will be readily ignited by the pilot and the heat liberated thereby will not adversely affect the normal operation of the safety shutoff system. The terminus of the vent shall be securely held in a fixed position relative to the pilot. For manufactured gas, the need for a flame arrester in the vent piping shall be determined.*

(6) *Vent lines from a gas appliance pressure regulator and bleed lines from a diaphragm-type valve shall not be connected to a common manifold terminating in a combustion chamber. Vent lines shall not terminate in positive-pressure- type combustion chambers.*

(C) Discharge of Vents *[NFPA 54: 5.9.7]*

(1) *The discharge stacks, vents, or outlet parts of all pressure-relieving and pressure-limiting devices shall be located so that gas is safely discharged into the outside atmosphere.*

(2) *Discharge stacks or vents shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects, or any other foreign material that could cause blockage. The discharge stack or vent line shall be at least the same size as the outlet of the pressure-relieving device.*

1209.7.6 Bypass Piping. Valved and regulated bypasses shall be permitted to be placed around gas line pressure regulators where continuity of service is imperative. [NFPA 54: 5.8.6]

1209.7.7 Identification. Line pressure regulators at multiple regulator installations shall be marked by a metal tag or other permanent means designating the building or the part of the building being supplied. [NFPA 54: 5.8.7]

1209.8 Back-Pressure Protection.

1209.8.1 Where to Install. Protective devices shall be installed as close to the utilization equipment as practical, where the design of utilization equipment connected is such that air, oxygen, or standby gases could be forced into the gas supply system. [NFPA 54: 5.10.1.1] Gas and air combustion mixers incorporating double diaphragm "zero" or "atmosphere" governors or regulators shall require no further protection unless connected directly to compressed air or oxygen at pressures of 5 psi (34 kPa) or more. [NFPA 54: 5.10.1.2]

1209.8.2 Protective Devices. Protective devices shall include but not be limited to the following: [NFPA 54: 5.10.2]

(1) Check valves

(2) Three-way valves (of the type that completely closes one side before starting to open the other side)

(3) Reverse flow indicators controlling positive shutoff valves

(4) Normally closed air-actuated positive shutoff pressure regulators

1209.9 Low-Pressure Protection.

A protective device shall be installed between the meter and the gas utilization equipment if the operation of the equipment (i.e., gas compressors) is such that it could produce a vacuum or a dangerous reduction in gas pressure at the meter. Such devices include, but are not limited to, mechanical, diaphragm-operated, or electrically operated low-pressure shutoff valves. [NFPA 54: 5.11]

1209.10 Shutoff Valves. Shutoff valves shall be approved and shall be selected giving consideration to pressure drop, service involved, emergency use, and reliability of operation. Shutoff valves of size 1 inch (25 mm) National Pipe Thread and smaller shall be listed. [NFPA 54: 5.12]

1209.11 Expansion and Flexibility.

1209.11.1 Design. Piping systems shall be designed to have sufficient flexibility to prevent thermal expansion or contraction from causing excessive stresses in the piping material, excessive bending or loads at joints, or undesirable forces or moments at points of connections to equipment and at anchorage or guide points. Formal calculations or model tests shall be required only where reasonable doubt exists as to the adequate flexibility of the system.[NFPA 54: 5.13.1]

Flexibility shall be provided by the use of bends, loops, offsets, or couplings of the slip type. Provision shall be made to absorb thermal changes by the use of expansion joints of the bellows type, or by the use of "ball" or "swivel" joints. Expansion joints of the slip type shall not be used inside buildings or for thermal expansion. Where expansion joints are used, anchors or ties of sufficient strength and rigidity shall be installed to provide for end forces due to fluid pressure and other causes. [NFPA 54: 5.13.1.1]

Pipe alignment guides shall be used with expansion joints according to the recommended practice of the joint manufacturer. [NFPA 54: 5.13.1.2]

1209.11.2 Special Local Conditions. Where local conditions include earthquake, tornado, unstable ground, or flood hazards, special consideration shall be given to increased strength and flexibility of piping supports and connections. [NFPA 54: 5.13.2]

1210.0 Excess Flow Valve. When automatic excess flow gas shutoff devices (valves) are used, they shall be listed and approved and shall be sized for the maximum flow anticipated for the main or branch of the fuel gas system in which the excess flow valve is installed.

1211.0 Gas Piping Installation.

1211.1 Piping Underground.

1211.1.1 Clearances. Underground gas piping shall be installed with sufficient clearance from any other underground structure to avoid contact therewith, to allow maintenance, and to protect against damage from proximity to other structures. In addition, underground plastic piping shall be installed with sufficient clearance or shall be insulated from any source of heat so as to prevent the heat from impairing the serviceability of the pipe. [NFPA 54: 7.1.1]

1211.1.2 Protection Against Damage.

(A) Cover Requirements. Underground piping systems shall be installed with a minimum of 18 inches (460 mm) of cover. Where external damage to the pipe is not likely to result, the minimum cover shall be 12 inches (300 mm). Where a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) of cover cannot be provided, the pipe shall be installed in conduit or bridged (shielded). [NFPA 54: 7.1.2.1]

(B) Trenches. The trench shall be graded so that the pipe has a firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench. [NFPA 54: 7.1.2.2]

(C) Backfilling. Where flooding of the trench is done to consolidate the backfill, care shall be exercised to see that the pipe is not floated from its firm bearing on the trench bottom. [NFPA 54: 7.1.2.3]

1211.1.3 Protection Against Corrosion. Gas piping in contact with earth or other material that could corrode the piping shall be protected against corrosion in an approved manner. When dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used. Piping shall not be laid in contact with cinders. Uncoated threaded or socket-welded joints shall not be used in piping in contact with soil or where internal or external crevice corrosion is known to occur. [NFPA 54: 7.1.3]

1211.1.4 Protection Against Freezing. Where the formation of hydrates or ice is known to occur, piping shall be protected against freezing. [NFPA 54: 7.1.4]

1211.1.5 Piping Through Foundation Wall. Underground piping, where installed through the outer foundation or basement wall of a building, shall be encased in a protective pipe. The space between the gas piping and the building shall be sealed to prevent entry of gas or water. [NFPA 54: 7.1.5]

1211.1.6 Piping Underground Beneath Buildings. Where the installation of gas piping underground beneath buildings is unavoidable, the piping shall be encased in an approved conduit designed to withstand the superimposed loads. [NFPA 54: 7.1.6] The conduit shall extend into a normally usable and accessible portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas piping shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. Where the end sealing is of a type that will retain the full pressure of the pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. The conduit shall extend at least 4 inches (100 mm) outside the building, be vented above grade to the outside, and be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects. [NFPA 54: 7.1.6.1]

1211.1.7 Plastic Pipe.

(A) Connection of Plastic Piping. Plastic pipe shall be installed outside, underground only. [NFPA 54: 7.1.7.1]

Exception No. 1: Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate aboveground where an anodeless riser is used.

Exception No. 2: Plastic pipe shall be permitted to terminate with a wall head adapter aboveground in buildings, including basements, where the plastic pipe is inserted in a piping material permitted for use in buildings.

(B) Connections made outside and underground between metallic and plastic piping shall be made only with ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings, Category I transition fittings.* [NFPA 54: 7.1.7.2]

(C) An electrically continuous corrosion-resistant tracer wire (minimum AWG 14) or tape shall be buried with the plastic pipe to facilitate locating. One end shall be

brought aboveground at a building wall or riser. [NFPA 54: 7.1.7.3]

1211.2 Installation of Piping.

1211.2.1 Piping installed aboveground shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage (also see 1211.1.4). Where passing through an outside wall, the piping shall also be protected against corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material approved for such applications. Where piping is encased in a protective pipe sleeve, the annular space between the gas piping and the sleeve shall be sealed at the wall to prevent the entry of water, insects, or rodents. [NFPA 54: 7.2.1]

1211.2.2 Building Structure.

(1) The installation of gas piping shall not cause structural stresses within building components to exceed allowable design limits. [NFPA 54: 7.2.2.1]

(2) Approval shall be obtained before any beams or joists are cut or notched. [NFPA 54: 7.2.2.2] Permission shall be obtained from the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1211.2.3 Other than Dry Gas. Drips, sloping, protection from freezing, and branch pipe connections, as provided for in Section 1211.1.4, 1211.6.1, and Section 1211.8, shall be provided when other than dry gas is distributed and climactic conditions make such provisions necessary. [NFPA 54: 7.2.3]

1211.2.4 Gas Piping to be Sloped. Piping for other than dry gas conditions shall be sloped not less than 1/4 inch in 15 feet (8 mm in 4572 mm) to prevent traps. [NFPA 54: 7.2.4]

1211.2.4.1 Ceiling Locations. Gas piping shall be permitted to be installed in accessible spaces between a fixed ceiling and a dropped ceiling, whether or not such spaces are used as a plenum. Valves shall not be located in such spaces.

Exception: Equipment shutoff valves required by this code shall be permitted to be installed in accessible spaces containing vented gas utilization equipment.

1211.2.5 Prohibited Locations. Gas piping inside any building shall not be installed in or through a circulating air duct, clothes chute, chimney or gas vent, ventilating duct, dumbwaiter, or elevator shaft. This provision shall not apply to ducts used to provide combustion and ventilation air in accordance with Section 507.0 or to above-ceiling spaces as covered in Section 1211.2.4.1.

1211.2.6 Hangers, Supports, and Anchors.

(A) Piping shall be supported with pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, bands, brackets, or hangers suitable for the size of piping; be of adequate strength and quality; and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration. Piping shall be anchored to prevent undue strains on connected equipment and shall not be supported by other piping. Pipe hangers and supports shall conform to the requirements of ANSI/MSS SP-58, *Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture.* [NFPA 54: 7.2.6.1]

(B) Spacings of supports in gas-piping installations shall not be greater than shown in Table 12-3. Spacing of supports for CSST shall be in accordance with the CSST manufacturer's instruction. [NFPA 54: 7.2.6.2]

(C) Supports, hangers, and anchors shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the piping between anchors. All parts of the supporting equipment shall be designed and installed so they will not be disengaged by movement of the supported piping. [NFPA 54: 7.2.6.3]

TABLE 12-3
Support of Piping

Steel Pipe, Nominal Size of Pipe (in.)	Spacing of Supports (ft.)	Nominal Size of Tubing Smooth-wall (In. O.D.)	Spacing of Supports (ft.)
1/2	6	1/2	4
3/4 or 1	8	5/8 or 3/4	6
1-1/4 or larger (horizontal)	10	7/8 or 1 (horizontal)	8
1-1/4 or larger (vertical)	every floor level	1 or larger (vertical)	every floor level

For SI units: 1 ft. = 0.305 m. [NFPA 54: Table 7.2.6.2]

1211.2.7 Removal of Pipe. Where piping containing gas is to be removed, the line shall be first disconnected from all sources of gas and then thoroughly purged with air, water, or inert gas before any cutting or welding is done. (See Section 1214.6.) [NFPA 54: 7.2.7]

1211.3 Concealed Piping in Buildings.

1211.3.1 General. Gas piping in concealed locations shall be installed in accordance with this section. [NFPA 54: 7.3.1]

1211.3.2 Connections. Where gas piping is to be concealed, unions, tubing fittings, right and

left couplings, bushings, swing joints, and compression couplings made by combinations of fittings shall not be used. Connections shall be of the following type: [NFPA 54: 7.3.2]

(1) Pipe fittings such as elbows, tees, and couplings.

(2) Joining tubing by brazing (see Section 1209.5.8.2).

(3) Fittings listed for use in concealed spaces that have been demonstrated to sustain, without leakage, any forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, or fatigue based on their geographic location, application, or operation.

(4) Where necessary to insert fittings in gas pipe that has been installed in a concealed location, the pipe shall be reconnected by welding, flanges, or the use of a ground joint union with the nut center-punched to prevent loosening by vibration.

1211.3.3 Piping in Partitions. Concealed gas piping shall not be located in solid partitions. [NFPA 54: 7.3.3]

1211.3.4 Tubing in Partitions. This provision shall not apply to tubing that pierces walls, floors, or partitions or to tubing installed vertically and horizontally inside hollow walls or partitions without protection along its entire concealed length where both of the following requirements are met: [NFPA 54: 7.3.4]

(1) A steel striker barrier not less than 0.0508 inches (1.3 mm) thick, or equivalent, is installed between the tubing and the finished wall and extends at least 4 inches (100 mm)beyond concealed penetrations of plates, fire stops, wall studs, and so on.

(2) The tubing is installed in single runs and is not rigidly secured.

1211.3.5 Piping in Floors. In industrial occupancies, gas piping in solid floors such as concrete shall be laid in channels in the floor and covered to permit access to the piping with a minimum of damage to the building. Where piping in floor channels could be exposed to excessive moisture or corrosive substances, the piping shall be protected in an approved manner. [NFPA 54: 7.3.5.1]

Exception: In other than industrial occupancies and where approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, gas piping embedded in concrete floor slabs constructed with portland cement shall be surrounded with a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of concrete and shall not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. All piping, fittings, and risers shall be protected against corrosion in accordance with Section 1209.5.6. Piping shall not be embedded in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate. [NFPA 54: 7.3.5.2]

1211.4 Piping in Vertical Chases. (See Section 1202.0.) Where gas piping exceeding 5 psi (34 kPa) is located within vertical chases in accordance with Section 1211.5, the requirements of Sections 1211.5.1 through 1211.5.3 shall apply. [NFPA 54: 7.4]

1211.5 Maximum Design Operating Pressure. The maximum design operating pressure for piping systems located inside buildings shall not exceed 5 psi (34 kPa) unless one or more of the following conditions are met: [NFPA 54: 5.5.1]

(1) The piping system is welded.

(2) The piping is located in a ventilated chase or otherwise enclosed for protection against accidental gas accumulation.

(3) The piping is located inside buildings or separate areas of buildings used exclusively for one of the following:

(a) Industrial processing or heating

(b) Research

(c) Warehousing

(d) Boiler or mechanical equipment rooms

(4) The piping is a temporary installation for buildings under construction.

1211.5.1 Pressure Reduction. (See Section 1202.0.) Where pressure reduction is required in branch connections for compliance with Section 1211.5, such reduction shall take place either inside the chase or immediately adjacent to the outside wall of the chase. Regulator venting and downstream overpressure protection shall comply with Section 1209.7.4 and NFPA Section 5.9. The regulator shall be accessible for service and repair and vented in accordance with one of the following: [NFPA 54: 7.4.1]

(1) Where the fuel gas is lighter than air, regulators equipped with a vent-limiting means shall be permitted to be vented into the chase. Regulators not equipped with a vent-limiting means shall be permitted to be vented either directly to the outdoors or to a point within the top 1 foot (0.3m) of the chase.

(2) Where the fuel gas is heavier than air, the regulator vent shall be vented only directly to the outdoors.

1211.5.2 Construction. Chase construction shall comply with local building codes with respect to fire resistance and protection of horizontal and vertical openings. [NFPA 54: 7.4.2]

1211.5.3 Ventilation. A chase shall be ventilated to the outdoors and only at the top. The openings shall have a minimum free area (in square inches) equal to the product of one-half of the maximum pressure in the piping (in psi) times the largest nominal diameter of that piping (in inches), or the cross-sectional area of the chase, whichever is smaller. Where more than one fuel gas piping system is present, the free area for each system shall be calculated and the largest area used. [NFPA 54: 7.4.3]

1211.6 Gas Pipe Turns. Changes in direction of gas pipe shall be made by the use of fittings, or factory bends. [NFPA 54: 7.5]

1211.6.1 Metallic Pipe. Metallic pipe bends shall comply with the following: [NFPA 54: 7.5.1]

(1) Bends shall be made only with bending equipment and procedures intended for that purpose.

(2) All bends shall be smooth and free from buckling, cracks, or other evidence of mechanical damage.

(3) The longitudinal weld of the pipe shall be near the neutral axis of the bend.

(4) The pipe shall not be bent through an arc of more than 90 degrees.

(5) The inside radius of a bend shall be not less than six times the outside diameter of the pipe.

1211.6.2 Plastic Pipe. Plastic pipe bends shall comply with the following: [NFPA 54: 7.5.2]

(1) The pipe shall not be damaged, and the internal diameter of the pipe shall not be effectively reduced.

(2) Joints shall not be located in pipe bends.

(3) The radius of the inner curve of such bends shall not be less than 25 times the inside diameter of the pipe.

(4) Where the piping manufacturer specifies the use of special bending equipment or procedures, such equipment or procedures shall be used.

1211.6.3 Elbows. Factory-made welding elbows or transverse segments cut therefrom shall have an arc length measured along the crotch of at least 1 inch (25 mm) for pipe sizes 2 inches and larger. [NFPA 54: 7.5.3]

1211.7 Drips and Sediment Traps.

1211.7.1 Provide Drips Where Necessary. For other than dry gas conditions, a drip shall be provided at any point in the line of pipe where condensate could collect. Where required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction or the serving gas supplier, a drip shall also be provided at the outlet of the meter. This drip shall be so installed as to constitute a trap wherein an accumulation of condensate will shut off the flow of gas before it will run back into the meter. [NFPA 54: 7.6.1]

1211.7.2 Location of Drips. All drips shall be installed only in such locations that they will be readily accessible to permit cleaning or emptying. A drip shall not be located where the condensate is likely to freeze. [NFPA 54: 7.6.2]

1211.7.3 Sediment Traps. (See Section 1212.7.)

1211.8 Outlets.

1211.8.1 Location and Installation.

(1) The outlet fittings or piping shall be securely fastened in place. [NFPA 54: 7.7.1.1]

(2) Outlets shall not be located behind doors. [NFPA 54: 7.7.1.2]

(3) Outlets shall be located far enough from floors, walls, patios, slabs, and ceilings to permit the use of wrenches without straining, bending, or damaging the piping. [NFPA 54: 7.7.1.3]

(4) The unthreaded portion of gas piping outlets shall extend not less than 1 in. (25 mm) through finished ceilings or indoor or outdoor walls. [NFPA 54: 7.7.1.4]

(5) The unthreaded portion of gas-piping outlets shall extend not less than 2 inches (50 mm) above the surface of floors or outdoor patios or slabs. [NFPA 54: 7.7.1.5]

(6) The provisions of Sections 1211.7.1 (4) and (5) shall not apply to listed quick-disconnect devices of the flush-mounted type or listed gas convenience outlets. Such devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions. [NFPA 54: 7.7.1.6]

1211.8.2 Cap All Outlets.

(A) Each outlet, including a valve, shall be closed gastight with a threaded plug or cap immediately after installation and shall be left closed until the gas utilization equipment is connected thereto. When equipment is disconnected from an outlet and the outlet is not to be used again immediately, it shall be closed gastight. [NFPA 54: 7.7.2.1]

Exception No. 1: Laboratory equipment installed in accordance with 1212.2(A) shall be permitted.

Exception No. 2: The use of a listed quick-disconnect device with integral shutoff or listed gas convenience outlet shall be permitted.

(B) Equipment shutoff valves installed in fireplaces shall be removed and the piping capped gastight where the fireplace is used for solid-fuel burning. [NFPA 54: 7.7.2.2]

1211.9 Branch Pipe Connection. When a branch outlet is placed on a main supply line before it is known what size pipe will be connected to it, the outlet shall be of the same size as the line that supplies it. [NFPA 54: 7.8]

1211.10 Manual Gas Shutoff Valves. (Also see Section 1212.4.)

1211.10.1 Valves at Regulators. An accessible gas shutoff valve shall be provided upstream of each gas pressure regulator. Where two gas pressure regulators are installed in series in a single gas line, a manual valve shall not be required at the second regulator. [NFPA 54: 7.9.1]

1211.10.2 Valves Controlling Multiple Systems.

(A) Accessibility of Gas Valves. Main gas shutoff valves controlling several gas piping systems shall be readily accessible for operation and installed so as to be protected from physical damage. They shall be marked with a metal tag or other permanent means attached by the installing agency so that the gas piping systems supplied through them can be readily identified. [NFPA 54: 7.9.2.1]

(B) Shutoff Valves for Multiple House Lines. In multiple-tenant buildings supplied through a master meter, or through one service regulator where a meter is not provided, or where meters or service regulators are not readily accessible from the equipment location, an individual shutoff valve for each apartment or tenant line shall be provided at a convenient point of general accessibility.

In a common system serving a number of individual buildings, shutoff valves shall be installed at each building. [NFPA 54: 7.9.2.2]

1211.10.3 Emergency Shutoff Valves. An exterior shutoff valve to permit turning off the gas supply to each building in an emergency shall be provided. The emergency shutoff valves shall be plainly marked as such and their locations posted as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 54: 7.9.2.3]

1211.11 Prohibited Devices. No device shall be placed inside the gas piping or fittings that will reduce the cross-sectional area or otherwise obstruct the free flow of gas, except where proper allowance in the piping system design has been made for such a device and where approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 54: 7.10]

1211.12 Systems Containing Gas-Air Mixtures Outside the Flammable Range. Where gas-air mixing machines are employed to produce mixtures above or below the flammable range, they shall be provided with stops to prevent adjustment of the mixture to within or approaching the flammable range. [NFPA 54: 7.11]

1211.13 Systems Containing Flammable Gas-Air Mixtures.

1211.13.1 Required Components. A central premix system with a flammable mixture in the blower or compressor shall consist of the following components: [NFPA 54: 7.12.1]

(1) Gas-mixing machine in the form of an automatic gas-air proportioning device combined with a downstream blower or compressor.

(2) Flammable mixture piping, minimum Schedule 40 NPS.

(3) Automatic firechecks.

(4) Safety blowouts or backfire preventers for systems utilizing flammable mixture lines above 2-1/2 inch (65 mm) nominal pipe size or the equivalent.

1211.13.2 Optional Components.

The following components shall also be permitted to be utilized in any type of central premix system: [NFPA 54: 7.12.2]

(1) Flow meters.

(2) Flame arresters.

1211.13.3 Additional Requirements. Gas-mixing machines shall have nonsparking blowers and shall be so constructed that a flashback will not rupture machine casings. [NFPA 54: 7.12.3]

1211.13.4 Special Requirements for Mixing Blowers. A mixing blower system shall be limited to applications with minimum practical lengths of mixture piping, limited to a maximum mixture pressure of 10 inch water column (25 Pa) and limited to gases containing no more than 10 percent hydrogen.

The blower shall be equipped with a gas-control valve at its air entrance so arranged that gas is admitted to the airstream, entering the

blower in proper proportions for correct combustion by the type of burners employed, the said gas-control valve being of either the zero governor or mechanical ratio valve type that controls the gas and air adjustment simultaneously. No valves or other obstructions shall be installed between the blower discharge and the burner or burners. [NFPA 54: 7.12.4]

1211.13.5 Installation of Gas-Mixing Machines.

(A) The machine shall be located in a large, well-ventilated area or in a small detached building or cutoff room provided with room construction and explosion vents in accordance with sound engineering principles. Such rooms or below-grade installations shall have adequate positive ventilation. [NFPA 54: 7.12.5.1]

(B) Where gas-mixing machines are installed in well-ventilated areas, the type of electrical equipment shall be in accordance with NFPA 70, *National Electrical Code®*, for general service conditions, unless other hazards in the area prevail. Where gas-mixing machines are installed in small detached buildings or cutoff rooms, the electrical equipment and wiring shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70, *National Electrical Code*, for hazardous locations (Articles 500 and 501, Class I, Division 2). [NFPA 54: 7.12.5.2]

(C) Air intakes for gas-mixing machines using compressors or blowers shall be taken from outdoors whenever practical. [NFPA 54: 7.12.5.3]

(D) Controls for gas-mixing machines shall include interlocks and a safety shutoff valve of the manual reset type in the gas supply connection to each machine arranged to automatically shut off the gas supply in the event of high or low gas pressure. Except for open burner installations only, the controls shall be interlocked so that the blower or compressor will stop operating following a gas supply failure. Where a system employs pressurized air, means shall be provided to shut off the gas supply in the event of air failure. [NFPA 54: 7.12.5.4]

(E) Centrifugal gas-mixing machines in parallel shall be reviewed by the user and equipment manufacturer before installation, and means or plans for minimizing these effects of downstream pulsation and equipment overload shall be prepared and utilized as needed. [NFPA 54: 7.12.5.5]

1211.13.6 Use of Automatic Firechecks, Safety Blowouts, or Backfire Preventers.

Automatic firechecks and safety blowouts or backfire preventers shall be provided in piping systems distributing flammable air-gas mixtures from gas-mixing machines to protect the piping and the machines in the event of flashback, in accordance with the following: [NFPA 54: 7.12.6]

(A) Approved automatic firechecks shall be installed upstream as close as practicable to the burner inlets following the firecheck manufacturers' instructions.

(B) A separate manually operated gas valve shall be provided at each automatic firecheck for shutting off the flow of gas-air mixture through the firecheck after a flashback has occurred. The valve shall be located upstream as close as practical to the inlet of the automatic firecheck.

CAUTION:

These valves shall not be reopened after a flashback has occurred until the firecheck has cooled sufficiently to prevent reignition of the flammable mixture and has been reset properly.

(C) A safety blowout or backfiring preventer shall be provided in the mixture line near the outlet of each gas-mixing machine where the size of the piping is larger than 2-1/2 inch (65 mm) NPS, or equivalent, to protect the mixing equipment in the event of an explosion passing through an automatic firecheck. The manufacturers' instructions shall be followed when installing these devices, particularly after a disc has burst.

The discharge from the safety blowout or backfire preventer shall be located or shielded so that particles from the ruptured disc cannot be directed toward personnel. Wherever there are interconnected installations of gas-mixing machines with safety blowouts or backfire preventers, provision shall be made to keep the mixture from other machines from reaching any ruptured disc opening. Check valves shall not be used for this purpose.

(D) Large-capacity premix systems provided with explosion heads (rupture disc) to relieve excessive pressure in pipelines shall be located at and vented to a safe outdoor location. Provisions shall be provided for automatically shutting off the supply of gas-air mixture in the event of rupture.

1211.14 Electrical Bonding and Grounding.

(A) Each aboveground portion of a gas piping system that is likely to become energized

shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground-fault current path. Gas piping shall be considered to be bonded when it is connected to gas utilization equipment that is connected to the equipment grounding conductor of the circuit supplying that equipment. [NFPA 54: 7.13.1]

(B) Gas piping shall not be used as a grounding conductor or electrode. [NFPA 54: 7.13.2]

1211.15 Electrical Circuits. Electrical circuits shall not utilize gas piping or components as conductors. [NFPA 54: 7.14]

Exception: Low-voltage (50 V or less) control circuits, ignition circuits, and electronic flame detection device circuits shall be permitted to make use of piping or components as a part of an electric circuit.

1211.16 Electrical Connections.

(A) All electrical connections between wiring and electrically operated control devices in a piping system shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70, *National Electrical Code.* (See Section 1211.13.) [NFPA 54: 7.15.1]

(B) Any essential safety control depending on electric current as the operating medium shall be of a type that will shut off (fail safe) the flow of gas in the event of current failure. [NFPA 54: 7.15.2]

1212.0 Equipment Connections to Building Piping.

1212.1 Connecting Gas Equipment. Gas utilization equipment shall be connected to the building piping in compliance with Sections 1212.4 and 1212.5 by one of the following: [NFPA 54: 9.6.1]

(1) Rigid metallic pipe and fittings.

(2) Semirigid metallic tubing and metallic fittings. Aluminum alloy tubing shall not be used in exterior locations.

(3) Listed flexible gas connectors in compliance with ANSI Z21.24, *Standard for Connectors for Gas Appliances*. The connector shall be used in accordance with the terms of their listing that are completely in the same room as the equipment.

(4) CSST where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

(5) Listed nonmetallic gas hose connectors in accordance with 1212.2.

(6) Gas-fired food service (commercial cooking) equipment listed for use with casters or otherwise subject to movement for cleaning, and other large and heavy gas utilization equipment that can be moved, shall be connected in accordance with the connector manufacturer's installation instructions using a listed appliance connector complying with ANSI Z21.69, *Standard for Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances.* [NFPA 54: 9.6.1.1]

(7) In 1212.1(2), (3), and (5), the connector or tubing shall be installed so as to be protected against physical and thermal damage. Aluminum alloy tubing and connectors shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where they are in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or are subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water (except rain water), detergents, or sewage.

1212.2 Use of Nonmetallic Gas Hose Connectors. Listed nonmetallic gas hose connectors shall be used in accordance with the terms of their listing and as follows: [NFPA 54: 9.6.2]

(A) Indoor. Indoor gas hose connectors shall be used only to connect laboratory, shop, and ironing equipment requiring mobility during operation. An equipment shutoff valve shall be installed where the connector is attached to the building piping. The connector shall be of minimum length and shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm). The connector shall not be concealed and shall not extend from one room to another or pass through wall partitions, ceilings, or floors.

(B) Outdoor. Outdoor gas hose connectors are permitted to connect portable outdoor gas-fired equipment. An equipment shutoff valve, a listed quick-disconnect device, or a listed gas convenience outlet shall be installed where the connector is attached to the supply piping and in such a manner to prevent the accumulation of water or foreign matter. This connection shall be made only in the outdoor area where the equipment is to be used. The connector length shall not exceed 15 feet (4572 mm).

1212.3 Connection of Portable and Mobile Industrial Gas Equipment.

(A) Where portable industrial gas utilization equipment, or equipment requiring mobility or subject to vibration, is connected to the building gas piping system by the use of a flexible hose, the hose shall be suitable and safe for the conditions under which it can be used. [NFPA 54: 9.6.3.1]

(B) Where industrial gas utilization equipment requiring mobility is connected to the rigid piping by the use of swivel joints or

couplings, the swivel joints or couplings shall be suitable for the service required, and only the minimum number required shall be installed. [NFPA 54: 9.6.3.2]

(C) Where industrial gas utilization equipment subject to vibration is connected to the building piping system by the use of all-metal flexible connectors, the connectors shall be suitable for the service required. [NFPA 54: 9.6.3.3]

(D) Where flexible connections are used, they shall be of the minimum practical length and shall not extend from one room to another or pass through any walls, partitions, ceilings, or floors. Flexible connections shall not be used in any concealed location. They shall be protected against physical or thermal damage and shall be provided with gas shutoff valves in readily accessible locations in rigid piping upstream from the flexible connections. [NFPA 54: 9.6.3.4]

1212.4 Equipment Shutoff Valves and Connections. Gas utilization equipment connected to a piping system shall have an accessible, approved manual shutoff valve with a nondisplaceable valve member, or a listed gas convenience outlet [NFPA 54: 9.6.4], installed within 6 feet (1.8 m) of the equipment it serves. Where a connector is used, the valve shall be installed upstream of the connector. A union or flanged connection shall be provided downstream from this valve to permit removal of controls. Shutoff valves serving decorative gas appliances shall be permitted to be installed in fireplaces if listed for such use. [NFPA 54: 9.6.4.1]

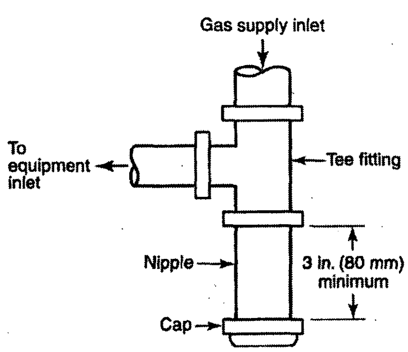


Figure 12-1 Method of Installing a Tee Fitting Sediment Trap.

1212.5 Quick-Disconnect Devices. Quick-disconnect devices used to connect equipment to the building piping shall be listed. [NFPA 54: 9.6.5.1] Where they are installed indoors, an approved manual shutoff valve with a nondisplaceable valve member shall be installed upstream of the quick-disconnect device. [NFPA 54: 9.6.5.2]

1212.6 Support of Chimneys. All portions of chimneys shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Listed factory-built chimneys shall be supported and spaced in accordance with their listings and the manufacturers' instructions.

1212.7 Sediment Trap. Where a sediment trap is not incorporated as a part of the gas utilization equipment, a sediment trap shall be installed as close to the inlet of the equipment as practical at the time of equipment installation. The sediment trap shall be either a tee fitting with a capped nipple in the bottom outlet, as illustrated in Figure 12-1, or other device recognized as an effective sediment trap. Illuminating appliances, ranges, clothes dryers, decorative vented appliances for installation in vented fireplaces, gas fireplaces, and outdoor grills shall not be required to be so equipped. [NFPA 54: 9.6.7]

1212.8 Installation of Piping. Piping shall be installed in a manner not to interfere with inspection, maintenance, or servicing of the gas utilization equipment. [NFPA 54: 9.6.8]

1213.0 Liquefied Petroleum Gas Facilities and Piping.

Liquefied petroleum gas facilities shall comply with NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code.*

1214.0 Pressure Testing and Inspection.

1214.1 General.

1214.1.1 Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all piping installations shall be inspected and pressure-tested to determine that the materials, design, fabrication, and installation practices comply with the requirements of this code. [NFPA 54: 8.1.1.1]

1214.1.2 Inspection shall consist of visual examination during or after manufacture, fabrication, assembly, or pressure tests, as appropriate. Supplementary types of non-destructive inspection techniques, such as magnetic-particle, radiographic, and ultrasonic, shall not be required unless specifically listed herein or in the engineering design. [NFPA 54: 8.1.1.2]

1214.1.3 Where repairs or additions are made following the pressure test, the affected piping shall be tested. Minor repairs and additions are not required to be pressure-tested provided that the work is inspected and connections are tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other leak-detecting methods approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 54: 8.1.1.3]

1214.1.4 Where new branches are installed from the point of delivery to new appliances, only the newly installed branches shall be required to be pressure-tested. Connections between the new piping and the existing piping shall be tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or approved leak-detecting methods. [NFPA 54: 8.1.1.4]

1214.1.5 A piping system shall be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a valve in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the piping system and test medium in an adjacent section, unless two valves are installed in series with a valved "telltale" located between these valves. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve-closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the pressure. [NFPA 54: 8.1.1.5]

1214.1.6 Regulator and valve assemblies fabricated independently of the piping system in which they are to be installed shall be permitted to be tested with inert gas or air at the time of fabrication. [NFPA 54: 8.1.1.6]

1214.1.7 Test Medium. The test medium shall be air, nitrogen, carbon dioxide, or an inert gas. OXYGEN SHALL NEVER BE USED. [NFPA 54: 8.1.2]

1214.2 Test Preparation.

1214.2.1 Pipe joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test. [NFPA 54: 8.1.3.1]

> **Exception:** Covered or concealed pipe end joints that have been previously tested in accordance with this code.

1214.2.2 Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required for the additional thrust load under test. [NFPA 54: 8.1.3.2]

1214.2.3 Appliances and equipment that are not to be included in the test shall be either disconnected from the piping or isolated by blanks, blind flanges, or caps. Flanged joints at which blinds are inserted to blank off other equipment during the test shall not be required to be tested. [NFPA 54: 8.1.3.3]

1214.2.4 Where the piping system is connected to appliances, equipment, or equipment components designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such appliances, equipment, or equipment components shall be isolated from the piping system by disconnecting them and capping the outlets. [NFPA 54: 8.1.3.4]

1214.2.5 Where the piping system is connected to appliances, equipment, or equipment components designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such appliances and equipment shall be isolated from the piping system by closing the individual appliance equipment shutoff valves. [NFPA 54: 8.1.3.5]

1214.2.6 All testing of piping systems shall be done with due regard for the safety of employees and the public during the test. Bulkheads, anchorage, and bracing suitably designed to resist test pressures shall be installed if necessary. Prior to testing, the interior of the pipe shall be cleared of all foreign material. [NFPA 54: 8.1.3.6]

1214.3 Test Pressure.

1214.3.1 Test pressure shall be measured with a manometer or with a pressure-measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss due to leakage during the pressure test period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made. Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than five times the test pressure. [NFPA 54: 8.1.4.1]

1214.3.2 The test pressure to be used shall be no less than 1-1/2 times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 3 psi (20 kPa), irrespective of design pressure. [NFPA 54: 8.1.4.2]

1214.3.3 Test duration shall be not less than 1/2 hour for each 500 cubic feet (14 m^3) of pipe volume or fraction thereof. When testing a system having a volume less than 10 cubic feet (0.28 m^3) or a system in a single-family dwelling, the test duration shall be a minimum of 10 minutes. The duration of the test shall not be required to exceed 24 hours. [NFPA 54: 8.1.4.3]

1214.4 Detection of Leaks and Defects.

1214.4.1 The piping system shall withstand the test pressure specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects. Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gauges shall be deemed to indicate the presence of a leak unless such reduction can be readily attributed to some other cause. [NFPA 54: 8.1.5.1]

1214.4.2 The leakage shall be located by means of an approved gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid, or other approved leak detection methods. Matches, candles, open flames, or other methods that provide a source of ignition shall not be used. [NFPA 54: 8.1.5.2]

1214.4.3 Where leakage or other defects are located, the affected portion of the piping system shall be repaired or replaced and retested. [See Section 1214.1.3.] [NFPA 54: 8.1.5.3]

1214.5 System and Equipment Leakage Test.

1214.5.1 Test Gases. Leak checks using fuel gas shall be permitted in piping systems that have been pressure-tested in accordance with Section 1214.0. [NFPA 54: 8.2.1]

1214.5.2 Before Turning Gas On. Before gas is introduced into a system of new gas piping, the entire system shall be inspected to determine that there are no open fittings or ends and all valves at unused outlets are closed and plugged or capped. [NFPA 54: 8.2.2]

1214.5.3 Test for Leakage. Immediately after the gas is turned on into a new system or into a system that has been initially restored after an interruption of service, the piping system shall be checked for leakage. Where leakage is indicated, the gas supply shall be shut off until the necessary repairs have been made. [NFPA 54: 8.2.3]

1214.5.4 Placing Equipment in Operation. Gas utilization equipment shall not be placed in operation until after the piping system has been tested in accordance with Section 1214.5.3 and purged in accordance with Section 1214.6.2. [NFPA 54: 8.2.4]

1214.6 Purging.

1214.6.1 Removal From Service. When gas piping is to be opened for servicing, addition, or modification, the section to be worked on shall be turned off from the gas supply at the nearest convenient point and the line pressure vented to the outdoors or to ventilated areas of sufficient size to prevent accumulation of flammable mixtures. The remaining gas in this section of pipe shall be displaced with an inert gas as required by Table 12-5. [NFPA 54: 8.3.1]

TABLE 12-5
Length of Piping Requiring Purging with Inert Gas for Servicing or Modification
[NFPA 54: Table 8.3.1]

Nominal Pipe Size (in.)	Length of Piping Requiring Purging (ft.)
2	> 50
3	> 30
4	> 15
6	> 10
8 or larger	Any length

For SI units: 1 ft = 0.305 m.

1214.6.2 Placing in Operation. When piping full of air is placed in operation, the air in the piping shall be displaced with fuel gas, except where such piping is required by Table 12-6 to be purged with an inert gas prior to introduction of fuel gas. The air can be safely displaced with fuel gas provided that a moderately rapid and continuous flow of fuel gas is introduced at one end of the line and air is vented out at the other end. The fuel gas flow shall be continued without interruption until the vented gas is free of air. The point of discharge shall not be left unattended during purging. After purging, the vent shall then be closed. Where required by Table 12-6, the air in the piping shall first be displaced with an inert gas, and the inert gas shall then be displaced with fuel gas. [NFPA 54: 8.3.2]

TABLE 12-6
Length of Piping Requiring Purging with Inert Gas Before Placing in Operation
[NFPA 54: Table 8.3.2]

Nominal Pipe Size (in.)	Length of Piping Requiring Purging (ft.)
3	>30
4	>15
6	>10
8 or larger	Any length

For SI units: 1 ft. = 0.305 m.

1214.6.3 Discharge of Purged Gases. The open end of piping systems being purged shall not discharge into confined spaces or areas where there are sources of ignition unless precautions are taken to perform this operation in a safe manner by ventilation of the space, control of purging rate, and elimination of all hazardous conditions. [NFPA 54: 8.3.3]

1214.6.4 Placing Equipment in Operation. After the piping has been placed in operation, all equipment shall be purged and then placed in operation, as necessary. [NFPA 54: 8.3.4]

1215.0 Interconnections Between Gas Piping Systems [NFPA 54: 5.3]

1215.1 Interconnections Supplying Separate Users. Where two or more meters, or two or more service regulators where meters are not provided, are located on the same premises and supply separate users, the gas-piping systems shall not be interconnected on the outlet side of the meters or service regulators. [NFPA 54: 5.3.1]

1215.2 Interconnections for Standby Fuels. Where supplementary gas for standby use is connected downstream from a meter or a service regulator where a meter is not provided, a device to prevent backflow shall be installed. [NFPA 54: 5.3.2.1] A three-way valve installed to admit the standby supply and at the same time shut off the regular supply shall be permitted to be used for this purpose. [NFPA 54:5.3.2.2]

1216.0 Required Gas Supply.

1216.1 The following regulations, as set forth in this section and in Section 1217.0, Required Gas Piping Size, shall be the standard for the installation of gas piping. All natural gas regulations and tables are based on the use of gas having a specific gravity of sixty hundredths (0.60), supplied at six (6) to eight (8) inches (152–203 mm) water column pressure at the outlet of the meter or regulator. Where the natural gas supplier cannot maintain a minimum inlet pressure of six (6) inches (152 mm) water column pressure, Table 12-7 allowing a maximum pressure drop of 0.3-inch (7.6 mm) water column shall be used. For undiluted liquefied petroleum gas, gas piping may be sized at eleven (11) inches (279 mm) water column pressure at the outlet of the meter or regulator and specific gravity of one and fifty hundredths (1.50).

Note: Where gas of a different specific gravity is to be delivered, the serving gas supplier should be contacted for specific gravity conversion factors to use in sizing piping systems from the pipe sizing tables in this chapter.

1216.2 The hourly volume of gas required at each piping outlet shall be taken as not less than the maximum hourly rating as specified by the manufacturer of the appliance or appliances to be connected to each such outlet.

1216.3 Where the gas appliances to be installed have not been definitely specified, Table 12-1 may be used as a reference to estimate requirements of typical appliances.

To obtain the cubic feet per hour (L/sec.) of gas required, divide input of appliances by the average Btu (Watt-hour) heating value per cubic foot (L) of the gas. The average Btu (Watt-hour) per cubic foot (L) of the gas in the area of the installation may be obtained from the serving gas supplier.

1216.4 The size of the supply piping outlet for any gas appliance shall not be less than one-half (1/2) inch (15 mm).

The minimum size of any piping outlet for a mobile home shall be three-quarter (3/4) inch (20 mm).

1217.0 Required Gas Piping Size.

1217.1 Pipe Sizing Methods. Where the pipe size is to be determined using any of the methods in Sections 1217.1.1 through 1217.1.3, the diameter of each pipe segment shall be obtained from the pipe-sizing tables in Section 1217.2 or from the sizing equations in Section 1217.3. [NFPA 54: 6.1]

1217.1.1 Longest Length Method. The pipe size of each section of gas piping shall be determined using the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet and the load of the section (see calculation example in Figure 12-2). [NFPA 54: 6.1.1]

1217.1.2 Branch Length Method. Pipe shall be sized as follows: [NFPA 54: 6.1.2]

(A) Pipe size of each section of the longest pipe run from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet shall be determined using the longest run of piping and the load of the section.

(B) The pipe size of each section of branch piping not previously sized shall be determined using the length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet in each branch and the load of the section.

1217.1.3 Hybrid Pressure. The pipe size for each section of higher-pressure gas piping shall be determined using the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote line pressure regulator. The pipe size from the line pressure regulator to each outlet shall be determined using the length of piping from the regulator to the most remote outlet served by the regulator. [NFPA 54: 6.1.3]

1217.2 Tables for Sizing Gas-Piping Systems. Tables 12-7 through 12-41 shall be used to size gas piping in conjunction with one of the methods described in Sections 1217.1.1 through 1217.1.3. [NFPA 54: 6.3]

1217.3 Sizing Equations. The inside diameter of smooth-wall pipe or tubing shall be determined by the sizing equations 12-1 or 12-2, using the equivalent pipe length determined by Sections 1217.1.1 through 12117.1.3. [NFPA 54: 6.4]

Equation 12-1 Low-Pressure Gas Formula (Less than 1.5 psi [10.3 kPa]): [NFPA 54: 6.4.1

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{19.17\left(\frac{\varnothing H}{Cr \times L}\right)^{0.206}}$$

where:

D = inside diameter of pipe, inches

Q = input rate appliance(s), cubic feet per hour at 60°F (16°C) and 30-inch (759 mm) mercury column

P_1 = upstream pressure, psia (P_1 + 14.7)

P_2 = downstream pressure, psia (P_2 + 14.7)

L = equivalent length of pipe, feet

ØH = pressure drop, inches water column (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi)

Equation 12-2 High-Pressure Gas Formula (1.5 psi [10.3 kPa] and above): [NFPA 54: 6.4.2]

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{18.93\left[\frac{(P_1^2 - P_2^2) \cdot Y}{Cr \times L}\right]^{0.206}}$$

where:

D = inside diameter of pipe, inches

Q = input rate appliance(s), cubic feet per hour at 60°F (16°C) and 30 inch (759 mm) mercury column

P_1 = upstream pressure, psia (P_1 + 14.7)

P_2 = downstream pressure, psia (P_2 + 14.7)

L = equivalent length of pipe, feet.

ØH = pressure drop, inches water column (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi)

TABLE 12-4

Cr and Y for Natural Gas and Undiluted Propane at Standard Conditions [NFPA 54: Table 6.4.2]

Formula Factors Gas	Cr	Y
Natural Gas	0.6094	0.9992
Undiluted Propane	1.2462	0.9910

For SI units, 1 ft.³ = 0.028 m³; 1 ft. = 0.305 m; 1 in. water column = 0.249 kPa; 1 psi = 6.894 kPa; 1,000 Btu/h = 0.293 kW.

1217.4 To determine the size of each section of pipe in any system within the range of the Table, proceed as follows:

(A) Measure the length of the pipe from the gas meter location to the most remote outlet on the system.

(B) Select the length in feet column and row showing that distance, or the next longer distance if the table does not give the exact length.

(C) Starting at the most remote outlet, find in the row just selected the gas demand for that outlet. If the exact figure of demand is not shown, choose the next larger figure in the row.

(D) At the top of this column will be found the correct size of pipe.

(E) Using this same row, proceed in a similar manner for each section of pipe serving this outlet. For each section of pipe, determine the total gas demand supplied by that section. Where gas piping sections serve both heating and cooling equipment and the installation prevents both units from operating simultaneously, only the larger of the two demand loads needs be used in sizing these sections.

(F) Size each section of branch piping not previously sized by measuring the distance from the gas meter location to the most remote outlet in that branch and follow the procedures of steps B, C, D, and E above.

Note:

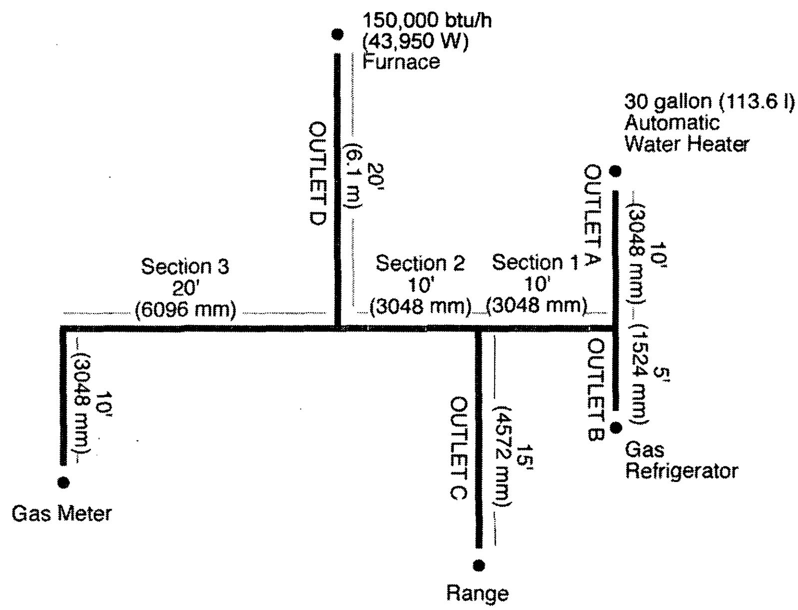
Size branch piping in the order of their distance from the meter location, beginning with the most distant outlet not previously sized.

1217.5 For conditions other than those covered by Section 1217.1, such as longer runs or greater gas demands, the size of each gas piping system shall be determined by standard engineering methods acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, and each such system shall be so designed that the total pressure drop between the meter or other point of supply and any outlet when full demand is being supplied to all outlets, will at no time exceed five-tenths (0.5) inches (12.7 mm) water column pressure.

1217.6 Where the gas pressure may be higher than fourteen (14) inches (356 mm) or lower than six (6) inches (152 mm) of water column, or when diversity demand factors are used, the design, pipe, sizing, materials, location, and use of such systems first shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Piping systems designed for pressures higher than the serving gas supplier's standard delivery pressure shall have prior verification from the gas supplier of the availability of the design pressure.

Figure 12-2 Example Illustrating Use of Tables 12-1 and 12-8

Problem: Determine the required pipe size of each section and outlet of the piping system shown in Figure 12-2. Gas to be used has a specific gravity of sixty hundredths (0.60) and eleven hundred (1,100) Btu per cubic foot (11.4 Watt-hour/L), delivered at eight (8) inch (203 mm) water column pressure.



Solution:

(1) Maximum gas demand of outlet A —
32 cubic feet per hour (0.21 L/sec.) (from Table 12-1).
Maximum gas demand of outlet B —
3 cubic feet per hour (0.02 L/sec.) (from Table 12-1).
Maximum gas demand of outlet C —
59 cubic feet per hour (0.46 L/sec.) (from Table 12-1).
Maximum gas demand of outlet D —
136 cubic feet per hour (1.1 L/sec.) (150,000 Btu/hour [43,950 W]) divided by 1,100 Btu per cubic foot (11.4 Watt-hour/L)

(2) The length of pipe from the gas meter to the most remote outlet (outlet A) is 60 feet (18,288 mm).

(3) Using the length in feet column row marked 60 feet (18,288 mm) in Table 12-8:

Outlet A, supplying 32 cubic feet per hour (0.21 L/sec.), requires one-half (1/2) inch (15 mm) pipe. Section 1, supplying outlets A and B, or 35 cubic feet per hour (0.24 L/sec.) requires one-half (1/2) inch (15 mm) pipe.

Section 2, supplying outlets A, B, and C, or 94 cubic feet per hour (0.7 L/sec.) requires three-quarter (3/4) inch (20 mm) pipe.

Section 3, supplying outlets A, B, C, and D, or 230 cubic feet per hour (1.8 L/sec.), requires one inch (25 mm) pipe.

(4) Using the column marked 60 feet (18288 mm) in Table 12-8 (no column for actual length of 55 feet [16,764 mm]: Outlet B supplying 3 cubic feet per hour (0.02 L/sec.), requires one-half (1/2) inch (15 mm) pipe.

Outlet C, supplying 59 cubic feet per hour (0.46 L/sec.), requires one-half (1/2) inch (15 mm) pipe.

(5) Using the column marked 50 feet (15,240 mm) in Table 12-8:

Outlet D, supplying 136 cubic feet per hour (1.1 L/sec.), requires (3/4) inch (20 mm) pipe.

Table 12-7 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(a)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	0.3 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Pipe Size (in.)													
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4	5	6	8	10	12
Actual ID:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026	5.047	6.065	7.981	10.020	11.938
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour													
10	131	273	514	1,060	1,580	3,050	4,860	8,580	17,500	31,700	51,300	105,000	191,000	303,000
20	90	188	353	726	1,090	2,090	3,340	5,900	12,000	21,800	35,300	72,400	132,000	208,000
30	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
40	62	129	243	499	747	1,440	2,290	4,050	8,270	15,000	24,200	49,800	90,400	143,000
50	55	114	215	442	662	1,280	2,030	3,590	7,330	13,300	21,500	44,100	80,100	127,000
60	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
70	46	95	179	368	552	1,060	1,690	3,000	6,110	11,100	17,900	36,800	66,800	106,000
80	42	89	167	343	514	989	1,580	2,790	5,680	10,300	16,700	34,200	62,100	98,400
90	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
100	38	79	148	304	455	877	1,400	2,470	5,040	9,110	14,800	30,300	55,100	87,200
125	33	70	131	269	403	777	1,240	2,190	4,460	8,080	13,100	26,900	48,800	77,300
150	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
175	28	58	109	224	336	648	1,030	1,820	3,720	6,730	10,900	22,400	40,700	64,400
200	26	54	102	209	313	602	960	1,700	3,460	6,260	10,100	20,800	37,900	59,900
250	23	48	90	185	277	534	851	1,500	3,070	5,550	8,990	18,500	33,500	53,100
300	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
350	19	40	75	154	231	445	709	1,250	2,560	4,630	7,490	15,400	28,000	44,300
400	18	37	70	143	215	414	660	1,170	2,380	4,310	6,970	14,300	26,000	41,200
450	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
500	16	33	62	127	191	367	585	1,030	2,110	3,820	6,180	12,700	23,100	36,500
550	15	31	59	121	181	349	556	982	2,000	3,620	5,870	12,100	21,900	34,700
600	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
650	14	29	54	110	165	318	508	897	1,830	3,310	5,360	11,000	20,000	31,700
700	13	27	52	106	159	306	488	862	1,760	3,180	5,150	10,600	19,200	30,400
750	13	26	50	102	153	295	470	830	1,690	3,060	4,960	10,200	18,500	29,300
800	12	26	48	99	148	285	454	802	1,640	2,960	4,790	9,840	17,900	28,300
850	12	25	46	95	143	275	439	776	1,580	2,860	4,640	9,530	17,300	27,400
900	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
950	11	23	44	90	135	259	413	731	1,490	2,700	4,370	8,970	16,300	25,800
1,000	11	23	43	87	131	252	402	711	1,450	2,620	4,250	8,720	15,800	25,100
1,100	10	21	40	83	124	240	382	675	1,380	2,490	4,030	8,290	15,100	23,800
1,200	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700
1,300	NA	20	37	76	114	219	349	617	1,260	2,280	3,680	7,570	13,700	21,800
1,400	NA	19	35	73	109	210	335	592	1,210	2,190	3,540	7,270	13,200	20,900
1,500	NA	18	34	70	105	203	323	571	1,160	2,110	3,410	7,010	12,700	20,100
1,600	NA	18	33	68	102	196	312	551	1,120	2,030	3,290	6,770	12,300	19,500
1,700	NA	17	32	66	98	189	302	533	1,090	1,970	3,190	6,550	11,900	18,800
1,800	NA	16	31	64	95	184	293	517	1,050	1,910	3,090	6,350	11,500	18,300
1,900	NA	16	30	62	93	178	284	502	1,020	1,850	3,000	6,170	11,200	17,700
2,000	NA	16	29	60	90	173	276	488	1,000	1,800	2,920	6,000	10,900	17,200

NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-8 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(b)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Pipe Size (in.)													
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4	5	6	8	10	12
Actual ID:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026	5.047	6.065	7.981	10.020	11.938
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour													
10	172	360	678	1,390	2,090	4,020	6,400	11,300	23,100	41,800	67,600	139,000	252,000	399,000
20	118	247	466	957	1,430	2,760	4,400	7,780	15,900	28,700	46,500	95,500	173,000	275,000
30	95	199	374	768	1,150	2,220	3,530	6,250	12,700	23,000	37,300	76,700	139,000	220,000
40	81	170	320	657	985	1,900	3,020	5,350	10,900	19,700	31,900	65,600	119,000	189,000
50	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
60	65	137	257	528	791	1,520	2,430	4,290	8,760	15,800	25,600	52,700	95,700	152,000
70	60	126	237	486	728	1,400	2,230	3,950	8,050	14,600	23,600	48,500	88,100	139,000
80	56	117	220	452	677	1,300	2,080	3,670	7,490	13,600	22,000	45,100	81,900	130,000
90	52	110	207	424	635	1,220	1,950	3,450	7,030	12,700	20,600	42,300	76,900	122,000
100	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
125	44	92	173	355	532	1,020	1,630	2,890	5,890	10,600	17,200	35,400	64,300	102,000
150	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
175	37	77	144	296	443	854	1,360	2,410	4,910	8,880	14,400	29,500	53,600	84,900
200	34	71	134	275	412	794	1,270	2,240	4,560	8,260	13,400	27,500	49,900	79,000
250	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
300	27	57	108	221	331	638	1,020	1,800	3,670	6,630	10,700	22,100	40,100	63,400
350	25	53	99	203	305	587	935	1,650	3,370	6,100	9,880	20,300	36,900	58,400
400	23	49	92	189	283	546	870	1,540	3,140	5,680	9,190	18,900	34,300	54,300
450	22	46	86	177	266	512	816	1,440	2,940	5,330	8,620	17,700	32,200	50,900
500	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
550	20	41	78	159	239	459	732	1,290	2,640	4,780	7,740	15,900	28,900	45,700
600	19	39	74	152	228	438	699	1,240	2,520	4,560	7,380	15,200	27,500	43,600
650	18	38	71	145	218	420	669	1,180	2,410	4,360	7,070	14,500	26,400	41,800
700	17	36	68	140	209	403	643	1,140	2,320	4,190	6,790	14,000	25,300	40,100
750	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
800	16	34	63	130	195	375	598	1,060	2,160	3,900	6,320	13,000	23,600	37,300
850	16	33	61	126	189	363	579	1,020	2,090	3,780	6,110	12,600	22,800	36,100
900	15	32	59	122	183	352	561	992	2,020	3,660	5,930	12,200	22,100	35,000
950	15	31	58	118	178	342	545	963	1,960	3,550	5,760	11,800	21,500	34,000
1,000	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
1,100	14	28	53	109	164	316	503	890	1,810	3,280	5,320	10,900	19,800	31,400
1,200	13	27	51	104	156	301	480	849	1,730	3,130	5,070	10,400	18,900	30,000
1,300	12	26	49	100	150	289	460	813	1,660	3,000	4,860	9,980	18,100	28,700
1,400	12	25	47	96	144	277	442	781	1,590	2,880	4,670	9,590	17,400	27,600
1,500	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
1,600	11	23	44	89	134	258	411	727	1,480	2,680	4,340	8,920	16,200	25,600
1,700	11	22	42	86	130	250	398	703	1,430	2,590	4,200	8,630	15,700	24,800
1,800	10	22	41	84	126	242	386	682	1,390	2,520	4,070	8,370	15,200	24,100
1,900	10	21	40	81	122	235	375	662	1,350	2,440	3,960	8,130	14,800	23,400
2,000	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700

NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-9 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(c)]

						Gas:	Natural		
						Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi		
						Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi		
						Specific Gravity:	0.60		
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual ID:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10	1,510	3,040	5,560	11,400	17,100	32,900	52,500	92,800	189,000
20	1,070	2,150	3,930	8,070	12,100	23,300	37,100	65,600	134,000
30	869	1,760	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
40	753	1,520	2,780	5,710	8,550	16,500	26,300	46,400	94,700
50	673	1,360	2,490	5,110	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
60	615	1,240	2,270	4,660	6,980	13,500	21,400	37,900	77,300
70	569	1,150	2,100	4,320	6,470	12,500	19,900	35,100	71,600
80	532	1,080	1,970	4,040	6,050	11,700	18,600	32,800	67,000
90	502	1,010	1,850	3,810	5,700	11,000	17,500	30,900	63,100
100	462	934	1,710	3,510	5,260	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,200
125	414	836	1,530	3,140	4,700	9,060	14,400	25,500	52,100
150	372	751	1,370	2,820	4,220	8,130	13,000	22,900	46,700
175	344	695	1,270	2,601	3,910	7,530	12,000	21,200	43,300
200	318	642	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,960	11,100	19,600	40,000
250	279	583	1,040	2,140	3,210	6,180	9,850	17,400	35,500
300	253	528	945	1,940	2,910	5,600	8,920	15,800	32,200
350	232	486	869	1,790	2,670	5,150	8,210	14,500	29,600
400	216	452	809	1,660	2,490	4,790	7,640	13,500	27,500
450	203	424	759	1,560	2,330	4,500	7,170	12,700	25,800
500	192	401	717	1,470	2,210	4,250	6,770	12,000	24,400
550	182	381	681	1,400	2,090	4,030	6,430	11,400	23,200
600	174	363	650	1,330	2,000	3,850	6,130	10,800	22,100
650	166	348	622	1,280	1,910	3,680	5,870	10,400	21,200
700	160	334	598	1,230	1,840	3,540	5,640	9,970	20,300
750	154	322	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
800	149	311	556	1,140	1,710	3,290	5,250	9,280	18,900
850	144	301	538	1,100	1,650	3,190	5,080	8,980	18,300
900	139	292	522	1,070	1,600	3,090	4,930	8,710	17,800
950	135	283	507	1,040	1,560	3,000	4,780	8,460	17,200
1,000	132	275	493	1,010	1,520	2,920	4,650	8,220	16,800
1,100	125	262	468	960	1,440	2,770	4,420	7,810	15,900
1,200	119	250	446	917	1,370	2,640	4,220	7,450	15,200
1,300	114	239	427	878	1,320	2,530	4,040	7,140	14,600
1,400	110	230	411	843	1,260	2,430	3,880	6,860	14,000
1,500	106	221	396	812	1,220	2,340	3,740	6,600	13,500
1,600	102	214	382	784	1,180	2,260	3,610	6,380	13,000
1,700	99	207	370	759	1,140	2,190	3,490	6,170	12,600
1,800	96	200	358	736	1,100	2,120	3,390	5,980	12,200
1,900	93	195	348	715	1,070	2,060	3,290	5,810	11,900
2,000	91	189	339	695	1,040	2,010	3,200	5,650	11,500

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-10 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(d)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	3.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	2.0 psi
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual ID:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	2,350	4,920	9,270	19,000	28,500	54,900	87,500	155,000	316,000
20	1,620	3,380	6,370	13,100	19,600	37,700	60,100	106,000	217,000
30	1,300	2,720	5,110	10,500	15,700	30,300	48,300	85,400	174,000
40	1,110	2,320	4,380	8,990	13,500	25,900	41,300	73,100	149,000
50	985	2,060	3,880	7,970	11,900	23,000	36,600	64,800	132,000
60	892	1,870	3,520	7,220	10,800	20,800	33,200	58,700	120,000
70	821	1,720	3,230	6,640	9,950	19,200	30,500	54,000	110,000
80	764	1,600	3,010	6,180	9,260	17,800	28,400	50,200	102,000
90	717	1,500	2,820	5,800	8,680	16,700	26,700	47,100	96,100
100	677	1,420	2,670	5,470	8,200	15,800	25,200	44,500	90,800
125	600	1,250	2,360	4,850	7,270	14,000	22,300	39,500	80,500
150	544	1,140	2,140	4,400	6,590	12,700	20,200	35,700	72,900
175	500	1,050	1,970	4,040	6,060	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,100
200	465	973	1,830	3,760	5,640	10,900	17,300	30,600	62,400
250	412	862	1,620	3,330	5,000	9,620	15,300	27,100	55,300
300	374	781	1,470	3,020	4,530	8,720	13,900	24,600	50,100
350	344	719	1,350	2,780	4,170	8,020	12,800	22,600	46,100
400	320	669	1,260	2,590	3,870	7,460	11,900	21,000	42,900
450	300	627	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,000	11,200	19,700	40,200
500	283	593	1,120	2,290	3,430	6,610	10,500	18,600	38,000
550	269	563	1,060	2,180	3,260	6,280	10,000	17,700	36,100
600	257	537	1,010	2,080	3,110	5,990	9,550	16,900	34,400
650	246	514	969	1,990	2,980	5,740	9,150	16,200	33,000
700	236	494	931	1,910	2,860	5,510	8,790	15,500	31,700
750	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
800	220	460	866	1,780	2,660	5,130	8,180	14,500	29,500
850	213	445	838	1,720	2,580	4,960	7,910	14,000	28,500
900	206	431	812	1,670	2,500	4,810	7,670	13,600	27,700
950	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,000	195	407	767	1,580	2,360	4,550	7,240	12,800	26,100
1,100	185	387	729	1,500	2,240	4,320	6,890	12,200	24,800
1,200	177	369	695	1,430	2,140	4,120	6,570	11,600	23,700
1,300	169	353	666	1,370	2,050	3,940	6,290	11,100	22,700
1,400	162	340	640	1,310	1,970	3,790	6,040	10,700	21,800
1,500	156	327	616	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
1,600	151	316	595	1,220	1,830	3,530	5,620	10,000	20,300
1,700	146	306	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
1,800	142	296	558	1,150	1,720	3,310	5,270	9,320	19,000
1,900	138	288	542	1,110	1,670	3,210	5,120	9,050	18,400
2,000	134	280	527	1,080	1,620	3,120	4,980	8,800	18,000

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-11 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(e)]

						Gas:	Natural		
						Inlet Pressure:	5.0 psi		
						Pressure Drop:	3.5 psi		
						Specific Gravity:	0.60		
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual ID:	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	3,190	6,430	11,800	24,200	36,200	69,700	111,000	196,000	401,000
20	2,250	4,550	8,320	17,100	25,600	49,300	78,600	139,000	283,000
30	1,840	3,720	6,790	14,000	20,900	40,300	64,200	113,000	231,000
40	1,590	3,220	5,880	12,100	18,100	34,900	55,600	98,200	200,000
50	1,430	2,880	5,260	10,800	16,200	31,200	49,700	87,900	179,000
60	1,300	2,630	4,800	9,860	14,800	28,500	45,400	80,200	164,000
70	1,200	2,430	4,450	9,130	13,700	26,400	42,000	74,300	151,000
80	1,150	2,330	4,260	8,540	12,800	24,700	39,300	69,500	142,000
90	1,060	2,150	3,920	8,050	12,100	23,200	37,000	65,500	134,000
100	979	1,980	3,620	7,430	11,100	21,400	34,200	60,400	123,000
125	876	1,770	3,240	6,640	9,950	19,200	30,600	54,000	110,000
150	786	1,590	2,910	5,960	8,940	17,200	27,400	48,500	98,900
175	728	1,470	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,600
200	673	1,360	2,490	5,100	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
250	558	1,170	2,200	4,510	6,760	13,000	20,800	36,700	74,900
300	506	1,060	1,990	4,090	6,130	11,800	18,800	33,300	67,800
350	465	973	1,830	3,760	5,640	10,900	17,300	30,600	62,400
400	433	905	1,710	3,500	5,250	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,100
450	406	849	1,600	3,290	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
500	384	802	1,510	3,100	4,650	8,950	14,300	25,200	51,500
550	364	762	1,440	2,950	4,420	8,500	13,600	24,000	48,900
600	348	727	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,900	46,600
650	333	696	1,310	2,690	4,030	7,770	12,400	21,900	44,600
700	320	669	1,260	2,590	3,880	7,460	11,900	21,000	42,900
750	308	644	1,210	2,490	3,730	7,190	11,500	20,300	41,300
800	298	622	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,940	11,100	19,600	39,900
850	288	602	1,130	2,330	3,490	6,720	10,700	18,900	38,600
900	279	584	1,100	2,260	3,380	6,520	10,400	18,400	37,400
950	271	567	1,070	2,190	3,290	6,330	10,100	17,800	36,400
1,000	264	551	1,040	2,130	3,200	6,150	9,810	17,300	35,400
1,100	250	524	987	2,030	3,030	5,840	9,320	16,500	33,600
1,200	239	500	941	1,930	2,900	5,580	8,890	15,700	32,000
1,300	229	478	901	1,850	2,770	5,340	8,510	15,000	30,700
1,400	220	460	866	1,780	2,660	5,130	8,180	14,500	29,500
1,500	212	443	834	1,710	2,570	4,940	7,880	13,900	28,400
1,600	205	428	806	1,650	2,480	4,770	7,610	13,400	27,400
1,700	198	414	780	1,600	2,400	4,620	7,360	13,000	26,500
1,800	192	401	756	1,550	2,330	4,480	7,140	12,600	25,700
1,900	186	390	734	1,510	2,260	4,350	6,930	12,300	25,000
2,000	181	379	714	1,470	2,200	4,230	6,740	11,900	24,300

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-12 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.2(f)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	0.3 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
	ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10		20	42	85	148	210	448	806	1,270	2,650
20		14	29	58	102	144	308	554	873	1,820
30		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
40		10	20	40	70	99	211	381	600	1,250
50		NA	17	35	62	88	187	337	532	1,110
60		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
70		NA	14	29	52	73	156	281	443	924
80		NA	13	27	48	68	145	262	413	859
90		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
100		NA	12	24	43	60	129	232	366	761
125		NA	11	22	38	53	114	206	324	675
150		NA	10	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
175		NA	NA	18	31	45	95	171	270	563
200		NA	NA	17	29	41	89	159	251	523
250		NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
300		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
350		NA	NA	12	22	31	65	118	186	387
400		NA	NA	11	20	28	61	110	173	360
450		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
500		NA	NA	10	18	25	54	97	153	319
550		NA	NA	NA	17	24	51	92	145	303
600		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
650		NA	NA	NA	15	22	47	84	133	277
700		NA	NA	NA	15	21	45	81	128	266
750		NA	NA	NA	14	20	43	78	123	256
800		NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	75	119	247
850		NA	NA	NA	13	19	40	73	115	239
900		NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
950		NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	69	108	225
1,000		NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	67	105	219
1,100		NA	NA	NA	12	16	35	63	100	208
1,200		NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199
1,300		NA	NA	NA	11	15	32	58	91	190
1,400		NA	NA	NA	10	14	31	56	88	183
1,500		NA	NA	NA	NA	14	30	54	84	176
1,600		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	29	52	82	170
1,700		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	28	50	79	164
1,800		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	27	49	77	159
1,900		NA	NA	NA	NA	12	26	47	74	155
2,000		NA	NA	NA	NA	12	25	46	72	151

NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-13 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.2(g)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
20	18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
30	15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
40	13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
50	11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
60	10	21	42	74	105	224	403	635	1,320
70	NA	19	39	68	96	206	371	585	1,220
80	NA	18	36	63	90	192	345	544	1,130
90	NA	17	34	59	84	180	324	510	1,060
100	NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
125	NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
150	NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
175	NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
200	NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
250	NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
300	NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
350	NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
400	NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
450	NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
500	NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
550	NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
600	NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
650	NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
700	NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
750	NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
800	NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
850	NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
900	NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
950	NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
1,000	NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
1,100	NA	NA	NA	15	22	46	84	132	274
1,200	NA	NA	NA	15	21	44	80	126	262
1,300	NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	76	120	251
1,400	NA	NA	NA	13	19	41	73	116	241
1,500	NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
1,600	NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	68	108	224
1,700	NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	66	104	217
1,800	NA	NA	NA	12	17	36	64	101	210
1,900	NA	NA	NA	11	16	35	62	98	204
2,000	NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199

NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-14 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.2(h)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	1.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

SPECIAL USE: Tube Sizing Between House Line Regulator and the Appliance.

		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
	ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10		39	80	162	283	402	859	1,550	2,440	5,080
20		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
30		21	44	89	156	222	474	853	1,350	2,800
40		18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
50		16	33	68	119	168	359	647	1,020	2,130
60		15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
70		13	28	57	99	140	300	539	851	1,770
80		13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
90		12	24	49	86	122	262	471	742	1,550
100		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
125		NA	20	41	72	103	219	394	622	1,290
150		NA	18	37	65	93	198	357	563	1,170
175		NA	17	34	60	85	183	329	518	1,080
200		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
250		NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
300		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
350		NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
400		NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
450		NA	10	21	36	51	110	197	311	647
500		NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
550		NA	NA	19	32	46	98	177	279	581
600		NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
650		NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	255	531
700		NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
750		NA	NA	16	27	39	83	150	236	491
800		NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
850		NA	NA	15	26	36	78	140	220	459
900		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
950		NA	NA	14	24	34	73	132	207	432
1,000		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
1,100		NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
1,200		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
1,300		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
1,400		NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
1,500		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
1,600		NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
1,700		NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
1,800		NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
1,900		NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
2,000		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289

NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-15 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.2(i)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	17.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	K & L:	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR:	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside:		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10		190	391	796	1,390	1,970	4,220	7,590	12,000	24,900
20		130	269	547	956	1,360	2,900	5,220	8,230	17,100
30		105	216	439	768	1,090	2,330	4,190	6,610	13,800
40		90	185	376	657	932	1,990	3,590	5,650	11,800
50		79	164	333	582	826	1,770	3,180	5,010	10,400
60		72	148	302	528	749	1,600	2,880	4,540	9,460
70		66	137	278	486	689	1,470	2,650	4,180	8,700
80		62	127	258	452	641	1,370	2,460	3,890	8,090
90		58	119	243	424	601	1,280	2,310	3,650	7,590
100		55	113	229	400	568	1,210	2,180	3,440	7,170
125		48	100	203	355	503	1,080	1,940	3,050	6,360
150		44	90	184	321	456	974	1,750	2,770	5,760
175		40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
200		38	77	157	275	390	834	1,500	2,370	4,930
250		33	69	140	244	346	739	1,330	2,100	4,370
300		30	62	126	221	313	670	1,210	1,900	3,960
350		28	57	116	203	288	616	1,110	1,750	3,640
400		26	53	108	189	268	573	1,030	1,630	3,390
450		24	50	102	177	252	538	968	1,530	3,180
500		23	47	96	168	238	508	914	1,440	3,000
550		22	45	91	159	226	482	868	1,370	2,850
600		21	43	87	152	215	460	829	1,310	2,720
650		20	41	83	145	206	441	793	1,250	2,610
700		19	39	80	140	198	423	762	1,200	2,500
750		18	38	77	135	191	408	734	1,160	2,410
800		18	37	74	130	184	394	709	1,120	2,330
850		17	35	72	126	178	381	686	1,080	2,250
900		17	34	70	122	173	370	665	1,050	2,180
950		16	33	68	118	168	359	646	1,020	2,120
1,000		16	32	66	115	163	349	628	991	2,060
1,100		15	31	63	109	155	332	597	941	1,960
1,200		14	29	60	104	148	316	569	898	1,870
1,300		14	28	57	100	142	303	545	860	1,790
1,400		13	27	55	96	136	291	524	826	1,720
1,500		13	26	53	93	131	280	505	796	1,660
1,600		12	25	51	89	127	271	487	768	1,600
1,700		12	24	49	86	123	262	472	744	1,550
1,800		11	24	48	84	119	254	457	721	1,500
1,900		11	23	47	81	115	247	444	700	1,460
2,000		11	22	45	79	112	240	432	681	1,420

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-16 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.2(j)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10	245	506	1,030	1,800	2,550	5,450	9,820	15,500	32,200
20	169	348	708	1,240	1,760	3,750	6,750	10,600	22,200
30	135	279	568	993	1,410	3,010	5,420	8,550	17,800
40	116	239	486	850	1,210	2,580	4,640	7,310	15,200
50	103	212	431	754	1,070	2,280	4,110	6,480	13,500
60	93	192	391	683	969	2,070	3,730	5,870	12,200
70	86	177	359	628	891	1,900	3,430	5,400	11,300
80	80	164	334	584	829	1,770	3,190	5,030	10,500
90	75	154	314	548	778	1,660	2,990	4,720	9,820
100	71	146	296	518	735	1,570	2,830	4,450	9,280
125	63	129	263	459	651	1,390	2,500	3,950	8,220
150	57	117	238	416	590	1,260	2,270	3,580	7,450
175	52	108	219	383	543	1,160	2,090	3,290	6,850
200	49	100	204	356	505	1,080	1,940	3,060	6,380
250	43	89	181	315	448	956	1,720	2,710	5,650
300	39	80	164	286	406	866	1,560	2,460	5,120
350	36	74	150	263	373	797	1,430	2,260	4,710
400	33	69	140	245	347	741	1,330	2,100	4,380
450	31	65	131	230	326	696	1,250	1,970	4,110
500	30	61	124	217	308	657	1,180	1,870	3,880
550	28	58	118	206	292	624	1,120	1,770	3,690
600	27	55	112	196	279	595	1,070	1,690	3,520
650	26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
700	25	51	103	181	256	548	986	1,550	3,240
750	24	49	100	174	247	528	950	1,500	3,120
800	23	47	96	168	239	510	917	1,450	3,010
850	22	46	93	163	231	493	888	1,400	2,920
900	22	44	90	158	224	478	861	1,360	2,830
950	21	43	88	153	217	464	836	1,320	2,740
1,000	20	42	85	149	211	452	813	1,280	2,670
1,100	19	40	81	142	201	429	772	1,220	2,540
1,200	18	38	77	135	192	409	737	1,160	2,420
1,300	18	36	74	129	183	392	705	1,110	2,320
1,400	17	35	71	124	176	376	678	1,070	2,230
1,500	16	34	68	120	170	363	653	1,030	2,140
1,600	16	33	66	116	164	350	630	994	2,070
1,700	15	31	64	112	159	339	610	962	2,000
1,800	15	30	62	108	154	329	592	933	1,940
1,900	14	30	60	105	149	319	575	906	1,890
2,000	14	29	59	102	145	310	559	881	1,830

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-17 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.2(k)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	1.5 psi
Specific Gravity:	0.60

SPECIAL USE: Pipe Sizing Between Point of Delivery and the House Line Regulator. Total Load Supplied by a Single House Line Regulator Not Exceeding 150 Cubic Feet per Hour.†

		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
	ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10		303	625	1,270	2,220	3,150	6,740	12,100	19,100	39,800
20		208	430	874	1,530	2,170	4,630	8,330	13,100	27,400
30		167	345	702	1,230	1,740	3,720	6,690	10,600	22,000
40		143	295	601	1,050	1,490	3,180	5,730	9,030	18,800
50		127	262	532	931	1,320	2,820	5,080	8,000	16,700
60		115	237	482	843	1,200	2,560	4,600	7,250	15,100
70		106	218	444	776	1,100	2,350	4,230	6,670	13,900
80		98	203	413	722	1,020	2,190	3,940	6,210	12,900
90		92	190	387	677	961	2,050	3,690	5,820	12,100
100		87	180	366	640	907	1,940	3,490	5,500	11,500
125		77	159	324	567	804	1,720	3,090	4,880	10,200
150		70	144	294	514	729	1,560	2,800	4,420	9,200
175		64	133	270	472	670	1,430	2,580	4,060	8,460
200		60	124	252	440	624	1,330	2,400	3,780	7,870
250		53	110	223	390	553	1,180	2,130	3,350	6,980
300		48	99	202	353	501	1,070	1,930	3,040	6,320
350		44	91	186	325	461	984	1,770	2,790	5,820
400		41	85	173	302	429	916	1,650	2,600	5,410
450		39	80	162	283	402	859	1,550	2,440	5,080
500		36	75	153	268	380	811	1,460	2,300	4,800
550		35	72	146	254	361	771	1,390	2,190	4,560
600		33	68	139	243	344	735	1,320	2,090	4,350
650		32	65	133	232	330	704	1,270	2,000	4,160
700		30	63	128	223	317	676	1,220	1,920	4,000
750		29	60	123	215	305	652	1,170	1,850	3,850
800		28	58	119	208	295	629	1,130	1,790	3,720
850		27	57	115	201	285	609	1,100	1,730	3,600
900		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
950		26	53	108	189	268	573	1,030	1,630	3,390
1,000		25	52	105	184	261	558	1,000	1,580	3,300
1,100		24	49	100	175	248	530	954	1,500	3,130
1,200		23	47	95	167	237	505	910	1,430	2,990
1,300		22	45	91	160	227	484	871	1,370	2,860
1,400		21	43	88	153	218	465	837	1,320	2,750
1,500		20	42	85	148	210	448	806	1,270	2,650
1,600		19	40	82	143	202	432	779	1,230	2,560
1,700		19	39	79	138	196	419	753	1,190	2,470
1,800		18	38	77	134	190	406	731	1,150	2,400
1,900		18	37	74	130	184	394	709	1,120	2,330
2,000		17	36	72	126	179	383	690	1,090	2,270

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

†When this table is used to size the tubing upstream of a line pressure regulator, the pipe or tubing downstream of the line pressure regulator shall be sized using a pressure drop no greater than 1 in. w.c.

Table 12-18 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.2(1)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	511	1,050	2,140	3,750	5,320	11,400	20,400	32,200	67,100
20	351	724	1,470	2,580	3,650	7,800	14,000	22,200	46,100
30	282	582	1,180	2,070	2,930	6,270	11,300	17,800	37,000
40	241	498	1,010	1,770	2,510	5,360	9,660	15,200	31,700
50	214	441	898	1,570	2,230	4,750	8,560	13,500	28,100
60	194	400	813	1,420	2,020	4,310	7,750	12,200	25,500
70	178	368	748	1,310	1,860	3,960	7,130	11,200	23,400
80	166	342	696	1,220	1,730	3,690	6,640	10,500	21,800
90	156	321	653	1,140	1,620	3,460	6,230	9,820	20,400
100	147	303	617	1,080	1,530	3,270	5,880	9,270	19,300
125	130	269	547	955	1,360	2,900	5,210	8,220	17,100
150	118	243	495	866	1,230	2,620	4,720	7,450	15,500
175	109	224	456	796	1,130	2,410	4,350	6,850	14,300
200	101	208	424	741	1,050	2,250	4,040	6,370	13,300
250	90	185	376	657	932	1,990	3,580	5,650	11,800
300	81	167	340	595	844	1,800	3,250	5,120	10,700
350	75	154	313	547	777	1,660	2,990	4,710	9,810
400	69	143	291	509	722	1,540	2,780	4,380	9,120
450	65	134	273	478	678	1,450	2,610	4,110	8,560
500	62	127	258	451	640	1,370	2,460	3,880	8,090
550	58	121	245	429	608	1,300	2,340	3,690	7,680
600	56	115	234	409	580	1,240	2,230	3,520	7,330
650	53	110	224	392	556	1,190	2,140	3,370	7,020
700	51	106	215	376	534	1,140	2,050	3,240	6,740
750	49	102	207	362	514	1,100	1,980	3,120	6,490
800	48	98	200	350	497	1,060	1,910	3,010	6,270
850	46	95	194	339	481	1,030	1,850	2,910	6,070
900	45	92	188	328	466	1,000	1,790	2,820	5,880
950	43	90	182	319	452	967	1,740	2,740	5,710
1,000	42	87	177	310	440	940	1,690	2,670	5,560
1,100	40	83	169	295	418	893	1,610	2,530	5,280
1,200	38	79	161	281	399	852	1,530	2,420	5,040
1,300	37	76	154	269	382	816	1,470	2,320	4,820
1,400	35	73	148	259	367	784	1,410	2,220	4,630
1,500	34	70	143	249	353	755	1,360	2,140	4,460
1,600	33	68	138	241	341	729	1,310	2,070	4,310
1,700	32	65	133	233	330	705	1,270	2,000	4,170
1,800	31	63	129	226	320	684	1,230	1,940	4,040
1,900	30	62	125	219	311	664	1,200	1,890	3,930
2,000	29	60	122	213	302	646	1,160	1,830	3,820

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-19 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.2(m)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour												
5	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
10	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
15	25	35	66	77	132	157	267	310	524	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
20	22	31	58	67	116	137	231	269	456	888	1,050	1,850	2,080
25	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	793	936	1,660	1,860
30	18	25	47	55	96	112	188	218	374	723	856	1,520	1,700
40	15	21	41	47	83	97	162	188	325	625	742	1,320	1,470
50	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	292	559	665	1,180	1,320
60	12	17	34	38	68	80	131	153	267	509	608	1,080	1,200
70	11	16	31	36	63	74	121	141	248	471	563	1,000	1,110
80	10	15	29	33	60	69	113	132	232	440	527	940	1,040
90	10	14	28	32	57	65	107	125	219	415	498	887	983
100	9	13	26	30	54	62	101	118	208	393	472	843	933
150	7	10	20	23	42	48	78	91	171	320	387	691	762
200	6	9	18	21	38	44	71	82	148	277	336	600	661
250	5	8	16	19	34	39	63	74	133	247	301	538	591
300	5	7	15	17	32	36	57	67	95	226	275	492	540

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-20 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.2(n)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	3.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour												
5	120	160	277	327	529	649	1,180	1,370	2,140	4,430	5,010	8,800	10,100
10	83	112	197	231	380	462	828	958	1,530	3,200	3,560	6,270	7,160
15	67	90	161	189	313	379	673	778	1,250	2,540	2,910	5,140	5,850
20	57	78	140	164	273	329	580	672	1,090	2,200	2,530	4,460	5,070
25	51	69	125	147	245	295	518	599	978	1,960	2,270	4,000	4,540
30	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
40	39	54	100	116	196	234	407	471	778	1,550	1,800	3,180	3,590
50	35	48	89	104	176	210	363	421	698	1,380	1,610	2,850	3,210
60	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
70	29	41	76	88	150	178	306	355	593	1,170	1,360	2,420	2,720
80	27	38	71	82	141	167	285	331	555	1,090	1,280	2,260	2,540
90	26	36	67	77	133	157	268	311	524	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
100	24	34	63	73	126	149	254	295	498	974	1,140	2,030	2,280
150	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	793	936	1,660	1,860
200	17	23	45	52	91	106	178	207	355	686	812	1,440	1,610
250	15	21	40	46	82	95	159	184	319	613	728	1,290	1,440
300	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	234	559	665	1,180	1,320

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-21 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.2(o)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	6.0 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour												
5	173	229	389	461	737	911	1,690	1,950	3,000	6,280	7,050	12,400	14,260
10	120	160	277	327	529	649	1,180	1,370	2,140	4,430	5,010	8,800	10,100
15	96	130	227	267	436	532	960	1,110	1,760	3,610	4,100	7,210	8,260
20	83	112	197	231	380	462	828	958	1,530	3,120	3,560	6,270	7,160
25	74	99	176	207	342	414	739	855	1,370	2,790	3,190	5,620	6,400
30	67	90	161	189	313	379	673	778	1,250	2,540	2,910	5,140	5,850
40	57	78	140	164	273	329	580	672	1,090	2,200	2,530	4,460	5,070
50	51	69	125	147	245	295	518	599	978	1,960	2,270	4,000	4,540
60	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
70	42	58	106	124	209	250	435	505	830	1,660	1,920	3,390	3,840
80	39	54	100	116	196	234	407	471	778	1,550	1,800	3,180	3,590
90	37	51	94	109	185	221	383	444	735	1,460	1,700	3,000	3,390
100	35	48	89	104	176	210	363	421	698	1,380	1,610	2,850	3,210
150	28	39	73	85	145	172	294	342	573	1,130	1,320	2,340	2,630
200	24	34	63	73	126	149	254	295	498	974	1,140	2,030	2,280
250	21	30	57	66	114	134	226	263	447	870	1,020	1,820	2,040
300	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	793	936	1,660	1,860

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-22 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.2(p)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour												
10	270	353	587	700	1,100	1,370	2,590	2,990	4,510	9,600	10,700	18,600	21,600
25	166	220	374	444	709	876	1,620	1,870	2,890	6,040	6,780	11,900	13,700
30	151	200	342	405	650	801	1,480	1,700	2,640	5,510	6,200	10,900	12,500
40	129	172	297	351	567	696	1,270	1,470	2,300	4,760	5,380	9,440	10,900
50	115	154	266	314	510	624	1,140	1,310	2,060	4,260	4,820	8,470	9,720
75	93	124	218	257	420	512	922	1,070	1,690	3,470	3,950	6,940	7,940
80	89	120	211	249	407	496	892	1,030	1,640	3,360	3,820	6,730	7,690
100	79	107	189	222	366	445	795	920	1,470	3,000	3,420	6,030	6,880
150	64	87	155	182	302	364	646	748	1,210	2,440	2,800	4,940	5,620
200	55	75	135	157	263	317	557	645	1,050	2,110	2,430	4,290	4,870
250	49	67	121	141	236	284	497	576	941	1,890	2,180	3,850	4,360
300	44	61	110	129	217	260	453	525	862	1,720	1,990	3,520	3,980
400	38	52	96	111	189	225	390	453	749	1,490	1,730	3,060	3,450
500	34	46	86	100	170	202	348	404	552	1,330	1,550	2,740	3,090

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds ¾ psi, do not usethis table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.

(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.

(3) Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger number of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing according to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-23 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.2(q)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**	**25**	**30**	**31**	**37**	**46**	**48**	**60**	**62**
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour												
10	523	674	1,080	1,300	2,000	2,530	4,920	5,660	8,300	18,100	19,800	34,400	40,400
25	322	420	691	827	1,290	1,620	3,080	3,540	5,310	11,400	12,600	22,000	25,600
30	292	382	632	755	1,180	1,480	2,800	3,230	4,860	10,400	11,500	20,100	23,400
40	251	329	549	654	1,030	1,280	2,420	2,790	4,230	8,970	10,000	17,400	20,200
50	223	293	492	586	926	1,150	2,160	2,490	3,790	8,020	8,930	15,600	18,100
75	180	238	403	479	763	944	1,750	2,020	3,110	6,530	7,320	12,800	14,800
80	174	230	391	463	740	915	1,690	1,960	3,020	6,320	7,090	12,400	14,300
100	154	205	350	415	665	820	1,510	1,740	2,710	5,650	6,350	11,100	12,800
150	124	166	287	339	548	672	1,230	1,420	2,220	4,600	5,200	9,130	10,500
200	107	143	249	294	478	584	1,060	1.220	1,930	3,980	4,510	7,930	9,090
250	95	128	223	263	430	524	945	1,090	1,730	3,550	4,040	7,110	8,140
300	86	116	204	240	394	479	860	995	1,590	3,240	3,690	6,500	7,430
400	74	100	177	208	343	416	742	858	1,380	2,800	3,210	5,650	6,440
500	66	89	159	186	309	373	662	766	1,040	2,500	2,870	5,060	5,760

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds 1 psi, do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator may vary with the flow rate.

(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with tubing manufacturer for guidance.

(3) Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-24 Polyethylene Plastic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(r)]

Gas:	Natural
Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi
Pressure Drop:	0.3 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Pipe Size (in.)					
Nominal OD:	**½**	**¾**	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**
Designation:	**SDR 9.33**	**SDR 11.0**	**SDR 11.00**	**SDR 10.00**	**SDR 11.00**	**SDR 11.00**
Actual ID:	**0.660**	**0.860**	**1.077**	**1.328**	**1.554**	**1.943**
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour					
10	153	305	551	955	1,440	2,590
20	105	210	379	656	991	1,780
30	84	169	304	527	796	1,430
40	72	144	260	451	681	1,220
50	64	128	231	400	604	1,080
60	58	116	209	362	547	983
70	53	107	192	333	503	904
80	50	99	179	310	468	841
90	46	93	168	291	439	789
100	44	88	159	275	415	745
125	39	78	141	243	368	661
150	35	71	127	221	333	598
175	32	65	117	203	306	551
200	30	60	109	189	285	512
250	27	54	97	167	253	454
300	24	48	88	152	229	411
350	22	45	81	139	211	378
400	21	42	75	130	196	352
450	19	39	70	122	184	330
500	18	37	66	115	174	312

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-25 Polyethylene Plastic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(s)]

				Gas:	Natural	
				Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi	
				Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.	
				Specific Gravity:	0.60	
	Pipe Size (in.)					
Nominal OD:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Designation:	SDR 9.33	SDR 11.0	SDR 11.00	SDR 10.00	SDR 11.00	SDR 11.00
Actual ID:	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour					
10	201	403	726	1,260	1,900	3,410
20	138	277	499	865	1,310	2,350
30	111	222	401	695	1,050	1,880
40	95	190	343	594	898	1,610
50	84	169	304	527	796	1,430
60	76	153	276	477	721	1,300
70	70	140	254	439	663	1,190
80	65	131	236	409	617	1,110
90	61	123	221	383	579	1,040
100	58	116	209	362	547	983
125	51	103	185	321	485	871
150	46	93	168	291	439	789
175	43	86	154	268	404	726
200	40	80	144	249	376	675
250	35	71	127	221	333	598
300	32	64	115	200	302	542
350	29	59	106	184	278	499
400	27	55	99	171	258	464
450	26	51	93	160	242	435
500	24	48	88	152	229	411

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-26 Polyethylene Plastic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.2(t)]

			Gas:	Natural		
			Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi		
			Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi		
			Specific Gravity:	0.60		
	Pipe Size (in.)					
Nominal OD:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Designation:	SDR 9.33	SDR 11.0	SDR 11.00	SDR 10.00	SDR 11.00	SDR 11.00
Actual ID:	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour					
10	1,860	3,720	6,710	11,600	17,600	31,600
20	1,280	2,560	4,610	7,990	12,100	21,700
30	1,030	2,050	3,710	6,420	9,690	17,400
40	878	1,760	3,170	5,490	8,300	14,900
50	778	1,560	2,810	4,870	7,350	13,200
60	705	1,410	2,550	4,410	6,660	12,000
70	649	1,300	2,340	4,060	6,130	11,000
80	603	1,210	2,180	3,780	5,700	10,200
90	566	1,130	2,050	3,540	5,350	9,610
100	535	1,070	1,930	3,350	5,050	9,080
125	474	949	1,710	2,970	4,480	8,050
150	429	860	1,550	2,690	4,060	7,290
175	395	791	1,430	2,470	3,730	6,710
200	368	736	1,330	2,300	3,470	6,240
250	326	652	1,180	2,040	3,080	5,530
300	295	591	1,070	1,850	2,790	5,010
350	272	544	981	1,700	2,570	4,610
400	253	506	913	1,580	2,390	4,290
450	237	475	856	1,480	2,240	4,020
500	224	448	809	1,400	2,120	3,800
550	213	426	768	1,330	2,010	3,610
600	203	406	733	1,270	1,920	3,440
650	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300
700	187	374	674	1,170	1,760	3,170
750	180	360	649	1,130	1,700	3,050
800	174	348	627	1,090	1,640	2,950
850	168	336	607	1,050	1,590	2,850
900	163	326	588	1,020	1,540	2,770
950	158	317	572	990	1,500	2,690
1,000	154	308	556	963	1,450	2,610
1,100	146	293	528	915	1,380	2,480
1,200	139	279	504	873	1,320	2,370
1,300	134	267	482	836	1,260	2,270
1,400	128	257	463	803	1,210	2,180
1,500	124	247	446	773	1,170	2,100
1,600	119	239	431	747	1,130	2,030
1,700	115	231	417	723	1,090	1,960
1,800	112	224	404	701	1,060	1,900
1,900	109	218	393	680	1,030	1,850
2,000	106	212	382	662	1,000	1,800

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-27 Polyethylene Plastic Tubing
[NFPA Table 6.2(u)]

	Gas:	Natural
	Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2.0 psi
	Pressure Drop:	0.3 in. w.c.
	Specific Gravity:	0.60
	Plastic Tubing Size (CTS)* (in.)	
Nominal OD:	½	¾
Designation:	SDR 7.00	SDR 11.00
Actual ID:	0.445	0.927
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour	
10	54	372
20	37	256
30	30	205
40	26	176
50	23	156
60	21	141
70	19	130
80	18	121
90	17	113
100	16	107
125	14	95
150	13	86
175	12	79
200	11	74
225	10	69
250	NA	65
275	NA	62
300	NA	59
350	NA	54
400	NA	51
450	NA	47
500	NA	45

*CTS = Copper tube size.
NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-28 Polyethylene Plastic Tubing
[NFPA Table 6.2(v)]

	Gas:	Natural
	Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2.0 psi
	Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
	Specific Gravity:	0.60
	Plastic Tubing Size (CTS)* (in.)	
Nominal OD:	½	¾
Designation:	SDR 7.00	SDR 11.00
Actual ID:	0.445	0.927
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour	
10	72	490
20	49	337
30	39	271
40	34	232
50	30	205
60	27	186
70	25	171
80	23	159
90	22	149
100	21	141
125	18	125
150	17	113
175	15	104
200	14	97
225	13	91
250	12	86
275	11	82
300	11	78
350	10	72
400	NA	67
450	NA	63
500	NA	59

*CTS = Copper tube size.
NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-29 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.3(a)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity:	1.50

SPECIAL USE: Pipe Sizing Between First Stage (High Pressure Regulator) and Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator)

	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal Inside:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10	3,320	6,950	13,100	26,900	40,300	77,600	124,000	219,000	446,000
20	2,280	4,780	9,000	18,500	27,700	53,300	85,000	150,000	306,000
30	1,830	3,840	7,220	14,800	22,200	42,800	68,200	121,000	246,000
40	1,570	3,280	6,180	12,700	19,000	36,600	58,400	103,000	211,000
50	1,390	2,910	5,480	11,300	16,900	32,500	51,700	91,500	187,000
60	1,260	2,640	4,970	10,200	15,300	29,400	46,900	82,900	169,000
70	1,160	2,430	4,570	9,380	14,100	27,100	43,100	76,300	156,000
80	1,080	2,260	4,250	8,730	13,100	25,200	40,100	70,900	145,000
90	1,010	2,120	3,990	8,190	12,300	23,600	37,700	66,600	136,000
100	956	2,000	3,770	7,730	11,600	22,300	35,600	62,900	128,000
125	848	1,770	3,340	6,850	10,300	19,800	31,500	55,700	114,000
150	768	1,610	3,020	6,210	9,300	17,900	28,600	50,500	103,000
175	706	1,480	2,780	5,710	8,560	16,500	26,300	46,500	94,700
200	657	1,370	2,590	5,320	7,960	15,300	24,400	43,200	88,100
250	582	1,220	2,290	4,710	7,060	13,600	21,700	38,300	78,100
300	528	1,100	2,080	4,270	6,400	12,300	19,600	34,700	70,800
350	486	1,020	1,910	3,930	5,880	11,300	18,100	31,900	65,100
400	452	945	1,780	3,650	5,470	10,500	16,800	29,700	60,600
450	424	886	1,670	3,430	5,140	9,890	15,800	27,900	56,800
500	400	837	1,580	3,240	4,850	9,340	14,900	26,300	53,700
550	380	795	1,500	3,070	4,610	8,870	14,100	25,000	51,000
600	363	759	1,430	2,930	4,400	8,460	13,500	23,900	48,600
650	347	726	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,800	46,600
700	334	698	1,310	2,700	4,040	7,790	12,400	21,900	44,800
750	321	672	1,270	2,600	3,900	7,500	12,000	21,100	43,100
800	310	649	1,220	2,510	3,760	7,240	11,500	20,400	41,600
850	300	628	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,010	11,200	19,800	40,300
900	291	609	1,150	2,360	3,530	6,800	10,800	19,200	39,100
950	283	592	1,110	2,290	3,430	6,600	10,500	18,600	37,900
1,000	275	575	1,080	2,230	3,330	6,420	10,200	18,100	36,900
1,100	261	546	1,030	2,110	3,170	6,100	9,720	17,200	35,000
1,200	249	521	982	2,020	3,020	5,820	9,270	16,400	33,400
1,300	239	499	940	1,930	2,890	5,570	8,880	15,700	32,000
1,400	229	480	903	1,850	2,780	5,350	8,530	15,100	30,800
1,500	221	462	870	1,790	2,680	5,160	8,220	14,500	29,600
1,600	213	446	840	1,730	2,590	4,980	7,940	14,000	28,600
1,700	206	432	813	1,670	2,500	4,820	7,680	13,600	27,700
1,800	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,900	194	407	766	1,570	2,360	4,540	7,230	12,800	26,100
2,000	189	395	745	1,530	2,290	4,410	7,030	12,400	25,400

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-30 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.3(b)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	10.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	3.0 psi
Specific Gravity:	1.50

SPECIAL USE: Pipe Sizing Between First Stage (High Pressure Regulator) and Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator)

	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal Inside:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10	5,890	12,300	23,200	47,600	71,300	137,000	219,000	387,000	789,000
20	4,050	8,460	15,900	32,700	49,000	94,400	150,000	266,000	543,000
30	3,250	6,790	12,800	26,300	39,400	75,800	121,000	214,000	436,000
40	2,780	5,810	11,000	22,500	33,700	64,900	103,000	183,000	373,000
50	2,460	5,150	9,710	19,900	29,900	57,500	91,600	162,000	330,000
60	2,230	4,670	8,790	18,100	27,100	52,100	83,000	147,000	299,000
70	2,050	4,300	8,090	16,600	24,900	47,900	76,400	135,000	275,000
80	1,910	4,000	7,530	15,500	23,200	44,600	71,100	126,000	256,000
90	1,790	3,750	7,060	14,500	21,700	41,800	66,700	118,000	240,000
100	1,690	3,540	6,670	13,700	20,500	39,500	63,000	111,000	227,000
125	1,500	3,140	5,910	12,100	18,200	35,000	55,800	98,700	201,000
150	1,360	2,840	5,360	11,000	16,500	31,700	50,600	89,400	182,000
175	1,250	2,620	4,930	10,100	15,200	29,200	46,500	82,300	167,800
200	1,160	2,430	4,580	9,410	14,100	27,200	43,300	76,500	156,100
250	1,030	2,160	4,060	8,340	12,500	24,100	38,400	67,800	138,400
300	935	1,950	3,680	7,560	11,300	21,800	34,800	61,500	125,400
350	860	1,800	3,390	6,950	10,400	20,100	32,000	56,500	115,300
400	800	1,670	3,150	6,470	9,690	18,700	29,800	52,600	107,300
450	751	1,570	2,960	6,070	9,090	17,500	27,900	49,400	100,700
500	709	1,480	2,790	5,730	8,590	16,500	26,400	46,600	95,100
550	673	1,410	2,650	5,450	8,160	15,700	25,000	44,300	90,300
600	642	1,340	2,530	5,200	7,780	15,000	23,900	42,200	86,200
650	615	1,290	2,420	4,980	7,450	14,400	22,900	40,500	82,500
700	591	1,240	2,330	4,780	7,160	13,800	22,000	38,900	79,300
750	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,900	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,400
800	550	1,150	2,170	4,450	6,660	12,800	20,500	36,200	73,700
850	532	1,110	2,100	4,300	6,450	12,400	19,800	35,000	71,400
900	516	1,080	2,030	4,170	6,250	12,000	19,200	33,900	69,200
950	501	1,050	1,970	4,050	6,070	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,200
1,000	487	1,020	1,920	3,940	5,900	11,400	18,100	32,000	65,400
1,100	463	968	1,820	3,740	5,610	10,800	17,200	30,400	62,100
1,200	442	923	1,740	3,570	5,350	10,300	16,400	29,000	59,200
1,300	423	884	1,670	3,420	5,120	9,870	15,700	27,800	56,700
1,400	406	849	1,600	3,280	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
1,500	391	818	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,130	14,600	25,700	52,500
1,600	378	790	1,490	3,060	4,580	8,820	14,100	24,800	50,700
1,700	366	765	1,440	2,960	4,430	8,530	13,600	24,000	49,000
1,800	355	741	1,400	2,870	4,300	8,270	13,200	23,300	47,600
1,900	344	720	1,360	2,780	4,170	8,040	12,800	22,600	46,200
2,000	335	700	1,320	2,710	4,060	7,820	12,500	22,000	44,900

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-31 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.3(c)]

Gas:	**Undiluted Propane**
Inlet Pressure:	**2.0 psi**
Pressure Drop:	**1.0 psi**
Specific Gravity:	**1.50**

	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	**½**	**¾**	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2½**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID:	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	2,680	5,590	10,500	21,600	32,400	62,400	99,500	176,000	359,000
20	1,840	3,850	7,240	14,900	22,300	42,900	68,400	121,000	247,000
30	1,480	3,090	5,820	11,900	17,900	34,500	54,900	97,100	198,000
40	1,260	2,640	4,980	10,200	15,300	29,500	47,000	83,100	170,000
50	1,120	2,340	4,410	9,060	13,600	26,100	41,700	73,700	150,000
60	1,010	2,120	4,000	8,210	12,300	23,700	37,700	66,700	136,000
70	934	1,950	3,680	7,550	11,300	21,800	34,700	61,400	125,000
80	869	1,820	3,420	7,020	10,500	20,300	32,300	57,100	116,000
90	815	1,700	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
100	770	1,610	3,030	6,230	9,330	18,000	28,600	50,600	103,000
125	682	1,430	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,500
150	618	1,290	2,440	5,000	7,490	14,400	23,000	40,700	82,900
175	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,890	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,300
200	529	1,110	2,080	4,280	6,410	12,300	19,700	34,800	71,000
250	469	981	1,850	3,790	5,680	10,900	17,400	30,800	62,900
300	425	889	1,670	3,440	5,150	9,920	15,800	27,900	57,000
350	391	817	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,120	14,500	25,700	52,400
400	364	760	1,430	2,940	4,410	8,490	13,500	23,900	48,800
450	341	714	1,340	2,760	4,130	7,960	12,700	22,400	45,800
500	322	674	1,270	2,610	3,910	7,520	12,000	21,200	43,200
550	306	640	1,210	2,480	3,710	7,140	11,400	20,100	41,100
600	292	611	1,150	2,360	3,540	6,820	10,900	19,200	39,200
650	280	585	1,100	2,260	3,390	6,530	10,400	18,400	37,500
700	269	562	1,060	2,170	3,260	6,270	9,990	17,700	36,000
750	259	541	1,020	2,090	3,140	6,040	9,630	17,000	34,700
800	250	523	985	2,020	3,030	5,830	9,300	16,400	33,500
850	242	506	953	1,960	2,930	5,640	9,000	15,900	32,400
900	235	490	924	1,900	2,840	5,470	8,720	15,400	31,500
950	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
1,000	222	463	873	1,790	2,680	5,170	8,240	14,600	29,700
1,100	210	440	829	1,700	2,550	4,910	7,830	13,800	28,200
1,200	201	420	791	1,620	2,430	4,680	7,470	13,200	26,900
1,300	192	402	757	1,550	2,330	4,490	7,150	12,600	25,800
1,400	185	386	727	1,490	2,240	4,310	6,870	12,100	24,800
1,500	178	372	701	1,440	2,160	4,150	6,620	11,700	23,900
1,600	172	359	677	1,390	2,080	4,010	6,390	11,300	23,000
1,700	166	348	655	1,340	2,010	3,880	6,180	10,900	22,300
1,800	161	337	635	1,300	1,950	3,760	6,000	10,600	21,600
1,900	157	327	617	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
2,000	152	318	600	1,230	1,840	3,550	5,660	10,000	20,400

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-32 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.3(d)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	1.50

SPECIAL USE: Pipe Sizing Between Single or Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator) and Appliance

	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal Inside:	**½**	**¾**	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2½**	**3**	**4**
Actual:	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	291	608	1,150	2,350	3,520	6,790	10,800	19,100	39,000
20	200	418	787	1,620	2,420	4,660	7,430	13,100	26,800
30	160	336	632	1,300	1,940	3,750	5,970	10,600	21,500
40	137	287	541	1,110	1,660	3,210	5,110	9,030	18,400
50	122	255	480	985	1,480	2,840	4,530	8,000	16,300
60	110	231	434	892	1,340	2,570	4,100	7,250	14,800
80	101	212	400	821	1,230	2,370	3,770	6,670	13,600
100	94	197	372	763	1,140	2,200	3,510	6,210	12,700
125	89	185	349	716	1,070	2,070	3,290	5,820	11,900
150	84	175	330	677	1,010	1,950	3,110	5,500	11,200
175	74	155	292	600	899	1,730	2,760	4,880	9,950
200	67	140	265	543	814	1,570	2,500	4,420	9,010
250	62	129	243	500	749	1,440	2,300	4,060	8,290
300	58	120	227	465	697	1,340	2,140	3,780	7,710
350	51	107	201	412	618	1,190	1,900	3,350	6,840
400	46	97	182	373	560	1,080	1,720	3,040	6,190
450	42	89	167	344	515	991	1,580	2,790	5,700
500	40	83	156	320	479	922	1,470	2,600	5,300
550	37	78	146	300	449	865	1,380	2,440	4,970
600	35	73	138	283	424	817	1,300	2,300	4,700
650	33	70	131	269	403	776	1,240	2,190	4,460
700	32	66	125	257	385	741	1,180	2,090	4,260
750	30	64	120	246	368	709	1,130	2,000	4,080
800	29	61	115	236	354	681	1,090	1,920	3,920
850	28	59	111	227	341	656	1,050	1,850	3,770
900	27	57	107	220	329	634	1,010	1,790	3,640
950	26	55	104	213	319	613	978	1,730	3,530
1,000	25	53	100	206	309	595	948	1,680	3,420
1,100	25	52	97	200	300	578	921	1,630	3,320
1,200	24	50	95	195	292	562	895	1,580	3,230
1,300	23	48	90	185	277	534	850	1,500	3,070
1,400	22	46	86	176	264	509	811	1,430	2,930
1,500	21	44	82	169	253	487	777	1,370	2,800
1,600	20	42	79	162	243	468	746	1,320	2,690
1,700	19	40	76	156	234	451	719	1,270	2,590
1,800	19	39	74	151	226	436	694	1,230	2,500
1,900	18	38	71	146	219	422	672	1,190	2,420
2,000	18	37	69	142	212	409	652	1,150	2,350

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-33 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.3(e)]

Gas:	**Undiluted Propane**
Inlet Pressure:	**10.0 psi**
Pressure Drop:	**1.0 psi**
Specific Gravity:	**1.50**

SPECIAL USE: Tube Sizing Between First Stage (High Pressure Regulator) and Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator)

					Tube Size (in.)				
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)					**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**				
10	513	1,060	2,150	3,760	5,330	11,400	20,500	32,300	67,400
20	352	727	1,480	2,580	3,670	7,830	14,100	22,200	46,300
30	283	584	1,190	2,080	2,940	6,290	11,300	17,900	37,200
40	242	500	1,020	1,780	2,520	5,380	9,690	15,300	31,800
50	215	443	901	1,570	2,230	4,770	8,590	13,500	28,200
60	194	401	816	1,430	2,020	4,320	7,780	12,300	25,600
70	179	369	751	1,310	1,860	3,980	7,160	11,300	23,500
80	166	343	699	1,220	1,730	3,700	6,660	10,500	21,900
90	156	322	655	1,150	1,630	3,470	6,250	9,850	20,500
100	147	304	619	1,080	1,540	3,280	5,900	9,310	19,400
125	131	270	549	959	1,360	2,910	5,230	8,250	17,200
150	118	244	497	869	1,230	2,630	4,740	7,470	15,600
175	109	225	457	799	1,130	2,420	4,360	6,880	14,300
200	101	209	426	744	1,060	2,250	4,060	6,400	13,300
250	90	185	377	659	935	2,000	3,600	5,670	11,800
300	81	168	342	597	847	1,810	3,260	5,140	10,700
350	75	155	314	549	779	1,660	3,000	4,730	9,840
400	70	144	292	511	725	1,550	2,790	4,400	9,160
450	65	135	274	480	680	1,450	2,620	4,130	8,590
500	62	127	259	453	643	1,370	2,470	3,900	8,120
550	59	121	246	430	610	1,300	2,350	3,700	7,710
600	56	115	235	410	582	1,240	2,240	3,530	7,350
650	54	111	225	393	558	1,190	2,140	3,380	7,040
700	51	106	216	378	536	1,140	2,060	3,250	6,770
750	50	102	208	364	516	1,100	1,980	3,130	6,520
800	48	99	201	351	498	1,060	1,920	3,020	6,290
850	46	96	195	340	482	1,030	1,850	2,920	6,090
900	45	93	189	330	468	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,910
950	44	90	183	320	454	970	1,750	2,750	5,730
1,000	42	88	178	311	442	944	1,700	2,680	5,580
1,100	40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
1,200	38	79	161	282	400	855	1,540	2,430	5,050
1,300	37	76	155	270	383	819	1,470	2,320	4,840
1,400	35	73	148	260	368	787	1,420	2,230	4,650
1,500	34	70	143	250	355	758	1,360	2,150	4,480
1,600	33	68	138	241	343	732	1,320	2,080	4,330
1,700	32	66	134	234	331	708	1,270	2,010	4,190
1,800	31	64	130	227	321	687	1,240	1,950	4,060
1,900	30	62	126	220	312	667	1,200	1,890	3,940
2,000	29	60	122	214	304	648	1,170	1,840	3,830

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-34 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.3(f)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	1.50

SPECIAL USE: Tube Sizing Between Single or Second Stage (Low Pressure Regulator) and Appliance

	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10	45	93	188	329	467	997	1,800	2,830	5,890
20	31	64	129	226	321	685	1,230	1,950	4,050
30	25	51	104	182	258	550	991	1,560	3,250
40	21	44	89	155	220	471	848	1,340	2,780
50	19	39	79	138	195	417	752	1,180	2,470
60	17	35	71	125	177	378	681	1,070	2,240
70	16	32	66	115	163	348	626	988	2,060
80	15	30	61	107	152	324	583	919	1,910
90	14	28	57	100	142	304	547	862	1,800
100	13	27	54	95	134	287	517	814	1,700
125	11	24	48	84	119	254	458	722	1,500
150	10	21	44	76	108	230	415	654	1,360
175	NA	20	40	70	99	212	382	602	1,250
200	NA	18	37	65	92	197	355	560	1,170
250	NA	16	33	58	82	175	315	496	1,030
300	NA	15	30	52	74	158	285	449	936
350	NA	14	28	48	68	146	262	414	861
400	NA	13	26	45	63	136	244	385	801
450	NA	12	24	42	60	127	229	361	752
500	NA	11	23	40	56	120	216	341	710
550	NA	11	22	38	53	114	205	324	674
600	NA	10	21	36	51	109	196	309	643
650	NA	NA	20	34	49	104	188	296	616
700	NA	NA	19	33	47	100	180	284	592
750	NA	NA	18	32	45	96	174	274	570
800	NA	NA	18	31	44	93	168	264	551
850	NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	256	533
900	NA	NA	17	29	41	87	157	248	517
950	NA	NA	16	28	40	85	153	241	502
1,000	NA	NA	16	27	39	83	149	234	488
1,100	NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
1,200	NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	212	442
1,300	NA	NA	14	24	34	72	129	203	423
1,400	NA	NA	13	23	32	69	124	195	407
1,500	NA	NA	13	22	31	66	119	188	392
1,600	NA	NA	12	21	30	64	115	182	378
1,700	NA	NA	12	20	29	62	112	176	366
1,800	NA	NA	11	20	28	60	108	170	355
1,900	NA	NA	11	19	27	58	105	166	345
2,000	NA	NA	11	19	27	57	102	161	335

NA means a flow of less than 10,000 Btu/hr.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-35 Semi-Rigid Copper Tubing [NFPA Table 6.3(g)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity:	1.50

		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	K & L:	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR:	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
	Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
	Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10		413	852	1,730	3,030	4,300	9,170	16,500	26,000	54,200
20		284	585	1,190	2,080	2,950	6,310	11,400	17,900	37,300
30		228	470	956	1,670	2,370	5,060	9,120	14,400	29,900
40		195	402	818	1,430	2,030	4,330	7,800	12,300	25,600
50		173	356	725	1,270	1,800	3,840	6,920	10,900	22,700
60		157	323	657	1,150	1,630	3,480	6,270	9,880	20,600
70		144	297	605	1,060	1,500	3,200	5,760	9,090	18,900
80		134	276	562	983	1,390	2,980	5,360	8,450	17,600
90		126	259	528	922	1,310	2,790	5,030	7,930	16,500
100		119	245	498	871	1,240	2,640	4,750	7,490	15,600
125		105	217	442	772	1,100	2,340	4,210	6,640	13,800
150		95	197	400	700	992	2,120	3,820	6,020	12,500
175		88	181	368	644	913	1,950	3,510	5,540	11,500
200		82	168	343	599	849	1,810	3,270	5,150	10,700
250		72	149	304	531	753	1,610	2,900	4,560	9,510
300		66	135	275	481	682	1,460	2,620	4,140	8,610
350		60	124	253	442	628	1,340	2,410	3,800	7,920
400		56	116	235	411	584	1,250	2,250	3,540	7,370
450		53	109	221	386	548	1,170	2,110	3,320	6,920
500		50	103	209	365	517	1,110	1,990	3,140	6,530
550		47	97	198	346	491	1,050	1,890	2,980	6,210
600		45	93	189	330	469	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,920
650		43	89	181	316	449	959	1,730	2,720	5,670
700		41	86	174	304	431	921	1,660	2,620	5,450
750		40	82	168	293	415	888	1,600	2,520	5,250
800		39	80	162	283	401	857	1,540	2,430	5,070
850		37	77	157	274	388	829	1,490	2,350	4,900
900		36	75	152	265	376	804	1,450	2,280	4,750
950		35	72	147	258	366	781	1,410	2,220	4,620
1,000		34	71	143	251	356	760	1,370	2,160	4,490
1,100		32	67	136	238	338	721	1,300	2,050	4,270
1,200		31	64	130	227	322	688	1,240	1,950	4,070
1,300		30	61	124	217	309	659	1,190	1,870	3,900
1,400		28	59	120	209	296	633	1,140	1,800	3,740
1,500		27	57	115	201	286	610	1,100	1,730	3,610
1,600		26	55	111	194	276	589	1,060	1,670	3,480
1,700		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
1,800		25	51	104	182	259	553	1,000	1,570	3,270
1,900		24	50	101	177	251	537	966	1,520	3,170
2,000		23	48	99	172	244	522	940	1,480	3,090

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

Table 12-36 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.3(h)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	1.50

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour												
5	72	99	181	211	355	426	744	863	1,420	2,830	3,270	5,780	6,550
10	50	69	129	150	254	303	521	605	971	1,990	2,320	4,110	4,640
15	39	55	104	121	208	248	422	490	775	1,620	1,900	3,370	3,790
20	34	49	91	106	183	216	365	425	661	1,400	1,650	2,930	3,290
25	30	42	82	94	164	192	325	379	583	1,250	1,480	2,630	2,940
30	28	39	74	87	151	177	297	344	528	1,140	1,350	2,400	2,680
40	23	33	64	74	131	153	256	297	449	988	1,170	2,090	2,330
50	20	30	58	66	118	137	227	265	397	884	1,050	1,870	2,080
60	19	26	53	60	107	126	207	241	359	805	961	1,710	1,900
70	17	25	49	57	99	117	191	222	330	745	890	1,590	1,760
80	15	23	45	52	94	109	178	208	307	696	833	1,490	1,650
90	15	22	44	50	90	102	169	197	286	656	787	1,400	1.550
100	14	20	41	47	85	98	159	186	270	621	746	1,330	1,480
150	11	15	31	36	66	75	123	143	217	506	611	1,090	1,210
200	9	14	28	33	60	69	112	129	183	438	531	948	1,050
250	8	12	25	30	53	61	99	117	163	390	476	850	934
300	8	11	23	26	50	57	90	107	147	357	434	777	854

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-37 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.3(i)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi
Specific Gravity:	1.50

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour												
10	426	558	927	1,110	1,740	2,170	4,100	4,720	7,130	15,200	16,800	29,400	34,200
25	262	347	591	701	1,120	1,380	2,560	2,950	4,560	9,550	10,700	18,800	21,700
30	238	316	540	640	1,030	1,270	2,330	2,690	4,180	8,710	9,790	17,200	19,800
40	203	271	469	554	896	1,100	2,010	2,320	3,630	7,530	8,500	14,900	17,200
50	181	243	420	496	806	986	1,790	2,070	3,260	6,730	7,610	13,400	15,400
75	147	196	344	406	663	809	1,460	1,690	2,680	5,480	6,230	11,000	12,600
80	140	189	333	393	643	768	1,410	1,630	2,590	5,300	6,040	10,600	12,200
100	124	169	298	350	578	703	1,260	1,450	2,330	4,740	5,410	9,530	10,900
150	101	137	245	287	477	575	1,020	1,180	1,910	3,860	4,430	7,810	8,890
200	86	118	213	248	415	501	880	1,020	1,660	3,340	3,840	6,780	7,710
250	77	105	191	222	373	448	785	910	1,490	2,980	3,440	6,080	6,900
300	69	96	173	203	343	411	716	829	1,360	2,720	3,150	5,560	6,300
400	60	82	151	175	298	355	616	716	1,160	2,350	2,730	4,830	5,460
500	53	72	135	158	268	319	550	638	1,030	2,100	2,450	4,330	4,880

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds ½ psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.

(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.

(3) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger number of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing according to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-38 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) [NFPA Table 6.3(j)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	5.0 psi
Pressure Drop:	3.5 psi
Specific Gravity:	1.50

	Tube Size (EHD)*												
Flow Designation:	13	15	18	19	23	25	30	31	37	46	48	60	62
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour												
10	826	1,070	1,710	2,060	3,150	4,000	7,830	8,950	13,100	28,600	31,200	54,400	63,800
25	509	664	1,090	1,310	2,040	2,550	4,860	5,600	8,400	18,000	19,900	34,700	40,400
30	461	603	999	1,190	1,870	2,340	4,430	5,100	7,680	16,400	18,200	31,700	36,900
40	396	520	867	1,030	1,630	2,030	3,820	4,400	6,680	14,200	15,800	27,600	32,000
50	352	463	777	926	1,460	1,820	3,410	3,930	5,990	12,700	14,100	24,700	28,600
75	284	376	637	757	1,210	1,490	2,770	3,190	4,920	10,300	11,600	20,300	23,400
80	275	363	618	731	1,170	1,450	2,680	3,090	4,770	9,990	11,200	19,600	22,700
100	243	324	553	656	1,050	1,300	2,390	2,760	4,280	8,930	10,000	17,600	20,300
150	196	262	453	535	866	1,060	1,940	2,240	3,510	7,270	8,210	14,400	16,600
200	169	226	393	464	755	923	1,680	1,930	3,050	6,290	7,130	12,500	14,400
250	150	202	352	415	679	828	1,490	1,730	2,740	5,620	6,390	11,200	12,900
300	136	183	322	379	622	757	1,360	1,570	2,510	5,120	5,840	10,300	11,700
400	117	158	279	328	542	657	1,170	1,360	2,180	4,430	5,070	8,920	10,200
500	104	140	251	294	488	589	1,050	1,210	1,950	3,960	4,540	8,000	9,110

*EHD = Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds ½ psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.

(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.

(3) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger number of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing according to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-39 Polyethylene Plastic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.3(k)]

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	1.50

	Pipe Size (in.)					
Nominal OD:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Designation:	SDR 9.33	SDR 11.0	SDR 11.00	SDR 10.00	SDR 11.00	SDR 11.00
Actual ID:	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
10	340	680	1,230	2,130	3,210	5,770
20	233	468	844	1,460	2,210	3,970
30	187	375	677	1,170	1,770	3,180
40	160	321	580	1,000	1,520	2,730
50	142	285	514	890	1,340	2,420
60	129	258	466	807	1,220	2,190
70	119	237	428	742	1,120	2,010
80	110	221	398	690	1,040	1,870
90	103	207	374	648	978	1,760
100	98	196	353	612	924	1,660
125	87	173	313	542	819	1,470
150	78	157	284	491	742	1,330
175	72	145	261	452	683	1,230
200	67	135	243	420	635	1,140
250	60	119	215	373	563	1,010
300	54	108	195	338	510	916
350	50	99	179	311	469	843
400	46	92	167	289	436	784
450	43	87	157	271	409	736
500	41	82	148	256	387	695

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-40 Polyethylene Plastic Pipe [NFPA Table 6.3(1)]

					Gas:	Undiluted Propane
					Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi
					Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi
					Specific Gravity:	1.50
	Pipe Size (in.)					
Nominal OD:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Designation:	SDR 9.33	SDR 11.0	SDR 11.00	SDR 10.00	SDR 11.00	SDR 11.00
Actual ID:	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
10	3,130	6,260	11,300	19,600	29,500	53,100
20	2,150	4,300	7,760	13,400	20,300	36,500
30	1,730	3,450	6,230	10,800	16,300	29,300
40	1,480	2,960	5,330	9,240	14,000	25,100
50	1,310	2,620	4,730	8,190	12,400	22,200
60	1,190	2,370	4,280	7,420	11,200	20,100
70	1,090	2,180	3,940	6,830	10,300	18,500
80	1,010	2,030	3,670	6,350	9,590	17,200
90	952	1,910	3,440	5,960	9,000	16,200
100	899	1,800	3,250	5,630	8,500	15,300
125	797	1,600	2,880	4,990	7,530	13,500
150	722	1,450	2,610	4,520	6,830	12,300
175	664	1,330	2,400	4,160	6,280	11,300
200	618	1,240	2,230	3,870	5,840	10,500
250	548	1,100	1,980	3,430	5,180	9,300
300	496	994	1,790	3,110	4,690	8,430
350	457	914	1,650	2,860	4,320	7,760
400	425	851	1,530	2,660	4,020	7,220
450	399	798	1,440	2,500	3,770	6,770
500	377	754	1,360	2,360	3,560	6,390
550	358	716	1,290	2,240	3,380	6,070
600	341	683	1,230	2,140	3,220	5,790
650	327	654	1,180	2,040	3,090	5,550
700	314	628	1,130	1,960	2,970	5,330
750	302	605	1,090	1,890	2,860	5,140
800	292	585	1,050	1,830	2,760	4,960
850	283	566	1,020	1,770	2,670	4,800
900	274	549	990	1,710	2,590	4,650
950	266	533	961	1,670	2,520	4,520
1,000	259	518	935	1,620	2,450	4,400
1,100	246	492	888	1,540	2,320	4,170
1,200	234	470	847	1,470	2,220	3,980
1,300	225	450	811	1,410	2,120	3,810
1,400	216	432	779	1,350	2,040	3,660
1,500	208	416	751	1,300	1,960	3,530
1,600	201	402	725	1,260	1,900	3,410
1,700	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300
1,800	188	377	680	1,180	1,780	3,200
1,900	183	366	661	1,140	1,730	3,110
2,000	178	356	643	1,110	1,680	3,020

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

Table 12-41 Polyethylene Plastic Tubing
[NFPA Table 6.3(m)]

	Gas:	Undiluted Propane
	Inlet Pressure:	11.0 in. w.c.
	Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c
	Specific Gravity:	1.50
	Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (in.)	
Nominal OD:	½	¾
Designation:	SDR 7.00	SDR 11.00
Actual ID:	0.445	0.927
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour	
10	121	828
20	83	569
30	67	457
40	57	391
50	51	347
60	46	314
70	42	289
80	39	269
90	37	252
100	35	238
125	31	211
150	28	191
175	26	176
200	24	164
225	22	154
250	21	145
275	20	138
300	19	132
350	18	121
400	16	113
450	15	106
500	15	100

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

CHAPTER 13

HEALTH CARE FACILITIES AND MEDICAL GAS AND VACUUM SYSTEMS

Part I – Special Requirements for Health Care Facilities.

1301.0 Application.

1301.1 Construction and equipment requirements shall be applied only to new construction and new equipment, except as modified in individual chapters. Only the altered, renovated, or modernized portion of an existing system or individual component shall be required to meet the installation and equipment requirements stated in this standard. If the alteration, renovation, or modernization adversely impacts existing performance requirements of a system or component, additional upgrading shall be required. [NFPA 99: 1.3.2]

1301.2 This chapter applies to the special fixtures and systems in health care facilities and to the special plumbing requirements for such facilities. Other plumbing in such facilities shall comply with other applicable sections of this code.

1301.3 This chapter shall not apply to breathing air replenishment (BAR) systems.

1302.0 Medical Gas and Vacuum Piping Systems – Installation Requirements.

The installation of medical gas and vacuum piping systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and/or the appropriate standards adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. For additional standards see Table 14-1.

1302.1 The installation of individual components shall be made in accordance with the instructions of the manufacturer. Such instructions shall include directions and information deemed by the manufacturer to be adequate for attaining proper operation, testing, and maintenance of the medical gas and vacuum systems. Copies of the manufacturer's instructions shall be left with the system owner. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.9.1, 5.1.10.6.9.2, 5.1.10.6.9.3]

1302.2 The installation of medical gas and vacuum systems shall be made by qualified, competent technicians who are experienced in making such installations. Installers of medical gas and vacuum systems shall meet the requirements of ANSI/ASSE Standard 6010, *Professional Qualification Standard for Medical Gas and Vacuum System Installers.* [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.11.1, 5.1.10.6.11.2]

1302.3 Brazing shall be performed by individuals who are qualified under the provisions of Section 1311.6. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.11.3]

1302.4 Prior to any installation work, the installer of medical gas and vacuum piping shall provide and maintain documentation on the job site for the qualification of brazing procedures and individual brazers that is required under Section 1311.6. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.11.4]

1303.0 Protrusions from Walls.

1303.1 Drinking fountain control valves shall be flush-mounted or fully recessed when installed in corridors or other areas where patients may be transported on a gurney, bed, or wheelchair.

1303.2 Piping exposed in corridors and other areas where subject to physical damage from the movement of carts, stretchers, portable equipment, or vehicles shall be protected. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.2.1]

1304.0 Psychiatric Patient Rooms.

Piping and drain traps in psychiatric patient rooms shall be concealed. Fixtures and fittings shall be resistant to vandalism. [NFPA 101]

1305.0 Locations for Ice Storage.

Ice makers or ice storage containers shall be located in nursing stations or similarly supervised areas to minimize potential contamination. [See NFPA 101]

1306.0 Sterilizers.

1306.1 General. The requirements of this section apply to sterilizers and bedpan steamers. Such equipment shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1306.2 Indirect Waste Connections.

Waste drainage from sterilizers and bedpan steamers shall be connected to the sanitary drainage system through an airgap in accordance with this chapter and Chapter 8. The size of indirect waste piping shall not be less than the size of the drain connection on the fixture. Each such indirect waste pipe shall not exceed fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm) in length and shall be separately piped to a receptor. Such receptors shall be located in the same room as the equipment served. Except for bedpan steamers, such indirect waste pipes shall not require traps. A trap having a

minimum seal of three (3) inches (80 mm) shall be provided in the indirect waste pipe for a bedpan steamer.

1307.0 Vapor Vents and Stacks for Sterilizers.

1307.1 General. When a sterilizer has provision for a vapor vent and such a vent is required by the manufacturer, the vent shall be extended to the outdoors above the roof. Sterilizer vapor vents shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall not be connected to any drainage system vent.

1308.0 Aspirators.

1308.1 See Section 603.4.9, Water Inlets to Water Supplied Aspirators. Provisions for aspirators or other watersupplied suction devices shall be installed only with the specific approval of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Where aspirators are used for removing body fluids, they shall include a collection container to collect liquids and solid particles. Aspirators shall indirectly discharge to the sanitary drainage system through an airgap in accordance with Chapter 8. The potable water supply to an aspirator shall be protected by a vacuum breaker or equivalent backflow protection device in accordance with Section 603.0.

Part II—Medical Gas and Vacuum Systems.

1309.0 Application.

1309.1 The provisions herein shall apply to the installation, testing, and verification of medical gas and vacuum piping in hospitals, clinics, and other health care facilities.

1309.2 The purpose of this chapter is to provide requirements for the installation, testing, and verification of medical gas and medical vacuum systems, from the central supply system to the station outlets or inlets.

1309.3 Wherever the terms *medical gas* or *vacuum* occur, the provisions shall apply to all piped systems for oxygen, nitrous oxide, medical air, carbon dioxide, helium, medical–surgical vacuum, waste anesthetic gas disposal, and mixtures thereof. Wherever the name of a specific gas or vacuum service occurs, the provision shall apply only to that gas. [NFPA 99: 5.1.1.2]

1309.4 This chapter does not apply to portable compressed gas systems.

1309.5 This chapter does not apply to:

(A) Cylinder and container management, storage, and reserve requirements.

(B) Gas central supply and bulk supply systems, except as addressed in this chapter.

(C) Electrical connections and requirements.

(D) Motor requirements and controls.

(E) Systems having nonstandard operating pressures, except as addressed in this chapter.

(F) Waste anesthetic gas disposal (WAGD) systems.

(G) Surface-mounted medical gas rail systems

1309.6 The requirements of this chapter shall not be interpreted to conflict with the requirements of NFPA 99 *Standard for Health Care Facilities.* For requirements of portions of medical gas and medical vacuum systems not addressed in this chapter or medical gas and medical vacuum systems beyond the scope of this chapter refer to NFPA 99 *Standard for Health Care Facilities.*

1309.7 An existing system that is not in strict compliance with the provisions of the standard (Code) shall be permitted to be continued in use as long as the Authority Having Jurisdiction has determined that such use does not constitute a distinct hazard to life. [NFPA 99 4-1.4] (Same as the 2002 edition of NFPA 99: 5.1.1.3.)

1310.0 Definitions.

1310.1 Building Supply – The pipe from the source of supply to a building or structure.

1310.2 Critical Care Area – Those special care units, intensive care units, coronary care units, angiography laboratories, cardiac catheterization laboratories, delivery rooms, operating rooms, postanesthesia recovery rooms, emergency departments, and similar areas in which patients are intended to be subjected to invasive procedures and connected to line-operated, patient-care-related electrical appliances. [NFPA 99: 3.3.135.2]

1310.3 General Care Areas – General care areas are patient bedrooms, examining rooms, treatment rooms, clinics, and similar areas in which it is intended that the patient will come in contact with ordinary appliances such as a nurses-call system, electric beds, examining lamps, telephones, and entertainment devices. [NFPA 99: 3.3.135.1]

1310.4 Manifold – A device for connecting outlets of one or more gas cylinders to the central piping system for that specific gas. [NFPA 99: 3.3.103]

1310.5 Medical Air – For purposes of this standard, medical air is air supplied from cylinders, bulk containers, medical air compressors, or has been reconstituted from oxygen USP and oil-free, dry nitrogen NF. Medical air shall be required to have the following characteristics:

(1) Be supplied from cylinders, bulk containers, medical air compressor sources, or be reconstituted from oxygen USP and oil-free dry nitrogen NF.

(2) Meet the requirements of medical air USP.

(3) Have no detectable liquid hydrocarbons.

(4) Have less than 25 ppm gaseous hydrocarbons.

(5) Have equal to or less than 5 mg/m^3 of permanent particulates sized 1 micron or larger in the air at normal atmospheric pressure. [NFPA 99: 3.3.106, 5.1.3.5.1]

1310.6 Medical Gas – Gas used in a medical facility, including oxygen, nitrous oxide, carbon dioxide, helium, medical air, and mixtures of these gases. Standards of purity apply.

1310.7 Medical Gas System – Complete system consisting of a central supply system (manifold, bulk, or compressors), including control equipment and piping extending to station outlets at the points where medical gases may be required.

1310.8 Medical Vacuum System – See 1310.19, Vacuum System – Level 1.

1310.9 Nitrogen, NF (Oil-Free, Dry) (Nitrogen for Brazing and Testing) - Nitrogen complying, as a minimum, with oil-free, dry nitrogen NF. [NFPA 99: 3.3.120.1]

1310.10 Patient Care Area – Any portion of a health care facility wherein patients are intended to be examined or treated. [NFPA 99: 3.3.138]

1310.11 Purge, Flow – The removal of oxygen from a system by oil-free dry nitrogen during brazing.

1310.12 Purge, System – The removal of nitrogen from a system with the medical gas required for that system.

1310.13 SCFM – Standard cubic feet per minute. [NFPA 99: 3.3.159]

1310.14 Special Hazard Area – An area such as a kitchen or electrical switch-gear room.

1310.15 Station Inlet – An inlet point in a medical-surgical piped vacuum distribution system at which the user makes connections and disconnections. [NFPA 99: 3.3.171]

1310.16 Station Outlet – An inlet point in a piped medical/surgical vacuum distribution system at which the user makes connections and disconnections. [NFPA 99: 3.3.168]

1310.17 Use Point – A room or area of a room where medical gases are dispensed to a single patient for medical purposes. A use point is permitted to be comprised of a number of station outlets of different gases. [NFPA 99: 3.3.175]

1310.18 User Outlet – See Station Outlet.

1310.19 Vacuum System – Level 1 – A system consisting of central vacuum-producing equipment with pressure and operating controls, shutoff valves, alarm warning systems, gauges, and a network of piping extending to and terminating with suitable station inlets at locations where patient suction could be required. [NFPA 99: 3.3.91]

1310.20 Valve, Isolation – A valve that isolates one piece of equipment from another.

1310.21 Valve, Riser – A valve at the base of a vertical riser that isolates that riser.

1310.22 Valve, Service – A valve serving horizontal piping extending from a riser to a station outlet or inlet.

1310.23 Valve, Source – A single valve at the source that controls a number of units that make up the source.

1310.24 Valve, Zone – A valve that controls the gas or vacuum to a particular area.

1310.25 Waste Anesthetic Gas Disposal – The process of capturing and carrying away gases vented from the patient breathing circuit during the normal operation of gas anesthesia or analgesia equipment. [NFPA 99: 3.3.178]

1311.0 General Requirements.

1311.1 Oxygen Compatibility - Tubes, valves, fittings, station outlets, and other piping components in medical gas systems shall have been cleaned for oxygen service by the manufacturer prior to installation in accordance with CGA 4.1, *Cleaning Equipment for Oxygen Service*, except that fittings shall be permitted to be cleaned by a supplier or agency other than the manufacturer. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.1.1]

1311.1.1 Components include but are not limited to containers, valves, valve seats, lubricants, fittings, gaskets, and interconnecting equipment including hose. Easily ignitable materials should be avoided.

Compatibility involves both combustibility and ease of ignition. Materials that burn in air will burn violently in pure oxygen at normal pressure and explosively in pressurized oxygen. Also, many materials that do not burn in air will do so in pure oxygen, particularly under pressure. Metals for containers and piping have to be carefully selected, depending on service conditions. The various steels are acceptable for many applications, but some service conditions can call for other materials (usually copper or its alloys) because of their greater resistance to ignition and lower rate of combustion.

Similarly, materials that can be ignited in air have lower ignition energies in oxygen. Many such materials can be ignited by friction at a valve seat or stem packing or by adiabatic compression produced when oxygen at high pressure is rapidly introduced into a system initially at low pressure.

1311.1.2 Materials used in central supply systems shall meet the following requirement:

In those portions of systems intended to handle oxygen or nitrous oxide at gauge pressures of less than 2,070 kPa (300 psi), material construction shall be compatible with oxygen under the temperatures and pressures to which the components can be exposed in the containment and use of oxygen, nitrous oxide, mixtures of these gases, or mixtures containing more than 23.5 percent oxygen. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.4.3 (2)]

1311.2 Certification of medical gas and medical vacuum systems shall conform to the requirements of Section 1328.0 of this code, the Authority Having Jurisdiction, and NFPA 99 *Standard for Health Care Facilities* section 5.1.12. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12].

1311.3 Prior to any installation work, the installer of medical gas and vacuum piping shall provide and maintain documentation on the job site for the qualification of brazing procedures and individual brazers that is required under Section 1311.6. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.11.4]

1311.3.1 Each length of tube shall be delivered plugged or capped by the manufacturer and kept sealed until prepared for installation. Fittings, valves, and other components shall be delivered sealed, labeled, and kept sealed until prepared for installation. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.1.2 and 5.1.10.1.3]

1311.4 All medical gas and medical vacuum systems shall be supplied from a source consisting of at least two units – primary and secondary, e.g., a manifold consisting of two cylinder banks with at least two cylinders in each bank, a minimum of two air compressors, or a minimum of two vacuum pumps. However, two supply pipelines are not required.

1311.5 Health Care Organization personnel shall be permitted to install piping systems if all the requirements of this chapter are met during installation. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.11.5]

1311.6 Brazing procedures and brazer performance for the installation of medical gas and vacuum piping shall be qualified in accordance with either *Section IX, Welding and Brazing Qualifications*, of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, or AWS B2.2, *Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualifications*, both as modified below. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.12.1]

1311.6.1 Brazers shall be qualified by visual examination of the test coupon followed by sectioning. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.12.2]

1311.6.2 The Brazing Procedure Specification (BPS) shall address cleaning, joint clearance, overlap, internal purge gas purge gas flow rate, and filler metal. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.12.3]

1311.6.3 The brazing procedure specification and the record of brazer performance qualification shall document filler metal used, cleaning, joint clearance, overlap, internal purge gas, and flow rate during brazing of coupon, and the absence of internal oxidation in the completed coupon. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.12.4]

1311.6.4 Brazing procedures qualified by a technically competent group or agency shall be permitted under the following conditions:

(1) The brazing procedure specification and the procedure qualification record meets the requirements of this standard.

(2) The employer obtains a copy of both the brazing procedure specification and the supporting qualification records from the group or agency and signs and dates these records, thereby accepting responsibility for the qualifications that were performed by the group or agency.

(3) The employer qualifies at least one brazer following each brazing procedure specification used. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.12.5]

1311.6.5 An employer shall be permitted to accept brazer qualification records of a previous employer under the following conditions:

(1) The brazer has been qualified following the same or an equivalent procedure that the new employer uses.

(2) The new employer obtains a copy of the record of brazer performance qualification tests from the previous employer and signs and dates these records, thereby accepting responsibility for the qualifications performed by the previous employer. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.12.6]

1311.6.6 Performance qualifications of brazers shall remain in effect indefinitely unless the brazer does not braze with the qualified procedure for a period exceeding six months, or there is a specific reason to question the ability of the brazer. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.12.7]

1312.0 Plan Review.

1312.1 Before any medical gas or medical vacuum system is installed or altered in any hospital, medical facility, or clinic, duplicate plans and specifications shall be filed with the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Approval of the plans shall be obtained prior to issuance of any permit by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1312.2 Plans and specifications shall show the following, in detail:

1312.2.1 Plot plan of the site, drawn to scale, indicating the location of existing or new cylinder storage areas, property lines, driveways, and existing or proposed buildings.

1312.2.2 Piping layout of the proposed piping system or alteration, including alarms, valves, origin of gases, and user outlets/inlets. The demand and loading of any piping, existing or future, shall also be indicated.

1312.2.3 Complete specification of materials.

1312.3 Plans and specifications submitted to the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall clearly indicate the nature and extent of the work proposed and shall show in detail that such work will conform to the provisions of this code.

1312.4 A record of as-built plans and valve identification records shall remain on the site at all times.

1313.0 System Performance.

NFPA NFPA **1313.1 Required Operating Pressures.** All medical
NFPA NFPA gas and medical vacuum systems shall be capable of
NFPA NFPA delivering service in the pressure ranges listed in Table
NFPA 13-1. [NFPA 99: Table 5.1.11]

1313.2 Minimum Flow Rates. All medical gas and medical vacuum systems shall be capable of supplying the flow rates listed in Table 13-2.

1313.3 Minimum Station Outlets/Inlets. Station outlets and inlets for medical gas and medical vacuum systems shall be provided as listed in Table 13-3.

1314.0 Required Pipe Sizing.

1314.1 Where the maximum demand for each medical gas or vacuum system and the maximum length of piping between the source equipment and the most distant station outlet/inlet do not exceed the values in Table 13-6, the size of pipe of each section of the system shall be determined using Tables 13-4 and 13-6. The size for systems beyond the range of Table 13-6 shall be determined by using the methods set forth in Section *1314.3* of this chapter.

1314.2 To determine the size of each section of pipe in any system within the range of Table 13-6, proceed as follows:

1314.2.1 Measure the length of the pipe from the source equipment location to the most remote station inlet/outlet on the system.

1314.2.2 In Table 13-6, select the column showing that distance, or the next longer distance if the table does not give the exact length.

1314.2.3 Starting at the most remote outlet/inlet, find in the vertical column just selected the medical gas or vacuum demand for that inlet/outlet. If the exact figure of demand is not shown, choose the next larger figure below in the column.

1314.2.4 Opposite this demand figure, in the first column at the left in Table 13-6, will be found the correct size of pipe.

1314.2.5 Using this same vertical column, proceed in a similar manner for each section of pipe serving this inlet/outlet. For each section of pipe, determine the total gas or vacuum demand supplied by the section, using Table 13-4.

1314.2.6 Size each section of branch piping not previously sized by measuring the distance from the source equipment location to the most remote inlet/outlet in that branch, and follow the procedures of Sections 1314.2.2, 1314.2.3, 1314.2.4, and 1314.2.5.

Note:

Size branch piping in the order of the distance from the source location, beginning with the most distant outlet not previously sized.

1314.3 For conditions other than those covered by Section 1314.1 of this section, such as longer runs of greater gas or vacuum demands, the size of each gas or vacuum piping system shall be determined by standard engineering methods acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, and each system shall be so designed that the total pressure drop or gain between the source equipment and any inlet/outlet will not exceed the allowable pressures shown in Table 13-1.

1315.0 Workmanship.

1315.1 All design, construction, and workmanship shall be in conformity with accepted engineering practices and shall meet the requirements of this code.

1315.2 Cracks, holes, or other imperfections in materials shall not be concealed by welding, brazing, or soldering, or by using paint, wax, tar, or other leak-sealing or repair agents.

1315.3 Burred ends of all tubing shall be deburred using a deburring tool to the full bore of the tube, and all chips shall be removed.

1316.0 Materials. The provisions of this section apply to the field-installed piping for the distribution of medical piped gases.

1316.1 Tubes, valves, fittings, station outlets, and other piping components in medical gas systems shall have been cleaned for oxygen service by the manufacturer prior to installation in accordance with CGA 4.1, *Cleaning Equipment for Oxygen Service,* except that fittings shall be permitted to be cleaned by a supplier or agency other than the manufacturer. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.1.1]

1316.2 Each length of tube shall be delivered plugged or capped by the manufacturer and kept sealed until prepared for installation. Fittings, valves, and other components shall be delivered sealed, labeled, and kept sealed until prepared for installation. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.1.2, 5.1.10.1.3]

1316.3 Tubes shall be hard-drawn seamless copper ASTM B 819 medical gas tube, Type L, except that where operating pressures are above a gauge pressure of 1,275 kPa (185 psi), Type K shall be used for sizes larger than DN80 (NPS 3) (3-1/8 in. O.D.).

ASTM B 819 medical gas tube shall be identified by the manufacturer's markings "OXY," "MED," "OXY/MED," "OXY/ACR," or "ACR/MED" in blue (Type L) or green (Type K). [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.1.4, 5.1.10.1.5]

Piping for vacuum systems shall be constructed of any of the following:

(1) Hard-drawn seamless copper tube

(a) ASTM B 88, Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube, copper tube (Types K, L, M).

(b) ASTM B 280, Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tubing for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service, copper ACR tube.

(c) ASTM B 819, Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems, copper medical gas tubing (Type K or L).

(2) Stainless steel tube [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.2.1]

Piping systems shall be designed and sized to deliver the required flow rates at the utilization pressures.

Mains and branches in medical gas-piping systems shall be not less than DN15 (NPS 1/2) (5/8 in. O.D.) size.

Mains and branches in medical-surgical vacuum systems shall be not less than DN20 (NPS 3/4) (7/8 in. O.D.) size.

Drops to individual station outlets and inlets shall be not less than DN15 (NPS 1/2) (5/8 in. O.D.) size.

Runouts to alarm panels and connecting tubing for gauges and alarm devices shall be permitted to be DN8 (NPS 1/4) (3/8 in. O.D.) size. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.10.1.1 - 5.1.10.10.1.5]

1316.4 Turns, offsets, and other changes in direction in welded or brazed medical gas and vacuum piping shall be made with wrought-copper capillary fittings complying with ASME B16.22, Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings, or brazed fittings complying with ASME B16.50, Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-Joint Pressure Fittings.

1316.4.1 Cast-copper alloy fittings shall not be permitted.

1316.4.2 Branch connections in vacuum piping systems shall be permitted to be made using mechanically formed, drilled, and extruded tee-branch connections that are formed in accordance with the tool manufacturer's instructions and brazed. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.3.1, 5.1.10.3.2, 5.1.10.3.3, 5.1.10.5.8 (4)-(7)]

1316.5 The following special fittings shall be permitted to be used in lieu of brazed joints:

(1) Memory-metal couplings having temperature and pressure ratings joints not less than that of a brazed joint.

(2) Listed or approved metallic gas tube fittings that, when made up, provide a permanent joint having the mechanical, thermal, and sealing integrity of a brazed joint.

(3) Dielectric fittings where required by the manufacturer of special medical equipment to electrically isolate the equipment from the piping distribution system.

(4) Axially swaged, elastic strain preload fittings providing metal to metal seal having pressure and temperature ratings not less than that of a brazed joint and, when complete, are permanent and nonseparable.

1316.6 The following joints shall be prohibited throughout medical gas and vacuum distribution pipeline systems:

(1) Flared and compression-type connections, including connections to station outlets and inlets, alarm devices, and other components.

(2) Other straight-threaded connections, including unions.

(3) The use of pipe-crimping tools to permanently stop the flow.

1316.6.1 Threaded joints in medical gas and vacuum distribution piping shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Be limited to connections to pressure/vacuum indicators, alarm devices, and source equipment.

(2) Be tapered pipe threads complying with ANSI B1.20.1, *Pipe Threads, General Purpose.*

(3) Be made up with polytetrafluoroethylene (such as Teflon™) tape or other thread sealant recommended for oxygen service, with the sealant applied to the male threads only. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.8, 5.1.10.5.9 and 5.1.10.4]

1316.7 New or replacement shutoff valves shall be as follows:

(1) Quarter turn, full ported ball type.

(2) Brass or bronze construction.

(3) Have extensions for brazing.

(4) Have a handle indicating open or closed.

(5) Consist of three pieces permitting in-line serviceability. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.3]

1316.8 Soldered joints in copper Level 3 vacuum and Level 3 gas-powered systems piping shall be made in accordance with ASTM B 828, *Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings,* using a lead-free solder filler metal containing not more than 0.2 percent lead by volume. [NFPA 99: 5.3.10.5]

1317.0 Cleaning for Medical Gas Piping Systems.

1317.1 The interior surfaces of tube ends, fittings, and other components that were cleaned for oxygen service by the manufacturer, but become contaminated prior to being installed, shall be permitted to be recleaned on-site by the installer by thoroughly scrubbing the interior surfaces with a clean, hot water–alkaline solution, such as sodium carbonate or trisodium phosphate 450 g to 11 L (1 lb. to 3 gal.) of potable water and thoroughly rinsing them with clean, hot potable water. Other aqueous cleaning solutions shall be permitted to be used for on-site recleaning permitted above, provided that they are as recommended in CGA Pamphlet G-4.1, *Cleaning Equipment for Oxygen Service,* and are listed in CGA Pamphlet O2-DIR, *Directory of Cleaning Agents for Oxygen Service.* [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.10 and 5.1.10.5.3.11]

1317.2 Material that has become contaminated internally and is not clean for oxygen service shall not be installed. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.12]

1318.0 Installation of Piping.

1318.1 Piping shall be protected against freezing, corrosion, and physical damage.

Piping exposed in corridors and other areas where subject to physical damage from the movement of carts, stretchers, portable equipment, or vehicles shall be protected.

Piping underground within buildings or embedded in concrete floors or walls shall be installed in a continuous conduit. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.2, 5.1.10.6.2.1, 5.10.6.2.2]

1318.2 Piping risers shall be permitted to be installed in pipe shafts if protected from physical damage, effects of excessive heat, corrosion, or contact with oil.

Piping shall not be installed in kitchens, elevator shafts, elevator machine rooms, areas with open flames, electrical service equipment over 600 volts, and areas prohibited under NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, except for the following locations:

(1) Room locations for medical air compressor supply systems and medical-surgical vacuum pump supply systems.

(2) Room locations for secondary distribution circuit panels and breakers having a maximum voltage rating of 600 volts.

Medical gas piping shall be permitted to be installed in the same service trench or tunnel with fuel gas lines, fuel oil lines, electrical lines, steam lines, and similar utilities provided that the space is ventilated (naturally or mechanically) and the ambient temperature around the medical gas piping is limited to 130°F (54°C) maximum.

Medical gas piping shall not be located where subject to contact with oil, including a possible flooding area in the case of a major oil leak. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.10.3]

1318.3 Buried piping outside of buildings shall be installed below the local level of frost penetration. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.5]

1318.4 The installation procedure for underground piping shall protect the piping from physical damage while being backfilled.

If underground piping is protected by a conduit, cover, or other enclosure, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) Access shall be provided at the joints for visual inspection and leak testing.

(2) The conduit, cover, or enclosure shall be self-draining and not retain groundwater in prolonged contact with the pipe.

Buried piping that will be subject to surface loads shall be buried at a depth that will protect the piping and its enclosure from excessive stresses. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.5.4]

The minimum backfilled cover above the top of the pipe or its enclosure for buried piping outside of

buildings shall be 36 inches (900 mm), except that the minimum cover shall be permitted to be reduced to 18 inches (450 mm) where physical damage is otherwise prevented.

Trenches shall be excavated so that the pipe enclosure has firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench.

Backfill shall be clean and compacted so as to protect and uniformly support the pipe enclosure.

A continuous tape or marker placed immediately above the enclosure shall clearly identify the pipeline by specific name.

A continuous warning means shall also be provided above the pipeline at approximately one-half the depth of bury.

Where underground piping is installed through a wall sleeve, the ends of the sleeve shall be sealed to prevent the entrance of groundwater into the building. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.5 - 5.1.10.6.10]

1318.5 Hose and flexible connectors, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall be no longer than necessary and shall not penetrate or be concealed in walls, floors, ceilings, or partitions. Flexible connectors, metallic or nonmetallic, shall have a minimum burst pressure, with a gauge pressure of 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi). [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.7]

1318.6 Where a positive-pressure medical gas-piping distribution system, originally used or constructed for the use at one pressure and for one gas, is converted for operation at another pressure or for another gas, all provisions of NFPA 5.1.10 shall apply as if the system were new. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.10.1]

A vacuum system shall not be permitted to be converted for use as a gas system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.10.2]

1318.7 Piping exposed in corridors and other areas where subject to physical damage from the movement of carts, stretchers, portable equipment, or vehicles shall be protected. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.2.1]

1318.8 Piping shall be supported from the building structure in accordance with MSS Standard Practice SP-69, *Piping Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application*.[NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.4.1]

Hangers and supports shall comply with MSS Standard Practice SP-58, *Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, and Manufacture*. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.4.2]

Hangers for copper tube shall have a copper finish and be sized for copper tube. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.4.3]

In potentially damp locations, copper tube hangers or supports that are in contact with the tube shall be plastic-coated or otherwise be insulated from the tube. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.4.4]

Maximum support spacing shall be in accordance with Table 13-7. [NFPA 99: Table 5.1.10.6.4.5]

1318.9 Where required, medical gas and vacuum piping shall be seismically restrained against earthquakes in accordance with the applicable building code. [NFPA 99 5.1.10.6.4.6] Seismic considerations shall conform to the requirements of this code and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1318.10 Two or more medical gas-piping systems shall not be interconnected for testing or any other reason. Leak testing shall be accomplished by separately charging and testing the individual piping system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.8.1-2]

1318.11 Piping shall be labeled by stenciling or adhesive markers that identify the patient medical gas, the support gas, or vacuum system, and include:

(1) The name of the gas/vacuum system or the chemical symbol per NFPA 99: Table 5.1.11.

(2) The gas or vacuum system color code per NFPA 99: Table 5.1.11.

(3) Where positive-pressure gas piping systems operate at pressures other than the standard gauge pressure in NFPA 99 Table 5.1.11, the pipe labeling shall include the operating pressure in addition to the name of the gas. [NFPA 99: 5.1.11.1.1]

1319.0 Joints. This section sets forth the requirements for pipe joint installation for positive-pressure medical gas systems.

1319.1 Brazed joints shall be made using a brazing alloy that exhibits a melting temperature in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) to retain the integrity of the piping system in the event of fire exposure. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.1.1]

Brazed tube joints shall be the socket type. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.1.2]

Filler metals shall bond with and be metallurgically compatible with the base metals being joined. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.1.3]

Filler metals shall comply with ANSI/AWS A.5.8, *Specification for Brazing Filler Metal*. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.1.4]

Copper-to-copper joints shall be brazed using a copper–phosphorus or copper–phosphorus–silver brazing filler metal (BCuP series) without flux. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.1.5]

Flux shall only be used when brazing dissimilar metals, such as copper and bronze or brass, using a silver (BAg series) brazing filler material. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.4.1]

Joints to be brazed in place shall be accessible for necessary preparation, assembly, heating, filler application, cooling, cleaning, and inspection. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.1.7]

1319.2 Tube ends shall be cut square using a sharp tubing cutter to avoid deforming the tube. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.2.1]

The cutting wheels on tubing cutters shall be free from grease, oil, or other lubricant not suitable for oxygen service. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.2.2]

The cut ends of the tube shall be deburred with a sharp, clean deburring tool, taking care to prevent chips from entering the tube. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.2.3]

1319.3 The interior surfaces of tubes, fittings, and other components that are cleaned for oxygen service shall be stored and handled to avoid contamination prior to assembly and brazing. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.1]

The exterior surfaces of tube ends shall be cleaned prior to brazing to remove any surface oxides. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.2]

When cleaning the exterior surfaces of tube ends, no matter shall be permitted to enter the tube. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.3]

If the interior surfaces of fitting sockets become contaminated prior to brazing, they shall be recleaned for oxygen in accordance with NFPA 99 5.1.10.5.3.10 and be cleaned for brazing with a clean, oil-free wire brush. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.4]

Clean, nonshedding, abrasive pads shall be used to clean the exterior surfaces of tube ends. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.5]

The use of steel wool or sand cloth shall be prohibited. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.6]

The cleaning process shall not result in grooving of the surfaces to be joined. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.7]

After being abraded, the surfaces shall be wiped using a clean, lint-free white cloth. [NFPA 99; 5.1.10.5.3.8]

Tubes, fittings, valves, and other components shall be visually examined internally before being joined, to verify that they have not become contaminated for oxygen service and that they are free of obstructions or debris. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.9]

The interior surfaces of tube ends, fittings, and other components that were cleaned for oxygen service by the manufacturer, but become contaminated prior to being installed, shall be permitted to be recleaned on-site by the installer by thoroughly scrubbing the interior surfaces with a clean, hot water–alkaline solution, such as sodium carbonate or trisodium phosphate 450 g to 11 L (1 lb. to 3 gal.) of potable water and thoroughly rinsing them with clean, hot potable water. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.10]

Other aqueous cleaning solutions shall be permitted to be used for on-site recleaning permitted in NFPA 99:5.1.10.5.3.10, provided that they are as recommended in CGA Pamphlet G-4.1, *Cleaning Equipment for Oxygen Service*, and are listed in CGA Pamphlet O2-DIR, *Directory of Cleaning Agents for Oxygen Service*. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.11]

Material that has become contaminated internally and is not clean for oxygen service shall not be installed. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.12]

Joints shall be brazed within eight hours after the surfaces are cleaned for brazing. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.3.13]

1319.4 Flux shall only be used when brazing dissimilar metals such as copper and bronze or brass, using a silver (BAg series) brazing filler metal. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.4.1]

Surfaces shall be cleaned for brazing in accordance with Section 1319.3. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.4.2]

Flux shall be applied sparingly to minimize contamination of the inside of the tube with flux. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.4.3]

The flux shall be applied and worked over the cleaned surfaces to be brazed using a stiff bristle brush to ensure complete coverage and wetting of the surfaces with flux. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.4.4]

Where possible, short sections of copper tube shall be brazed onto the noncopper component and the interior of the subassembly shall be cleaned of flux prior to installation in the piping system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.4.5]

On joints DN20 (NPS 3/4) (7/8 in. O.D.) size and smaller, flux-coated brazing rods shall be permitted to be used in lieu of applying flux to the surfaces being joined. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.4.6]

1319.5 Tube ends shall be inserted fully into the socket of the fitting. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.6.1]

Where flux is permitted, the joint shall be heated slowly until the flux has liquefied. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.6.2]

After flux is liquefied, or where flux is not permitted to be used, the joint shall be heated quickly to the brazing temperature, taking care not to overheat the joint. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.6.3]

Techniques for heating the joint; applying the brazing filler metal; and making horizontal, vertical, and large-diameter joints shall be as stated in sections on Applying Heat and Brazing and Horizontal and Vertical Joints in Chapter VII, Brazed Joints, in the CDA *Copper Tube Handbook*. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.6.4]

1319.6 When being brazed, joints shall be continuously purged with oil-free, dry nitrogen NF to prevent the formation of copper oxide on the inside surfaces of the joint. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.1]

The source of the purge gas shall be monitored, and the installer shall be audibly alerted when the source content is low. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.2]

The purge gas flow rate shall be controlled by the use of a pressure regulator and flow meter or combination thereof. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.3]

Pressure regulators alone shall not be used to control purge gas flow rates. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.4]

In order to ensure that all ambient air has been removed from the pipeline prior to brazing, an oxygen analyzer shall be used to verify the effectiveness of the purge. The oxygen analyzer shall read below 1 percent oxygen concentration before brazing is to begin. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.5]

During and after installation, openings in the piping system shall be kept sealed to maintain a nitrogen atmosphere within the piping to prevent debris or other contaminants from entering the system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.6]

While a joint is being brazed, a discharge opening shall be provided on the opposite side of the joint from where the purge gas is being introduced. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.7]

The flow of purge gas shall be maintained until the joint is cool to the touch. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.8]

After the joint has cooled, the purge discharge opening shall be sealed to prevent contamination of the inside of the tube and maintain the nitrogen atmosphere within the piping system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.9]

The final connection of new piping to an existing, in-use pipeline shall be permitted to be made without the use of a nitrogen purge. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.10]

After a final connection in a positive-pressure medical gas pipeline is made without a nitrogen purge, an outlet in the immediate downstream zone of the affected portions of both the new and existing in-use piping shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 99: 5.1.12.3.9, Final Tie-In Test. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.11]

When using the autogenous orbital welding process, joints shall be continuously purged inside and outside with inert gas(es) in accordance with the qualified welding procedure. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.5.12]

1319.7 After brazing, the outside of all joints shall be cleaned by washing with water and a wire brush to remove any residue and permit clear visual inspection of the joint. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.7.1]

Where flux has been used, the wash water shall be hot. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.7.2]

Each brazed joint shall be visually inspected after cleaning the outside surfaces. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.7.3]

Joints exhibiting the following conditions shall not be permitted:

(1) Flux or flux residue (when flux or flux-coated BAg series rods are used with dissimilar metals).
(2) Base metal melting or erosion.
(3) Unmelted filler metal.
(4) Failure of the filler metal to be clearly visible all the way around the joint at the interface between the socket and the tube.
(5) Cracks in the tube or component.
(6) Cracks in the brazed filler metal.
(7) Failure of the joint to hold the test pressure under the installer-performed initial pressure test (1329.10) and standing pressure test (Section 1329.11). [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.7.4]

Brazed joints that are identified as defective under conditions 1319.7(2) or (5) shall be replaced. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.7.5]

Brazed joints that are identified as defective under Sections 1319.7(1), (3), (4), (6), or (7) shall be permitted to be repaired, except that no joint shall be reheated more than once before being replaced. [NFPA 99: 5.1.10.5.7.6]

1320.0 Valves – Requirements, Locations, and Labeling.

1320.1 General Requirements. Shutoff valves accessible to other than authorized personnel shall be installed in valve boxes with frangible or removable windows large enough to permit manual operation of valves. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.2.1]

Shutoff valves for use in certain areas, such as psychiatric or pediatric, shall be permitted to be secured with the approval of the Authority Having Jurisdiction to prevent inappropriate access. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.2.2]

1320.1.1 Where valves are concealed in any enclosure, the door or entry to the enclosure shall be identified and color coded with the type of gas service installed, as described in Section 1323.0. Enclosures shall be of sufficient size to permit valve operation. Valve handles in the off position shall prevent closure of the access panel or door.

1320.2 In-line shutoff valves intended for use to isolate piping for maintenance or modification shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Be located in a restricted area.
(2) Be locked or latched open.

(3) Be identified in accordance with Section 1323. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.9.1]

1320.3 Shutoff valves provided for the connection of future piping shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Be locked in a restricted area.

(2) Be locked or latched closed.

(3) Be identified in accordance with Section 1323. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.10]

1320.3.1 Future connection valves shall be labeled as to gas content. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.10.1]

1320.3.2 Downstream piping shall be closed with a brazed cap with tubing allowance for cutting and rebrazing. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.10.2]

1320.3.3 A zone valve shall be located immediately outside each vital life-support, critical care, and anesthetizing location in each medical gas and/or vacuum line, and located so as to be readily accessible in an emergency. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.8.7]

1320.3.4 All gas-delivery columns, hose reels, ceiling tracks, control panels, pendants, booms, or other special installations shall be located downstream of the zone valve. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.8.7.1]

1320.3.5 Zone valves shall be so arranged that shutting off the supply of gas to any one operating room or anesthetizing location will not affect the others. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.8.7.2]

1320.4 Source Valve. A shutoff valve shall be placed at the immediate connection of each source system to the distribution piping to permit the entire source, including all accessory devices (such as hair dryers, final line regulators, etc.), to be isolated from the facility. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.4]

1320.4.1 The source valve shall be located in the immediate vicinity of the source equipment. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.4.1]

1320.4.2 The source valve shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1323.0, Source Valve for the (Source Name). [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.4.2, 5.1.11.2.3]

1320.5 Main Valve. A shutoff valve shall be provided in the main supply line inside of the building, except where one or more of the following conditions exist:

(1) The source and source valve are located inside the building served.

(2) The source system is physically mounted to the wall of the building served and the pipeline enters the building in the immediate vicinity of the source valve. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.5]

1320.5.1 The main line valve shall be located to permit access by authorized personnel only (i.e., by locating above a ceiling or behind a locked access door). [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.5.1]

1320.5.2 The main line valve shall be located on the facility side of the source valve and outside of the source room, enclosure, or where the main line first enters the building. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.5.2]

1320.5.3 The main line shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1323.0. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.5.3 and 5.1.11.2.4]

1320.6 Riser Valve. Each riser supplied from the main line shall be provided with a shutoff valve adjacent to the riser connection. Riser valves shall be permitted to be located above ceilings, but shall remain accessible and not be obstructed. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.6, 5.1.4.6.1]

1320.7 Zone Valve. All station outlets/inlets shall be supplied through a zone valve as follows:

(1) The zone valve shall be placed such that a wall intervenes between the valve and outlets/inlets that it controls.

(2) The zone valve shall serve only outlets/inlets located on that same story. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.8]

1320.7.1 Zone valves shall be readily operable from a standing position in the corridor on the same floor they serve. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.8.1]

1320.7.2 Zone valves shall be so arranged that shutting off the supply of medical gas or vacuum to one zone will not affect the supply of medical gas or vacuum to another zone or the rest of the system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.8.2]

1320.8 Service Valves. Service valves shall be placed in the branch piping prior to any zone valve box assembly on that branch. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.7.2]

1320.8.1 Only one service valve shall be required for each branch off of a riser regardless of how many zone valve boxes are installed on that lateral. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.7.1]

1320.8.2 Service valves shall be installed to allow servicing or modification of lateral branch piping from a main or riser without shutting down the entire main, riser, or facility. [NFPA 99: 5.1.4.7]

1321.0 Pressure-Regulating Equipment.

1321.1 Pressure-regulating equipment shall be installed in the supply main upstream of the final line-pressure valve. Where multiple piping systems for the same gas at different operating pressures are required, separate pressure-regulating equipment, relief valves, and source shutoff valves shall be provided for each pressure.

1321.2 Each central supply system shall have a pressure-relief valve set at fifty (50) percent above

normal line pressure, installed downstream of the pressure regulator and upstream of any shutoff valve. This pressure-relief valve shall be permitted to be set at a higher pressure, provided another pressure-relief valve set at 50 percent above normal line pressure is installed in the main supply line.

1321.2.1 All pressure-relief valves shall close automatically when excess pressure has been released.

1321.2.2 Pressure-relief valves set at 50 percent shall be vented to the outside from all gas systems, except medical air, or if the total capacity of the supply system is in excess of 3,000 feet^3 (85 m^3) of gas.

1321.2.3 Pressure-relief valves shall be of brass or bronze and specially designed for the gas service involved.

1321.2.4 A pressure-relief valve shall not be isolated from its intended use by any valve.

1321.3 Pressure Gauges.

Pressure and vacuum indicators shall be readable from a standing position. Pressure/vacuum indicators shall be provided at the following locations, as a minimum:

(1) Adjacent to the alarm-initiating device for source main-line pressure and vacuum alarms in the master alarm system.

(2) At or in area alarm panels to indicate the pressure/vacuum at the alarm activating device for each system that is monitored by the panel.

(3) On the station outlet/inlet side of zone valves. [NFPA 99: 5.1.8.2.1, 5.1.8.2.2]

1322.0 Station Outlets/Inlets.

Station outlets and inlets shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

1322.1 After installation of the piping, but before installation of the station outlets/inlets and other medical gas and medical gas system components (e.g., pressure-actuating switches for alarms, manifolds, pressure gauges, or pressure relief valves), the line shall be blown clear by means of oil-free, dry nitrogen.

1323.0 Labeling and Identification. The gas content of medical gas piping systems shall be readily identifiable by appropriate labeling with the name and pressure contained. Such labeling shall be by means of metal tags, stenciling, stamping, or adhesive markers, in a manner that is not readily removable. Where supplementary color identification of piping is used, it shall be in accordance with the gases and colors indicated in CGA Pamphlet C-9, *Standard Color-Marking of Compressed Cylinders Intended for Medical Gas Use,* See Table 13-1.

1323.1 Piping shall be labeled by stenciling or adhesive markers that identify the medical gas, support gas, or vacuum system and include:

(1) The name of the gas/vacuum system or the chemical symbol per NFPA 99: Table 5.1.11.

(2) The gas or vacuum system color code per NFPA 99 Table 5.1.11.

(3) Where positive-pressure gas piping systems operate at pressures other than the standard gauge in NFPA 99 Table 5.1.11, the pipe labeling shall include the operating pressure in addition to the name of the gas. [NFPA 99: 5.1.11.1.1]

Pipe labels shall be located as follows:

(1) At intervals of not more than 20 ft (6,100 mm).

(2) At least once in or above every room.

(3) On both sides of walls or partitions penetrated by the piping.

(4) At least once in every story height traversed by risers. [NFPA 99: 5.1.11.1.2]

1323.2 Shutoff valves shall be identified as follows:

(1) The name or chemical symbol for the specific medical gas or vacuum system.

(2) The room or areas served.

(3) A caution to not close or open valve except in emergency. [NFPA 99: 5.1.11.2.1]

1323.3 Station outlets and inlets shall be identified as to the name or chemical symbol for the specific medical gas or vacuum provided. [NFPA 99 : 5.1.11.3.1]

1323.4 The shutoff valves described in Sections 1320.4, 1320.5, and 1320.6 shall be labeled to reflect the rooms that are controlled by such valves. Labeling shall be kept current from initial construction through acceptance. Valves shall be labeled in substance as follows:

In-line shutoff valves shall be labeled in substance as follows:

CAUTION
(NAME OF MEDICAL GAS) VALVE
DO NOT CLOSE EXCEPT IN EMERGENCY
THIS VALVE CONTROLS SUPPLY TO...

Source valves shall be labeled in substance as follows:

SOURCE VALVE
FOR THE (SOURCE NAME).

Main line valves shall be labeled in substance as follows:

MAIN LINE VALVE FOR THE
(GAS/VACUUM NAME) SERVING THE
(NAME OF BUILDING).

Riser valve(s) shall be labeled in substance as follows:

RISER FOR THE (GAS/VACUUM NAME)
SERVING (NAME OF THE AREA/BUILDING
SERVED BY THE PARTICULAR RISER).

Service valve(s) shall be labeled in substance as follows:

SERVICE VALVE FOR THE
(GAS/VACUUM NAME) SERVING
(NAME OF THE AREA/BUILDING
SERVED BY THE PARTICULAR VALVE).

[NFPA 99: 5.1.11.2.3-6]

1324.0 Alarms. All master, area, and local alarm systems used for medical gas and vacuum systems shall include the following:

(1) Separate visual indicators for each condition monitored, except as permitted for local alarms that are displayed on master alarm panels.

(2) Visual indicators that remain in alarm until the situation that has caused the alarm is resolved.

(3) A cancelable audible indication of each alarm condition that produces a sound with a minimum level of 80 dBA at 3 feet (920 mm).

(4) A means to visually identify a lamp or LED failure.

(5) Visual and audible indication that the wiring to an alarm initiating device is disconnected.

(6) Labeling of each indicator, indicating the condition monitored.

(7) Labeling of each alarm panel for its area of surveillance.

(8) Re-initiation of the audible signal if another alarm condition occurs while the audible alarm is silenced.

(9) Power for master and area alarms from the life safety branch of the emergency electrical system as described in Chapter 4, Electrical Systems.

(10) Power for local alarms, dew point sensors, and carbon monoxide sensors permitted to be from the same essential electrical branch as is used to power the air compressor system.

(11) Wiring from switches or sensors that is supervised or protected as required by Section 517.30(C)(3) of NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, for emergency system circuits.

(12) Assurance by the responsible authority of the facility that the labeling of alarms, where room numbers or designations are used, is accurate and up-to-date.

(13) Provisions for automatic restart after a power loss of 10 seconds (e.g., during generator startup) without giving false signals or requiring manual reset. [NFPA 99: 5.1.9.1(1), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7)]

1324.1 Functioning of all alarm components shall be verified in accordance with testing and monitoring requirements of the manufacturer and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1325.0 Medical Air System. Medical air compressors shall be installed in a well-lit, ventilated, and clean location and shall be accessible. The location shall be provided with drainage facilities. The medical air compressor area shall be located separately from medical gas cylinder system sources, and shall be readily accessible for maintenance.

1325.1 Medical air compressors shall be sufficient to serve the peak calculated demand with the largest single compressor out of service. In no case shall there be fewer than 2 (two) compressors. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.11.2]

Medical air compressor systems shall consist of the following:

(1) Components complying with NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.4 through NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.10, arranged per NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.11.

(2) An automatic means to prevent backflow from all on-cycle compressors through all off-cycle compressors.

(3) A manual shutoff valve to isolate each compressor from the centrally piped system and from other compressors for maintenance or repair without loss of pressure in the system.

(4) Intake filter-mufflers of the dry type.

(5) Pressure relief valves set at 50 percent above line pressure.

(6) Piping between the compressor and the source shutoff valve compatible with oxygen that

does not contribute to contaminant levels. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.3.2]

(7) Except as defined in NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.3.2(1) through NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.3.2(6), materials and devices used between the medical air intake and the medical air source valve shall be permitted to be of any design or construction appropriate for the service, as determined by the manufacturer. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.3.2]

1325.2 The medical air compressors shall draw their air from a source of clean air located where no contamination is anticipated from engine exhausts, fuel storage vents, medical-surgical vacuum system discharges, particulate matter, or odor of any type. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.13.1]

1325.3 Compressor intake piping shall be hard-drawn seamless copper, and one of the following:

(1) ASTM B 819, Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for medical Gas Systems, medical gas tube.

(2) ASTM B 88, Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube, water tube (Type K or L).

(3) ASTM B 280, Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tubing for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service, 280ACR tube. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.13.4]

The compressor air intake shall be located outdoors above roof level, at a minimum distance of 10 feet (3,050 mm) from any door, window, exhaust, other intake, or opening in the building and a minimum distance of 6,100 mm (20 feet) above the ground. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.13.2]

If an air source equal to or better than outside air (e.g., air already filtered for use in operating room ventilating systems) is available, it shall be permitted to be used for the medical air compressors with the following provisions:

(1) This alternate source of supply air shall be available on a continuous 24-hours-per-day, 7-days-per-week basis.

(2) Ventilating systems having fans with motors or drive belts located in the air stream shall not be used as a source of medical air intake. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.13.3]

Air intakes for separate compressors shall be permitted to be joined together to one common intake where the following conditions are met:

(1) The common intake is sized to minimize back pressure in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations

(2) Each compressor can be isolated by manual or check valve, blind flange, or tube cap to prevent open inlet piping when compressors are removed from service and consequent backflow of room air into the other compressor(s). [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.13.5]

1325.3.1 Each medical air compressor shall have an isolation valve installed so that shutting off or failure of the largest unit will not affect the operation of the other unit(s).

1325.4 Drains shall be installed on dryers, aftercoolers, separators, and receivers.

1325.5 Medical air receivers shall be provided with proper valves to allow the flow of compressed air to enter and exit out of separator receive ports during normal operation and allow the receiver to be bypassed during service, without shutting down the medical air system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.11.4]

1325.6 Medical Air Receivers. Receivers for medical air shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Be made of corrosion-resistant materials or otherwise be made corrosion resistant.

(2) Comply with Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, of the *ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.*

(3) Be equipped with a pressure-relief valve, automatic drain, manual drain, sight glass, and pressure indicator.

(4) Be of a capacity sufficient to prevent the compressor from short cycling. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.5.6]

Piping within compressor systems upstream of the source shutoff valve shall comply with Sections 1316 and 1319, except that stainless steel shall be permitted to be used as a piping material.

1326.0 Medical Vacuum Pump System. The vacuum plant shall be installed in a well-lit, ventilated, and clean location with ample accessibility. The location shall be provided with drainage facilities. The vacuum plant, when installed as a source, shall be located separately from other medical vacuum system sources, and shall be readily accessible for maintenance.

1326.1 Medical–surgical vacuum sources shall consist of the following:

(1) Two or more vacuum pumps sufficient to serve the peak calculated demand with the largest single vacuum pump out of service.

(2) An automatic means to prevent backflow from any on-cycle vacuum pumps through any off-cycle vacuum pumps.

(3) A shutoff valve or other isolation means to isolate each vacuum pump from the

centrally piped system and other vacuum pumps for maintenance or repair without loss of vacuum in the system.

(4) A vacuum receiver.

(5) Piping between the vacuum pump(s), discharge(s), receiver(s), and the vacuum source shutoff valve shall be in accordance with 5.1.10.2, except that stainless, galvanized, or black steel pipe shall be permitted to be used.

(6) Except as defined in NFPA 99: 5.1.3.6.1.2(1) through NFPA 99: 5.1.3.6.1.2(5), materials and devices used between the medical vacuum exhaust and the medical vacuum source shall be permitted to be of any design or construction appropriate for the service, as determined by the manufacturer. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.6.1.2(1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6)]

1326.1.1 Additional pumps shall automatically activate when the pumps in operation are incapable of adequately maintaining the required vacuum.

Automatic or manual alternation of pumps shall allow division of operating time. If automatic alternation of pumps is not provided, the facility staff shall arrange a schedule for manual alternation. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.6.6.1, 5.1.3.6.6.2]

1326.2 The medical–surgical vacuum pumps shall exhaust in a manner and location that will minimize the hazards of noise and contamination to the facility and its environment.

The exhaust shall be located as follows:

(1) Outdoors.

(2) At least 10 feet (3,050 mm) from any door, window, air intake, or other openings in buildings.

(3) At a level different from air intakes.

(4) Where prevailing winds, adjacent buildings, topography, or other influences that would not divert the exhaust into occupied areas or prevent dispersion of the exhaust.

The end of the exhaust shall be turned down and screened or otherwise be protected against the entry of vermin, debris, or precipitation by screening fabricated or composed of a non-corroding material.

The exhaust shall be piped of materials approved for medical–surgical vacuum piping under Section 1316.3 (Vacuum tubes).

The exhaust shall be free of dips and loops that might trap condensate or oil. Where such low points are unavoidable, a drip leg and valved drain shall be installed. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.6.7.1 - 5.1.3.6.7.5]

1326.2.1 Vacuum exhausts from multiple pumps shall be permitted to be joined together to one common exhaust where the following conditions are met:

(1) The common exhaust is sized to minimize back-pressure in accordance with the pump manufacturer's recommendations.

(2) Each pump can be isolated by manual or check valve, blind flange, or tube cap to prevent open exhaust piping when pumps are removed for service and consequent flow of exhaust air into the room. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.6.7.6]

1326.3 Receivers for vacuum shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Be made of ferrous and/or nonferrous materials.

(2) Comply with Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, of the *ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.*

(3) Be capable of withstanding a gauge pressure of 415 kPa (60 psi) and 29.9 inch (760 mm) gauge HgV.

(4) Be equipped with a manual drain.

(5) Be of a capacity based on the technology of the pumps. [NFPA 99: 5.1.3.6.3]

1326.4 Piping between vacuum pumps, discharges, receivers, and the vacuum main line valve shall be in accordance with Section 1316.1, except that steel pipe shall be permitted to be either black or galvanized.

1326.5 Drains shall be installed and terminate in an approved location.

1327.0 Testing and Inspection.

1327.1 Inspection and testing shall be performed on all-new piped gas systems, additions, renovations, temporary installations, or repaired systems, to ensure the facility, by a documented procedure, that all applicable provisions of this document have been adhered to and system integrity has been achieved or maintained. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.1.1.]

1327.1.1 Tests and inspections required by this section shall not be interpreted to conflict with the requirements of NFPA 99 *Standard for Health Care Facilities.* Final certification or verification shall require the completion of all tests and inspections required by Sections 4-3.4.1.1, 4-3.4.1.2, and 4-3.4.1.3 of NFPA 99 *Standard for Health Care Facilities.* For requirements of the portions of medical gas and medical vacuum systems testing and inspection not addressed in this chapter or medical gas and medical vacuum systems testing and inspection beyond the scope

of this chapter, refer to NFPA 99 *Standard for Health Care Facilities.*

1327.2 All systems that are breached and components that are subject to additions, renovations, or replacement (e.g., new gas sources: bulk, manifolds, compressors, dryers, alarms) shall be inspected and appropriately tested. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.1.3]

1327.2.1 Systems shall be deemed breached at the point of pipeline intrusion by physical separation or by system component removal, replacement, or addition.

Breached portions of the systems subject to inspection and testing shall be confined to only the specific altered zone and components in the immediate zone or area that is located upstream for vacuum systems and downstream for pressure gases at the point or area of intrusion. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.1.4, 5.1.12.1.5]

1327.3 Advance Notice. It shall be the duty of the person doing the work authorized by the permit to notify the Authority Having Jurisdiction, orally or in writing, that said work is ready for inspection. Such notification shall be given not less than twenty-four (24) hours before the work is to be inspected.

1327.4 Responsibility. The equipment, material, and labor necessary for inspection and testing shall be furnished by the permit holder or by the person who is requiring the inspection.

1327.5 Testing. The test shall be conducted in the presence of the Authority Having Jurisdiction or a duly appointed representative.

1327.6 Retesting. If the Authority Having Jurisdiction finds that the work does not pass tests, necessary corrections shall be made and the work shall then be resubmitted for test or inspection.

1327.7 Initial Pressure Test – Piped Gas Systems. Before attachment of system components (e.g., pressure-actuating switches for alarms, manifolds, pressure gauges, or pressure-relief valves), but after installation of the station outlets and inlets, with test caps in place, each section of the piping system shall be subjected to a test pressure of one and a one-half (1-1/2) times the working pressure [minimum one hundred-fifty (150) psig (1 Mpa gauge)] with oil-free dry nitrogen. This test pressure shall be maintained until each joint has been examined for leakage by means of soapy water or other equally effective means of leak detection safe for use with oxygen. The source shutoff valve shall be closed. Leaks, if any, shall be located, repaired, and retested in accordance with this paragraph. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.7]

1327.8 Cross-Connection Test – Piped Gas Systems. It shall be determined that no cross-connections exist between the various medical gas and vacuum piping systems. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.4]

All piping systems shall be reduced to atmospheric pressure. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.4.1]

Sources of test gas shall be disconnected from all piping systems except for the one system being tested. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.4.2]

The system under test shall be charged with oil-free, dry nitrogen NF to a gauge pressure of 50 psi (345 kPa). [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.4.3]

After the installation of the individual faceplates with appropriate adapters matching outlet/inlet labels, each individual outlet/inlet in each installed medical gas and vacuum piping system shall be checked to determine that the test gas is being dispensed only from the piping system being tested. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.4.4]

1327.8.1 The source of test gas shall be disconnected, and the system tested shall be reduced to atmospheric pressure. The cross-connection test referenced in NFPA 99 5.1.12.2.4 shall be repeated for each installed medical gas and vacuum piping system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.4.1, 5.1.12.2.4.5]

1327.8.2 Where a medical vacuum system is installed, the cross-connection testing shall include that piped vacuum system with all medical gas-piping systems.

1327.8.3 All medical-surgical vacuum systems shall be in operation so that these vacuum systems are tested at the same time the medical gas systems are tested. The proper labeling and identification of system outlets/inlets shall be confirmed during these tests. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.4.6]

1327.9 Final Testing Standing Pressure Test – Piped Gas Systems. After successful completion of the initial pressure tests under Section 1327.7, medical gas distribution piping shall be subject to a standing pressure test. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6]

Tests shall be conducted after the final installation of station outlet valve bodies, face plates, and other distribution system components (e.g., pressure alarm devices, pressure indicators, line pressure-relief valves, manufactured assemblies, hose, etc.). [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.1]

The source valve shall be closed during this test. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.2]

The piping systems shall be subjected to a 24-hour standing pressure test using oil-free, dry nitrogen NF. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.3]

Test pressures shall be 20 percent above the normal system operating line pressure. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.4]

1327.9.1 After the piping system is filled with test gas, the supply valve and all outlets shall be closed and the source of test gas disconnected. Tests shall be conducted after the final installation of station outlet valve bodies, face plates, and other distribution system components (e.g., pressure alarm devices, pressure indicators, line pressure-relief valves, manufactured assemblies, hose, etc.). [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.1]

The source valve shall be closed during this test. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.2]

The piping systems shall be subjected to a 24-hour standing pressure test using oil-free, dry nitrogen NF. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.3]

Test pressures shall be 20 percent above the normal system operating line pressure. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.4]

Leaks, if any, shall be located, repaired (if permitted), or replaced (if required), and retested. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.6]

At the conclusion of the tests, there shall be no change in the test pressure other than that attributed to changes of ambient temperature. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.6.5]

1327.10 Initial Pressure Test – Piped Vacuum Systems. Each section of the piping in medical gas and vacuum systems shall be pressure-tested. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.1]

Initial pressure tests shall be conducted as follows:

(1) After installation of station outlets/inlets rough-in assemblies. Test caps shall be permitted to be used.

(2) Prior to the installation of components of the distribution piping system that would be damaged by the test pressure (e.g., pressure/vacuum alarm devices, pressure/vacuum indicators, line pressure-relief valves, manufactured assemblies with flexible hose, etc.). [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.2]

The source shutoff valve shall remain closed during these tests. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.3]

The test pressure for pressure gases shall be 1.5 times the system working pressure but not less than a gauge pressure of 150 psi (1,035 kPa). [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.4]

The test pressure for vacuum shall be not less than a gauge pressure of 60 psi (415 kPa). [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.5]

The test pressure shall be maintained until each joint has been examined for leakage by means of soapy water or other equally effective means of leak detection that is safe for use with oxygen. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.6]

Leaks, if any, shall be located, repaired (if permitted), replaced (if required), and retested. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.3.7]

1327.11 Standing Pressure Test – Piped Vacuum Systems. After successful completion of the initial pressure tests under Section 1327.10, vacuum distribution piping shall be subjected to a standing vacuum test. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7]

Tests shall be conducted after installation of all components of the vacuum system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7.1]

The piping systems shall be subjected to a 24-hour standing vacuum test. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7.2] Test pressure shall be between 12 inch (300 mm) gauge HgV and full vacuum. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7.3]

During the test, the source of test vacuum shall be disconnected from the piping system. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7.4]

At the conclusion of the test, there shall be no change in the vacuum other than that attributed to changes of ambient temperature, as permitted in the following: [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7.5]

Test vacuum changes due to expansion or contraction shall be permitted to be determined by means of the following pressure temperature relationship:

(1) The calculated final absolute pressure equals the initial absolute pressure times the final absolute temperature, divided by the initial absolute temperature.

(2) Absolute pressure is the gauge pressure reading plus 14.7 psi (101.4 kPa).

(3) Absolute temperature is the temperature reading plus 460°F (238°C).

(4) The final allowable gauge pressure reading equals the final allowable absolute pressure minus a gauge pressure of 14.7 psi (101.4 kPa). [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7.6]

Leaks, if any, shall be located, repaired (if permitted), or replaced (if required), and retested. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.2.7.7]

1327.12 Corrections. Notices of correction or violation shall be written by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and may be posted at the site of the work or mailed or delivered to the permittee or an authorized representative. Refusal or failure to comply with any such notice or order within ten (10) days of receipt thereof shall be considered a violation of this code, and shall be subject to the penalties set forth elsewhere in this code for violations.

1327.13 Approval. Upon satisfactory completion of all tests and certification of the medical gas and medical vacuum systems, a certificate of approval shall be issued by the Authority Having Jurisdiction to the permittee.

1327.14 Covering or Use. No medical gas or medical vacuum system or part thereof shall be covered, concealed, or put into use until it has been tested, inspected, and accepted as required in this code.

1327.15 Uncovering. Any medical gas and vacuum system or part thereof that is covered or concealed before testing and inspected as required in this code shall be uncovered for inspection, after notice to uncover the work has been issued to the permittee or his authorized representative by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1328.0 System Certification.

1328.1 Prior to any medical gas system being placed in service, each and every system shall be certified, as described in Section 1328.2.

1328.1.1 Verification tests shall be performed only after all tests required in Section 1327.0, Installer-Performed Tests, have been completed. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.3.1.1]

Testing shall be conducted by a party technically competent and experienced in the field of medical gas and vacuum pipeline testing and meeting the requirements of ANSI/ASSE Standard 6030, *Medical Gas Verifiers Professional Qualifications Standard*. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.3.1.3]

Testing shall be performed by a party other than the installing contractor. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.3.1.4]

When systems have been installed by in-house personnel, testing shall be permitted by personnel of that organization who meet the requirements of this section. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.3.1.5]

1328.2 Certification tests, verified and attested to by the certification agency, shall include the following:

1328.2.1 Verifying compliance with the installation requirements.

1328.2.2 Testing and checking for leakage, correct zoning, and identification of control valves.

1328.2.3 Checking for identification and labeling of pipelines, station outlets, and control valves.

1328.2.4 Testing for cross-connection, flow rate, system pressure drop, and system performance.

1328.2.5 Functional testing of pressure relief valves and safety valves.

1328.2.6 Functional testing of all sources of supply.

1328.2.7 Functional testing of alarm systems, including accuracy of system components.

1328.2.8 Purge flushing of system and filling with specific source gases.

1328.2.9 Testing for purity and cleanliness of source gases.

1328.2.10 Testing for specific gas identity at each station outlet.

1328.3 The inspection and testing reports shall be submitted directly to the party that contracted for the testing, who shall submit the report through channels to the responsible facility authority and any others that are required. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.1.6]

Reports shall contain detailed listings of all findings and results. [NFPA 99: 5.1.12.1.7]

1328.4 A report that includes at least the specific items mentioned in Section 1328.2 and all other information required by NFPA 99 *Standard for Health Care Facilities* shall be delivered to the Authority Having Jurisdiction prior to acceptance of the system.

TABLE 13-1 [NFPA 99 TABLE 5.1.11]
Standard Designation Colors and Operating Pressures for Gas and Vacuum Systems

Gas Service	Abbreviated Name	Colors (Background/Text)	Standard Gauge Pressure
Medical air	Med Air	Yellow/black	345–380 kPa (50–55 psi)
Carbon dioxide	CO_2	Gray/black or gray/white	345–380 kPa (50–55 psi)
Helium	He	Brown/white	345–380 kPa (50–55 psi)
Nitrogen	N_2	Black/white	1,100–1,275 kPa (160–185 psi)
Nitrous oxide	N_2O	Blue/ white	345–380 kPa (50–55 psi)
Oxygen	O_2	Green/white or white/green	345–380 kPa (50–55 psi)
Oxygen/carbon dioxide mixture	O_2/CO_2 n (n is % of CO_2)	Green/white	345–380 kPa (50–55 psi)
Medical–surgical vacuum	Med Vac	White/black	360 mm to 760 mm (15 in. to 30 in. HgV)
Waste anesthetic gas disposal	WAGD	Violet/white	Varies with system type
Other mixtures	Gas A%/ Gas B%	Colors as above Major gas for background/ minor gas for text	None
Nonmedical air (level 3 gas-powered device)		Yellow-and-white diagonal stripe/black	None
Nonmedical and Level 3 vacuum		White-and-black diagonal stripe/black boxed	None
Laboratory air		Yellow-and-white checkerboard/black	None
Laboratory vacuum		White-and-black checkerboard/black boxed	None
Instrument air		Red/white	1,100–1,275 kPa (160–185 psi)

TABLE 13-2
Minimum Flow Rates

Oxygen	.71 CFM per outlet[1] (20 LPM)
Nitrous Oxide	.71 CFM per outlet[1] (20 LPM)
Medical Compressed Air	.71 CFM per outlet[1] (20 LPM)
Nitrogen	15 CFM (0.42 m^3/min.) free air per outlet
Vacuum	1 SCFM (0.03 sm^3/min.) per inlet[2]
Carbon Dioxide	.71 CFM per outlet[1] (20 LPM)
Helium	.71 CFM per outlet (20 LPM)

1 Any room designed for a permanently located respiratory ventilator or anesthesia machine shall have an outlet capable of a flow rate of 180 LPM (6.36 CFM) at the station outlet.

2 For testing and certification purposes, individual station inlets shall be capable of a flow rate of 3 SCFM, while maintaining a system pressure of not less than 12 inches (305 mm) at the nearest adjacent vacuum inlet.

TABLE 13-3
Minimum Outlets/Inlets per Station

Location	Oxygen	Medical Vacuum	Medical Air	Nitrous Oxide	Nitrogen	Helium	Carbon Dioxide
Patient rooms for medical/surgical, obstetrics, and pediatrics	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed	—	—	—	—
Examination/treatment for nursing units	1/bed	1/bed	—	—	—	—	—
Intensive care (all)	3/bed	3/bed	2/bed	—	—	—	—
Nursery[1]	2/bed	2/bed	1/bed	—	—	—	—
General operating rooms	2/room	3/room[4]	2/room	1/room	1/room	—	—
Cystoscopic and invasive special procedures	2/room	3/room[4]	2/room	—	—	—	—
Recovery delivery and labor/delivery/ recovery rooms[2]	2/bed 2/room	2/bed 3/room[4]	1/bed 1/room	— —	— —	— —	— —
Labor rooms	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed	—	—	—	—
First aid and emergency treatment[3]	1/bed	1/bed[4]	1/bed	—	—	—	—
Autopsy	—	1/station	1/station	—	—	—	—
Anesthesia workroom	1/station	—	1/station	—	—	—	—

1 Includes pediatric nursery.

2 Includes obstetric recovery.

3 Emergency trauma rooms used for surgical procedures shall be classified as general operating rooms.

4 Vacuum inlets required are in addition to any inlets used as part of a scavenging system for removal of anesthetizing gases.

TABLE 13-4
System Sizing – Flow Requirements for Station Inlet/Outlet[1]

Number of Inlet/Outlet Terminal Units per Facility	Diversity Percentage of Average Flow per Inlet/Outlet Terminal Units	Minimum Permissible System Flow[2] SCFM (liters/minute) All Pressurized Medical Gas Systems	Vacuum Systems
1–10	100%	Actual Demand	See
11–25	75%	7.0 (200)	Table
26–50	50%	13.1 (375)	13-5
51–100	50%	17.5 (500)	

[1] Flow rates of station inlets/outlets per Table 13-2.
[2] The minimum system flow is the average inlet/outlet flow times the number of station inlets/outlets times the diversity percentage.

TABLE 13-5
Outlet Rating for Vacuum Piping Systems

	Free-Air Allowance, Expressed as CFM (LPM) at 1 Atmosphere		Zone Allowances Corridors-Risers Main Supply Line-Valves	
Location of Medical-Surgical Vacuum Outlets	**Per Room**	**Per Outlet**	**Simultaneous Usage, Factor Percent**	**Air to Be Transported CFM (LPM)***
Operating Rooms				
Major "A"(Radical, Open Heart)	3.5 (99.1)	–	100	3.5 (99.1)
(Organ Transplant)	3.5 (99.1)	–	100	3.5 (99.1)
(Radical Thoracic)	3.5 (99.1)	–	100	3.5 (99.1)
Major "B"(All Other Major ORs)	2.0 (56.6)	–	100	2.0 (56.6)
Minor	1.0 (28.3)	–	100	1.0 (28.3)
Delivery Rooms	1.0 (28.3)	–	100	1.0 (28.3)
Recovery Rooms (Post-Anesthesia) and Intensive Care Units (a minimum of 2 outlets per bed in each such department)				
1st outlet at each bed	–	3.0 (85.0)	50	1.5 (42.5)
2nd outlet at each bed	–	1.0 (28.3)	50	0.5 (14.2)
3rd outlet at each bed	–	1.0 (28.3)	10	0.1 (2.8)
All others at each bed	–	1.0 (28.3)	10	0.1 (2.8)
Emergency Rooms	–	1.0 (28.3)	100	1.0 (28.3)
Patient Rooms				
Surgical	–	1.0 (28.3)	50	0.5 (14.2)
Medical	–	1.0 (28.3)	10	0.1 (2.8)
Nurseries	–	1.0 (28.3)	10	0.1 (2.8)
Treatment and Examining Rooms	–	0.5 (14.2)	10	0.05 (1.4)
Autopsy Area	–	2.0 (56.6)	20	0.4 (11.3)
Inhalation Therapy, Central Supply and Instructional Areas	–	1.0 (28.3)	10	0.1 (2.8)

*Free air at 1 atmosphere

TABLE 13-6
Size of Gas/Vacuum Piping

Medical System	Gas Pipe Size Inch[2]	Maximum Delivery Capacity[3] in SCFM (LPM) — Length of Piping in Feet (m)[1] 100	(30)	250	(76)	500	(152)	750	(228)	1,000	(304)
Oxygen	1/2	15.0	(425)	10.6	(300)	7.4	(209)	5.9	(167)	5.1	(144)
	3/4	40.0	(1,133)	28.3	(801)	19.6	(555)	15.7	(445)	13.3	(377)
	1	50.0	(1,416)	50.0	(1,416)	40.2	(1,138)	32.2	(912)	27.7	(784)
Nitrous Oxide	1/2	15.0	(425)	9.5	(269)	6.5	(184)	5.3	(150)	4.5	(127)
	3/4	30.0	(849)	24.7	(699)	17.1	(484)	13.7	(388)	11.7	(331)
	1	40.0	(1,113)	40.0	(1,133)	34.7	(983)	28.2	(7,98)	24.3	(688)
Medical Air	1/2	18.1	(512)	11.1	(314)	7.8	(221)	6.3	(177)	5.3	(151)
	3/4	40.0	(1,133)	29.9	(847)	21.0	(595)	16.5	(467)	14.1	(399)
	1	50.0	(1,416)	50.0	(1,416)	42.1	(1,192)	35.8	(1,013)	29.2	(826)
Vacuum	1	22.8	(645)	13.7	(388)	9.5	(269)	7.6	(215)	6.5	(184)
	1-1/4	40.1	(1,135)	24.5	(694)	16.7	(473)	13.3	(377)	11.2	(317)
	1-1/2	63.7	(1,804)	38.9	(1,101)	26.8	(759)	21.1	(600)	17.9	(507)
	2	132.7	(3,758)	81.4	(2,305)	56.0	(1,586)	45.0	(1,274)	38.3	(1,084)
Nitrogen	1/2	25.0	(708)	25.0	(708)	25.0	(708)	23.8	(674)	20.6	(583)
	3/4	60.0	(1,699)	60.0	(1,699)	60.0	(1,699)	60.0	(1,699)	54.2	(1,535)
	1	110.0	(3,115)	110.0	(3,115)	110.0	(3,115)	110.0	(3,115)	110.0	(3,115)

[1] Length of piping includes a 30% allowance for fittings.
[2] One-half inch (12.7 mm) diameter pipe is the minimum size allowed in medical gas systems.
[3] Based on the following maximum pressure drops:
Oxygen, nitrous oxide, and medical air – 5 psig (10 in. Hg)
Vacuum – 1.96 psig (4 in. Hg)
Nitrogen – 20 psig (41 in. Hg)

TABLE 13-7
Maximum Pipe Support Spacing

Pipe Size			Hanger Spacing mm	ft.
DN8	(NPS 1/4)	(3/8 in. O.D.)	1,520	5
DN10	(NPS 3/8)	(1/2 in. O.D.)	1,830	6
DN15	(NPS 1/2)	(5/8 in. O.D)	1,830	6
DN20	(NPS 3/4)	(7/8 in. O.D.)	2,130	7
DN25	(NPS 1)	(1-1/8 in. O.D.)	2,440	8
DN32	(NPS 1-1/4)	(1-3/8 in. O.D.)	2,740	9
DN40 and larger	(NPS 1-1/2)	(1-5/8 in. O.D.)	3,050	10
Vertical risers, all sizes Every floor but not to exceed:			4,570	15

[NFPA 99: 5.1.10.6.4.1]

CHAPTER 14

MANDATORY REFERENCED STANDARDS

TABLE 14-1
Standards for Materials, Equipment, Joints, and Connections

Where more than one standard has been listed for the same material or method, the relevant portions of all such standards shall apply.

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
AHAM DW-1-2004	Household Electric Dishwashers	Appliances
AHAM DW-2PR-92	Plumbing Requirements for Household Dishwashers	Appliances
AHAM FWD-1-92	Food Waste Disposers	Appliances
AHAM FWD-2PR-89	Household Food Waste Disposer Units	Appliances
ANSI A13.1-96 (R03)	Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems	Piping
ANSI A21.10-2003	Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings, 3 in. through 48 in. (75 mm through 1,200 mm), for Water and Other Liquids (same as AWWA C110)	Piping, Ferrous
ANSI A21.11-2000	Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings (same as AWWA C111)	Piping, Ferrous
ANSI A21.51-2002	Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water (same as AWWA C151)	Piping, Ferrous
ANSI A21.53-2000	Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings, 3 in. through 24 in. (76 mm through 610 mm) and 54 in. through 64 in. (1400 mm through 1600 mm), for Water Service (same as AWWA C153)	Piping, Ferrous
ANSI A118.10-99	Load, Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installations	Fixtures
ANSI A137.1-88	Ceramic Tile	Miscellaneous
ANSI B2.1-90	Pipe Threads (Except Dryseal) (replaced by ASME B1.20.1-98)	Joints
ANSI/CSA LC 3-2000	Appliance Stands and Drain Pans	Miscellaneous
ANSI A117.1-2003	Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities	Miscellaneous
ANSI Z4.1-95	Sanitation in Places of Employment (Table 4-1 Note 6)	Miscellaneous
ANSI Z21.5.1a-2003	Gas Clothes Dryers Type 1 Clothes Dryers	Fuel Gas
ANSI Z21.5.2a-2003	Gas Clothes Dryers Type 2 Clothes Dryers	Fuel Gas

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ANSI Z21.10.1-2004	Gas Water Heaters – Volume I – Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less (22 kW)	Appliances
ANSI Z21.10.3-2004	Gas Water Heaters – Volume III – Storage, with Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous Water Heaters	Appliances
ANSI Z21.12b-94	Draft Hoods	Appliances
ANSI Z21.13-2004	Gas-Fired Low-Pressure Steam and Hot-Water Boilers	Appliances
ANSI Z21.15-97	Manually Operated Gas Valves for Appliances, Appliance Connector, Valves, and Hose End Valves	Valves
ANSI Z21.22-2000	Relief Valves for Hot-Water Supply Systems	Valves
ANSI Z21.24-2001	Connectors for Gas Appliances	Appliances
ANSI Z21.41-2003 CSA 6.9-2003	Quick-Disconnect Devices for Use with Gas Fuel Appliances	Joints
ANSI Z21.47b-2003	Gas-Fired Central Furnaces	Fuel Gas
ANSI Z21.56-2001 CSA 4.7-2001	Gas-Fired Pool Heaters	Swimming Pools and Spas
ANSI Z21.69a-2003 CSA 6.16-2003	Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances	Appliances
ANSI Z21.80-2003 CSA 6.22-M2003	Line Pressure Regulators	Fuel Gas
ANSI Z21.81-98 CSA 6.25-M98	Cylinder Connection Devices	Fuel Gas
ANSI Z21.86-2004 CSA 2.32-2004	Vented Gas-Fired Space-Heating Appliances	Appliances
ANSI Z34.1-93	Certification – Third Party Certification Programs for Products Processes, and Services	Certification
ANSI Z83.11-2002	Gas Food Service Equipment	Fuel Gas
ANSI Z124.1-95	Plastic Bathtub Units	Fixtures
ANSI Z124.2-95	Plastic Shower Units	Fixtures
ANSI Z124.3-95	Plastic Lavatories	Fixtures
ANSI Z124.4-96	Plastic Water Closet Bowls and Tanks	Fixtures

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ANSI Z124.5-97	Plastic Toilet (Water Closet) Seats	Fixtures
ANSI Z124.6-97	Plastic Sinks	Fixtures
ANSI Z124.7-97	Prefabricated Plastic Spa Shells	Fixtures
ANSI Z124.8-90	Plastic Bathtub Liners	Fixtures
IAPMO/ANSI Z124.9-2004	Plastic Urinal Fixtures (Note 1)	Fixtures
ANSI Z223.1-2002	National Fuel Gas Code (same as NFPA 54)	Fuel Gas
ISEA Z358.1-2004	Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment	Miscellaneous
ARI 1010-2002	Drinking Fountains and Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking Water Coolers	Appliances
ASCE 25-99	Earthquake Actuated Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices	Fuel Gas
ASHRAE 90.1-2004	Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings	Miscellaneous
ASME A112.1.2-2004	Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems	Fittings
ASME A112.1.3-2000	Air Gap Fittings for Use with Plumbing Fixtures, Appliances, and Appurtenances	Fixtures
ASME A112.3.1-93	Stainless Steel Drainage Systems for Sanitary, Storm, and Chemical Applications, Above and Below Ground (Note 1)	Piping, Ferrous
ASME A112.3.4-2000 (R04)	Macerating Toilet Systems and Related Components	Fixtures
ASME A112.4.1-93(R02)	Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes	Appliances
ASME A112.4.2-2003	Water Closet Personal Hygiene Devices	Fixtures
ASME A112.4.3-99 (R04)	Plastic Fittings for Connecting Water Closets to the Sanitary Drainage System	Piping
ASME A112.4.7-2002	Point of Use and Branch Water Submetering Systems	Miscellaneous
ASME A112.6.1M-97 (R02)	Floor-Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use	Fixtures
ASME A112.6.2-2000 (R04)	Framing-Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
ASME A112.6.3-2001	Floor and Trench Drains	DWV Components
ASME A112.6.4-2003	Roof, Deck, and Balcony Drains	DWV Components
ASME A112.6.7-2001	Enameled and Epoxy Coated Cast Iron and PVC Plastic Sanitary Floor Sinks	Fixtures

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASME A112.14.1-2003	Backwater Valves	Valves
ASME A112.14.3-2000	Grease Interceptors	Fixtures
ASME A112.14.4-2001	Grease Removal Devices	Fixtures
ASME A112.18.1-2005/ CSA B125.1-05	Plumbing Supply Fittings	Fixtures
ASME A112.18.2-2005/ CSA B125.2-05	Plumbing Waste Fittings	Fittings
ASME A112.18.3-2003	Backflow Protection Devices and Systems in Plumbing Fixtures	Kitchen, Lavatory, and Shower Fittings with
ASME A112.18.6-2003	Flexible Water Connectors	Piping
ASME A112.18.7-99 (R04)	Deck Mounted Bath/Shower Transfer Valves with Integral Backflow Protection	Valves
ASME A112.19.1M-94 (R04)	Enameled Cast-Iron Plumbing Fixtures (Supplement 1-1998)	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.2M-2003	Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic Fixtures Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.3M-01(R04)	Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use)	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.4M-94(R04)	Porcelain-Enameled Formed Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Supplement 1-1998)	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.5-99	Trim for Water-Closet Bowls, Tanks, and Urinals	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.7M-95	Whirlpool Bathtub Appliances	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.8M-87(R96)	Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Whirlpool Bathtub Appliances	Swimming Pools and Spas
ASME A112.19.9M-91 (R02)	Non-Vitreous Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.10-2003	Dual Flush Devices for Water Closets	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.12-2000	Wall Mounted and Pedestal Mounted Adjustable and Pivoting Lavatory and Sink Carrier System	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.13-2002	Electrohydraulic Water Closets	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.14-2001	Six-Liter Water Closets Equipped with a Dual Flashing Device	Fixtures
ASME A112.19.15-2001	Bathtub/Whirlpool Bathtubs with Pressure Sealed Doors	Fixtures

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASME A112.20.1-2004	Qualification of Installers of High Purity Systems	Swimming Pools & Spas
ASME A112.20.2-2004	Qualification of Installers of Firestop Systems and Devices for Piping Systems	Certification
ASME A112.21.3M-85 (R01)	Hydrants for Utility and Maintenance Use (Note 1)	Valves
ASME A112.36.2M-91 (R02)	Cleanouts (Note 1)	DWV Components
ASME B1.20.1-83 (R01)	Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch	Joints
ASME B1.20.3-76 (R03)	Dryseal Pipe Threads, Inch	Joints
ASME B16.1-98	Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Classes 25, 125, 250, and 800	Piping, Ferrous
ASME B16.3-98	Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings	Piping, Ferrous
ASME B16.4-98	Gray Iron Threaded Fittings (Includes Revision Services)	Piping, Ferrous
ASME B16.5-2003	Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings	Joints
ASME B16.12-98	Iron Threaded Drainage Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Ferrous
ASME B16.15-85 (R04)	Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings, Classes 125 and 250	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B16.18-2001	Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B16.21-92	Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges	Joints
ASME B16.22-2001	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings Alloy	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B16.23-2002	Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings – DWV	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B16.24-2001	Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B16.26-88	Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B16.29-2001	Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings–DWV Alloy (Note 1)	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B16.33-2002	Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems up to 125 psig	Valves
ASME B16.34-96	Valves – Flanged, Threaded, and Welding End	Valves
ASME B16.39-98	Pipe Unions, Malleable Iron Threaded (Includes Revision Services)	Piping, Ferrous
ASME B16.40- 2002	Manually Operated Thermoplastic Gas Shutoff and Valves in Gas Distribution Systems	Fuel Gas
ASME B16.47-96	Large Diameter Steel Flanges	Piping, Ferrous

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASME B16.50-2001	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-Joint Pressure Fittings	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASME B31.1-2004	Power Piping	Piping
ASME B36.10M-2004	Welded and Seamless Wrought Steel Pipe	Piping, Ferrous
ASME B36.19-85(R94)	Stainless Steel	Piping, Ferrous
ASME Section IV	Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers	Miscellaneous
ASME Section VIII	Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels	Miscellaneous
ASME Section IX	Welding and Brazing Procedures, Welders, Brazers, and Welding and Brazing Operators	Certification
ASSE 1001-2002	Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1002-99	Anti-Siphon Fill Valves (Ballcocks) for Gravity Water Closet Flush Tank	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1003-2001	Water Pressure Reducing Valves	Valves
ASSE 1004-90	Backflow Prevention Requirements for Commercial Dishwashing Machines	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1005-99	Water Heater Drain Valves	Valves
ASSE 1006-86	Residential Use Dishwashers	Appliances
ASSE 1007-86	Home Laundry Equipment	Appliances
ASSE 1008-86	Household Food Waste Disposer Units	Appliances
ASSE 1009-90	Commercial Food Waste Grinder Units	Appliances
ASSE 1010-2004	Water Hammer Arresters	Piping
ASSE 1011-2004	Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1012-2002	Backflow Prevention with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1013-2005	Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers and Reduced Pressure Fire Protection Principle Backflow Preventers	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1014-2005	Hand-Held Showers	Fixtures
ASSE 1015-2005	Double-Check Backflow Prevention Assembly and Double Check Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1016-2005	Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations	Valves
ASSE 1017-2003	Temperature Actuated Mixing Valves for Hot Water Distribution Systems	Valves

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASSE 1018-2001	Trap Seal Primer Valves, Potable Water Supplied	Valves
ASSE 1019-2004	Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrant, Freeze-Resistant Automatic Draining Type	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1020-2004	Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1021-2001	Drains Air Gaps for Domestic Dishwasher Applications	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1022-2003	Backflow Prevention for Beverage Dispensing Equipment	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1023-79	Hot Water Dispensers, Household Storage Type, Electrical	Appliances
ASSE 1024-2003	Dual Check Valve Backflow Preventers	Backflow Prevention
ASSE 1025-78	Diverters for Plumbing Faucets with Hose Spray, Anti-Siphon Type, Residential Applications	Valves
ASSE 1032-2004	Dual Check Valve Type Backflow Preventers for Carbonated Beverage Dispensers – Post Mix Types	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1035-2002	Laboratory Faucet Backflow Preventer	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1037-90	Pressurized Flushing Devices (Flushometers) for Plumbing Fixtures	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1044-2001	Trap Seal Primer Devices-Drainage Types and Electronic Design Types	DWV Components
ASSE 1047-2005	Reduced Pressure Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1048-2005	Double Check Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1052-2004	Hose Connection Backflow Preventers	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1055-97	Chemical Dispensing Systems	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1056-2001	Spill Resistant Vacuum Breakers	Backflow Protection
ASSE 1062-97	Temperature Actuated Flow Reduction (TAFR) Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings	Valves
ASSE 1066-97	Individual Pressure Balancing In-Line Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings (Note 9)	Valves
ASSE 1069-2005	Automatic Temperature Control Mixing Valves	Valves
ASSE 1070-2004	Water Temperature Limiting Devices	Valves
ASSE Series 5000-2004	Professional Qualification Standard for Backflow Prevention Assembly Testers, Repairers, and Surveyors	Backflow Protection

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASSE 6000-2004	Medical Gas Systems Installers, Inspectors, and Verifiers, Maintenance Personnel and Instructors	Certification
ASTM A 47-99 (R04)	Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 48-2003	Gray Iron Castings	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 53-2004a	Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded, and Seamless	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 74-2004a	Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 126-2004	Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 197M-2000	Cupola Malleable Iron (Metric)	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 269-2004	Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 312-2004b	Seamless and Heavy Cold Worked Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 377-2003	Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 479-2005	Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes for Use in Boilers and Other Pressure Vessels	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 518-99(R03)	Corrosion-Resistant High-Silicon Iron Castings	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 536-84(R04)	Ductile Iron Castings	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 653M-2004a	Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 733-2003	Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 861-2004	High-Silicon Iron Pipe and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM A 888-2004a	Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain Waste and Vent Piping Applications	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM B 29-2003	Refined Lead	Joints
ASTM B 32-2004	Solder Metal (Note 4)	Joints
ASTM B 42-2002^{e1}	Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 43-98(R04)	Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes	Piping, Copper Alloy

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASTM B 75-2002	Seamless Copper Tube	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 88-2003	Seamless Copper Water Tube	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 135-2002	Seamless Brass Tube (Metric)	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 152-2000	Copper Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Rolled Bar	Miscellaneous
ASTM B 251-2002[e1]	General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper Copper-Alloy Tube	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 280-2003	Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 302-2002	Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 306-2002	Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 370-2003	Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction	Miscellaneous
ASTM B 447-2002	Welded Copper Tube	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 584-2004	Copper Alloy Sand Casting for General Applications (Note 5)	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 587-97[e1] (R03)	Welded Brass Tube	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 687-99	Brass, Copper, and Chromium-Plated Pipe Nipples	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 813-2000[e1]	Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube	Joints
ASTM B 819-2000	Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems	Piping, Copper Alloy
ASTM B 828-2002	Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings	Joints
ASTM C 14-2003	Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe	Piping, Non-Metallic
ASTM C 296-2000	Asbestos-Cement Pressure Pipe	Piping, Non-Metallic
ASTM C 412-2003	Concrete Drain Tile	Piping, Non-Metallic
ASTM C 425-2004	Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM C 428-97(R02)[e1]	Asbestos-Cement Nonpressure Sewer Pipe (Notes 6 and 7)	Piping, Non-Metallic
ASTM C 443-2005	Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets	Joints
ASTM C 478-2003a	Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections	Miscellaneous
ASTM C 564-2003a	Rubber Gaskets for Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings	Joints

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASTM C 700-2002	Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength, and Perforated	Piping, Non-Metallic
ASTM C 1053-2000	Borosilicate Glass Pipe and Fittings for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Applications (Note 1)	Piping, Non-Metallic
ASTM C 1173-2004	Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Piping Systems	Joints
ASTM C 1277-2004	Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings	Piping, Ferrous
ASTM C 1440-2003	Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gasket Materials for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV), Sewer, Sanitary and Storm Plumbing Systems	Piping, Plastic
ASTM C 1460-2004	Shielded Transition Couplings for Use with Dissimilar DWV Pipe and Fittings Above Ground	Piping, Plastic
ASTM C 1461-2002	Mechanical Couplings Using Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gaskets for Joining Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV); Sewer; Sanitary; and Storm Plumbing Systems for Above and Below Ground	Piping, Plastic
ASTM C 1540-2004	Heavy Duty Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM D 1527-99^{e1}	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Sch. 40 and 80	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 1784-2003	Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 1785-2004a	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Sch. 40, 80, and 120	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 1869-95(R00)	Rubber O-rings for Asbestos-Cement Pipe	Joints
ASTM D 2104-2003	Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Sch. 40	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2235-2004	Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM D 2239-2003	Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, (SDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2241-2004b	Poly(Vinyl Chloride)(PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2282-99^{e1}	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2321-2000	Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications	Piping, Plastic

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASTM D 2447-2003	Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Sch. 40 and 80 (Based on Controlled Outside Diameter)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2464-99e1	Threaded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Sch. 80 (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2466-2002	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Sch. 40 (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2467-2004e1	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Sch, 80 (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2513-2004a	Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe Tubing and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2517-2000e1	Reinforced Epoxy Resin Gas Pressure Pipe and Fittings	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2564-2004	Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems	Joints
ASTM D 2609-2002	Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2657-2003	Practice for Heating Fusion Joining of Polyolefin Pipe Fittings (Note 1)	Joints
ASTM D 2661-2002	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sch. 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2665-2004a	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2672-96a (R03)	Joints for IPS PVC Pipe Using Solvent Cement	Joints
ASTM D 2680-2001	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2729-2003	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2737-2003	Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2751-96a	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sewer Pipe and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2846-99e1	Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 2855-96(R02)	Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM D 2996-2001	Filament-Wound Fiberglass (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 3034-2004a	Type PSM Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 3035- 2003a	Polyethylene(PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) (Based on Controlled Outside Diameter)	Piping, Plastic

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASTM D 3122-95(R02)	Solvent Cements for Styrene-Rubber (SR) Plastic Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM D 3138-2004	Solvent Cements for Transition Joints, Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Piping Components	Joints
ASTM D 3139-98	Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals	Joints
ASTM D 3212-96a (R03)^{e1}	Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals	Joints
ASTM D 3311-2002^{e1}	Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patterns (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 3965-2004	Rigid Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Materials for Pipe and Fittings	Piping, Plastic
ASTM D 4068-2001	Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water-Containment Membrane	Fixtures
ASTM D 4101-2004a	Propylene Plastic Injection and Extrusion Materials	Miscellaneous
ASTM D 4551-96 (R01)	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Flexible Concealed Water-Containment Membrane	Fixtures
ASTM D 6104-97 (R03)	Determining the Performance of Oil/Water Separators Subjected to Surface Run-Off	Fixtures
ASTM E 84-2004	Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	Miscellaneous
ASTM E 119-2000a	Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials	Miscellaneous
ASTM E 814- 2002	Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops	Miscellaneous
ASTM F 402-93(R99)	Safe Handling of Solvent Cements, Primers, and Cleaners Used for Joining Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM F 405-97	Corrugated Polyethylene (PE) Tubing and Fittings	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 409-2002	Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 437-99	Threaded Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Sch. 80	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 438-2004	Socket-Type Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Sch. 40	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 439-2002^{e1}	Socket-Type Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Sch. 80	Piping, Plastic

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASTM F 441-2002	Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Sch. 40 and 80	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 442-99	Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 480-2002	Thermoplastic Well Casing Pipe and Couplings Made in Standard Dimension Ratios (SDR) Schedule 40 and Schedule 80	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 493-2004	Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM F 628-2001	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sch. 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core, (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 656-2002	Primers for Use in Solvent Cement Joints of Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings	Joints
ASTM F 667-97	Large Diameter Corrugated Polyethylene Tubing and Fittings	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 714-2003	Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) (Based on Outside Diameter)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 789-2003	Type PS-46 and Type PS-115 Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Gravity Flow Sewer Pipe and Fittings (Note 1)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 794-2003	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 810-2001	Smoothwall Polyethylene (PE) Pipe for Use in Drainage and Waste Disposal Absorption Fields	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 876-2004a	Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 877-2002a	Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 891-2004	Coextruded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 894-98a	Polyethylene (PE) Large Diameter Profile Wall Sewer and Drain Pipe	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 949-2003	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth Interior and Fittings	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1216-2003	Rehabilitation of Existing Pipelines and Conduits by the Inversion and Curing of a Resin-Impregnated Tube	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1281-2003	Crosslinked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1282-2003	Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe	Piping, Plastic

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASTM F 1412-2001e1	Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings for Corrosive Waste Drainage Systems	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1476-2001	Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Application	Joints
ASTM F 1673-2004	Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Corrosive Waste Drainage Systems	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1743-96(R03)	Rehabilitation of Existing Pipelines and Conduits by Pulled-in-Place Installation of Cured-in-Place Thermosetting Resin Pipe (CIPP)	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1807-2004	Metal Insert Fittings with Copper Crimp Ring for SDR 9 Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1866-98	Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Drainage and DWV Fabricated Fittings, Schedule 40	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1924-2001e1	Plastic Mechanical Fitting for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1948-99ae1	Metallic Mechanical Fittings for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Thermoplastic Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1960-2003	Cold Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1961-2002a	Metal Cold Flare Compression Fittings with Disc Springs for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1970-2001	Special Engineered Fittings or Appurtenances for Use in Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) or Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Systems	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1973-2002	Factory Assembled Anodeless Riser and Transition Fitting in Polyethylene (PE) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 1974-2004	Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Crosslinked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 2080-2004	Cold-Expansion Fittings With Metal Compression Sleeves for Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F 2098-2001	Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert Fittings	Joints
ASTM F 2159-2003	Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Ring for SDR 9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing	Joints
ASTM F 2165-2002	Flexible Pre-Insulated Piping	Piping, Plastic

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
ASTM F 2262-2004	Cross-Linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-Linked Polyethylene Tubing OD Controlled SDR 9	Piping, Plastic
ASTM F2434-2004	Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Tubing	Piping, Plastic
AWS A5.8-2004	Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding	Joints
AWS B2.2-91	Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification	Certification
AWWA C110-2003	Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings, 3 in. through 48 in. (75 mm through 1200 mm), for Water and Other Liquids (same as ANSI A21.10-98)	Piping, Ferrous
AWWA C111-2000	Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings (same as ANSI A21.11-00)	Piping, Ferrous
AWWA C151-2002	Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water (same as ANSI A21.51-91)	Piping, Ferrous
AWWA C153-2000	Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings, 3 in. through 24 in. (76 mm through 610 mm) and 54 in. through 64 in. (1400 mm through 1600 mm), for Water Service (same as ANSI A21.53-00)	Piping, Ferrous
AWWA C203-2002	Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines – Enameled and Tape – Hot Applied	Piping
AWWA C213-2001	Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines	Piping, Ferrous
AWWA C215-2004	Extruded Polyolefin Coatings for the Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines	Piping, Ferrous
AWWA C400-2003	Asbestos-Cement Distribution Pipe, 4 in. through 16 in. (100 mm through 400 mm) for Water Distribution Systems	Piping, Non-Metallic
AWWA C500-2002	Gate Valves for Water and Sewerage Systems Valves	Valves
AWWA C504-2000	Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves	Valves
AWWA C507-99	Ball Valves, 6 in. through 48 in. (150 mm through 1200 mm)	Valves
AWWA C510-97	Double Check Valve Backflow-Prevention Assembly	Backflow Protection
AWWA C511-97	Reduced-Pressure Principle Backflow-Prevention Assemblies	Backflow Protection
AWWA C606-2004	Grooved- and Shouldered-Type Joints	Joints

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
AWWA C900-97	Poly (Vinyl Chloride)(PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4 in. through 12 in., for Water Distribution	Piping, Plastic
AWWA C901-2002	Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing, 1/2 in. (13 mm) through 3 in. (76 mm), for Water Service	Piping, Plastic
AWWA C907-91	Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure Fittings for Water - 4 in. Through 8 in. (100 mm through 200 mm)	Piping, Plastic
CGA V-1	Compressed Gas Association Standard for Compressed Gas Cylinder Valve Outlet and Inlet Connection	Valves
CGA S-1.3	Pressure Relief Device Standards-Part 3-Stationary Storage Containers for Compressed Gases	Fuel Gas
CISPI 301-2004a	Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications (Note 1)	Piping, Ferrous
CISPI 310-2004	Couplings for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications	Joints
CSA 3-92	U.S. Requirements for Excess Flow Valves	Valves
CSA A257-2003	Concrete Pipe and Manhole Sections	Piping
CSA B45-2002	Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
CSA B45.1-2002	Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
CSA B45.2-2002	Enameled Cast-Iron Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
CSA B45.3-2002	Porcelain-Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
CSA B45.4-2002	Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
CSA B45.5-2002	Plastic Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures
CSA B45.9-2002	Macerating Systems and Related Components	DWV Components
CSA B45.10-2001	Hydromassage Bathtubs	Fixtures
CSA B45.11-2004	Glass Lavatories	Fixtures
CSA B64-2001	Backflow Preventers and Vacuum Breakers	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.1.1-2001	Vacuum Breaker, Atmospheric Type (AVB)	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.1.2-2001	Vacuum Breaker, Pressure Type (PVB)	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.2-2001	Vacuum Breaker, Hose Connection Type (HCVB)	Backflow Protection

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
CSA B64.2.1.1-2001	Vacuum Breaker, Hose Connection Type with Automatic Drainage Feature (HCVB)	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.4-2001	Backflow Preventers, Reduced Pressure Principle Type (RP)	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.4.1-2001	Backflow Preventers, Reduced Pressure Principle Type for Fire System (RPF)	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.5-2001	Backflow Preventers, Double Check Valve Type (DVCA)	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.5.1-2001	Backflow Preventers, Double Check Valve Type for Fire System (DVCAF)	Backflow Protection
CSA B64.7-2001	Vacuum Preventers, Laboratory Faucet Type (LFVB)	Backflow Protection
CSA B125-2001	Plumbing Fittings	Valves
CSA B137.1-2002	Polyethylene Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings for Cold Water Pressure Services	Piping, Plastic
CSA B137.5-2002	Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications	Piping, Plastic
CSA B137.9-2002	Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene Composite Pressure-Pipe Systems	Piping, Plastic
CSA B137.10-2002	Crosslinked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene Composite Pressure-Pipe Systems	Piping, Plastic
CSA B181.3-2002	Polyolefin Laboratory Drainage Systems	Piping/Plastic
CSA B242-80(R04)	Groove and Shoulder Type Mechanical Pipe Couplings	Fittings
CSA B272-93 (R00)	Prefabricated Self-Sealing Roof Vent Flashing	Fittings
CSA B356-2000	Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Supply Systems	Valves
CSA G401-2001	Corrugated Steel Pipe Products	Fittings
IAPMO PS 1-2004	Prefabricated Septic Tanks	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 4-2004	Drains for Prefabricated and Precast Showers	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 14-2002	Flexible Metallic Field Fabricated Water Connectors	Piping
IAPMO PS 16-2004	Subdrains for Built-Up Shower Pans	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 23-2004	Dishwasher Drain Air Gaps	Backflow Protection
IAPMO PS 25-2002	Metallic Fittings for Joining Polyethylene Pipe for Water Service and Yard Piping	Joints

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
IAPMO PS 33-2004	Flexible PVC Hose for Pools, Hot Tubs, Spas and Jetted Bathtub	Piping, Plastic
IAPMO PS 34-2003	Encasement Sleeve for Potable Water Pipe and Tubing	Piping
IAPMO PS 36-90	Lead-Free Sealing Compounds for Threaded Joints	Joints
IAPMO PS 37-90	Black Plastic PVC or PE Pressure-Sensitive Corrosion Preventive Tape	Piping
IAPMO PS 40-2001	Anodeless Transition Riser for Use with PVC Gas Yard Piping	Fuel Gas
IAPMO PS 42-96	Pipe Alignment and Secondary Support Systems	Piping
IAPMO PS 43-91	Cushioned Bathtubs and Whirlpool Bathtub Appliances	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 46-2004	Non-Integral Tile Flange Kits	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 50-2003	Flush Valves with Dual Flush Devices For Water Closets	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 51-98	Plastic and Metallic Expansion Joints	Joints
IAPMO PS 52-2004b	Sumps and Sewage Ejector Tanks	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 53-92	Grooved Mechanical Pipe Couplings and Grooved End Fittings	Joints
IAPMO PS 54-2003a	Metallic and Plastic Utility Boxes	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 55-92	Bathwaste Strainer Drains	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 57-2002	PVC Hydraulically Actuated Diaphragm Type Water Control Valves	Valves
IAPMO PS 59-92	Septic Effluent and Waste Water Diverter Valves	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 60-96	Sewage Holding Tank Containing Sewage Ejector Pump for Direct-Mounted Water Closet	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 61-92	Fabricated Stainless Steel Security Water Closets	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 63-2004a	Plastic Leaching Chambers	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 64-98	Pipe Flashings	Piping
IAPMO PS 65-2002	Air Gap Units for Water Conditioning Equipment Installation	Backflow Protection
IAPMO PS 66-2000	Dielectric Waterway Fittings	Piping
IAPMO PS 67-93	Early-Closure Replacement Flappers or Early-Closure Replacement Flapper With Mechanical Assemblies	Fixtures

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
IAPMO PS 69-2003a	Plastic Bathwaste and Overflow Assemblies	Piping, Plastic
IAPMO PS 72-2003	Valves with Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers	Valves
IAPMO PS 73-93	Dental Vacuum Pumps	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 76-95	Ballcock or Flushometer Valve Tailpiece Trap Primers and Trap Primer Receptors/Adapters	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 79-2003	Multiport Electronic Trap Primer	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 80-2003b	Grease Interceptors and Clarifiers	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 81-2000	Precast Concrete Seepage Pit Liners and Covers	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 82-95	Fiberglass (Glass Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Fittings	Piping, Plastic
IAPMO PS 85-95	Tools for Mechanically Formed Tee Connections in Copper Tubing	Piping
IAPMO PS 86-95	Rainwater Diverter Valve for Non-Roofed Area Slabs	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 87-95	Diverter and Shutoff Valves for Pool/Spas	Valves
IAPMO PS 88-2002	Pre-Pressurized Potable Water Tanks	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 89-95	Soaking and Hydrotherapy (Whirlpool) Bathtubs with Hydraulic Seatlift	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 90-2003	Elastomeric Test Caps/Cleanout Caps	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 91-95	Plastic Stabilizers for Use with Plastic Closet Bends	Piping, Plastic
IAPMO PS 92-2003	Heat Exchangers	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 93-2004a	Water Closet Seats with Spray, Water Closet Seats with Spray and other Devices with Spray for Water Closet	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 94-2001a	P-Trap, Supply Stop, and Riser Insulated Protector	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 95-2001	Drain, Waste, and Vent Hangers and Plastic Pipe Support Hooks	Piping
IAPMO PS 96-2002	Passive Direct Solar Water Heaters	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 97-2001	Mechanical Cast-Iron Closet Flanges	Piping, Ferrous
IAPMO PS 98-96	Prefabricated Fiberglass Church Baptistries	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 99-2004	Terrazzo Marble, Concrete, and Granite Plumbing Fixtures	Fixtures

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
IAPMO PS 100-96	Porous Filter Protector for Subdrain Weep Holes	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 101-97	Suction Relief Valves	Valves
IAPMO PS 102-2004a	Pedestal Lavatory Trap	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 104-97	Pressure Relief Connection for Dispensing Equipment	Valves
IAPMO PS 105-97	Polyethylene Distribution Boxes	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 106-98	Prefabricated, Tileable Shower Receptors	Fixtures
IAPMO PS 107-98	Aramid-Reinforced Rubber Hose for Use in Non-Potable Water Radiant Heating and Snow Melting	Piping, Plastic
IAPMO PS 108-98	Restaurant Fire Suppression Systems	Appliances
IAPMO PS 110-99	PVC Cold Water Compression Fittings	Fittings
IAPMO PS 111-99	PVC Cold Water Gripper Fittings	Fittings
IAPMO PS 112-99	PVC Plastic Valves for Cold Water Distribution Systems Outside a Building and CPVC Plastic Valves for Hot and Cold Water Distribution Systems	Valves
IAPMO PS 113-99^{e1}	Hydraulically Powered Household Food Waster Grinders	Appliances
IAPMO PS 114-99^{e1}	Remote, Floor Box Industrial Water Supply, Air Supply, Drainage	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 115-2002	Hot Water Demand or Automatic Activated Hot Water Pumping Systems	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 116-99	Hot Water Circulating Devices Which Do Not Use a Pump	Miscellaneous
IAPMO PS 117-2004a	Press Type or Plain End Rubber Gasketed with Nail Connector Fittings for Copper Alloy Installation on Copper Tubing	Fittings
IAPMO PS 118-2000	FOG (Fats, Oils, Greases) Disposal Systems	DWV Components
IAPMO PS 119-2000	Water Energized Sump Pump	Miscellaneous
IAS 1-91	U.S. Requirements for Indirect Water Heaters for Use with External Heat Source	Miscellaneous
IAS LC 1b-2001 CSA 6.26-M99	Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST) Fuel Gas	Fuel Gas
ISO Guide 65-96	General Requirements for Bodies Operating Product Certification Systems	Certification
MSS SP-25-98	Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges, and Unions	Piping

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
MSS SP-42-2004	Class 150 Corrosion-Resistant Gate-Globe, Angle, and Check Valves with Flanged and Butt Weld Ends	Piping, Ferrous
MSS SP-44-96	Steel Pipeline Flanges	Piping, Ferrous
MSS SP-58-2002	Pipe Hangers and Supports – Materials, Design, and Manufacture	Piping
MSS SP-67-2002a	Butterfly Valves	Valves
MSS SP-69-2002	Pipe Hangars and Supports - Selection and Application	Piping
MSS SP-70-98	Cast-Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	Valves
MSS SP-71-97	Cast-Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	Valves
MSS SP-72-99	Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service	Valves
MSS SP-73-2003	Brazing Joints for Wrought and Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings	Joints
MSS SP-78-98	Cast-Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	Valves
MSS SP-80-2003	Bronze Gate-Globe, Angle, and Check Valves	Valves
MSS SP-83-2001	Class 300 Steel Pipe Unions Socket-Welding and Threaded	Piping, Ferrous
MSS SP-89-98	Pipe Hangars and Supports - Fabrication and Installation Practices	Piping
MSS SP-104-2003	Wrought Copper Solder Joint Pressure Fittings	Piping, Copper Alloy
MSS SP-106-2003	Cast Copper Alloy Flanges and Flanges Fittings, CLass 125, 150, and 300	Piping, Copper Alloy
MSS SP-109-97	Welded Fabricated Copper Solder Joint Pressure Fittings	Piping, Copper Alloy
MSS SP-123-98	Non-Ferrous Threaded and Solder-Joint Unions for Use with Copper Water Tube	Piping, Copper Alloy
NFPA 13R-2002	Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height	Miscellaneous
NFPA 13D-2002	Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes	Miscellaneous
NFPA 31-2001	Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment	Miscellaneous
NFPA 54-2002	National Fuel Gas Code (same as ANSI Z223.1)	Fuel Gas
NFPA 58-2004	Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases	Fuel Gas

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
NFPA 85-2004	Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code	Appliances
NFPA 99-2002	Health Care Facilities	Piping
NFPA 99C-2002	Gas and Vacuum Systems	Piping
NFPA 130-2003	Fixed Guideway Transit and Passenger Rail Systems	Miscellaneous
NFPA 211-2003	Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances	Miscellaneous
NFPA 502-2004	Road Tunnels, Bridges, and Other Limited Access Highways	Miscellaneous
NFPA 1989-2003	Breathing Air Quality for Fire and Emergency Services Respiration Protection	Miscellaneous
NSF 3-2003	Commercial Spray-Type Dishwashing and Glasswashing Machines	Appliances
NSF 12-2003e	Automatic Ice Making Equipment	Appliances
NSF 14-2004[1]	Plastic Piping Components and Related Materials	Piping, Plastic
NSF 18-2004	Manual Food and Beverage Dispensing Equipment	Appliances
NSF 24-88(R96)	Plumbing System Components for Manufactured Homes and Recreational Vehicles	Miscellaneous
NSF 29-2003	Chemical Feeders for Commercial Dishwashers	Appliances
NSF 40-2000	Residential Wastewater Treatment Systems	DWV Components
NSF 41-99	Non-Liquid Saturated Treatment Systems	DWV Components
NSF 42-2002e	Drinking Water Treatment Units–Aesthetic Effects	Appliances
NSF 44-2004	Residential Cation Exchange Water Softeners	Appliances
NSF 46-2004	Evaluation of Components and Devices Used in Wastewater Treatment Systems	DWV Components
NSF 53-2004	Drinking Water Treatment Units–Health Effects	Appliances
NSF 58-2004	Reverse-Osmosis Drinking Water Treatment Systems	Appliances
NSF 61-2004	Drinking Water System Components–Health Effects	Miscellaneous
NSF 62-2004	Water Distillation Systems	Appliances
NSPI 1-2003	Public Swimming Pools	Swimming Pools and Spas
PDI G-101-85	Testing and Rating Procedure for Grease Interceptors with Appendix of Sizing and Installation Data	DWV Components

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
PDI-WH 201-92	Water Hammer Arresters	Piping
SAE J 512-97	Automotive Tube Fittings	Fittings
SAE J1670-93	Type F Clamps for Plumbing Applications	Joints
SAMA LF6a	Medical Care Facility Brassware	Miscellaneous
UL 80-2004	Steel Inside Tanks for Oil-Burner Fuel	Miscellaneous
UL 103-2001	Factory-Built Chimneys for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances	Miscellaneous
UL 125-97	Valves for Anhydrous Ammonia and LPG (Other than Safety Relief)	Valves
UL 132-97	Safety Relief Valves for Anhydrous Ammonia and LPG	Valves
UL 144-99	LPG Regulators	Valves
UL 174-2004	Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters	Appliances
UL 252-2003	Compressed Gas Regulations	Valves
UL 296-2003	Oil Burners	Appliances
UL 343-97	Pumps for Oil-Burning Appliances	Pumps
UL 352-97	Constant-Level Oil Valves	Valves
UL 378-93	Draft Equipment	Miscellaneous
UL 399-93	Drinking-Water Coolers	Appliances
UL 430-2004	Waste Disposers	Appliances
UL 441-96	Gas Vents	Miscellaneous
UL 443-95	Steel Auxiliary Tanks for Oil-Burner Fuel	Miscellaneous
UL 499-97	Electrical Heating Appliances	Appliances
UL 563-95	Ice Makers	Appliances
UL 569-95	Pigtails and Flexible Hose Connectors for LP-Gas	Fuel Gas
UL 723-2004	Standard Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	Miscellaneous
UL 726-95	Oil-Fired Boiler Assemblies	Appliances
UL 732-95	Oil-Fired Storage Tank Water Heaters	Appliances

Standard Number	Standard Title	Application
UL 749-97	Household Dishwashers	Appliances
UL 778-2002	Motor-Operated Water Pumps	Pumps
UL 834-2004	Heating, Water Supply, and Power Boilers–Electric	Appliances
UL 921-96	Commercial Electric Dishwashers	Appliances
UL 959-2001	Factory Built, Medium Heat Appliance Chimneys	Miscellaneous
UL 1206-2003	Electric Commercial Clothes Washing Equipment	Appliances
UL 1453-2004	Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters	Appliances
WQA S-300-91	Point-of-Use Low Pressure Reverse Osmosis Drinking Water Systems	Appliances

Notes:

1 Although this standard is referenced in Table 14-1, some of the pipe, tubing, fittings, valves, or fixtures included in the standard are not acceptable for use under the provisions of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

4 See Section 316.1.3 for restriction.

5 Alloy C85200 for cleanout plugs.

6 Limited to domestic sewage.

7 Type II only.

9 ASSE 1066 is not intended to limit the maximum outlet temperature at point of use.

10 See Section 315.0 for trenching, excavation, and backfilling requirements when installing building drains and sewers. Engineers may wish to consult ASTM D 2321 when preparing plans and specifications for sewer mains or specific projects.

TABLE 14-1 INDEX

Standards for Materials, Equipment, Joints, and Connections

Backflow Protection

Certification

Fixtures (continued)

Joints (continued)

Kitchen, Lavatory, and Shower Fittings with Attached Hose Outlets

Miscellaneous

Piping, Copper Alloy (continued)

Piping, Ferrous

Piping, Ferrous (continued)

Piping, Non-Metallic

Piping, Plastic

Piping, Plastic (continued)

Valves (continued)

ABBREVIATIONS IN TABLE 14-1

AHAM	Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers, 1111 19th Street, N.W., Suite 402, Washington DC 20036.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute, Inc., 25 W. 42nd Street, 4th floor, New York, NY 10036.
ARI	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute, 400 N. Fairfax Drive, Suite 200, Arlington, VA 22203.
ASCE	The American Society of Civil Engineers, 1801 Alexander Bell Drive, Reston, VA 20191.
ASHRAE	The American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc., 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329-2305.
ASME	The American Society of Mechanical Engineering, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016.
ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering, 901 Canterbury, Suite A, Westlake, Ohio 44145.
ASTM	American Society of Testing and Materials, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959.
AWS	American Welding Society, 550 NW LeJuene Road, Miami, FL 33126.
AWWA	American Water Works Association, 6666 W. Quincy Avenue, Denver, CO 80235.
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute, 5959 Shallowford Road, Suite 419, Chattanooga, TN 37421.
CSA	Canadian Standards Association, 5060 Spectrum Way, Suite 100, Mississauga, Ontario, L4W 5N6, Canada.
(D) or [D]	Discontinued.
e1	An editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.
FS	Federal Specifications, Federal Supply Service, Standards Division, General Services Administration, 7th and D Streets, Washington, DC 20407.
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, 5001 E. Philadelphia Street, Ontario, CA 91761.
ICC	International Code Council, 5203 Leesburg Pike, Suite 600, Falls Church, VA 22041.
ISO	International Organization for Standardization, 1 Rue de Varebre, Casa Postale 56, CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland.
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, 127 Park Street, N.E., Vienna, VA 22180.
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association, P.O. Box 9101, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101.
NSF	NSF International, 789 Dixboro Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48113-0140
NSPI	National Spa and Pool Institute, 2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Alexandria, VA 22314.
PDI	Plumbing and Drainage Institute, 800 Turnpike Street, Suite 300, North Andover, MA 01845.
UL	Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062.
WQA	Water Quality Association, 4151 Naperville Road, Lisle, IL 60532-1088.

CHAPTER 15

FIRESTOP PROTECTION

1501.0 General Requirements.

1501.1 Applicability. All piping penetrations of required fire-resistance-rated walls, partitions, floors, floor/ceiling assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies, or shaft enclosures shall be protected in accordance with the requirements of the Building Code, and this chapter.

1502.0 Plans and Specifications.

1502.1 Plans and specifications shall indicate with sufficient detail how penetrations of fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be firestopped prior to obtaining design approval.

1503.0 Installation.

1503.1 Firestop materials shall be installed in accordance with this chapter, the Building Code, and the manufacturer's instructions.

1504.0 Definitions.

1504.1 Penetration Firestop System. A specific assemblage of field-assembled materials, or a factory-made device, which has been tested to a standard test method and, when installed properly on penetrating piping materials, is capable of maintaining the fire-resistance rating of assemblies penetrated.

1504.2 F Rating. The time period that the penetration firestop system limits the spread of fire through the penetration, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 814.

1504.3 T Rating. The time period that the penetration firestop system, including the penetrating item, limits the maximum temperature rise of 325°F above its initial temperature through the penetration on the nonfire side, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 814.

1505.0 Combustible Piping Installations.

1505.1 Combustible piping installations shall be protected in accordance with the appropriate fire resistance rating requirements in the Building Code that list the acceptable area, height, and type of construction for use in specific occupancies to assure compliance and integrity of the fire resistance rating prescribed.

1505.2 When penetrating a fire-resistance-rated wall, partition, floor, floor-ceiling assembly, roof-ceiling assembly, or shaft enclosure, the fire resistance rating of the assembly shall be restored to its original rating.

1505.3 Penetrations shall be protected by an approved penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or ASTM E 814, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch of water. Systems shall have an F rating of at least 1 hour but not less than the required fire resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. Systems protecting floor penetrations shall have a T rating of at least 1 hour but not less than the required fire resistance rating of the floor being penetrated. Floor penetrations contained within the cavity of a wall at the location of the floor penetration do not require a T rating. No T rating shall be required for floor penetrations by piping that is not in direct contact with combustible material.

1505.4 When piping penetrates a rated assembly, combustible piping shall not connect to non-combustible piping unless it can be demonstrated that the transition complies with the requirements of Section 1505.3.

1505.5 Insulation and Coverings. Insulation and coverings on or in the penetrating item shall not be permitted unless the specific insulating or covering material has been tested as part of the penetrating firestop system.

1505.6 Sleeves. Where sleeves are used, the sleeves should be securely fastened to the fire-resistance-rated assembly. The (inside) annular space between the sleeve and the penetrating item and the (outside) annular space between the sleeve and the fire-resistance-rated assembly shall be firestopped in accordance with the requirements for a sleeve penetrating item.

1506.0 Non-combustible Piping Installations.

1506.1 Noncombustible piping installations shall be protected in accordance with the appropriate fire resistance rating requirements in the Building Code that list the acceptable area, height, and type of construction for use in specific occupancies to ensure compliance and integrity of the fire-resistance rating prescribed.

1506.2 When penetrating a fire-resistance-rated wall, partition, floor, floor-ceiling assembly, roof-ceiling assembly, or shaft enclosure, the fire-resistance rating of the assembly shall be restored to its original rating.

Exceptions:

(1) Concrete, mortar, or grout may be used to fill the annular spaces around cast-iron,

copper, or steel piping that penetrates concrete or masonry fire-resistant-rated assemblies. The nominal diameter of the penetrating item should not exceed 6 inches (15.2 cm), and the opening size should not exceed 144 inches^2 (929 cm^2).

The thickness of concrete, mortar, or grout should be the full thickness of the assembly or the thickness necessary to provide a fire-resistance rating not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the assembly penetrated , or

(2) The material used to fill the annular space shall prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the assembly, when tested to standard(s) referenced in Section 1506.3.

1506.3 Penetrations shall be protected by an approved penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or ASTM E 814, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch of water. Systems shall have an F rating of at least 1 hour but not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. Systems protecting floor penetrations shall have a T rating of at least 1 hour but not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the floor being penetrated. Floor penetrations contained within the cavity of a wall at the location of the floor penetration do not require a T rating. No T rating shall be required for floor penetrations by piping that is not in direct contact with combustible material.

1506.4 When piping penetrates a rated assembly, combustible piping shall not connect to noncombustible piping unless it can be demonstrated that the transition complies with the requirements of Section 1506.3.

1506.5 Unshielded couplings shall not be used to connect noncombustible piping unless it can be demonstrated that the fire-resistive integrity of the penetration is maintained.

1506.6 Sleeves. Where sleeves are used, the sleeves should be securely fastened to the fire-resistance-rated assembly. The (inside) annular space between the sleeve and the penetrating item and the (outside) annular space between the sleeve and the fire-resistance-rated assembly shall be firestopped in accordance with the requirements for a sleeve-penetrating item.

1506.7 Insulation and Coverings. Insulation and coverings on or in the penetrating item shall not be permitted unless the specific insulating or covering material has been tested as part of the penetrating firestop system.

1507.0 Required Inspection.

1507.1 General. Prior to being concealed, piping penetrations shall be inspected by the Authority Having Jurisdiction to verify compliance with the fire-resistance rating prescribed in the Building Code.

1507.2 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall conduct a thorough examination of sufficient representative installations, including destructive inspection, to provide verification of satisfactory compliance with this chapter, the appropriate manufacturers' installation standards applied by the installer, construction documents, specifications, and applicable manufacturers' product information.

1507.3 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall determine the type, size, and quantity of penetrations to be inspected.

1507.4 The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall compare the field installations with the documentation supplied by the installer to determine the following:

(1) The required F ratings (1, 2, 3, or 4 hour) and T ratings (0, 1, 2, 3, or 4 hour) of the firestop penetration firestop systems are suitable for the assembly being penetrated.

(2) The penetrating firestop systems are appropriate for the penetrating items, as documented through testing of the systems conducted by an independent testing agency.

(3) The penetrating firestop system is installed as tested.

Chapter 16
GRAY WATER SYSTEMS

Part I

1601.0 Gray Water Systems – General.

(A) The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the construction, alteration, and repair of gray water systems for underground landscape irrigation. Installations shall be allowed only in single-family dwellings. The system shall have no connection to any potable water system and shall not result in any surfacing of the gray water. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, the provisions of this code shall be applicable to gray water installation.

(B) The type of system shall be determined on the basis of location, soil type, and groundwater level, and shall be designed to accept all gray water connected to the system from the residential building. The system, except as otherwise approved, shall consist of a holding tank or tanks that discharge into subsurface irrigation/disposal fields.

(C) No gray water system or part thereof shall be located on any lot other than the lot that is the site of the building or structure that discharges the gray water, nor shall any gray water system or part thereof be located at any point having less than the minimum distances indicated in Table 16-1.

(D) No permit for any gray water system shall be issued until a plot plan with appropriate data satisfactory to the Authority Having Jurisdiction has been submitted and approved. When there is insufficient lot area or inappropriate soil conditions for adequate absorption of the gray water, as determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, no gray water system shall be permitted.

(E) No permit shall be issued for a gray water system on any property in a geologically sensitive area as determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(F) Private sewage disposal systems existing or to be constructed on the premises shall comply with Appendix K of this code. In addition, appropriate clearances from the gray water systems shall be maintained as provided in Table 16-1. The capacity of the private sewage disposal system, including required future areas, shall not be decreased or otherwise affected by the existence or proposed installation of a gray water system servicing the premises.

1602.0 Definition.

Gray water is untreated household waste water that has not come into contact with toilet waste. Gray water includes used water from bathtubs, showers, and bathroom wash basins, and water from clothes-washers and laundry tubs. It shall not include wastewater from kitchen sinks or dishwashers.

1603.0 Permit.

It shall be unlawful for any person to construct, install, or alter, or cause to be constructed, installed, or altered any gray water system in a building or on a premises without first obtaining a permit to do such work from the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1604.0 Drawings and Specifications.

The Authority Having Jurisdiction may require any or all of the following information to be included with or in the plot plan before a permit is issued for a gray water system, or at any time during the construction thereof:

(A) Plot plan drawn to scale and completely dimensioned, showing lot lines and structures, direction and approximate slope of surface, location of all present or proposed retaining walls, drainage channels, water supply lines, wells, paved areas and structures on the plot, number of bedrooms and plumbing fixtures in each structure, location of private sewage disposal system and 100 percent expansion area or building sewer connecting to the public sewer, and location of the proposed gray water system.

(B) Details of construction necessary to ensure compliance with the requirements of this chapter, together with a full description of the complete installation, including installation methods, construction, and materials as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(C) A log of soil formations and groundwater level as determined by test holes dug in proximity to any proposed irrigation area, together with a statement of water absorption characteristics of the soil at the proposed site as determined by approved percolation tests.

> **Exception:** The Authority Having Jurisdiction may allow the use of Table 16-2 in lieu of percolation tests.

1605.0 Inspection and Testing.

(A) Inspection.

(1) All applicable provisions of this chapter and of Section 103.5 of this code shall be complied with.

(2) System components shall be properly identified as to manufacturer.

(3) Holding tanks shall be installed on dry, level, well-compacted soil if underground or on a level three (3) inch (76 mm) concrete slab if aboveground.

(4) Holding tanks shall be anchored against overturning.

(5) If a design is predicated on soil tests, the irrigation/disposal field shall be installed at the same location and depth as the tested area.

(6) Installation shall conform with the equipment and installation methods identified in the approved plans.

(B) Testing.

(1) Holding tanks shall be filled with water to the overflow line prior to and during inspection. All seams and joints shall be left exposed, and the tank shall remain watertight.

(2) A flow test shall be performed through the system to the point of gray water irrigation/disposal. All lines and components shall be watertight.

1606.0 Procedure for Estimating Gray Water Discharge.

(A) The number of occupants of each dwelling unit shall be calculated as follows:

First bedroom	2
Each additional bedroom	1

(B) The estimated gray water flows for each occupant shall be calculated as follows:

Showers, bathtubs, and washbasins	25 GPD (95LPD)
Laundry	15 GPD (57 LPD)

(C) The total number of occupants shall be multiplied by the applicable estimated gray water discharge as provided above, and the type of fixtures connected to the gray water system.

Example 1:

Single-family dwelling; three bedrooms with showers, bathtubs, washbasins; and laundry facilities all connected to the gray water system:

Total number of occupants = 2 + 1 + 1 = 4

Estimated gray water flow = 4 x (25 + 15) = 160 GPD
(metric) = 4 x (95 + 57) = 608 LPD

Example 2:

Single-family dwelling; four bedrooms with only the clothes washer connected to the gray water system:

Total number of occupants = 2 + 1 + 1 + 1 = 5

Estimated gray water flow = 5 x 15 = 75 GPD
(metric) = 5 x 57 = 285 LPD

1607.0 Required Area of Subsurface Irrigation/Disposal Fields (See Figure 16-5.)

Each valved zone shall have a minimum effective irrigation area in square feet as determined by Table 16-2 for the type of soil found in the excavation, based upon a calculation of estimated gray water discharge pursuant to Section 1606.0 of this chapter, or the size of the holding tank, whichever is larger. The area of the irrigation/disposal field shall be equal to the aggregate length of the perforated pipe sections within the valved zone multiplied the width of the proposed irrigation/disposal field. Each proposed gray water system shall include at least three (3) valved zones, and each zone shall be in compliance with the provisions of the section. No excavation for an irrigation/disposal field shall extend within five (5) vertical feet of the highest known seasonal groundwater, nor to a depth where gray water may contaminate the groundwater or ocean water. The applicant shall supply evidence of groundwater depth to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1608.0 Determination of Maximum Absorption Capacity.

(A) Wherever practicable, irrigation/disposal field size shall be computed from Table 16-2.

(B) In order to determine the absorption quantities of questionable soils other than those listed in Table 16-2, the proposed site may be subjected to percolation tests acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(C) When a percolation test is required, no gray water system shall be permitted if the test shows the absorption capacity of the soil is less than eighty-three hundredths (0.83) gallons per square foot (33.8 L/m^2) or more than five and twelve hundredths (5.12) gallons per square foot (208.5 L/m^2) of leaching area per twenty-four (24) hours.

1609.0 Holding Tank Construction. (See Figures 16-1, 16-2, 16-3 and 16-4.)

(A) Plans for all holding tanks shall be submitted to the Authority Having Jurisdiction for approval. Such plans shall show all dimensions, structural calculations, bracings, and such other pertinent data as may be required. A minimum capacity of fifty (50) gallons (189 L) is required.

(B) Holding tanks shall be constructed of solid, durable materials not subject to excessive corrosion or decay and shall be watertight.

(C) Each holding tank shall be vented as required by Chapter 9 of this code and shall have a locking, gasketed access opening or approved equivalent to allow for inspection and cleaning.

(D) Each holding tank shall have its rated capacity permanently marked on the unit. In addition, a sign stating GRAY WATER IRRIGATION SYSTEM, DANGER — UNSAFE WATER shall be permanently marked on the holding tank.

(E) Each holding tank installed aboveground shall have an emergency drain separate from that connecting the tank with the irrigation/disposal fields and an overflow drain. The emergency and overflow drains shall have permanent connections to the building drain or building sewer, upstream of septic tanks, if any. The overflow drain shall not be equipped with a shutoff valve.

(F) The overflow and emergency drainpipes shall not be less in size than the inlet pipe. The vent size shall be determined based on the total gray water fixture units as outlined in Table 7-5 of this code. Unions or equally effective fittings shall be provided for all piping connected to the holding tank.

(G) Each holding tank shall be structurally designed to withstand all anticipated earth or other loads. All holding tank covers shall be capable of supporting an earth load of not less than three hundred (300) pounds per square foot (1464.6 kg/m^2) when the tank is designed for underground installation.

(H) If a holding tank is installed underground, the system must be designed so that the tank overflow will gravity drain to the existing sewer line or septic tank. The tank shall be protected against sewer line backflow by a backwater valve.

(I) Materials.

(1) Holding tanks shall be steel, protected from corrosion, both externally and internally by an approved coating or other acceptable means; shall meet nationally recognized standards for the intended use; and shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(2) Holding tanks constructed of alternate material may be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, provided they comply with approved applicable standards.

1610.0 Valves and Piping. (See Figures 16-1, 16-2, 16-3, and 16-4.)

Gray water piping discharging into the holding tank or having a direct connection to the sanitary drain or sewer piping shall be downstream of an approved waterseal-type trap(s). If no such trap(s) exists, an approved vented running trap shall be installed upstream of the connection to protect the building from any possible waste or sewer gases. All gray water piping shall be marked or have a continuous tape marked with the words DANGER — UNSAFE WATER. All valves, including the three-way valve, shall be readily accessible and approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. A backwater valve installed pursuant to this code shall be provided on all holding tank drain connections to the sanitary drain or sewer piping.

1611.0 Irrigation/Disposal Field Construction. (See Figure 16-5.)

(A) Perforated sections shall be a minimum three (3) inch (80 mm) diameter and shall be constructed of perforated high-density polyethylene pipe, perforated ABS pipe, perforated PVC pipe, or other approved materials, provided that sufficient openings are available for distribution of the gray water into the trench area. Material, construction, and perforation of the pipe shall be in compliance with the appropriate absorption fields drainage piping standards and shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(B) Filter material, clean stone, gravel, slag, or similar filter material acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, varying in size from three-quarter (3/4) inch (20 mm) to two and one-half (2-1/2) inch (65 mm) shall be placed in the trench to the depth and grade required by this section. The perforated section shall be laid on the filter material in an approved manner. The perforated section shall then be covered with filter material to the minimum depth required by this section. The filter material shall then be covered with untreated building paper, straw, or similar porous material to prevent closure of voids with earth backfill. No earth backfill shall be placed over the filter material cover until after inspection and acceptance.

(C) Irrigation/disposal fields shall be constructed as follows:

(See chart on following page)

(D) When necessary on sloping ground to prevent excessive line slopes, irrigation/disposal lines shall be stepped. The lines between each horizontal leaching section shall be made with approved watertight joints and installed on natural or unfilled ground.

1612.0 Special Provisions

(A) Other collection and distribution systems may be approved by the local Authority Having Jurisdiction, as allowed by Section 301.0 of this code.

(B) Nothing contained in this chapter shall be construed to prevent the Authority Having Jurisdiction from requiring compliance with higher requirements than those contained herein, where such higher requirements are essential to maintain a safe and sanitary condition.

	Minimum	Maximum
Number of drain lines per valved zone	1	—
Length of each perforated line	—	100 ft. (30,840 mm)
Bottom width of trench	12 in. (305 mm)	18 in. (457 mm)
Spacing of lines, center to center	4 ft. (1219 mm)	—
Depth of earth cover of lines	10 in. (254 mm)	—
Depth of filter material cover of lines	2 in. (51 mm)	—
Depth of filter material beneath lines	3 in. (76 mm)	—
Grade of perforated lines	level 3 in./100 ft.	2 mm/m

TABLE 16-1
Location of Gray Water System

Minimum Horizontal Distance in Clear Required From:	Holding Tank Feet	Holding Tank (mm)	Irrigation/ Disposal Field Feet	Irrigation/ Disposal Field (mm)
Building structures[1]	5[2]	(1,524 mm)	2[3]	(610 mm)
Property line adjoining private property	5	(1,524 mm)	5	(1,524 mm)
Water supply wells[4]	50	(15,240 mm)	100	(30,480 mm)
Streams and lakes[4]	50	(15,240 mm)	50[5]	(15,240 mm)
Sewage pits or cesspools	5	(1,524 mm)	5	(1,524 mm)
Disposal field and 100% expansion area	5	(1,524 mm)	4[6]	(1,219 mm)
Septic tank	0	(0)	5	(1,524 mm)
On-site domestic water service line	5	(1,524 mm)	5	(1,524 mm)
Pressurized public water main	10	(3,048 mm)	10[7]	(3,048 mm)

Note: When irrigation/disposal fields are installed in sloping ground, the minimum horizontal distance between any part of the distribution system and the ground surface shall be fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm).

[1] Including porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered, breezeways, roofed porte cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways, and similar structures or appurtenances.

[2] The distance may be reduced to zero feet for aboveground tanks when first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

[3] Assumes a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle from foundation.

[4] Where special hazards are involved, the distance required shall be increased as may be directed by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

[5] These minimum clear horizontal distances shall also apply between the irrigation/disposal field and the ocean mean higher hightide line.

[6] Plus two (2) feet (610 mm) for each additional foot of depth in excess of one (1) foot (305 mm) below the bottom of the drain line.

[7] For parallel construction/for crossings, approval by the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be required.

TABLE 16-2
Design Criteria of Six Typical Soils

Type of Soil	Minimum square feet of irrigation/leaching area per 100 gallons of estimated gray water discharge per day	Maximum absorption capacity in gallons per square foot of irrigation/leaching area for a 24-hour period
Coarse sand or gravel	20	5.0
Fine sand	25	4.0
Sandy loam	40	2.5
Sandy clay	60	1.7
Clay with considerable sand or gravel	90	1.1
Clay with small amounts of sand or gravel	120	0.8

TABLE 16-2
(Metric) Design Criteria of Six Typical Soils

Type of Soil	Minimum square meters of irrigation/leaching area per liter of estimated gray water discharge per day	Maximum absorption capacity in liters per square meter of irrigation/leaching area for a 24-hour period
Coarse sand or gravel	0.005	203.7
Fine sand	0.006	162.9
Sandy loam	0.010	101.8
Sandy clay	0.015	69.2
Clay with considerable sand or gravel	0.022	44.8
Clay with small amounts of sand or gravel	0.030	32.6

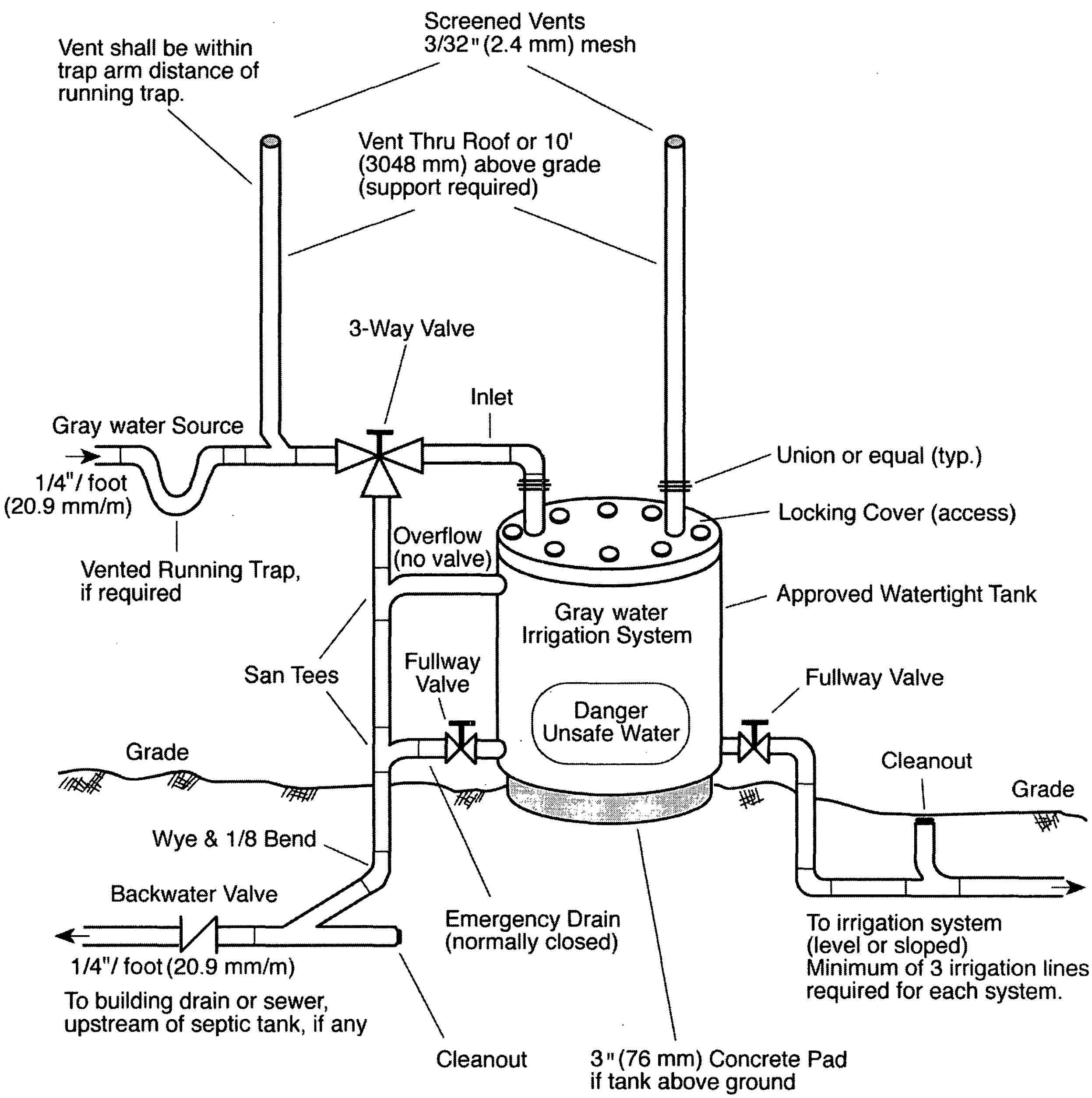


FIGURE 16-1 Gray Water System Tank – Gravity.

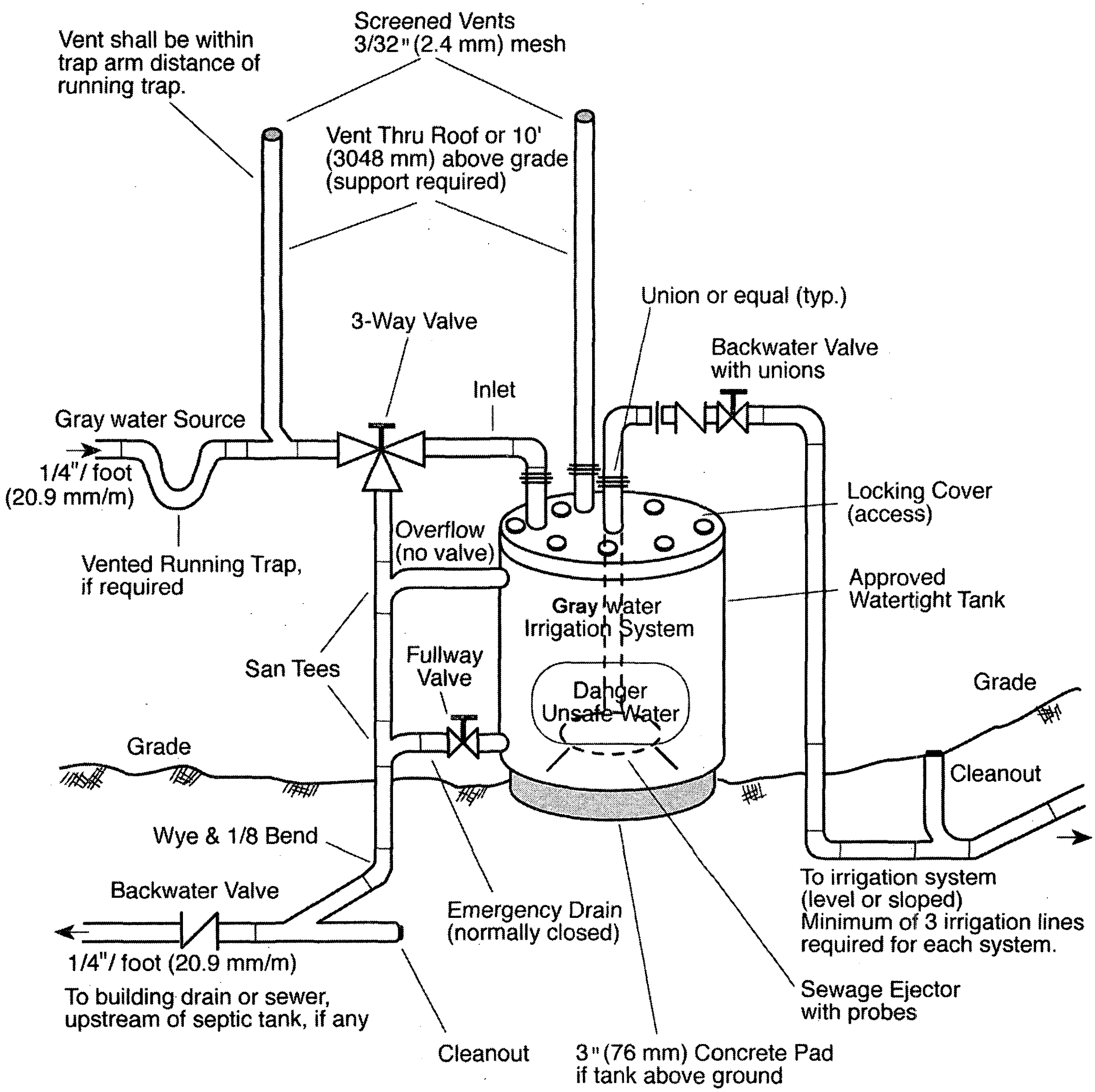


FIGURE 16-2 Gray Water System Tank – Pumped.

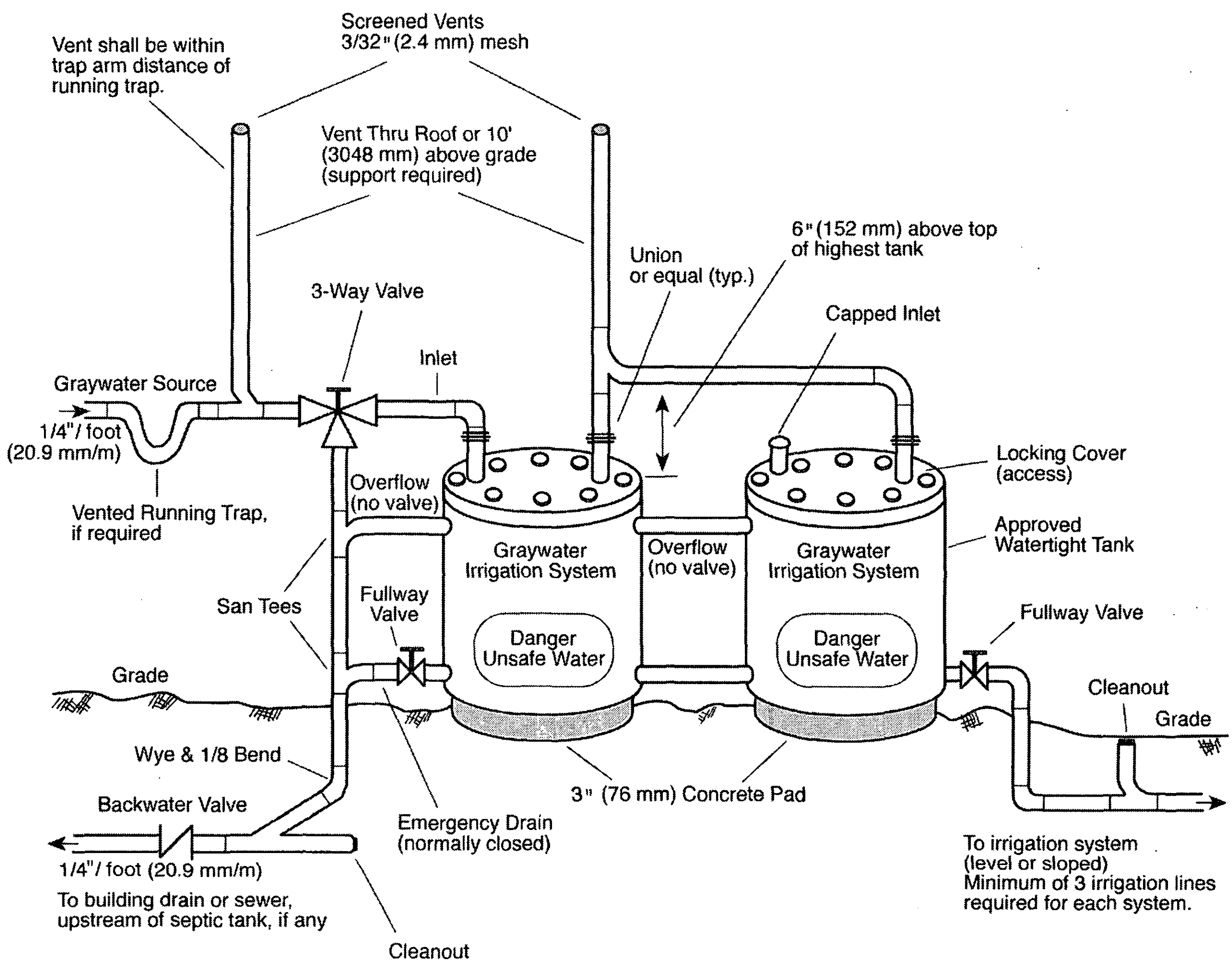


FIGURE 16-3 Gray Water System Multiple-Tank Installation.

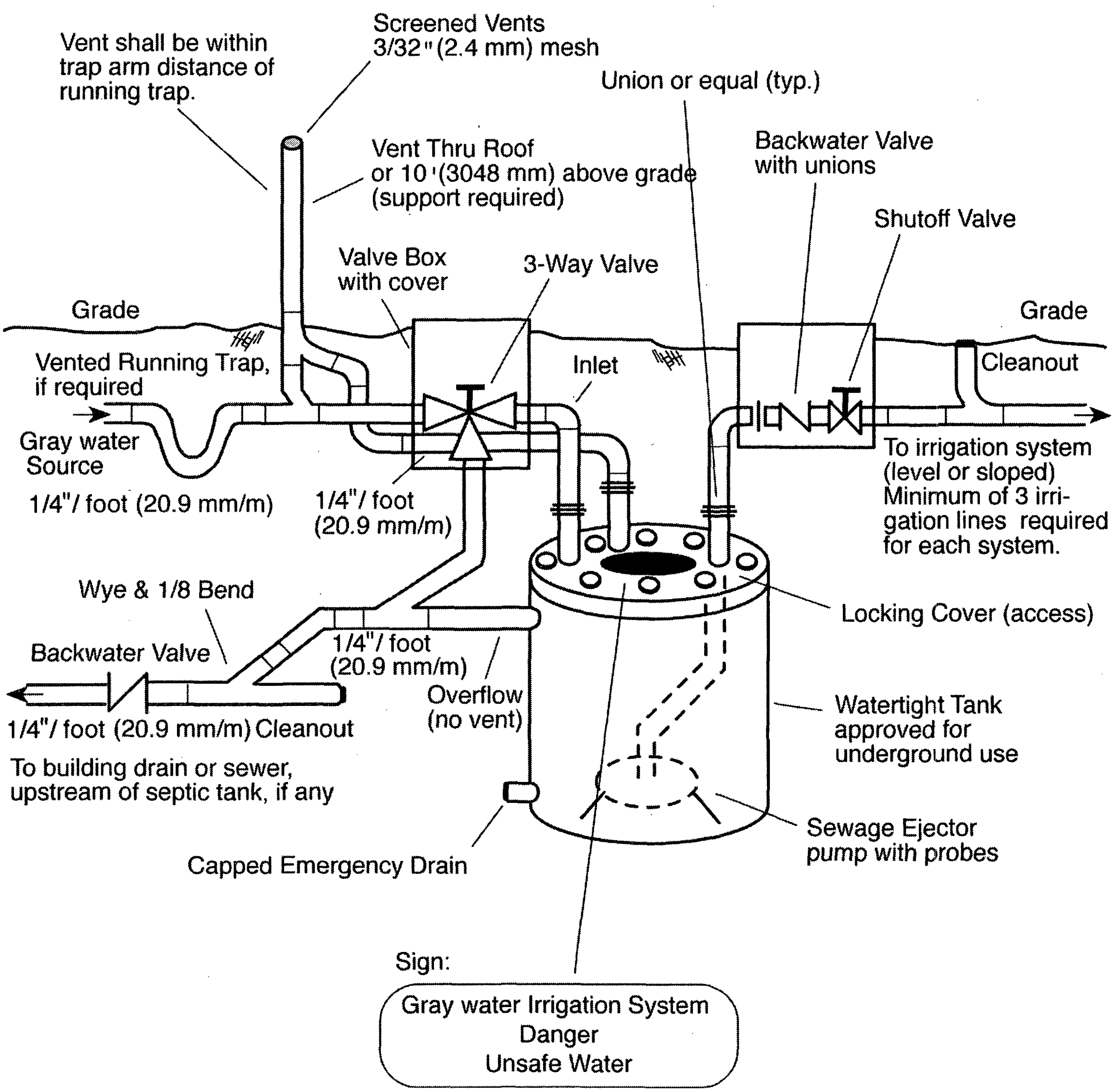
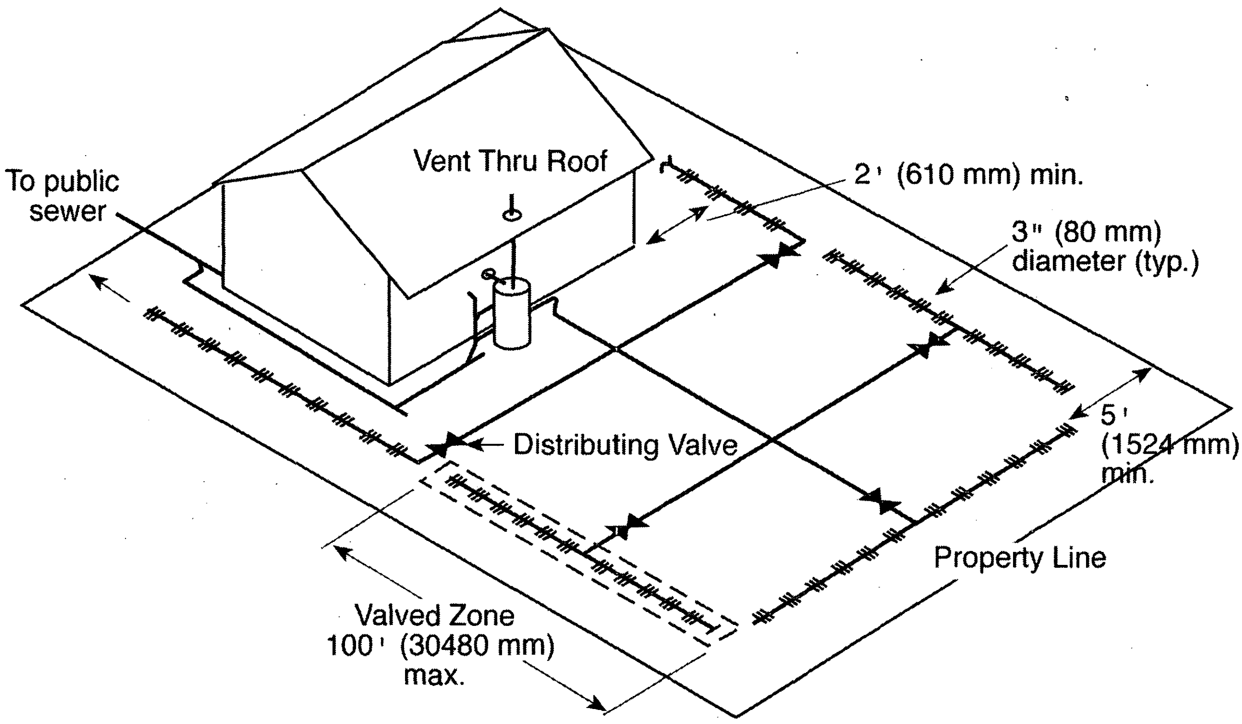


FIGURE 16-4 Gray Water System Underground Tank – Pumped.



Note: Each valved zone shall have a minimum effective absorption/irrigation area in square feet predicated on the estimated graywater discharge in gallons per day and on the type of soil found in the area. The area of the field shall be equal to the aggregate length of perforated pipe sections within the valved zone times the width of the proposed field.

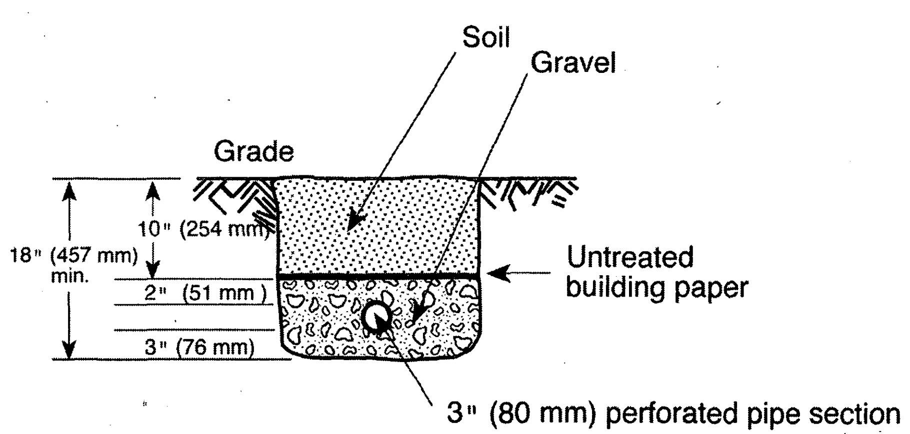


FIGURE 16-5 Gray Water System Typical Irrigation Layout.

Part II

1613.0 Reclaimed Water Systems – General.

(A) The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the installation, construction, alteration, and repair of reclaimed water systems intended to supply water closets, urinals, and trap primers for floor drains and floor sinks. Use is limited to these fixtures that are located in nonresidential buildings. Fixtures within residential buildings are excluded from the list of approved uses. The reclaimed water system shall have no connection to any potable water system, with or without mechanical backflow prevention devices. If reclaimed water is utilized on the premises, all potable water supplies shall be provided with appropriate backflow protection, as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Except as otherwise provided for in this appendix, the provisions of this code shall be applicable to reclaimed water system installations.

(B) No permit for any reclaimed water system shall be issued until complete plumbing plans, with appropriate data satisfactory to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, have been submitted and approved. No changes or connections shall be made to either the reclaimed water system or the potable water system within any site containing a reclaimed water system without approval by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(C) Before the building may be occupied, the installer shall perform the initial cross-connection test in the presence of the Authority Having Jurisdiction and other authorities having jurisdiction. The test shall be ruled successful by the Authority Having Jurisdiction before final approval is granted.

1614.0 Definitions.

Reclaimed water is water that, as a result of tertiary treatment of domestic wastewater by a public agency, is suitable for a direct beneficial use or a controlled use that would not otherwise occur. The level of treatment and quality of the reclaimed water shall be approved by the public health Authority Having Jurisdiction.

For the purpose of this chapter, tertiary treatment shall result in water that is adequately oxidized, clarified, coagulated, filtered, and disinfected so that at some location in the treatment process, the seven (7) day median number of total coliform bacteria in daily samples does not exceed two and two-tenths (2.2) per one hundred (100) milliliters, and the number of total coliform bacteria does not exceed twenty-three (23) per one hundred (100) milliliters in any sample. The water shall be filtered so that the daily average turbidity does not exceed two (2) turbidity units upstream from the disinfection process.

Specifically excluded from this definition is gray water, which is defined in Part I of this chapter.

1615.0 Permit.

It shall be unlawful for any person to construct, install, alter, or cause to be constructed, installed, or altered any reclaimed water system within a building or on a premises without first obtaining a permit to do such work from the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1616.0 Drawings and Specifications.

The Authority Having Jurisdiction may require any or all of the following information to be included with or in the plot plan before a permit is issued for a reclaimed water system.

(A) A plot plan drawn to scale and completely dimensioned, showing lot lines and structures, location of all present and proposed potable water supplies and meters, water wells, streams, auxiliary water supply and systems, reclaimed water supply and meters, drain lines, and locations of private sewage disposal systems and one hundred (100) percent expansion areas or building sewer connected to the public sewer.

(B) Details of construction including riser diagrams or isometrics and a full description of the complete installation, including installation methods, construction, and materials as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. To the extent permitted by structural conditions, all reclaimed water risers within the toilet room, including appurtenances such as air/vacuum relief valves, pressure reducing valves, etc., shall be installed in the opposite end of the room containing the served fixtures from the potable water risers or opposite walls, as applicable. To the extent permitted by structural conditions, reclaimed water headers and branches off risers shall not be run in the same wall or ceiling cavity of the toilet room where potable water piping is run.

(C) Detailed initial and annual testing requirements as outlined elsewhere in this chapter.

1617.0 Pipe Material/Pipe Identification.

Reclaimed water piping and fittings shall be as required in this code for potable water piping and fittings. All reclaimed water pipe and fittings shall be continuously wrapped with purple-colored Mylar tape. The wrapping tape shall have a minimum

nominal thickness of five ten-thousandths (0.0005) inch (0.127 mm) and a minimum width of two (2) inches (51 mm). Tape shall be fabricated of poly(vinyl chloride) with a synthetic rubber adhesive and a clear polypropylene protective coating or approved equal. The tape shall be purple (Pantone color #512) and shall be imprinted in nominal one-half (1/2) inch (12.7 mm) high, black uppercase letters, with the words "CAUTION: RECLAIMED WATER, DO NOT DRINK." The lettering shall be imprinted in two (2) parallel lines, such that after wrapping the pipe with a one-half (1/2) inch width overlap, one (1) full line of text shall be visible. Wrapping tape is not required for buried PVC pipe manufactured with purple color integral to the plastic and marked on opposite sides to read "CAUTION: RECLAIMED WATER, DO NOT DRINK" in intervals not to exceed three (3) feet (914 mm).

All valves, except fixture supply control valves shall be equipped with a locking feature. All mechanical equipment that is appurtenant to the reclaimed water system shall be painted purple to match the Mylar wrapping tape.

1618.0 Installation.

(A) Hose bibbs shall not be allowed on reclaimed water piping systems.

(B) The reclaimed water system and the potable water system within the building shall be provided with the required appurtenances (valves, air/vacuum relief valves, etc.) to allow for deactivation or drainage as may be required by this chapter.

(C) Reclaimed water pipes shall not be run or laid in the same trench as potable water pipes. A ten (10) foot (3,048 mm) horizontal separation shall be maintained between pressurized, buried reclaimed and potable water piping. Buried potable water pipes crossing pressurized reclaimed water pipes shall be laid a minimum of twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above the reclaimed water pipes. Reclaimed water pipes laid in the same trench or crossing building sewer or drainage piping shall be installed in compliance with Sections 609.0 and 720.0 of this code. Reclaimed water pipes shall be protected similar to potable water pipes.

1619.0 Signs.

(A) Room Entrance Signs. All installations using reclaimed water for water closets and/or urinals shall be identified with signs. Each sign shall contain one-half (1/2) inch (12.7 mm) letters of a highly visible color on a contrasting background. The location of the sign(s) shall be such that the sign(s) shall be visible to all users. The number and location of the signs shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and shall contain the following text:

TO CONSERVE WATER, THIS BUILDING USES RECLAIMED
WATER TO FLUSH TOILETS AND URINALS.

(B) Equipment Room Signs. Each equipment room containing reclaimed water equipment shall have a sign posted with the following wording in one (1) inch (25.4 mm) letters on a purple background:

CAUTION

RECLAIMED WATER, DO NOT DRINK.

DO NOT CONNECT TO DRINKING WATER SYSTEM.

NOTICE

CONTACT BUILDING MANAGEMENT BEFORE

PERFORMING ANY WORK ON THIS WATER SYSTEM.

This sign shall be posted in a location that is visible to anyone working on or near reclaimed water equipment.

(C) Where tank-type water closets are flushed with reclaimed water, the tank shall be labeled:

RECLAIMED WATER – DO NOT DRINK

(D) Valve Access Door Signs. Each reclaimed water valve within a wall shall have its access door into the wall equipped with a warning sign approximately six (6) inches by six (6) inches (152 mm x 152 mm) with wording in one half (1/2) inch (12.7 mm) letters on a purple background. The size, shape, and format of the sign shall be substantially the same as that specified in subsection (B) above. The signs shall be attached inside the access door frame and shall hang in the center of the access door frame. This sign requirement shall be applicable to any and all access doors, hatches, etc., leading to reclaimed water piping and appurtenances.

(E) Valve Seals. Each valve or appurtenance shall be sealed in a manner approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction after the reclaimed system has been approved and placed into operation. These seals shall either be a crimped lead wire seal or a plastic breakaway seal which, if broken after system

approval, shall be deemed conclusive evidence that the reclaimed water system has been accessed. The seals shall be purple with the words "RECLAIMED WATER" and shall be supplied by the reclaimed water purveyor or by other arrangements acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1620.0 Inspection and Testing.

(A) Reclaimed water piping shall be tested as outlined in this code for testing of potable water piping.

(B) An initial and subsequent annual cross-connection inspection and test shall be performed on both the potable and reclaimed water systems as follows:

(1) Visual Dual System Inspection. Prior to commencing the cross-connection testing, a dual system inspection shall be conducted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction and other authorities having jurisdiction.

(i) Meter locations of the reclaimed water and potable water lines shall be checked to verify that no modifications were made, and that no cross-connections are visible.

(ii) All pumps and equipment, equipment room signs, and exposed piping in the equipment room shall be checked.

(iii) All valves shall be checked to ensure that valve lock seals are still in place and intact. All valve control door signs shall be checked to verify that no signs have been removed.

(2) Cross-Connection Test. The following procedure shall be followed by the applicant in the presence of the Authority Having Jurisdiction and other authorities having jurisdiction to determine whether a cross-connection occurred.

(i) The potable water system shall be activated and pressurized. The reclaimed water system shall be shut down and completely drained.

(ii) The potable water system shall remain pressurized for a minimum period of time specified by the Authority Having Jurisdiction while the reclaimed water system is empty. The minimum period the reclaimed water system is to remain depressurized shall be determined on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the size and complexity of the potable and reclaimed water distribution systems, but in no case shall that period be less than one (1) hour.

(iii) All fixtures, potable and reclaimed, shall be tested and inspected for flow. Flow from any reclaimed water system outlet shall indicate a cross-connection. No flow from a potable water outlet would indicate that it may be connected to the reclaimed water system.

(iv) The drain on the reclaimed water system shall be checked for flow during the test and at the end of the period.

(v) The potable water system shall then be completely drained.

(vi) The reclaimed water system shall then be activated and pressurized.

(vii) The reclaimed water system shall remain pressurized for a minimum period of time specified by the Authority Having Jurisdiction while the potable water system is empty. The minimum period the potable water system is to remain depressurized shall be determined on a case-by-case basis, but in no case shall that period be less than one (1) hour.

(viii) All fixtures, potable and reclaimed, shall be tested and inspected for flow. Flow from any potable water system outlet shall indicate a cross-connection. No flow from a reclaimed water outlet would indicate that it may be connected to the potable water system.

(ix) The drain on the potable water system shall be checked for flow during the test and at the end of the period.

(x) If there is no flow detected in any of the fixtures that would have indicated a cross-connection, the potable water system shall be repressurized.

(3) In the event that a cross-connection is discovered, the following procedure, in the presence of the Authority Having Jurisdiction, shall be activated immediately:

(i) Reclaimed water piping to the building shall be shut down at the meter, and the reclaimed water riser shall be drained.

(ii) Potable water piping to the building shall be shut down at the meter.

(iii) The cross-connection shall be uncovered and disconnected.

(iv) The building shall be retested following procedures listed in subsections (B)(1) and (B)(2) above.

(v) The potable water system shall be chlorinated with fifty (50) ppm chlorine for twenty-four (24) hours.

(vi) The potable water system shall be flushed after twenty-four (24) hours, and a standard bacteriological test shall be performed. If test results are acceptable, the potable water system may be recharged.

(C) An annual inspection of the reclaimed water system, following the procedures listed in subsection 1620.0 (B)(1), shall be required. Annual cross-connection testing, following the procedures listed in subsection 1620.0 (B)(2), shall be required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, unless site conditions do not require it. In no event shall the test occur less often than once in four (4) years. Alternate testing requirements may be allowed by the Authority Having Jurisdiction for institutional buildings.

The health officer or other designated appointee may substitute for the Authority Having Jurisdiction in the above-mentioned inspections and tests.

1621.0 Sizing.

Reclaimed water piping shall be sized as outlined in this code for sizing potable water piping.

1622.0 Approved Uses of Reclaimed Water.

Reclaimed water is allowed in all nonresidential buildings to supply fixtures as specified in this chapter, except where prohibited by statute, regulation, or ordinance.

APPENDICES

The appendices are intended to supplement the provisions of the installation requirements of this code. The definitions in Chapter 2 are also applicable to the appendices.

CONTENTS

APPENDIX A

RECOMMENDED RULES FOR SIZING THE WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM

Because of the variable conditions encountered, it is impractical to lay down definite detailed rules of procedure for determining the sizes of water supply pipes in an appendix, which must necessarily be limited in length. For a more adequate understanding of the problems involved, refer to Water-Distributing Systems for Buildings, Report BMS 79 of the National Bureau of Standards; and Plumbing Manual, Report BMS 66, also published by the National Bureau of Standards.

The following is a suggested order of procedure for sizing the water supply system.

A 1 Preliminary Information.

A 1.1 Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily service pressure in the area where the building is to be located.

A 1.2 If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes likely to be used. Friction-loss data can be obtained from most manufacturers of water meters. Friction losses for disk-type meters may be obtained from Chart A-1.

A 1.3 Obtain all available local information regarding the use of different kinds of pipe with respect both to durability and to decrease in capacity with length of service in the particular water supply.

A 2 Demand Load.

A 2.1 Estimate the supply demand for the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the fixture units on each, Table A-2, and then by reading the corresponding ordinate from Chart A-2 or A-3, whichever is applicable.

A 2.2 Estimate continuous supply demands in gallons per minute (liters per second) for lawn sprinklers, air conditioners, etc., and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand of the building supply.

A 3 Permissible Friction Loss.

A 3.1 Decide what is the desirable minimum residual pressure that shall be maintained at the highest fixture in the supply system. If the highest group of fixtures contains flushometer valves, the residual pressure for the group shall not be less than fifteen (15) psi (103 kPa). For flush tank supplies, the available residual pressure shall not be less than eight (8) psi (55 kPa).

A 3.2 Determine the elevation of the highest fixture or group of fixtures above the water (street) main. Multiply this difference in elevation by forty-three hundredths (0.43). The result is the loss in static pressure in psi (pounds per square inch) (kPa).

A 3.3 Subtract the sum of loss in static pressure and the residual pressure to be maintained at the highest fixture from the average minimum daily service pressure. The result will be the pressure available for friction loss in the supply pipes, if no water meter is used. If a meter is to be installed, the friction loss in the meter for the estimated maximum demand should also be subtracted from the service pressure to determine the pressure loss available for friction loss in the supply pipes.

A 3.4 Determine the developed length of pipe from the water (street) main to the highest fixture. If close estimates are desired, compute with the aid of Table A-3 the equivalent length of pipe for all fittings in the line from the water (street) main to the highest fixture and add the sum to the developed length. The pressure available for friction loss in pounds per square inch (kPa), divided by the developed lengths of pipe from the water (street) main to the highest fixture, times one hundred (100), will be the average permissible friction loss per one hundred (100) foot (30,480 mm) length of pipe.

A 4 Size of Building Supply.

A 4.1 Knowing the permissible friction loss per one hundred (100) feet (30,480 mm) of pipe and the total demand, the diameter of the building supply pipe may be obtained from Charts A-4, A-5, A-6, or A-7, whichever is applicable. The diameter of pipe on or next above the coordinate point corresponding to the estimated total demand and the permissible friction loss will be the size needed up to the first branch from the building supply pipe.

A 4.2 If copper tubing or brass pipe is to be used for the supply piping and if the character of the water is such that only slight changes in the hydraulic characteristics may be expected, Chart A-4 may be used.

A 4.3 Chart A-5 should be used for ferrous pipe with only the most favorable water supply in regards corrosion and caking. If the water is hard or corrosive, Chart A-6 or A-7 will be applicable. For extremely hard water, it will be advisable to make

additional allowances for the reduction of capacity of hot-water lines in service.

A 5 Size of Principal Branches and Risers.

A 5.1 The required size of branches and risers may be obtained in the same manner as the building supply, by obtaining the demand load on each branch or riser and using the permissible friction loss computed in Section A 3.

A 5.2 Fixture branches to the building supply, if they are sized for the same permissible friction loss per one hundred (100) feet (30,480 mm) of pipe as the branches and risers to the highest level in the building, may lead to inadequate water supply to the upper floor of a building. This may be controlled by (1) selecting the sizes of pipe for the different branches so that the total friction loss in each lower branch is approximately equal to the total loss in the riser, including both friction loss and loss in static pressure; (2) throttling each such branch by means of a valve until the preceding balance is obtained; (3) increasing the size of the building supply and risers above the minimum required to meet the maximum permissible friction loss.

A 5.3 The size of branches and mains serving flushometer tanks shall be consistent with sizing procedures for flush tank water closets.

A 6 General.

A 6.1 Velocities shall not exceed 10 feet/second (3.0 m/sec.) or the maximum values given in the appropriate Installation Standard, except as otherwise approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

A 6.2 If a pressure-reducing valve is used in the building supply, the developed length of supply piping and the permissible friction loss should be computed from the building side of the valve.

A 6.3 The allowances in Table A-3 for fittings are based on nonrecessed threaded fittings. For recessed threaded fittings and streamlined soldered fittings, one-half (1/2) the allowances given in the table will be ample.

A 7 Example.

A 7.1 Assume an office building of four (4) stories and basement; pressure on the building side of the pressure-reducing valve of fifty-five (55) psi (379 kPa) (after an allowance for reduced pressure falloff at peak demand); an elevation of highest fixture above the pressure-reducing valve of forty-five (45) feet (13,716 mm); a developed length of pipe from the pressure-reducing valve to the most distant fixture of two hundred (200) feet (60,960 mm); and fixtures to be installed with flush valves for water closets and stall urinals as follows:

If the pipe material and water supply are such that Chart A-5 applies, the required diameter of the building supply is three and one-half (3-1/2) inches (88.9 mm) and the required diameter of the branch to the hot-water heater is one and one-half (1-1/2) inches (40 mm).

The sizes of the various branches and risers may be determined in the same manner as the size of the building supply or the branch to the hot-water system, by estimating the demand for the riser or branch from Chart A-2 or A-3 and applying the total demand estimate from the branch, riser, or section thereof to the appropriate flowchart.

Chart A-1
Friction Losses for Disk-Type Water Meters

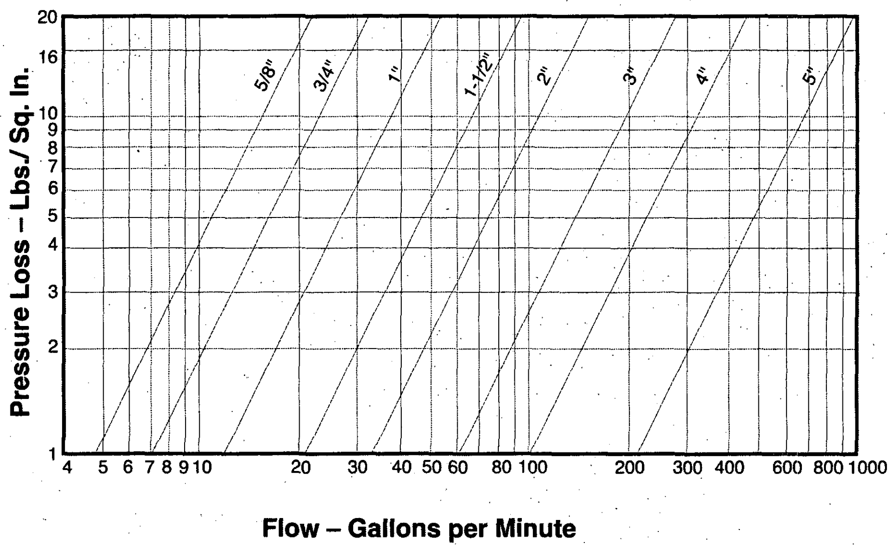
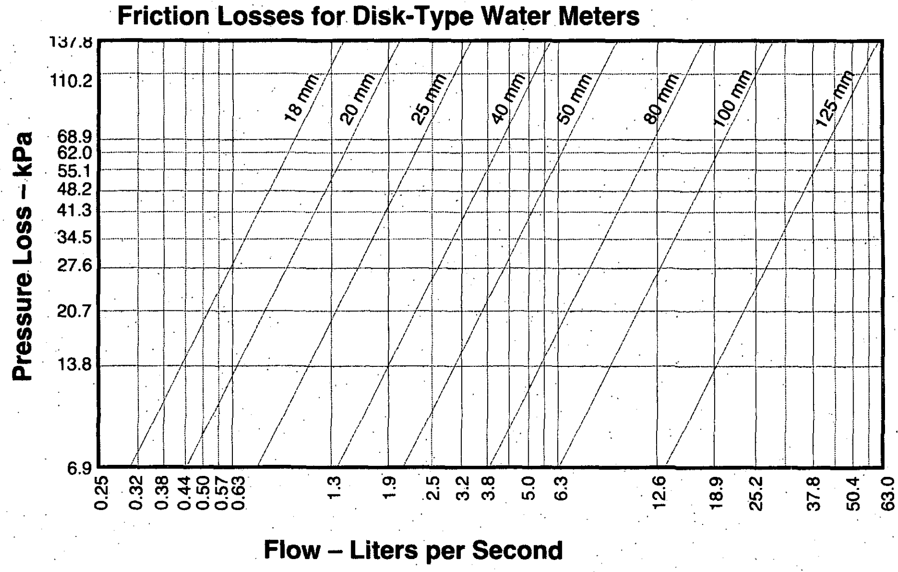


Chart A-1 (Metric)
Friction Losses for Disk-Type Water Meters



Inch	mm
1/2	15
3/4	20
1	25

TABLE A-2
Water Supply Fixture Units (WSFU) and Minimum Fixture Branch Pipe Sizes[3]

Appliances, Appurtenance, or Fixtures[2]	Minimum Fixture Branch Pipe Size[1,4]	Private	Public	Assembly[6]
Bathtub or Combination Bath/Shower (fill)	1/2"	4.0	4.0	
3/4" Bathtub Fill Valve	3/4"	10.0	10.0	
Bidet	1/2"	1.0		
Clothes Washer	1/2"	4.0	4.0	
Dental Unit, cuspidor	1/2"		1.0	
Dishwasher, domestic	1/2"	1.5	1.5	
Drinking Fountain or Watercooler	1/2"	0.5	0.5	0.75
Hose Bibb	1/2"	2.5	2.5	
Hose Bibb, each additional[7]	1/2"	1.0	1.0	
Lavatory	1/2"	1.0	1.0	1.0
Lawn Sprinkler, each head[5]		1.0	1.0	
Mobile Home, each (minimum)		12.0		
Sinks				
Bar	1/2"	1.0	2.0	
Clinic Faucet	1/2"		3.0	
Clinic Flushometer Valve with or without faucet	1"		8.0	
Kitchen, domestic	1/2"	1.5	1.5	
Laundry	1/2"	1.5	1.5	
Service or Mop Basin	1/2"	1.5	3.0	
Washup, each set of faucets	1/2"		2.0	
Shower	1/2"	2.0	2.0	
Urinal, 1.0 GPF	3/4"	3.0	4.0	5.0
Urinal, greater than 1.0 GPF	3/4"	4.0	5.0	6.0
Urinal, flush tank	1/2"	2.0	2.0	3.0
Washfountain, circular spray	3/4"		4.0	
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Gravity Tank	1/2"	2.5	2.5	3.5
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Flushometer Tank	1/2"	2.5	2.5	3.5
Water Closet, 1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve	1"	5.0	5.0	8.0
Water Closet, greater than 1.6 GPF Gravity Tank	1/2"	3.0	5.5	7.0
Water Closet, greater than 1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve	1"	7.0	8.0	10.0

Notes:

1. Size of the cold branch outlet pipe, or both the hot and cold branch outlet pipes.
2. Appliances, Appurtenances, or Fixtures not included in this Table may be sized by reference to fixtures having a similar flow rate and frequency of use.
3. The listed fixture unit values represent their total load on the cold water service. The separate cold water and hot water fixture unit value for fixtures having both cold and hot water connections may each be taken as three-quarters (3/4) of the listed total value of the fixture.
4. The listed minimum supply branch pipe sizes for individual fixtures are the nominal (I.D.) pipe size.
5. For fixtures or supply connections likely to impose continuous flow demands, determine the required flow in gallons per minute (GPM) and add it separately to the demand (in GPM) for the distribution system or portions thereof.
6. Assembly [Public Use (See Table 4-1)].
7. Reduced fixture unit loading for additional hose bibbs as used is to be used only when sizing total building demand and for pipe sizing when more than one hose bibb is supplied by a segment of water distributing pipe. The fixture branch to each hose bibb shall be sized on the basis of 2.5 fixture units.

TABLE A-3
Allowance in Equivalent Length of Pipe for Friction Loss in Valves and Threaded Fittings*
Equivalent Length of Pipe for Various Fittings

Diameter of Fitting Inches	90° Standard Elbow Feet	45° Standard Elbow Feet	90° Standard Tee Feet	Coupling or Straight Run of Tee Feet	Gate Valve Feet	Globe Valve Feet	Angle Valve Feet
3/8	1.0	0.6	1.5	0.3	0.2	8	4
1/2	2.0	1.2	3.0	0.6	0.4	15	8
3/4	2.5	1.5	4.0	0.8	0.5	20	12
1	3.0	1.8	5.0	0.9	0.6	25	15
1-1/4	4.0	2.4	6.0	1.2	0.8	35	18
1-1/2	5.0	3.0	7.0	1.5	1.0	45	22
2	7.0	4.0	10.0	2.0	1.3	55	28
2-1/2	8.0	5.0	12.0	2.5	1.6	65	34
3	10.0	6.0	15.0	3.0	2.0	80	40
4	14.0	8.0	21.0	4.0	2.7	125	55
5	17.0	10.0	25.0	5.0	3.3	140	70
6	20.0	12.0	30.0	6.0	4.0	165	80

TABLE A-3 (Metric)
Equivalent Length of Pipe for Various Fittings

Diameter of Fitting mm	90° Standard Elbow mm	45° Standard Elbow mm	90° Standard Tee mm	Coupling or Straight Run of Tee mm	Gate Valve mm	Globe Valve mm	Angle Valve mm
10	305	183	457	91	61	2,438	1,219
15	610	366	914	183	122	4,572	2,438
20	762	457	1,219	244	152	6,096	3,658
25	914	549	1,524	274	183	7,620	4,572
32	1,219	732	1,829	366	244	10,668	5,486
40	1,524	914	2,134	457	305	13,716	6,706
50	2,134	1,219	3,048	610	396	16,764	8,534
65	2,438	1,524	3,658	762	488	19,812	10,363
80	3,048	1,829	4,572	914	610	24,384	12,192
100	4,267	2,438	6,401	1,219	823	38,100	16,764
125	5,182	3,048	7,620	1,524	1,006	42,672	21,336
150	6,096	3,658	9,144	1,829	1,219	50,292	24,384

*Allowances are based on nonrecessed threaded fittings. Use one-half (1/2) the allowances for recessed threaded fittings or streamlined solder fittings.

A 7 Example

Fixture Units and Estimated Demands

	Building Supply Demand				**Branch to Hot Water System**		
Kind of Fixtures	**No. of Fixtures**	**Fixture Unit Demand**	**Total Units**	**Building Supply Demand in gpm (L per sec)**	**No. of Fixtures**	**Fixture Unit Demand Calculation**	**Demand in gallons per minute (L per sec)**
Water Closets	130	8.0	1040	–	–	–	–
Urinals	30	4.0	120	–	–	–	–
Shower heads	12	2.0	24	–	12	12 x 2 x 3/4=18	–
Lavatories	100	1.0	100	–	100	100 x 1 x 3/4=75	–
Service Sinks	27	3.0	81	–	27	27 x 3 x 3/4=61	–
Total			1,365,252 gpm (15.8 L/s)			154	55 gpm (3.4 L/s)

Allowing for 15 psi (103.4 kPa) at the highest fixture under the maximum demand of 252 gallons per minute (15.8 L/sec.), the pressure available for friction loss is found by the following:

$$55 - [15 + (45 \times 0.43)] = 20.65 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Metric: } 379 - [103.4 + (13.7 \times 9.8)] = 142.3 \text{ kPa}$$

The allowable friction loss per 100 feet (30.4 m) of pipe is therefore:

$$100 \times 20.65 \div 200 = 10.32 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Metric: } 30.4 \times 142.3 \div 60.8 = 71.1 \text{ kPa}$$

Chart A-2
Estimate Curves for Demand Load

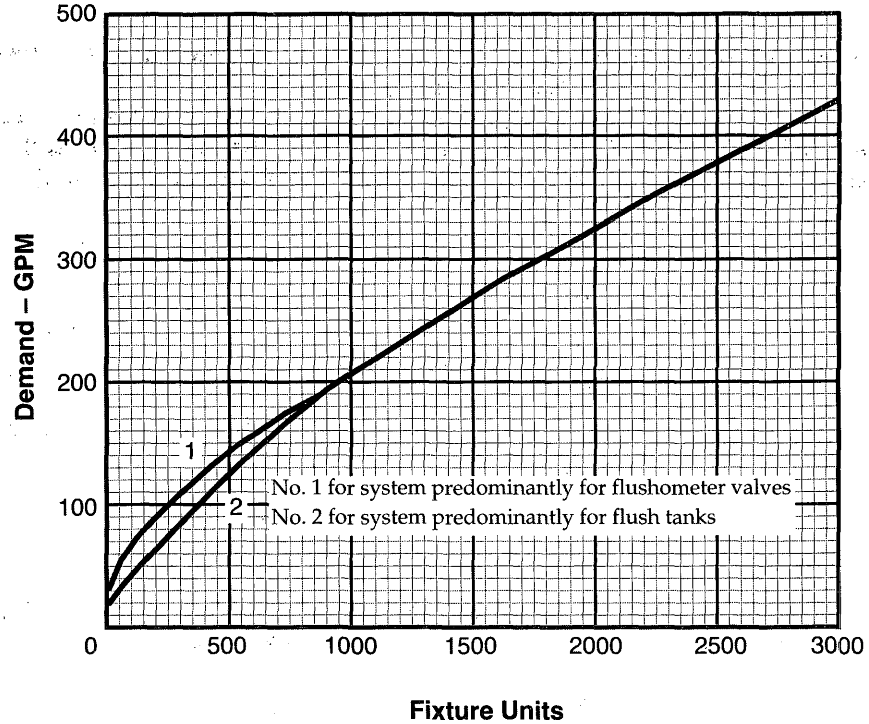


Chart A-2 (Metric)
Estimate Curves for Demand Load

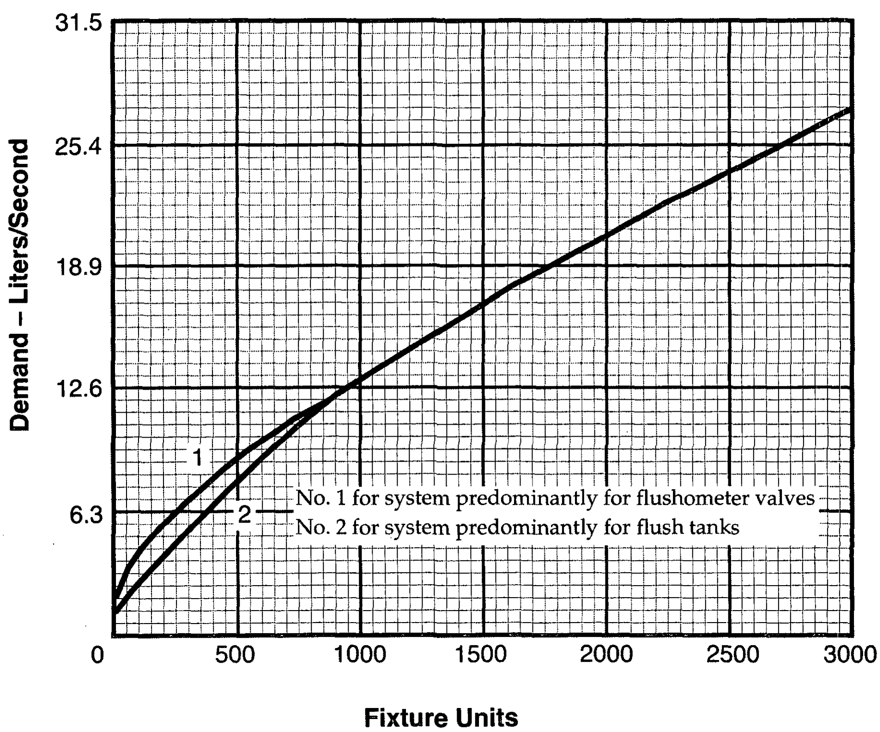


Chart A-3
Enlarged Scale Demand Load

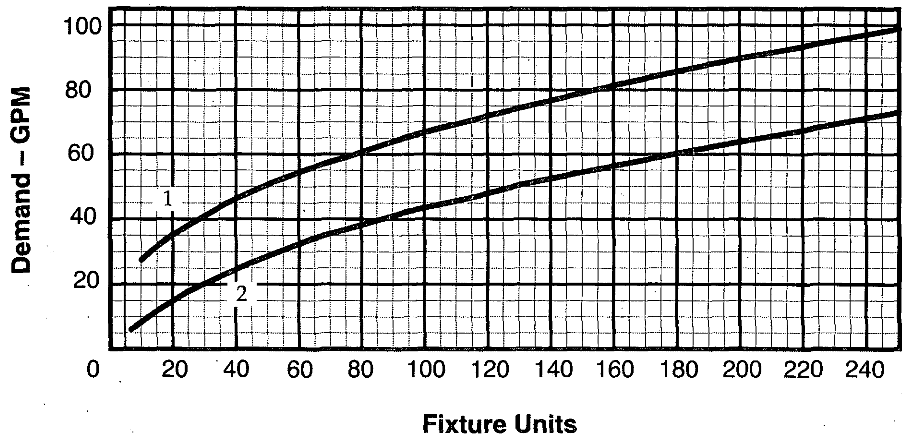


Chart A-3 (Metric)
Enlarged Scale Demand Load

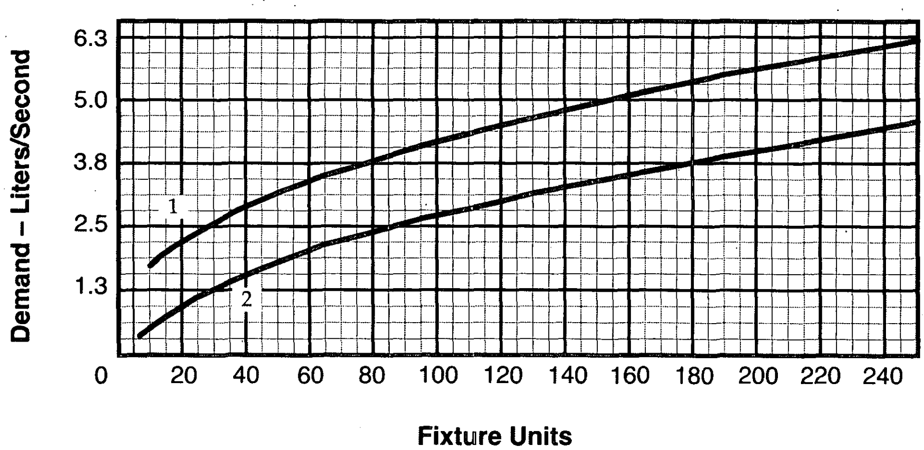
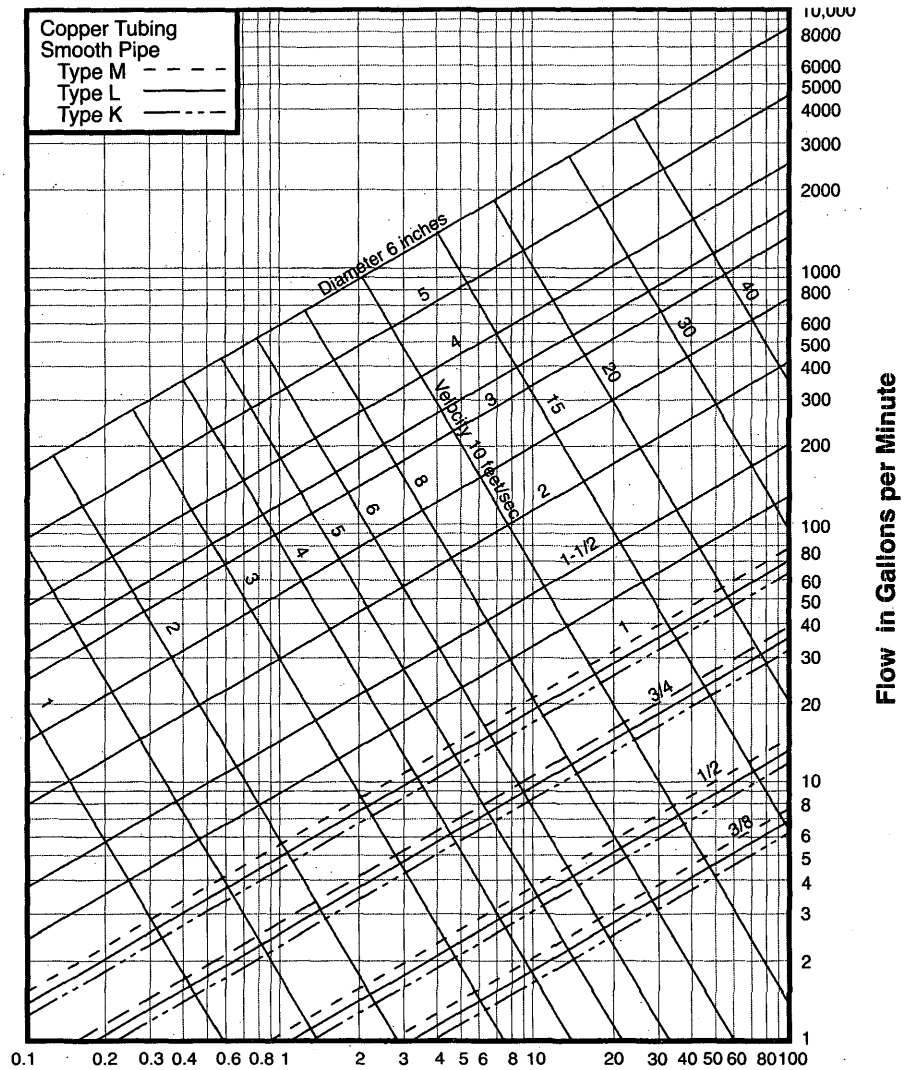


Chart A-4



Friction Loss – Lbs. per Square-Inch Head per 100-Foot Length

Chart A-4 (Metric)

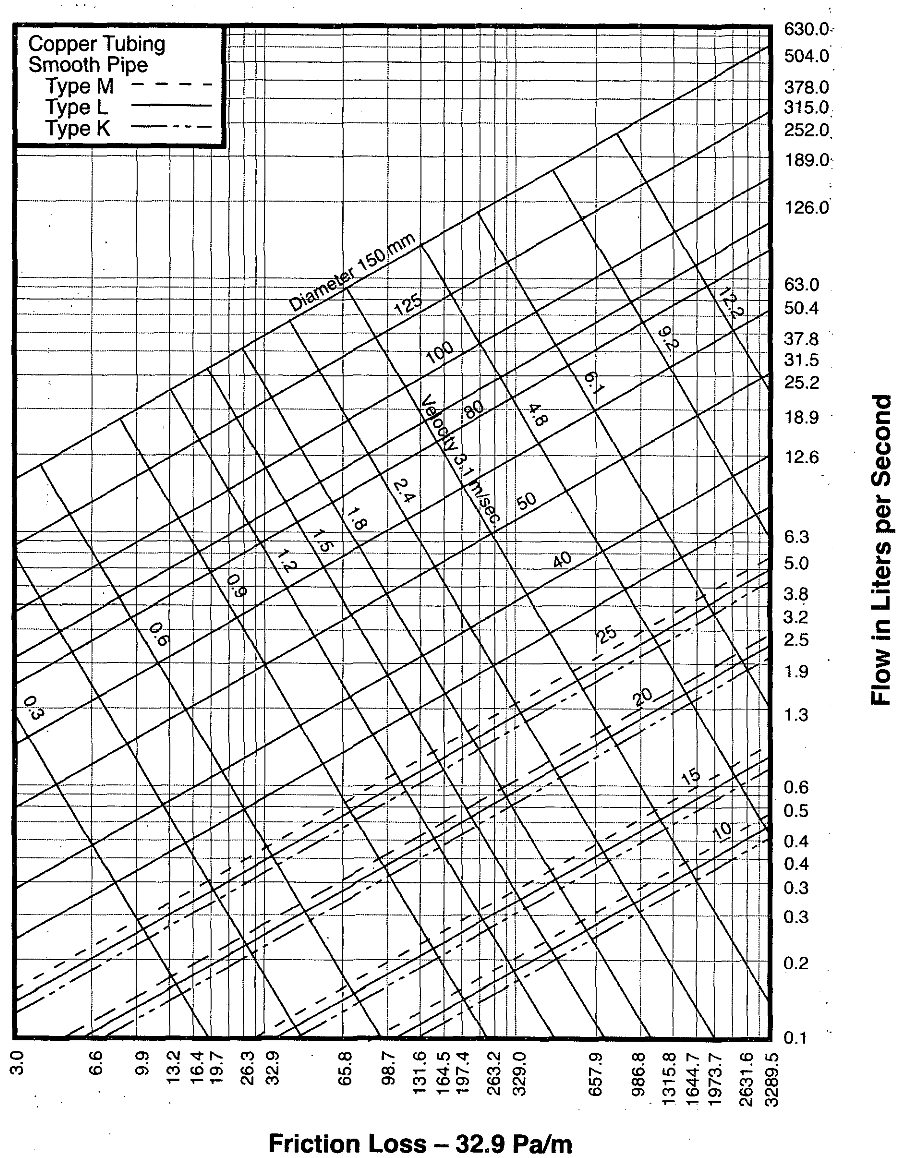


Chart A-5

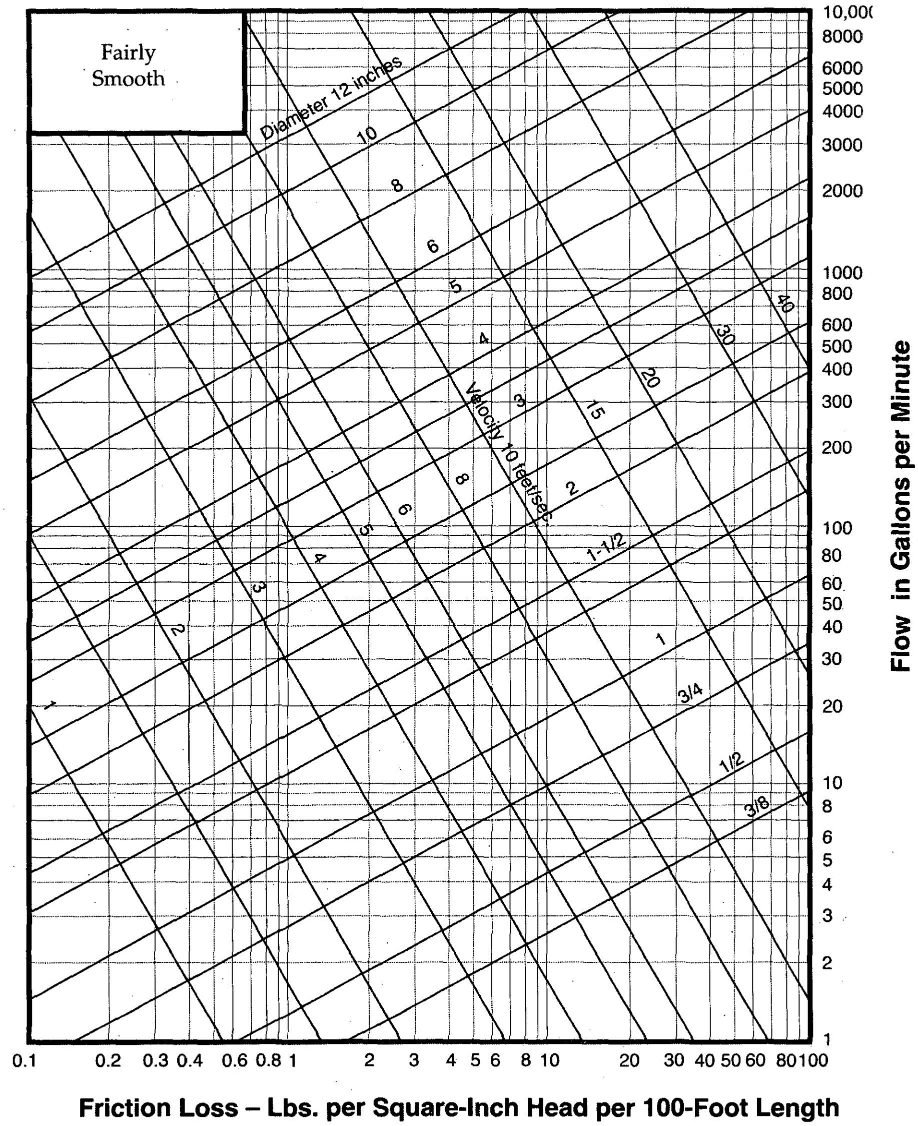

Fairly Smooth
Diameter 12 inches
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1-1/2
1
3/4
1/2
3/8
Velocity 10 feet/sec.
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
15
20
30
40
10,000
8000
6000
5000
4000
3000
2000
1000
800
600
500
400
300
200
100
80
60
50
40
30
20
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
0.1
0.2
0.3
0.4
0.6
0.8
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
10
20
30
40
50
60
80
100
Friction Loss – Lbs. per Square-Inch Head per 100-Foot Length
Flow in Gallons per Minute

Chart A-5 (Metric)

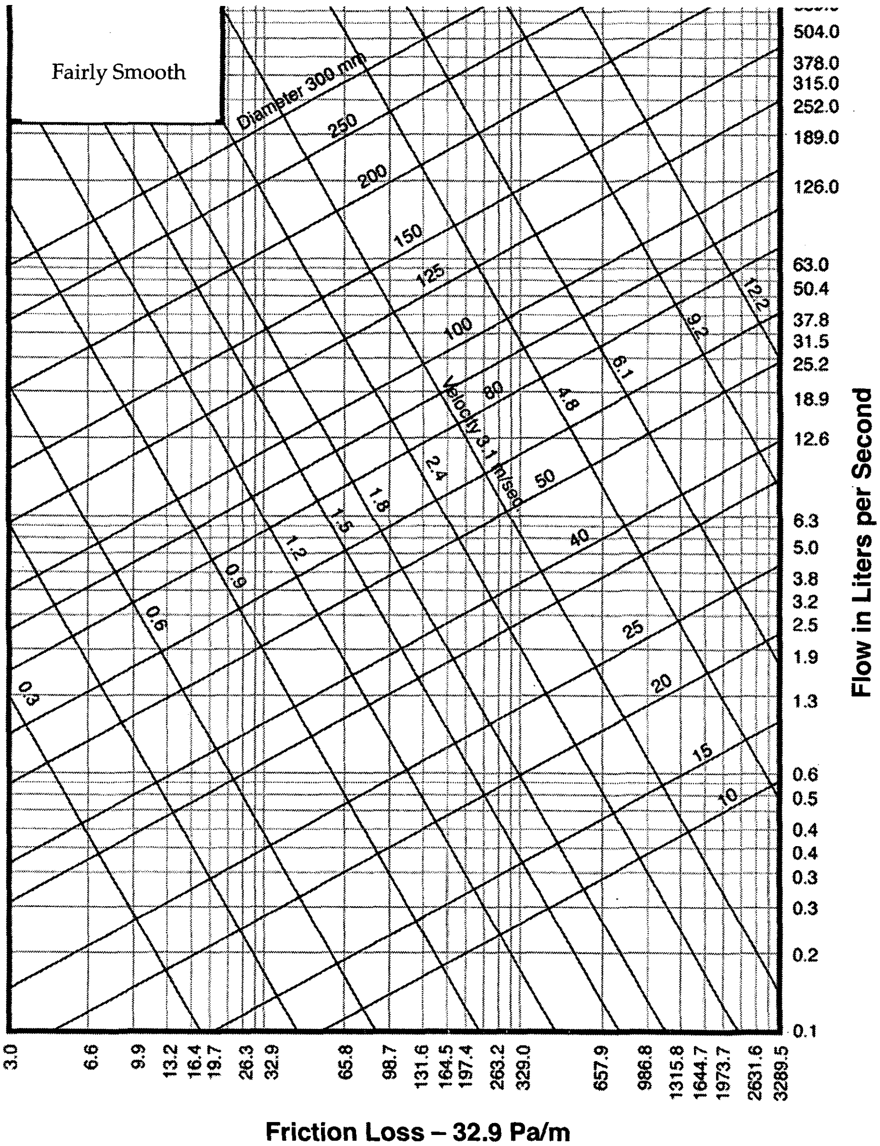


Chart A-6

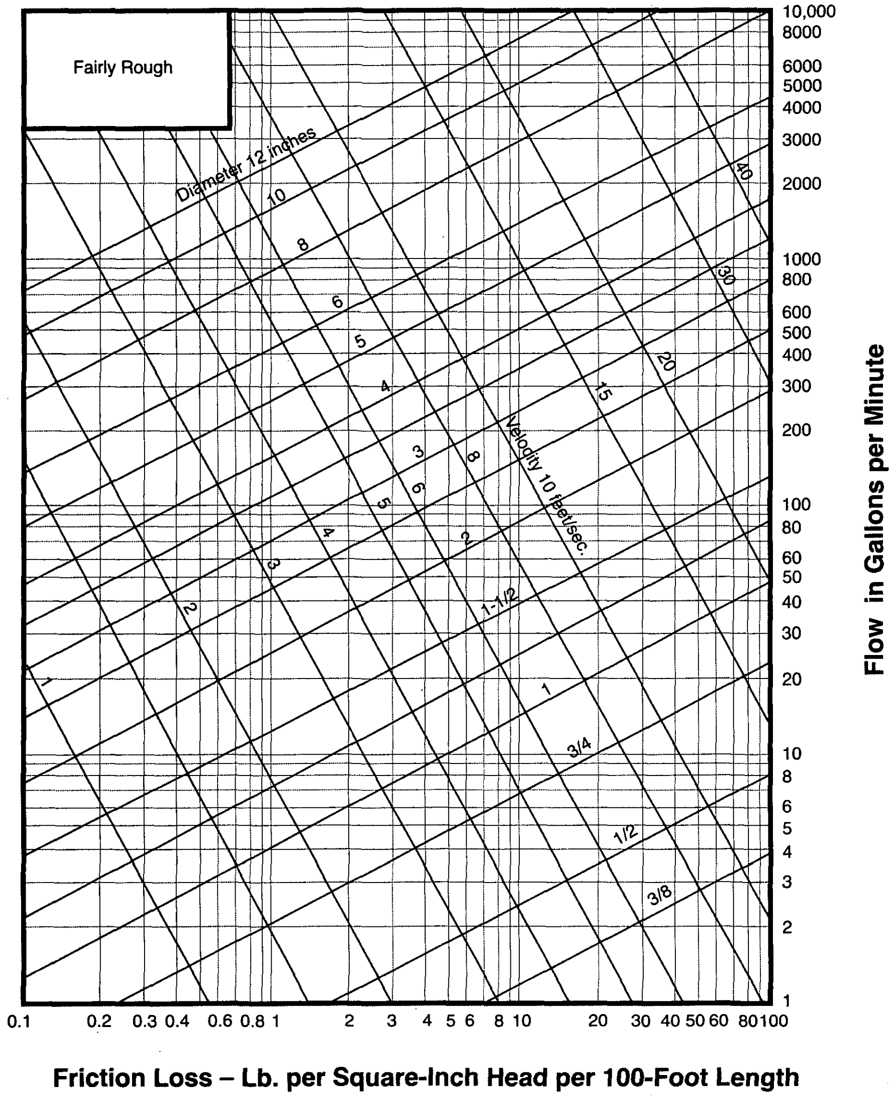

Fairly Rough
Diameter 12 inches
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1-1/2
1
3/4
1/2
3/8
Velocity 10 feet/sec.
8
6
5
4
3
2
15
20
30
40
10,000
8000
6000
5000
4000
3000
2000
1000
800
600
500
400
300
200
100
80
60
50
40
30
20
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
0.1 0.2 0.3 0.4 0.6 0.8 1 2 3 4 5 6 8 10 20 30 40 50 60 80 100
Flow in Gallons per Minute
Friction Loss – Lb. per Square-Inch Head per 100-Foot Length

Chart A-6 (Metric)

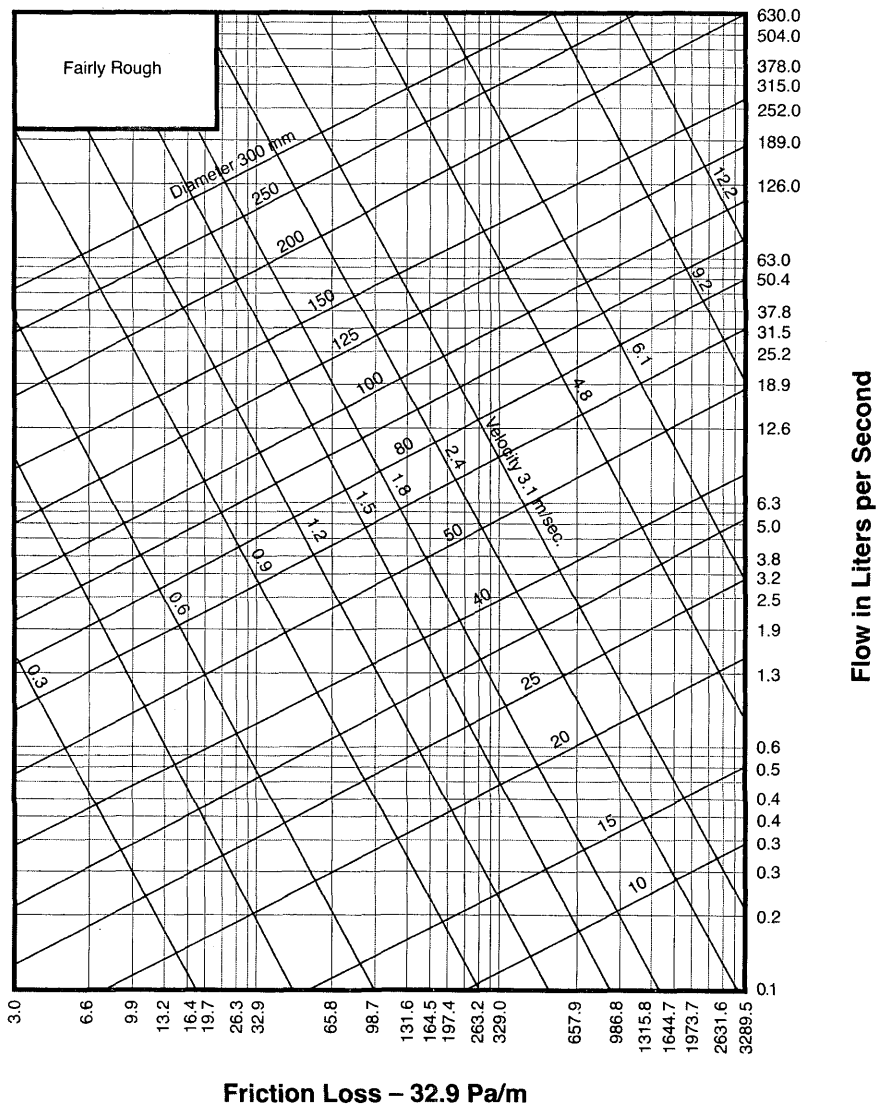


Chart A-7

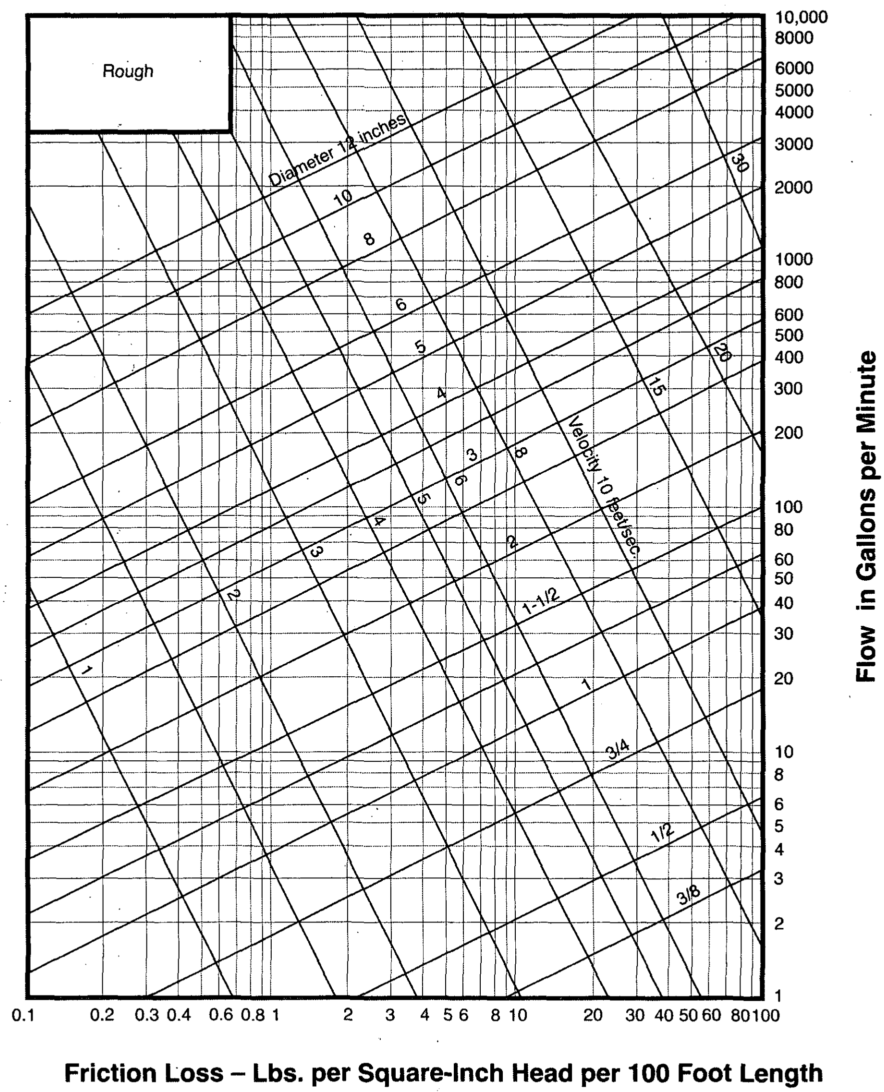
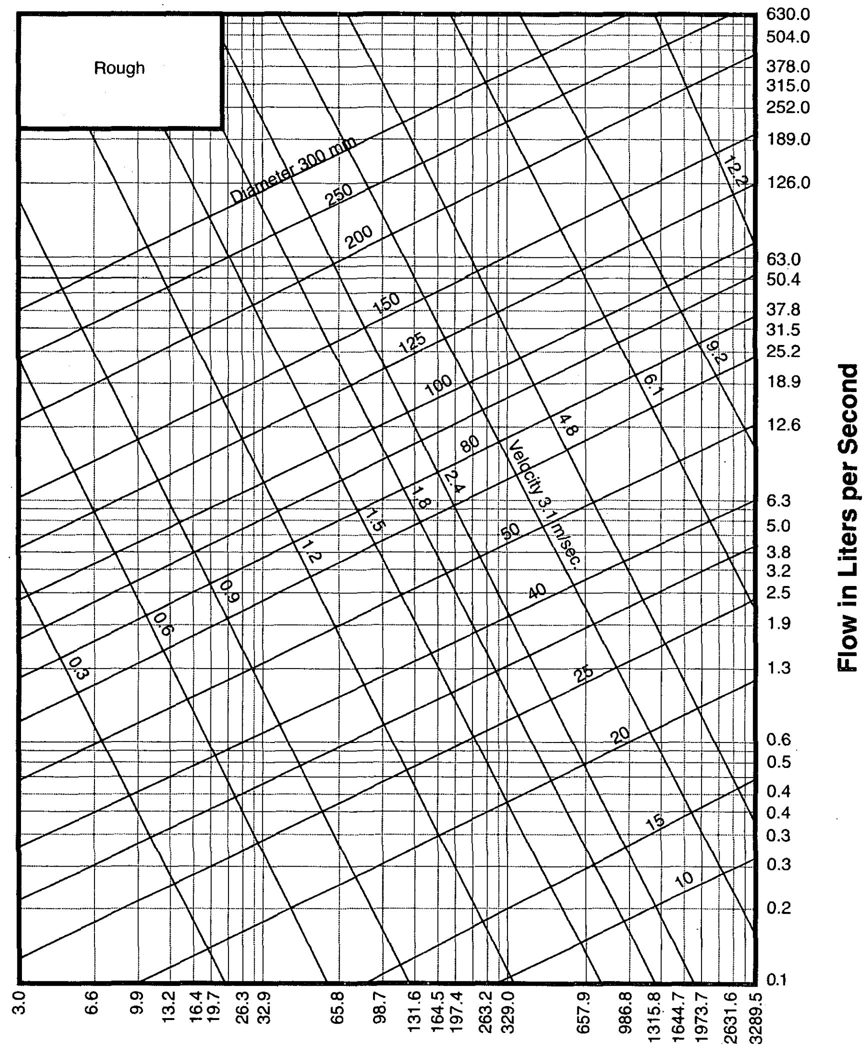

Rough
Diameter 12 inches
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1-1/2
1
3/4
1/2
3/8
Velocity 10 feet/sec.
30
20
15
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
10,000
8000
6000
5000
4000
3000
2000
1000
800
600
500
400
300
200
100
80
60
50
40
30
20
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
0.1
0.2
0.3 0.4
0.6 0.8 1
2
3
4 5 6
8 10
20
30 40 50 60 80 100
Flow in Gallons per Minute
Friction Loss – Lbs. per Square-Inch Head per 100 Foot Length

Chart A-7 (Metric)



Friction Loss – 32.9 Pa/m

APPENDIX B

EXPLANATORY NOTES ON COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEMS

(See Section 910.0 of the UPC for specific limitations.)

B 1 Combination waste and vent systems, as outlined in Section 910.0 of this code, cover the horizontal wet venting of a series of traps by means of a common waste and vent pipe. Pipe sizes at least two (2) pipe sizes larger than those required for a conventional system are designed to maintain a wetted perimeter or flow line low enough in the waste pipe to allow adequate air movement in the upper portion, thus balancing the system. Sinks, lavatories, and other fixtures that rough in above the floor, should not be permitted on a combination waste and vent system, which, at best, is merely an expedient designed to be used in locations where it would be structurally impractical to provide venting in the conventional manner.

Combination waste and vent systems are intended primarily for extensive floor or shower drain installations where separate venting is not practical, for floor sinks in markets, demonstration or work tables in school buildings, or for similar applications where the fixtures are not adjacent to walls or partitions. Due to its oversize characteristics, such a waste system is not self-scouring and, consequently, care should be exercised as to the type of fixtures connected thereto and to the location of cleanouts. In view of its grease-producing potential, restaurant kitchen equipment should not be connected to a combination waste and vent system.

B 2 Caution must be exercised to exclude appurtenances delivering large quantities or surges of water (such as pumps, sand interceptors, etc.) from combination waste and vent systems in order that adequate venting will be maintained. Small fixtures with a waste-producing potential of less than seven and one-half (7-1/2) gallons per minute (0.5 L/sec.) may be safely assigned a loading value of one (1) unit. Long runs should be laid at the minimum permissible slope in order to keep tailpieces as short as possible. Tailpieces should not exceed two (2) feet (610 mm) in length, which may necessitate slopes up to forty-five (45) degrees (0.79 rad) (see definition of *horizontal pipe*) on some branches.

B 3 It is essential that the pneumatics of such a system be properly engineered, as the air pressure within the line must at all times balance that of outside atmosphere in order to prevent either trap seal loss or air locking between traps. Long mains shall be provided with additional relief vents located at intervals not exceeding one hundred (100) feet (30,480 mm). Each such relief vent should equal at least one-half (1/2) of the inside cross-sectional area of the drainpipe served.

B 4 Trap sizes are required to be equivalent to the branches they serve (two (2) pipe sizes larger than normal), and tailpieces between fixtures or floor drains and such traps should be reduced to normal size.

B 5 Duplicate layout drawings of each such proposed piping system must be presented to the Authority Having Jurisdiction and approval obtained before any installation is made. Complicated layouts should be checked by qualified personnel.

B 5.1 Example of Sizing.
A floor drain normally required two (2) inch (50 mm) trap and waste. On a combination waste and vent system, both trap and waste must be increased two (2) pipe sizes (through 2-1/2" and 3") (65 mm and 80 mm), which would make the trap three (3) inch (76 mm). Pipe sizes recognized for this purpose are 2 in., 2-1/2 in., 3 in., 3-1/2 in., 4 in., 4-1/2 in., 5 in., 6 in., etc. (50 mm, 65 mm, 76 mm, 90 mm, 100 mm, 115 mm, 125 mm, 150 mm, etc.). The tailpiece between the floor drain and its trap should be two (2) inches (51 mm) (or normal size) to ensure that the amount of wastewater entering the trap only partially fills the waste branch. A three (3) inch (76 mm) floor drain would thus require a four (4) inch (100 mm) trap, a four (4) inch (100 mm) floor drain, and five (5) inch (125 mm) trap, etc., for the reasons previously stated.

WHEN IN DOUBT, CHECK WITH YOUR LOCAL Authority Having Jurisdiction.

APPENDIX D

SIZING STORM WATER DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

D 1 Roof Drainage.

The rainfall rates in Table D-1 should be used for design unless higher values are established locally.

D 2 Sizing by Flow Rate.

Storm drainage systems can be sized by storm water flow rates, using the appropriate GPM/square foot of rainfall listed in Table D-1 for the local area. Multiplying the listed GPM/square foot by the roof area being drained by each inlet (in square feet) produces the gallons per minute (GPM) of required flow for sizing each drain inlet. The flow rates (GPM) can then be added to determine the flows in each section of the drainage system. Required pipe sizes for various flow rates (GPM) are listed in Table 11-1 and Table 11-2.

D 3 Sizing by Roof Area.

Storm drainage systems can be sized using the roof area served by each section of the drainage system. Maximum allowable roof areas with various rainfall rates are listed in Table 11-1 and Table 11-2, along with the required pipe sizes. Using this method, it may be necessary to interpolate between two listed rainfall rate columns (inches per hour). To determine the allowable roof area for a listed pipe size at a listed slope, divide the allowable square feet of roof for a one (1) inch (25.4 mm/h) rainfall rate by the listed rainfall rate for the local area. For example, the allowable roof area for a six (6) inch (152 mm) drain at one-eighth (1/8) inch (3.2 mm) slope with a rainfall rate of 3.2 inches (81 mm/h) is 21,400/3.2 = 6,688 square feet (621.3 m^2).

D 4 Capacity of Rectangular Scuppers.

Table D-2 lists the discharge capacity of rectangular roof scuppers of various widths with various heads of water. The maximum allowable level of water on the roof should be obtained from the structural engineer, based on the design of the roof.

TABLE D-1
Maximum Rates of Rainfall for Various Cities

The rainfall rates in this table are based on U.S. Weather Bureau Technical Paper No. 40, Chart 14: 100-Year 60-Minute Rainfall (inches).

States and Cities	Storm Drainage 60-Minute Duration, 100-Year Return	
	Inches/Hour	GPM/Square Foot
ALABAMA		
Birmingham	3.7	0.038
Huntsville	3.3	0.034
Mobile	4.5	0.047
Montgomery	3.8	0.039
ALASKA		
Aleutian Islands	1.0	0.010
Anchorage	0.6	0.006
Bethel	0.8	0.008
Fairbanks	1.0	0.010
Juneau	0.6	0.006
ARIZONA		
Flagstaff	2.3	0.024
Phoenix	2.2	0.023
Tucson	3.0	0.031

TABLE D-1 Continued

States and Cities	Storm Drainage 60-Minute Duration, 100-Year Return	
	Inches/Hour	GPM/Square Foot
ARKANSAS		
Eudora	3.8	0.039
Ft. Smith	3.9	0.041
Jonesboro	3.5	0.036
Little Rock	3.7	0.038
CALIFORNIA		
Eureka	1.5	0.016
Lake Tahoe	1.3	0.014
Los Angeles	2.0	0.021
Lucerne Valley	2.5	0.026
Needles	1.5	0.016
Palmdale	3.0	0.031
Redding	1.5	0.016
San Diego	1.5	0.016
San Francisco	1.5	0.016
San Luis Obispo	1.5	0.016
COLORADO		
Craig	1.5	0.016
Denver	2.2	0.023
Durango	1.8	0.019
Stratton	3.0	0.031
CONNECTICUT		
Hartford	2.8	0.029
New Haven	3.0	0.031
DELAWARE		
Dover	3.5	0.036
Rehobeth Beach	3.6	0.037
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA		
Washington	4.0	0.042
FLORIDA		
Daytona Beach	4.0	0.042
Ft. Myers	4.0	0.042
Jacksonville	4.3	0.045
Melbourne	4.0	0.042
Miami	4.5	0.047
Palm Beach	5.0	0.052
Tampa	4.2	0.044
Tallahassee	4.1	0.043
GEORGIA		
Atlanta	3.5	0.036
Brunswick	4.0	0.042
Macon	3.7	0.038
Savannah	4.0	0.042
Thomasville	4.0	0.042

TABLE D-1 Continued

States and Cities	Storm Drainage 60-Minute Duration, 100-Year Return	
	Inches/Hour	GPM/Square Foot
HAWAII		
Rainfall rates in the Hawaiian Islands vary from 1-1/2 inches/hour to 8 inches/hour, depending on location and elevation. Consult local data.		
IDAHO		
Boise	1.0	0.010
Idaho Falls	1.2	0.012
Lewiston	1.0	0.010
Twin Falls	1.1	0.011
ILLINOIS		
Chicago	2.7	0.028
Harrisburg	3.1	0.032
Peoria	2.9	0.030
Springfield	3.0	0.031
INDIANA		
Evansville	3.0	0.031
Indianapolis	2.8	0.029
Richmond	2.7	0.028
South Bend	2.7	0.028
IOWA		
Council Bluffs	3.7	0.038
Davenport	3.0	0.031
Des Moines	3.4	0.035
Sioux City	3.6	0.037
KANSAS		
Goodland	3.5	0.036
Salina	3.8	0.039
Topeka	3.8	0.039
Wichita	3.9	0.041
KENTUCKY		
Bowling Green	2.9	0.030
Lexington	2.9	0.030
Louisville	2.8	0.029
Paducah	3.0	0.031
LOUISIANA		
Monroe	3.8	0.039
New Orleans	4.5	0.047
Shreveport	4.0	0.042
MAINE		
Bangor	2.2	0.023
Kittery	2.4	0.025
Millinocket	2.0	0.021

TABLE D-1 Continued

States and Cities	Storm Drainage 60-Minute Duration, 100-Year Return	
	Inches/Hour	GPM/Square Foot
MARYLAND		
Baltimore	3.6	0.037
Frostburg	2.9	0.030
Ocean City	3.7	0.038
MASSACHUSETTS		
Adams	2.6	0.027
Boston	2.7	0.028
Springfield	2.7	0.028
MICHIGAN		
Detroit	2.5	0.026
Grand Rapids	2.6	0.027
Kalamazoo	2.7	0.028
Sheboygan	2.1	0.022
Traverse City	2.2	0.023
MINNESOTA		
Duluth	2.6	0.027
Grand Forks	2.5	0.026
Minneapolis	3.0	0.031
Worthington	3.4	0.035
MISSISSIPPI		
Biloxi	4.5	0.047
Columbus	3.5	0.036
Jackson	3.8	0.039
MISSOURI		
Independence	3.7	0.038
Jefferson City	3.4	0.035
St. Louis	3.2	0.033
Springfield	3.7	0.038
MONTANA		
Billings	1.8	0.019
Glendive	2.5	0.026
Great Falls	1.8	0.019
Missoula	1.3	0.014
NEBRASKA		
Omaha	3.6	0.037
North Platte	3.5	0.036
Scotts Bluff	2.8	0.029
NEVADA		
Las Vegas	1.5	0.016
Reno	1.2	0.012
Winnemucca	1.0	0.010

TABLE D-1 Continued

States and Cities	Storm Drainage 60-Minute Duration, 100-Year Return	
	Inches/Hour	GPM/Square Foot
NEW HAMPSHIRE		
Berlin	2.2	0.023
Manchester	2.5	0.026
NEW JERSEY		
Atlantic City	3.4	0.035
Paterson	3.0	0.031
Trenton	3.2	0.033
NEW MEXICO		
Albuquerque	2.0	0.021
Carlsbad	2.6	0.027
Gallup	2.1	0.022
NEW YORK		
Binghamton	2.4	0.025
Buffalo	2.3	0.024
New York City	3.1	0.032
Schenectady	2.5	0.026
Syracuse	2.4	0.025
NORTH CAROLINA		
Asheville	3.2	0.033
Charlotte	3.4	0.035
Raleigh	4.0	0.042
Wilmington	4.4	0.046
NORTH DAKOTA		
Bismarck	2.7	0.028
Fargo	2.9	0.030
Minot	2.6	0.027
OHIO		
Cincinnati	2.8	0.029
Cleveland	2.4	0.025
Columbus	2.7	0.028
Toledo	2.6	0.027
Youngstown	2.4	0.025
OKLAHOMA		
Boise City	3.4	0.035
Muskogee	4.0	0.042
Oklahoma City	4.1	0.043
OREGON		
Medford	1.3	0.014
Ontario	1.0	0.010
Portland	1.3	0.014

TABLE D-1 Continued

States and Cities	Storm Drainage 60-Minute Duration, 100-Year Return	
	Inches/Hour	GPM/Square Foot
PENNSYLVANIA		
Erie	2.4	0.025
Harrisburg	2.9	0.030
Philadelphia	3.2	0.033
Pittsburgh	2.5	0.026
Scranton	2.8	0.029
RHODE ISLAND		
Newport	3.0	0.031
Providence	2.9	0.030
SOUTH CAROLINA		
Charleston	4.1	0.043
Columbia	3.5	0.036
Greenville	3.3	0.034
SOUTH DAKOTA		
Lemmon	2.7	0.028
Rapid City	2.7	0.028
Sioux Falls	3.4	0.035
TENNESSEE		
Knoxville	3.1	0.032
Memphis	3.5	0.036
Nashville	3.0	0.031
TEXAS		
Corpus Christi	4.6	0.048
Dallas	4.2	0.044
El Paso	2.0	0.021
Houston	4.6	0.048
Lubbock	3.3	0.034
San Antonio	4.4	0.046
UTAH		
Bluff	2.0	0.021
Cedar City	1.5	0.016
Salt Lake City	1.3	0.014
VERMONT		
Bennington	2.5	0.026
Burlington	2.3	0.024
Rutland	2.4	0.025
VIRGINIA		
Charlottesville	3.4	0.035
Norfolk	4.0	0.042
Richmond	4.0	0.042
Roanoke	3.3	0.034

TABLE D-1 Continued

States and Cities	Storm Drainage 60-Minute Duration, 100-Year Return	
	Inches/Hour	GPM/Square Foot
WASHINGTON		
Seattle	1.0	0.010
Spokane	1.0	0.010
Walla Walla	1.0	0.010
WEST VIRGINIA		
Charleston	2.9	0.030
Martinsburg	3.0	0.031
Morgantown	2.7	0.028
WISCONSIN		
Green Bay	2.5	0.026
Lacrosse	2.9	0.030
Milwaukee	2.7	0.028
Wausau	2.5	0.026
WYOMING		
Casper	1.9	0.020
Cheyenne	2.5	0.026
Evanston	1.3	0.014
Rock Springs	1.4	0.015

TABLE D-2
Discharge from Rectangular Scuppers – Gallons per Minute

Water Head, Inches	Width of Scupper in Inches 6	12	18	24	30	36
1/2	6	13	19	25	32	38
1	17	35	53	71	89	107
1-1/2	31	64	97	130	163	196
2		98	149	200	251	302
2-1/2		136	207	278	349	420
3		177	271	364	458	551
3-1/2			339	457	575	693
4			412	556	700	844

TABLE D-2 (Metric)
Discharge from Rectangular Scuppers – Liters per Second

Water Head (mm)	Width of Scupper in Millimeters 152	305	457	610	762	914
13	0.4	0.8	1.2	1.6	2.0	2.4
25	1.1	2.2	3.3	4.5	5.6	6.8
38	2.0	4.0	6.1	8.2	10.3	12.4
51		6.2	9.4	12.6	15.8	19.1
64		8.6	13.1	17.5	22.0	26.5
76		11.2	17.1	23.0	28.9	34.8
89			21.4	28.8	36.3	43.7
102			26.0	35.1	44.2	53.3

Notes:
1. Table D-2 is based on discharge over a rectangular weir with end contractions.
2. Head is the depth of water above bottom of the scupper opening.
3. The height of the scupper opening should be at least two (2) times the design head.
4. Coordinate the allowable head of water with the structural design of the roof.

APPENDIX E

MANUFACTURED/MOBILE HOME PARKS AND RECREATIONAL VEHICLE PARKS

Part A
Manufactured/Mobile Home (M/H) Park Definitions and General Requirements

E 1 Manufactured/Mobile Home.

A structure transportable in one (1) or more sections, which in the traveling mode is eight (8) body feet (2,438 mm) or more in width and forty (40) body feet (12,192 mm) or more in length or, when erected on site, is three hundred twenty (320) or more square feet (29.7 m^2), and which is built on a permanent chassis, and designed to be used as a dwelling with or without a permanent foundation when connected to the required utilities. It includes the plumbing, heating, air conditioning, and electrical systems contained therein. For further clarification of definition, see Federal Regulation 24 CFR.

E 1.1 Manufactured/Mobile Home Accessory Building or Structure. A building or structure that is an addition to or supplements the facilities provided to a M/H. It is not a self-contained, separate, habitable building or structure. Examples are awnings, cabanas, ramadas, storage structures, carports, fences, windbreaks, or porches.

E 2 Manufactured/Mobile Home Lot. A portion of a M/H park designed for the accommodation of one M/H and its accessory buildings or structures for the exclusive use of the occupants.

E 3 Manufactured/Mobile Home Park. A parcel (or contiguous parcels) of land that has been so designated and improved that it contains two (2) or more M/H lots available to the general public for the placement thereon of M/H for occupancy.

General

E 4 The M/H park plumbing and drainage systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with the requirements of this appendix and the requirements of this code.

E 5 Before any plumbing or sewage disposal facilities are installed or altered in any M/H park, duplicate plans and specifications shall be filed and proper permits obtained from the department or departments having jurisdiction. Plans shall show in detail:

(A) Plot plan of the park drawn to scale, indicating elevations, property lines, driveways, existing or proposed buildings, and the sizes of M/H lots.

(B) Complete specification and piping layout of proposed plumbing systems or alteration.

(C) Complete specification and layout of proposed sewage disposal system or alteration.

(D) The nature and extent of the work proposed, showing clearly that such work will conform to the provisions of this code.

Part B
Manufactured/Mobile Home Park Drainage System Construction

E 6 Drainage Systems.

A drainage system shall be provided in all M/H parks for conveying and disposing of all sewage. Wherever feasible, connection shall be made to a public system. All new improvements shall be designed, constructed, and maintained in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. Where the drainage lines of the M/H park are not connected to a public sewer, all proposed sewage disposal facilities shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction prior to construction.

E 7 Material.

Pipe and fittings installed underground in M/H park drainage systems shall be of material approved for the purpose. M/H lot drainage inlets and extensions to grade shall be of material approved for underground use within a building.

E 8 Drainage (Sewage) Lines.

All drainage (sewage) collection lines shall be located in trenches of sufficient depth to be free of breakage from traffic or other movements and shall be separated from the park water supply system as specified in this code. Drainage (sewage) lines shall have a minimum size and slope as specified in Tables E-1 and E-2.

E 9 M/H Lot Drainage Inlet and Lateral.

(A) Size. Each lot shall be provided with a drainage inlet not less than three (3) inches (76 mm) in diameter.

(B) The lateral line from the inlet to the sewage drain line shall slope at least one-fourth (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m). All joints shall be watertight.

(C) All materials used for drainage connections between a M/H and the lot drainage inlet

shall be semi-rigid, corrosion-resistant, non-absorbent, and durable. The inner surface shall be smooth.

(D) Provision shall be made for plugging or capping the sewage drain inlet when a M/H does not occupy the lot. Surface drainage shall be diverted away from the inlet. The rim of the inlet shall extend not more than four (4) inches (102 mm) above ground elevation.

E 10 Location of Lot Drain Inlet.

Each lot drainage inlet shall be located in the rear third section and within four (4) feet (1,219 mm) of the proposed location of the M/H.

E 11 Pipe Size.

(A) Each M/H lot drainage inlet shall be assigned a waste loading value of twelve (12) drainage fixture units, and each park drainage system shall be sized according to Table E-1 or as provided herein. Drainage laterals shall be not less than three (3) inches (76 mm) in diameter.

(B) A park drainage system that exceeds the fixture unit loading of Table E-1 or in which the grade and slope of drainage pipe does not meet the minimum specified in Table E-2 shall be designed by a registered professional engineer.

E 12 M/H Drain Connector.

(A) An M/H shall be connected to the lot drainage inlet by means of a drain connector consisting of approved pipe not less than Schedule 40, appropriate fittings and connectors, and not less in size than the M/H drainage outlet. An approved cleanout shall be provided between the M/H and the lot drainage inlet. The fitting connected to the lot drainage inlet shall be a directional fitting to discharge the flow into the drainage inlet.

TABLE E-1
Drainage Pipe Diameter and Number of Fixture Units on Drainage System

Size of Drainage Pipe Inches	mm	Maximum Number of Fixture Units
2*	51	8
3	76	35
4	102	256
5	127	428
6	152	720
8	203	2640
10	254	4680
12	305	8200

*Except six unit fixtures

TABLE E-2
Minimum Grade and Slope of Drainage Pipe

Pipe Size Inches	mm	Slope per 100 ft. (30.5 m) Inches	mm	Pipe Size Inches	mm	Slope per 100 ft. (30.5 m) Inches	mm
2	51	25	635	6	152	8	203
3	76	25	635	8	203	4	102
4	102	15	381	10	254	3-1/2	89
5	127	11	279	12	305	3	76

(B) A drain connector shall be installed or maintained with a grade not less than one-fourth (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m). A drain connector shall be gastight and no longer than necessary to make the connection between the M/H outlet and the drain inlet on the lot. A flexible connector may be used at the lot drainage inlet area only. Each lot drainage inlet shall be capped gastight when not in use.

Part C
M/H Park Water Supply

E 13 General Requirements.

An accessible and adequate supply of potable water shall be provided in each M/H park. Where a public supply of water of satisfactory quantity, quality, and pressure is available at or within the boundary of the park site, connection shall be made thereto and its supply used exclusively. When a satisfactory public water supply is not available, a private water supply system shall be developed and used as approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

E 14 Lot Service Outlet Size.

Each M/H lot shall be provided with a water service outlet delivering potable water. The water service outlet riser shall be not less than three-fourths (3/4) inch (19.1 mm) nominal pipe size and capable of delivering twelve (12) water supply fixture units.

E 15 Location of Water Service.

Each lot water service outlet shall be located in the rear third section and within four (4) feet (1,219 mm) of the proposed location of the M/H.

E 16 Pressure.

Each M/H park water distribution system shall be so designed and maintained as to provide a pressure of not less than twenty (20) pounds per square inch (138 kPa) at each M/H lot at maximum operating conditions.

E 17 Water Distribution Piping.

Park water distribution systems shall be designed to deliver a minimum of twelve (12) water supply fixture units to each lot and installed with materials as set forth in Chapter 6 and/or Appendix A of this code.

E 18 Shutoff Valve.

A separate water shutoff valve shall be installed in each water service outlet at each M/H lot. Where a listed backflow protective device is installed, the service shutoff shall be located on the supply side of such device.

E 19 Backflow Preventer.

Whenever a condition exists in the plumbing of a M/H that may create a cross-connection, a listed backflow preventer shall be installed in the water service line to the M/H at or near the water service outlet. When a hose bibb or outlet is installed on the supply outlet riser in addition to the service connector, a listed backflow preventer shall be installed on each additional outlet.

E 20 Pressure-Relief Valve.

Whenever it is required to install a backflow preventer at the M/H lot service outlet, a listed pressure-relief valve shall be installed in the water service line on the discharge side of the backflow preventer. Pressure-relief valves shall be set to release at a pressure not to exceed one hundred fifty (150) pounds per square inch (1,034 kPa). Pressure-relief valves shall discharge toward the ground. Backflow preventers and pressure-relief valves shall be at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above the ground.

E 21 Mechanical Protection.

All park water service outlets, backflow preventers, and pressure-relief valves shall be protected from damage by vehicles or other causes. Such protection may consist of posts, fencing, or other permanent barriers.

E 22 M/H Water Connector.

An M/H shall be connected to the park water service outlet by a flexible connector, such as copper tubing or other approved material not less than three quarter (3/4) inch nominal (19.1 mm) interior diameter.

E 23 Water-Conditioning Equipment.

(A) Permit Required. A permit shall be obtained from the Authority Having Jurisdiction prior to installing any water-conditioning equipment on an M/H lot. Approval of the park operator is required on all applications for a permit to install such equipment. If the water-conditioning equipment is of the regenerating type, and the park drainage system discharges into a public sewer, approval of the sanitary district or agency having jurisdiction over the public sewer is required.

(B) Approval. Regenerating water-conditioning equipment shall be listed and labeled by an approved listing agency.

(C) Installation. Regenerating units shall discharge the effluent of regeneration into a trap not less than one and one-half (1-1/2) inches (38 mm) in diameter connected to the M/H park drainage system. An approved air gap shall be installed on the discharge line a minimum of twelve (12) inches (305 mm) above the ground.

E 24 Testing.

Installations shall be tested and inspected as required by Chapter 3 of this code.

Part D
Fuel Supply

E 25 General.

All fuel gas piping systems serving manufactured homes, accessory buildings, or structures and communities shall be designed and constructed in accordance with any applicable provisions of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*, and NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*. NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*, shall apply to oil fuel-burning systems and shall conform to the criteria of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 501A: 4.1.1]

E 25.1 Gas Supply Connections.

Gas supply connections at sites, where provided from an underground gas supply piping system, shall be located and arranged to permit attachment to a M/H occupying the site in a work-like manner. For the installation of liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) storage systems, the applicable provisions of NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, shall be followed. [NFPA 501A: 4.1.2.1, 4.1.2.2]

E 25.2 Location of Gas Supply Connection.

The gas supply to the M/H shall be located within 4 feet (1.22 m) of the M/H stand.

Exception: The above requirements shall not apply to gas supply connections for manufactured homes located on all-weather wood, concrete, or concrete block foundation systems or on foundations constructed in accordance with the local Building Code or, in the absence of a local code, with a recognized model building code. [NFPA 501A: 4.1.3]

E 26 Single and Multiple Manufactured Home Site Fuel Supply Systems.

E 26.1 Gas Piping Installations.

E 26.1.1 Gas Supply Connections – Underground Gas Piping.

Gas supply connections at sites, where provided from an underground gas supply piping system, shall be located and arranged to permit attachment in a work-like manner to a manufactured home occupying the site. For the installation of LPG storage systems, the provisions of NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, shall be followed.

E 26.1.2 Underground gas piping system installations shall comply with any applicable Building Code and Sections E 26.1.2.1 and E 26.1.2.2. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.1]

E 26.1.2.1 Underground gas piping shall not be installed beneath that portion of an M/H site reserved for the location of a manufactured home or M/H accessory building or structure unless installed in the open-ended gastight conduit of Section E 26.1.2.2. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.1.1]

E 26.1.2.2 The open-ended gastight conduit shall conform to the following: [NFPA 501A: 4.2.1.2]

(1) The conduit shall be not less than Schedule 40 pipe that is approved for underground installation beneath buildings. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.1.2(a)]

(2) The interior diameter of the conduit shall be not less than 0.5 inches (12.7 mm) larger than the outside diameter of the gas piping. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.1.2(b)]

(3) The conduit shall extend to a point not less than 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the outside wall of the M/H, accessory building, or structure, and the outer ends shall not be sealed.[NFPA 501A: 4.2.1.2(c)]

(4) Where the conduit terminates within a M/H, accessory building, or structure, it shall be readily accessible, and the space between the conduit and the gas piping shall be sealed to prevent leakage of gas into the building. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.1.2(d)]

E 27 Manufactured Home Site Gas Shutoff Valve.

Each M/H site shall have a listed gas shutoff valve installed upstream of the M/H site gas outlet. The gas shutoff valve shall be located on the outlet riser at a height of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above grade. A gas shutoff valve shall not be located under any M/H. The outlet shall be equipped with a cap or plug to prevent discharge of gas whenever the M/H site outlet is not connected to an M/H. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.2.2(a-d)]

Exception: All gas shutoff valves for manufactured homes located on foundations constructed in accordance with the local Building Code or, in the absence of a local code, with a recognized model building code.

E 28 Gas Meters.

E 28.1 Support of Meters. Where installed, gas meters shall be adequately supported by a post or bracket placed on a firm footing or other means providing equivalent support and shall not depend on the gas outlet riser for support. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.3.1]

E 28.2 Location of Meters. Each gas meter shall be installed in an accessible location and shall be provided with unions or other fittings so that the motor is removed easily and placed in an upright position. Meters shall not be installed in unventilated or inaccessible locations or closer than 3 ft (0.91 m) to sources of ignition. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.3.2]

E 28.3 Meter Shutoff Valve or Cock. All gas meter installations shall be provided with shutoff valves or cocks located adjacent to and on the inlet side of the meters. In the case of a single meter installation utilizing an LP-Gas container, the container service valve shall be permitted to be used in lieu of the shutoff valve or cock. All gas meter installations shall be provided with test tees located adjacent to and on the outlet side of the meters. [NFPA 501A: 4.2.4]

E 29 Multiple Manufactured Home Site Fuel Distribution and Supply Systems.

[See NFPA 501A: Section 4.1, 4.3.11, 4.4, and 4.4.5.]

E 30 Manufactured Home Community Natural Gas Distribution Systems.

All underground metallic fuel piping systems shall comply with the cathodic protection requirements of 49 CFR 191 and 192. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.1]

E 31 Manufactured Home Community LPG Supply Systems.

Where 10 or more customers are served by one LPG supply system, the installation of the gas supply system shall be in accordance with 49 CFR 192, *Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards.* Other liquefied petroleum gas supply systems and the storage and handling of LPG shall be in accordance with NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code.* [NFPA 501A: 4.3.2]

E 32 Installation of Cathodic Protection Systems.

Where required by the federal standard cited in NFPA 501A Section 2.3.1, cathodic protection shall be installed for corrosion control of buried or submerged metallic gas piping. [See also NFPA 501A: Section 4.3.6.1 and 4.3.6.2] [NFPA 501A: 4.3.3]

E 33 Required Gas Supply.

The minimum hourly volume of gas required at each M/H site outlet or any section of the M/H community gas piping system shall be calculated as shown in Table E 3. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.4.1

E 34 Gas Pipe Sizing and Pressure.

E 34.1 The size of each section of a gas piping system shall be determined in accordance with NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code,* or by other standard engineering methods acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.5.1]

E 34.2 Where all connected appliances are operated at their rated capacity, the supply pressure shall be not less than 4 ounces per square inch [7 in. water column (1,743 Pa)]. The gas supply pressure shall not exceed 8 ounces per square inch [14 in. water column (3,486 Pa)]. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.5.2]

E 35 Gas Piping Materials.

E 35.1 Metal. Metal gas pipe shall be standard-weight wrought iron or steel (galvanized or black), yellow brass containing not more than 75 percent copper, or internally tinned or treated copper of iron pipe size. Galvanizing shall not be considered protection against corrosion.

Seamless copper or steel tubing shall be permitted to be used with gases not corrosive to such material. Steel tubing shall comply with ASTM A 539, *Standard Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines,* or ASTM A 254, *Standard Specification for Copper-Brazed Steel Tubing.* Copper tubing shall comply with ASTM B 88, *Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tubing (Type K or Type L),* or ASTM B 280, *Specification for Seamless Copper Tubing for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service.* Copper tubing (unless tin-lined) shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard feet^3 of gas. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.6.1]

TABLE E-3
Demand Factors for Use in Calculating Gas Piping Systems in M/H Communities

No. of Manufactured Home Sites	Btu/h per Manufactured Home Site
1	125,000
2	117,000
3	104,000
4	96,000
5	92,000
6	87,000
7	83,000
8	81,000
9	79,000
10	77,000
11–20	66,000
21–30	62,000
31–40	58,000
41–60	55,000
Over 60	50,000

Note:
In extreme climate areas, additional capacities shall be considered.

E 35.2 Protection Coatings for Metal Gas Piping. All buried or submerged metallic gas piping shall be protected from corrosion by approved coatings or wrapping materials. All gas pipe protective coatings shall be approved types, shall be machine applied, and shall conform to recognized standards. Field wrapping shall provide equivalent protection and is restricted to those short sections and fittings that are necessarily stripped for threading or welding. Risers shall be coated or wrapped to a point at least 6 inches (152 mm) above ground. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.6.2]

E 35.3 Plastic. Plastic piping shall be used underground only and shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 2513, *Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*, or ASTM D 2517, *Reinforced Epoxy Resin Gas Pressure Pipe and Fittings*, as well as the design pressure and design limitations of 49 CFR 192.123, and shall otherwise conform to the installation requirements thereof. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.6.3]

E 36 Gas Piping Installations.

E 36.1 Minimum Burial Below Ground Level and Clearances.

All gas piping installed below ground level shall have a minimum earth cover of 18 inches (451 mm) and shall be installed with at least 12 inches (305 mm) of clearance in any direction from any other underground utility system. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.7.1]

E 36.2 Metallic Gas Piping.

E 36.2.1 All metallic gas piping systems shall be installed in accordance with approved plans and specifications, including provisions for cathodic protection. Each cathodic protection system shall be designed and installed to conform to the provisions of 49 CFR 192. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.7.2.1, 4.3.7.2.2]

E 36.2.2 Where the cathodic protection system is designed to protect only the gas piping system, the gas piping system shall be electrically isolated from all other underground metallic systems or installations. Where only the gas piping system is cathodically protected against corrosion, a dielectric fitting shall be used in the M/H gas connection to insulate the M/H from the underground gas piping system. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.7.2.3, 4.3.7.2.4]

E 36.2.3 Where a cathodic protection system is designed to provide all underground metallic systems and installations with protection against corrosion, all such systems and installations shall be electrically bonded together and protected as a whole. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.7.2.5]

E 36.3 Plastic Gas Piping. Plastic gas piping shall only be used underground and shall be installed with an electrically conductive wire for locating the pipe. The wire used to locate the plastic pipe shall be copper, not smaller in size than No. 18 AWG, with insulation approved for direct burial. Every portion of a plastic gas piping system consisting of metallic pipe shall be cathodically protected against corrosion. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.7.3]

E 36.4 Gas Piping System Shutoff Valve. A readily accessible and identifiable shutoff valve controlling the flow of gas to the entire M/H community gas piping system shall be installed near the point of connection to the service piping or to the supply connection of an LPG container. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.7.4]

E 37 Liquefied Petroleum Gas Equipment.

LPG equipment shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.8]

E 38 Oil Supply.

The following three methods of supplying oil to an individual M/H site shall be permitted:

(1) Supply from an outside underground tank (see Section 2.4.6)

(2) Supply from a centralized oil distribution system designed and installed in accordance with accepted engineering practices and in compliance with NFPA 31,*Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*

(3) Supply from an outside aboveground tank (see Section 2.4.6) [NFPA 501A: 4.3.9]

E 38.1 Minimum Oil Supply Tank Size. Oil supply tanks shall have a minimum capacity equal to 20 percent of the average annual oil consumption.[NFPA 501A: 4.3.10]

E 38.2 Oil Supply Connections – General. Oil supply connections at M/H stands, where provided from a centralized oil distribution system, shall be located and arranged to permit attachment in a work-like manner to a manufactured home utilizing the stand. The installation of such facilities shall meet the provisions of NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*, and particularly Section 3.8 thereof. [NFPA 501A: 4.3.11]

E 39 Fuel Supply Systems Installation.

E 39.1 Flexible Gas Connector. Each gas supply connector shall be listed for outside M/H use, shall be not more than 6 ft (1.83 m) in length, and shall have a capacity rating adequate to supply the connected load. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.1]

Exception: All gas supply connections for manufactured homes located on an all-

weather wood, concrete, or concrete block foundation system or on a foundation constructed in accordance with the local Building Code or, in the absence of a local code, with a recognized model building code.

E 39.2 Use of Approved Pipe and Fittings of Extension. Where it is necessary to extend the M/H inlet to permit connection of the 6 foot (1.83 m) listed connector to the site gas outlet, the extension shall be of approved materials of the same size as the M/H inlet and shall be adequately supported at no more than 4 foot (1.22 m) intervals to the M/H. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.2]

E 39.3 Mechanical Protection. All gas outlet risers, regulators, meters, valves, or other exposed equipment shall be protected against accidental damage. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.3]

E 39.4 Special Rules on Atmospherically Controlled Regulators. Atmospherically controlled regulators shall be installed in such a manner that moisture cannot enter the regulator vent and accumulate above the diaphragm. Where the regulator vent is obstructed due to snow and icing conditions, shields, hoods, or other suitable devices shall be provided to guard against closing of the vent opening. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.4]

E 39.5 Fuel Gas Piping Test. The M/H fuel gas piping system shall be tested only with air before it is connected to the gas supply. The M/H gas piping system shall be subjected to a pressure test with all appliance shutoff valves in their closed positions. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.5]

E 39.5.1 The fuel gas piping test shall consist of air pressure at not less than 10-inch water column or more than 14 inch water column [6 oz./in.^{2} to 8 oz./in.^{2} (2,490 Pa to 3,486 Pa)]. The system shall be isolated from the air pressure source and shall maintain this pressure for 10 minutes or more without perceptible leakage. Upon satisfactory completion of the test, the appliance valves shall be opened, and the gas appliance connectors shall be tested with soapy water or bubble solution while under the pressure remaining in the piping system. Solutions used for testing for leakage shall not contain corrosive chemicals. Pressure shall be measured with either a manometer, slope gauge, or gauge that is calibrated in either water inch or psi, with increments of either 1/10 inch (2.5 mm) or 1/10 psi (0.6 kPa gauge), as applicable. Upon satisfactory completion of the test, the M/H gas supply connector shall be installed, and the connections shall be tested with soapy water or bubble solution. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.5.1.1-4.4.5.1.6]

WARNING

Do not overpressurize the fuel gas piping system. Damage to valves, regulators, and appliances can occur due to pressurization beyond the maximums specified. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.5.2]

E 39.5.2 Gas appliance vents shall be visually inspected to ensure that they have not been dislodged in transit and are connected securely to the appliance. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.5.3]

E 39.6 Oil Tanks.

No more than one 660 gallon (2,500 L) tank or two tanks with aggregate capacity of 660 gallon (2,500 L) or less shall be connected to one oil-burning appliance. Two supply tanks, where used, shall be cross-connected and provided with a single fill and single vent as described in NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*, and shall be on a common slab and rigidly secured one to the other. Tanks having a capacity of 660 gallon (2,500 L) or less shall be securely supported by rigid, noncombustible supports to prevent settling, sliding, or lifting. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.6]

E 39.6.1 Oil supply tanks shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.6.1]

E 39.6.2 A tank with a capacity no larger than 60 gallon (230 L) shall be permitted to be a DOT-5 shipping container (drum) and so marked, or a tank meeting the provisions of UL 80, *Steel Inside Tank for Oil Burner Fuel*. Tanks other than DOT-5 shipping containers having a capacity of not more than 660 gallon (2,500 L) shall meet the provisions of UL 80. Pressure tanks shall be built in accordance with Section VIII, Pressure Vessels, *ASME Boiler, and Pressure Vessel Code*. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.6.2.1-4.4.6.2.2]

E 39.6.3 Tanks, as described in Sections 2.4.6 and 2.4.6.2, that are adjacent to buildings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3.05 m) from a property line that is permitted to be built upon. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.6.3]

E 39.6.4 Tanks with a capacity no larger than 660 gallon (2,500 L) shall be equipped with an open vent no smaller than 1.5-inch (38 mm) iron pipe size; tanks with a 500 gallon (1900 L) or less capacity shall have a vent of 1.25-inch (32 mm) iron pipe size. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.6.4]

E 39.6.5 Tanks shall be provided with a means of determining the liquid level. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.6.5]

E 39.6.6 The fill opening shall be a size and in a location that permits ready filling without spillage. [NFPA 501A: 4.4.6.6]

E 40 Manufactured Home Accessory Building Fuel Supply Systems.

Fuel gas supply systems installed in a M/H accessory building or structure shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*, and NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*. Fuel oil supply systems shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*.[NFPA 501A: 4.5]

E 41 Community Building Fuel Supply Systems in Manufactured Home Communities.

E 41.1 Fuel Gas Piping and Equipment Installations.

Fuel gas piping and equipment installed within a permanent building in a M/H community shall comply with nationally recognized appliance and fuel gas piping codes and standards adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Where the state or other political subdivision does not assume jurisdiction, such fuel gas piping and equipment installations shall be designed and installed in accordance with the appropriate provisions of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*, or NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*. [NFPA 501A: 4.6.1]

E 41.2 Oil Supply Systems in M/H Communities.

Oil-burning equipment and installation within a M/H community shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable codes and standards adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Where the state or other political subdivision does not assume jurisdiction, such installation shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*. [NFPA 501A: 4.6.2]

E 41.3 Oil-Burning Equipment and Installation.

Oil-burning equipment and installation within a building constructed in a M/H community in accordance with the local Building Code or a nationally recognized building code shall comply with nationally recognized codes and standards adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Where the state or other political subdivision does not assume jurisdiction, such oil-burning equipment and installation shall be designed and installed in accordance with the appropriate provisions of NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*. [NFPA 501A: 4.6.3]

E 41.4 Inspections and Tests.

Inspections and tests for fuel gas piping shall be made in accordance with Chapters 1 and 12 of this Code.

Part E

Recreational Vehicle Parks Definitions and General Requirements

E 42 Recreational Vehicle (RV).

A vehicular-type unit primarily designed as temporary living quarters for recreational, camping, travel, or seasonal use, that either has its own motive power, or is mounted on or towed by another vehicle. The basic entities are camping trailer, fifth-wheel trailer, motor home, park trailer, travel trailer, and truck camper.

E 43 Recreational Vehicle Park.

A plot of land upon which two (2) or more recreational vehicle sites are located, established, or maintained for occupancy by recreational vehicles of the general public as temporary living quarters for recreation or vacation purpose.

E 44 Recreational Vehicle Site.

Within a recreational vehicle park, a plot of ground intended for the accommodation of a recreational vehicle, a tent, or other individual camping unit on a temporary basis.

E 45 General.

All plumbing shall be installed in accordance with the plumbing codes of the Authority Having Jurisdiction and with this appendix.

Part F

Recreational Vehicle Park Toilet and Shower Facilities

E 46 Toilets and urinals shall be provided at one (1) or more locations in every recreational vehicle park. They shall be convenient of access and shall be located within a five hundred (500) foot (152.4 m) radius from any recreational vehicle site not provided with an individual sewer connection.

E 47 Facilities for males and females shall be appropriately marked.

E 48 A minimum of one (1) toilet shall be provided for each sex up to the first twenty-five (25) sites. For each additional twenty-five (25) sites not provided with sewer connections, an additional toilet shall be provided.

E 49 The interior finish of walls shall be moisture resistant to a height of four (4) feet (1,219 mm) to facilitate washing and cleaning.

E 50 The floors shall be constructed of material impervious to water and shall be easily cleanable. Any building having water-flush toilets shall be provided with a floor drain in the toilet room. This drain shall be provided with means to protect the trap seal as required by this code.

E 51 If water-flush toilets are provided, an equal number of lavatories shall be provided for up to six (6) toilets. One additional lavatory shall be provided for each two (2) toilets when more than six (6) toilets are required. Each lavatory basin shall have a piped supply of potable water and shall drain into the drainage system.

E 52 If separate facilities are provided for men and women, urinals shall be acceptable for no more than one-third (1/3) of the toilets required in the men's facilities, except that one (1) urinal may be used to replace a toilet in a minimum park. Only individual stall or wall-hung types of urinals shall be installed. Floor-type trough units shall be prohibited.

E 53 Toilets shall be of an approved, elongated bowl type and shall be provided with seats with open fronts.

E 54 Each toilet shall be in a separate compartment and be provided with a door with a latch for privacy and a holder or dispenser for toilet paper. Dividing walls or partitions shall be at least five (5) feet (1,524 mm) high and shall be separated from the floor by a space not greater than twelve (12) inches (305 mm).

E 55 Toilet compartments shall be not less than thirty (30) inches (762 mm) in width (no toilet shall be set closer than fifteen (15) inches (381 mm) from its center to a side wall) and there shall be not less than thirty (30) inches (762 mm) of clear space in front of each toilet.

E 56 Each toilet room for women shall be provided with a receptacle for sanitary napkins. The receptacle shall be of durable, impervious, and readily cleanable material, and shall be provided with a lid.

E 57 Each shower, if provided, shall have a floor area of thirty-six (36) inches by thirty-six (36) inches (914 mm x 914 mm) and shall be capable of encompassing a thirty (30) inch (762 mm) diameter circle and shall be of the individual type, and each shower area shall be visually screened from view, with a minimum floor area of thirty-six (36) by thirty-six (36) inches (914 mm x 914 mm) per shower. Each shall be provided with individual dressing areas screened from view and shall contain a minimum of one (1) clothing hook and stool (or equivalent bench area).

E 58 Each shower area shall be designed to minimize the flow of water into the dressing area and shall be connected to the drainage system by means of a properly vented and trapped inlet. Each such area shall have an impervious, skid-resistant surface; wooden racks (duck boards) over shower floors shall be prohibited.

E 59 Every toilet building shall have a minimum ceiling height of seven (7) feet (2,134 mm) and, unless artificial light is provided, a window or skylight area equal to at least ten (10) percent of the floor area shall be provided.

All doors to the exterior shall open outward, be self-closing, and shall be visually screened by means of a vestibule or wall to prevent direct view of the interior when the exterior doors are open. Such screening shall not be required on single toilet units.

E 60 Every toilet room shall have permanent, non-closable, screened opening(s), having a total area not less than five (5) percent of the floor area and opening directly to the exterior in order to provide proper ventilation. Listed exhaust fan(s), vented to the exterior, the rating of which in cubic feet per minute is at least twenty-five (25) percent of the total volume of the room(s) served, shall be considered as meeting the requirements of this subsection. All openable windows and vents to the outside shall be provided with fly-proof screens of not less than number sixteen (16) mesh.

Part G
Recreational Vehicle Park Potable Water Supply and Distribution

E 61 Quality.

The supply or supplies of water shall comply with the appropriate potable water standards of the state or local health authority or, in the absence thereof, with the Drinking Water Standard of the Federal Environmental Protection Agency. (See 42 CFR Part 72, subpart J.)

E 62 Sources.

Only water approved by a regulating agency shall be acceptable. Where an approved public water supply system is available, it shall be used. Where the park has its own water supply system, the components of the system shall be approved. A water supply system that is used on a seasonal basis shall be provided with means for draining.

E 63 Prohibited Connections.

The potable water supply shall not be connected to any nonpotable or unapproved water supply, nor be subjected to any backflow or back-siphonage.

E 64 Supply.

The water supply system shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the following:

(A) A minimum of twenty-five (25) gallons (94.6 L) per day per site for sites without individual water connections.

(B) A minimum of fifty (50) gallons (189.3 L) per day per site for sites with individual water connections.

(C) A minimum of fifty (50) gallons (189.3 L) per day per site if water-flush toilets are provided in rest rooms.

E 65 Pressure and Volume.

Where water is distributed under pressure to any individual site, the water supply system shall be designed to provide a minimum flow pressure of twenty (20) pounds per square inch (137.8 kPa) with a minimum flow of two (2) gallons (7.6 L) per minute at any outlet. The maximum pressure shall not exceed eighty (80) pounds per square inch (551 kPa).

E 66 Outlets.

Water outlets shall be convenient to access and, when not piped to individual RV sites, shall not be located farther than three hundred (300) feet (91.4 m) from any site. Provisions shall be made to prevent accumulation of standing water or the creation of muddy conditions at each water outlet.

E 67 Storage Tanks.

Water storage tanks shall be constructed of impervious materials, protected against contamination, and provided with locked, watertight covers. Any overflow or ventilation openings shall be downfacing and provided with corrosion-resistant screening of not less than number twenty-four (24) mesh to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin. Water storage tanks shall not have direct connections to sewers.

Part H

Recreational Vehicle Park Water Connections for Individual Recreational Vehicles

E 68 When provided, the water connections for potable water to individual recreational vehicle sites shall be located on the left rear half of the site (left side of RV) within four (4) feet (1,219 mm) of the stand.

E 69 Each potable water connection shall consist of a water riser pipe that shall be equipped with a threaded male spigot located at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) but not more than twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm) above grade level for the attachment of a standard water hose. The water riser pipe shall be protected from physical damage per this code. This connection shall be equipped with a listed anti-siphon backflow prevention device.

E 70 Drinking Fountains.

If provided, drinking fountains shall be in conformance with the requirements of this code.

Part I

Recreational Vehicle Park Drainage System

E 71 An adequate and approved drainage system shall be provided in all RV parks for conveying and disposing of all sewage. Where available, parks shall be connected to a public sewer system.

E 72 Material.

Pipe and fittings installed in the drainage system shall be of material listed, approved, and installed per this code.

E 73 The minimum diameters of drainage laterals, branches, and mains serving RV sites shall be in accordance with the following table:

Table E-4

Maximum Number of Recreational Vehicle Stands Served	Minimum Pipe Sizes Inches (ID)	Nominal (mm)
5	3	76
36	4	102
71	5	127
120	6	152
440	8	203

E 74 The sewer lines shall be located to prevent damage from vehicular traffic.

E 75 Cleanouts shall be provided per Chapter 7 of this code.

Part J

Recreational Vehicle Site Drainage System Inlet

E 76 When provided, the site drainage system inlet connections for individual RVs shall be located so as to prevent damage by the parking of RVs or automobiles and shall consist of a sewer riser extending vertically to grade. The minimum diameter of the sewer riser pipe shall be three (3) inches (76 mm), and it shall be provided with a four (4) inch (102 mm) inlet or a minimum three (3) inch (76 mm) female fitting.

E 77 When provided, the sewer inlet to individual RV sites shall be located on the left rear half of the site (left side of the RV) within four (4) feet (1,219 mm) of the stand.

E 78 The sewer riser pipe shall be firmly imbedded in the ground and protected against damage from movement. It shall be provided with a tight-fitting plug or cap, which shall be secured by a durable chain (or equivalent) to prevent loss.

Part K

Recreational Vehicle Park Sanitary Disposal Stations

E 79 One (1) RV sanitary disposal station shall be provided for each one hundred (100) RV sites, or part thereof, which are not equipped with individual drainage system connections.

E 80 Each station shall be level and convenient of access from the service road and shall provide easy ingress and egress for recreational vehicles.

E 81 Construction.

Unless other approved means are used, each station shall have a concrete slab with the drainage system inlet located so as to be on the road (left) side of the recreational vehicle. The slab shall be not less than three (3) feet by three (3) feet (914 mm x 914 mm), at least three and one-half (3-1/2) inches (89 mm) thick and properly reinforced. The slab surface is to be troweled to a smooth finish and sloped from each side inward to a drainage system inlet.

The drainage system inlet shall consist of a four (4) inch (102 mm) self-closing, foot-operated hatch of approved material with the cover milled to fit tight. The hatch body shall be set in the concrete of the slab with the lip of the opening flush with its surface to facilitate the cleansing of the slab with water. The hatch shall be properly connected to a drainage system inlet, which shall discharge to an approved sanitary sewage disposal facility.

E 82 Where the recreational vehicle park is provided with a piped water supply system, means for flushing the recreational vehicle holding tank and the sanitary disposal station slab shall be provided and shall consist of a piped supply of water under pressure, terminating in an outlet located and installed so as to prevent damage by automobiles or recreational vehicles. The flushing device shall consist of a properly supported riser terminating at least two (2) feet (610 mm) above the ground surface, with a three-fourth (3/4) inch (19.1 mm) valved outlet adaptable for a flexible hose.

The water supply to the flushing device shall be protected from backflow by means of a listed vacuum breaker or backflow prevention device located downstream from the last shutoff valve.

Adjacent to the flushing arrangement shall be posted a sign of durable material not less than two (2) feet by two (2) feet (610 mm x 610 mm) in size. Inscribed thereon in clearly legible letters shall be the following:

DANGER – NOT TO BE USED FOR DRINKING OR DOMESTIC PURPOSES.

Part L

Recreational Vehicle Park Water Supply Stations

E 83 A potable watering station, if provided for filling recreational vehicle potable water tanks, shall be located at least fifty (50) feet (15,240 mm) from a sanitary disposal station. When such is provided, adjacent to the potable water outlet shall be posted a sign of durable material not less than two (2) feet by two (2) feet (610 mm by 610 mm) in size. Inscribed thereon in clear legible letters on a contrasting background shall be: POTABLE WATER. NOT TO BE USED FOR FLUSHING WASTE TANKS. The potable water shall be protected from backflow by means of a listed vacuum breaker located downstream from the last shutoff valve.

Part M

Recreational Vehicle Park Fuel Gas Equipment and Installations

E 84 All fuel gas equipment and installations shall comply with Part D of this appendix, except as otherwise permitted or required by this code.

APPENDIX F

FIREFIGHTER BREATHING AIR REPLENISHMENT SYSTEMS

F 1 Scope.

This chapter covers minimum requirements for installation of firefighter breathing air replenishment systems.

F 2 Definitions.

For purposes of this chapter, the following definitions shall apply:

High-Rise Building. Buildings greater than 75 feet in height where the building height is measured from the lowest level of fire department vehicle access to the floor of the highest occupiable story. [NFPA 5000: 3.3.58.9]

Interior Cylinder Fill Panels. Lockable interior panels that provide firefighters the ability to regulate breathing air pressure and refill SCBA cylinders.

Interior Cylinder Fill Stations and Enclosures. Free-standing fill containment stations that provide firefighters the ability to regulate breathing air pressure and refill SCBA cylinders.

Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus (SCBA). An atmosphere-supplying respirator that supplies a respirable air atmosphere to the user from a breathing source that is independent of the ambient environment and designed to be carried by the user. [NFPA 1981: 3.3.38]

F 3 System Components.

Firefighter breathing air replenishment systems shall contain, as a minimum, the following components.

(A) Exterior Fire Department Connection Panel

(B) Interior Fire Department Air Fill Panel or Station

(C) Interconnected Piping Distribution System

(D) Pressure Monitoring Switch

F 4 Required Installations.

A firefighter air system shall be installed in the following buildings:

F 4.1 High-rise buildings.

F 4.2 Underground structures that are three or more floors below grade with an area greater than 20,000 square feet.

F 4.3 Large area structures with an area greater than 200,000 square feet and where the travel distance from the building centerline to the closest exit is greater than 500 feet, such as warehouses, manufacturing complexes, malls, or convention centers.

F 4.4 Underground transportation or pedestrian tunnels exceeding 500 feet in length.

F 5 Exterior Fire Department Connection Panel and Enclosure.

F 5.1 Purpose. The exterior fire department connection panel shall provide the fire department's mobile air operator access to the system and shall be compatible with the fire department's mobile air unit.

F 5.2 Number of Panels. Each building or structure shall have a minimum of two panels.

F 5.3 Location. Each panel shall be attached to the building or on a remote monument at the exterior of the building with a minimum of six (6) foot radius and 180-degree clear unobstructed access to the front of the panel. The panel shall be weather-resistant or secured inside of a weather-resistant enclosure. The panel shall be located on opposite sides of the building within 50 feet of an approved roadway or driveway, or other locations approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

F 5.4 Construction. The fire department connection panel shall be installed in a metal cabinet constructed of minimum 18-gauge carbon steel or equivalent. The cabinet shall be provided with a coating or other means to protect the cabinet from corrosion.

F 5.5 Vehicle Protection. Where the panel is located in an area subject to vehicle traffic, impact protection shall be provided.

F 5.6 Enclosure Marking. The front of the enclosure shall be marked "FIREFIGHTER AIR SYSTEM". The lettering shall be in a color that contrasts with the enclosure front and in letters that are a minimum of 2 inches high with 3/8-inch brush stroke.

F 5.7 Enclosure Components. The exterior fire department connection panel shall contain all of the necessary gauges, isolation valves, pressure-relief valves, pressure-regulating valves, check valves, tubing, fittings, supports, connectors, adapters, and other necessary components as may be required to allow the fire department's mobile air unit to connect and augment the system with a constant source of

breathing air. Each fire department connection panel shall contain at least two inlet air connections.

F 5.8 Pressure-Relief Valve. Pressure-relief valves shall be installed downstream of the pressure regulator inlet. The relief valve shall meet the requirements of the CGA S-1.3 and shall not be field adjustable. The relief valve shall have a set-to-open pressure not exceeding 1.1 times the design pressure of the system. Pressure-relief valve discharge shall terminate so that the exhaust air stream cannot impinge upon personnel in the area. Valves, plugs or caps shall not be installed in the discharge of a pressure-relief valve. Where discharge piping is used, the end shall not be threaded.

F 5.9 Security. The fire department connection panel enclosure shall be locked by an approved means.

F 6 Interior Cylinder Fill Panels.

F 6.1 Cabinet Requirements. Each cylinder fill panel shall be installed in a metal cabinet constructed of minimum 18-gauge carbon steel or equivalent. The depth of the cabinet shall not create an exit obstruction when installed in building stairwells. With the exception of the shutoff valve, pressure gauges, fill hoses, and ancillary components, no system components shall be visible and shall be contained behind a minimum 18-gauge interior panel.

F 6.2 Clearance and Access. The panel shall be located a minimum of 36 inches but not more than 60 inches above the finished floor or a stairway landing. Clear unobstructed access shall be provided to each panel.

F 6.3 Door. The door shall be arranged such that when the door is open, it does not reduce the required exit width or create an obstruction in the path of egress.

F 6.4 Cabinet Marking. The front of each cylinder fill panel shall be marked "FIREFIGHTER AIR SYSTEM". The lettering shall be in a color that contrasts with the cabinet front and in letters that are a minimum of 2-inches high with 3/8-inch brush stroke.

F 6.5 Cabinet Components. The cabinet shall be of sufficient size to allow for the installation of the following components:

F 6.5.1 The cylinder fill panel shall contain all of the gauges, isolation valves, pressure-relief valves, pressure-regulating valves, check valves, tubing, fittings, supports, connectors, hoses, adapters, and other components to refill SCBA cylinders.

F 6.6 Cylinder Filling Hose. The design of the cabinet shall provide a means for storing the hose to prevent kinking. When the hose is coiled, the brackets shall be installed so that the hose bend radius is maintained at 4 inches or greater. Fill hose connectors for connection to SCBA cylinders shall comply with the requirements of CGA V-1, number 346 or 347. No other SCBA cylinder fill connections shall be permitted.

F 6.7 Security. Each panel cover shall be maintained and locked by an approved means.

F 7 Interior Cylinder Fill Stations and Enclosures.

F 7.1 Location. The location of the closet or room for each air fill station shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. When approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, the space may be utilized for other firefighting purposes. The door to each room enclosing the air filling station enclosure shall be readily accessible at all times. A minimum of six (6) foot radius and 180-degree clear unobstructed access to the front of the air filling station shall be provided. The enclosure shall have emergency lighting installed in accordance with NFPA 70.

F 7.2 Security. Each air fill station shall be installed within a lockable enclosure, closet, or room by an approved means. Access to fill equipment and controls shall be restricted to authorized personnel by key or other means.

F 7.3 Components. The air fill station shall contain all of the gauges, isolation valves, pressure-relief valves, pressure-regulating valves, check valves, tubing, fittings, supports, connectors, hoses, adapters, and other components to refill SCBA cylinders.

F 7.4 Cylinder Filling Hose. Where hoses are used the design of the cabinet shall provide a means for storing the hose to prevent kinking. When the hose is coiled, the brackets shall be installed so that the hose bend radius is maintained at 4 inches or greater. Fill hose connectors for connection to SCBA cylinders shall comply with the requirements of CGA V-1, number 346 or 347. For high-pressure SCBA cylinders (4,500 psi), number 347 connectors shall be used. For low-pressure SCBA cylinder (3,000 psi and 2,200 psi), number 346 connectors shall be used. No other SCBA cylinder fill connections shall be permitted.

F 7.5 Enclosure and Air Filling Station Marking. Each enclosure, closet, or room shall be marked FIREFIGHTERS AIR SYSTEM. The lettering shall be in a color that contrasts with the cabinet front and in letters that are a minimum of 2 inches high with 3/8-inch brush stroke.

F 8.0 Materials.

All pressurized components shall be compatible for use with high-pressure breathing air equipment and self-contained breathing air apparatus. All

pressurized breathing air components shall be rated for a minimum working pressure of 5,000 PSI.

F 8.1 Tubing. Tubing shall be stainless steel complying with ASTM A269, or other approved materials that are compatible with breathing air at the system pressure. Routing of tubing and bends shall be such as to protect the tubing from mechanical damage.

F 8.2 Fittings. Fittings shall be constructed of stainless steel complying with ASTM A479, or other approved materials that are compatible with breathing air at the system pressure.

F 8.3 Prohibited Materials. The use of nonmetallic materials, carbon steel, iron pipe, malleable iron, high-strength gray iron, or alloy steel shall be prohibited for breathing air pipe and tubing materials.

F 8.4 Pressure Monitoring Switch. An electric low-pressure monitoring switch shall be installed in the piping system to monitor the air pressure. The pressure switch shall transmit a supervisory signal to the central alarm monitoring station when the pressure of the breathing air system is less than 80 percent of the system operating pressure. Activation of the pressure switch shall also activate an audible alarm and visual strobe located at the building annunciator panel. A weather-resistant sign shall be provided in conjunction with the audible alarm stating "FIREFIGHTER AIR SYSTEM – LOW AIR PRESSURE ALARM." Where not part of a building annunciator panel, the lettering shall be in a contrasting color, and the letters shall be a minimum of 2 inches high with 3/8-inch brush stroke.

F 8.5 Isolation Valve. A system isolation valve shall be installed downstream of each air fill station and shall be located in the panel or within 3 feet of the station. The isolation valve shall be marked with its function in letters that are a minimum of 3/16-inches high with a 1/16-inch brushstroke.

F 9.0 System Requirements.

F 9.1 Protection. All components of the Firefighter Breathing Air Replenishment System installed in a building or structure shall be protected by a minimum two (2) hour fire-resistive construction. All components shall be protected from physical damage.

F 9.2 Markings. All components shall be clearly identified by means of stainless steel or plastic labels or tags indicating their function. This shall include as a minimum all fire department connection panels, air fill stations, air storage system, gauges, valves, air connections, air outlets, enclosures, and doors.

F 9.3 Tubing Markings. All tubing shall be clearly marked "FIREFIGHTERS AIR SYSTEM" and "HIGH PRESSURE BREATHING AIR" by means of signs or self-adhesive labels. Signs shall be 1 inch high and shall be secured to the tubing. Signs shall be made of brass, stainless steel, or plastic and engraved with 3/8 inch letters with 1/16 inch stroke lettering. Signs or labels shall be placed at a minimum of 20 foot intervals and at each fitting, whether the tubing is concealed or in plain view. All tubing shall have a sign or label at any accessible point.

F 9.4 Support. Pipe and tubing shall be supported at the minimum intervals shown in UPC Table 3-2. Pipe and tubing shall be supported in accordance with UPC 314.0.

F 10.0 Design Criteria.

F 10.1 Fill Time. The system shall be designed to fill, at the most remote fill station or panel, a minimum of two (2) 66 standard cubic foot compressed breathing air cylinder to a maximum pressure of 4,500 PSIG simultaneously in three (3) minutes or less. Where greater capacity is required, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall specify the required system capacity.

F 10.2 Fill Panels or Stations Location. Cylinder fill panels or stations shall be installed in the interior of buildings as follows:

F 10.2.1 High-Rise Buildings. An interior cylinder fill panel or station shall be installed commencing on the third floor and every third floor thereafter above grade. For underground floors in buildings with more than five underground floors, an interior cylinder fill panel or station shall be installed commencing on the third floor below grade and every three floors below grade thereafter, except for the bottom-most floor.

F 10.2.2 Underground Structures. For underground floors in buildings with more than five underground floors, an interior cylinder fill panel or station shall be installed commencing on the third floor below grade and every three floors below grade thereafter, except for the bottom-most floor.

F 10.2.3 Installation Locations. The specific location or locations on each floor shall be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

F 11.0 System Assembly Requirements.

The system shall be an all-welded system except where the tubing joints are readily accessible and at the individual air fill panels or stations. When mechanical high-pressure tube fittings are used, they shall be approved for the type of materials to be joined and rated for the maximum pressure of the system.

F 11.1 Welding Requirements. Welding procedures shall meet ASME B31.1, Part 4 and Chapter V. Prior to and during the welding of sections of tubing, a continuous, regulated dry nitrogen or argon purge at three PSIG shall be maintained to eliminate contamination with products of the oxidation or welding flux. The purge shall commence a minimum of 2 minutes prior to welding operations and continue until the welded joint is at ambient temperature.

F 11.2 Prevention of Contamination. The system components shall not be exposed to contaminants, including but not limited to, oils, solvents, dirt, and construction materials. When contamination of system components has occurred, the affected component shall not be installed in the system.

F 12.0 System Acceptance and Certification.

F 12.1 Static Pressure Testing. Following fabrication, assembly, and installation of the piping distribution system, exterior connection panel, and interior cylinder fill panels, the Authority Having Jurisdiction shall witness the pneumatic testing of the complete system at a minimum test pressure of 7,500 PSI using oil-free dry air, nitrogen, or argon. A minimum twenty four (24) hour pneumatic test shall be performed. During this test, all fittings, joints, and system components shall be inspected for leaks. A solution compatible with the system component materials shall be used on each joint and fitting. Any defects in the system or leaks detected shall be documented on an inspection report, repaired or replaced. As an alternate, a pressure-decay test in accordance with ASME B31.3 shall be permitted.

F 12.2 Low Pressure Switch Test. Upon successful completion of the twenty four (24) hour static pressure test, the system's low-pressure monitoring switch shall be calibrated to not less than 3,000 PSI descending, and tested to verify that the signal is annunciated at the building's main fire alarm panel and by means of an audible alarm and visual strobe located in a visible location.

F 12.3 Compatibility Check. Each air fill panel and station and each exterior fire department connection panel shall be tested for compatibility with the fire department's SCBA fill fittings.

F 12.4 Material Certifications. The pipe or tubing material certifications shall be provided to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

F 12.5 Air Sampling. Before the system is placed into service, a minimum of two samples shall be taken from separate air fill panels and submitted to an independent certified gas analysis laboratory to verify the system's cleanliness and that the air complies with the requirements for breathing air in accordance with NFPA 1989, section 5.3. The written report of the analysis shall be submitted to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, documenting that the breathing air complies with this section.

F 12.5.1 During the period of air quality analysis, the air fill panel inlet shall be secured so that no air can be introduced into the system and each air fill panel shall be provided with a sign stating "AIR QUALITY ANALYSIS IN PROGRESS, DO NOT FILL OR USE ANY AIR FROM THIS SYSTEM." This sign shall be a minimum of 8-1/2 inches by 11 inches with minimum of 1 inch lettering.

F 12.6 Annual Air Sampling. The breathing air within the system shall be sampled and certified annually and inspected in accordance with the procedure in section F12.5.

F 12.7 Final Proof Test. The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall witness filling of two (2) empty sixty six (66) cubic foot capacity SCBA cylinders in three (3) minutes or less using compressed air supplied by fire department equipment connected to the exterior fire department connection panel. The SCBA cylinders shall be filled at the air fill panel or station farthest from the exterior fire department connection panel. Following this, a minimum of two (2) air samples shall then be taken from separate air filling stations and submitted to an independent certified gas analyst laboratory to verify the system's cleanliness and that the air meets the requirements of NFPA 1989. The written report shall be provided to the Authority Having Jurisdiction certifying that the air analysis complies with the above requirements.

"The information contained in this appendix is not part of this American National Standard (ANS) and has not been processed in accordance with ANSI's requirements for an ANS. As such, this appendix may contain material that has not been subjected to public review or a consensus process. In addition, it does not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard."

APPENDIX I
INSTALLATION STANDARDS

The following IAPMO Installation Standards are included here for the convenience of the users of the Uniform Plumbing Code. They are not considered as a part of the Uniform Plumbing Code unless formally adopted as such. These Installation Standards are independent, stand-alone documents published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials and are printed herein by the expressed written permission of IAPMO.

Contents

Installation Standard
For
NON-METALLIC BUILDING SEWERS

IAPMO IS 1-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 Installation and material of nonmetallic building sewer piping shall comply with this standard and the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials.

***Note:** The following sections of the 2003 Uniform Plumbing Code apply to non-metallic building sewer piping. The standard may include section numbers or may omit section numbers which pertain to non-metallic sewers.*

301.1	Minimum Standards
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited Fittings and Practices
313.0	Protection of Piping Materials and Structures
315.0	Trenching, Excavation and Backfill
723.0	Building Sewer Test
103.5.3.3	Exceptions
705.1	Types of Joints
705.2	Use of Joints
316.2.3	Plastic Pipe to Other Materials
316.4	Prohibited Joints and Connections
317.0	Increasers and Reducers
Chapter 7	Sanitary Drainage

2.0 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

2.1 After inspection of the sewer pipe, carefully backfill the trench as prescribed by Sections 314.0 and 315.0 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

2.2 The same water test procedure shall apply to all non-metallic house sewer materials as required in Section 723.0 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

Before laying non-metallic sewer pipe, prepare the bottom trench so that the piping shall lay on a firm bed throughout its entire length as required by Section 718.0 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

3.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

3.1 ABS OR PVC-DWV PIPE

3.1.1 Minimum Standards

ABS or PVC Schedule 40 DWV pipe for use in domestic sewage, excluding special waste, shall be installed in accordance with IAPMO Standards IS 5 and IS 9 (latest edition), whichever is applicable. ABS or PVC Schedule 40 DWV pipe, IAPMO listed, may be used in sizes 2 inch (51 mm) and larger. [UPC 301.1]

3.1.2 Markings

3.1.2.1 ABS Pipe. ABS pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 2661 or F 628. [UPC 716.0]

3.1.2.2 ABS Fittings. ABS fittings markings shall be in accordance with D 2661. [UPC 716.0]

3.1.2.3 PVC Pipe. PVC pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 2665. [UPC 716.0]

3.1.2.4 PVC Fittings. PVC fittings markings shall be in accor-dance with F 2135. [UPC 716.0]

3.1.3 Protection of Building Sewers

ABS or PVC Schedule 40 pipe shall be installed a minimum of 1 foot (305 mm) below the surface of the finished grade. Underground installation of thermoplastic sewer pipe shall be in accordance with ASTM D 2321. [UPC 718.0]

3.1.4 Cleanouts

Cleanouts, extended to within 1 foot (305 mm) of grade, shall be of materials listed for that use. [UPC 719.0]

3.2 PVC SEWER PIPE

3.2.1 Minimum Standards

3.2.1.1 Pipe

PVC, PSM, SDR 35, ASTM D 3034 and PVC, PS-46, ASTM F 789 Non-Pressure Pipe may be used in sizes four (4) inches (102 mm) and larger. [UPC 301.1]

3.2.1.2 Fittings

All fittings shall be PVC or other listed non-metallic materials having equivalent durability and equal or greater strengths. [UPC 301.1]

3.2.2 Types of Joints

PVC sewer pipe shall be joined by using compression joints or by other methods recognized in the UPC. Pipe and fitting ends shall be lubricated with an approved soap jelly or soap solution to permit easy assembly. [UPC 705.1]

3.2.2.1 Use of Joints

PVC sewer pipe shall be installed using the same type of jointing throughout, except when connecting to existing piping, piping

of other materials, in line repairs and manholes. Transition connections to other materials shall be made by adapter fittings or a one-piece molded rubber coupling with appropriate bushings for the respective material. [UPC 705.1]

3.2.3 Markings

3.2.3.1 PSM PVC pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 3034. [UPC 716.0]

3.2.3.2 PSM PVC fitting markings shall be in accordance with D 3034. [UPC 716.0]

3.2.3.3 PS 46 PVC pipe markings shall be in accordance with F 789. [UPC 716.0]

3.2.3.4 PS 46 PVC fitting markings shall be in accordance with F 789. [UPC 716.0]

3.2.4 PVC sewer pipe shall not be installed less than 1 foot (305 mm) below the surface of the finished grade and closer than twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm) from a building. Underground installation of thermoplastic sewer pipe shall be in accordance with ASTM D 2321. [UPC 718.0]

3.2.5 Cleanouts

Cleanouts, extended to within 1 foot (305 mm) of grade, shall be of materials listed for such use. [UPC 719.0]

3.3 HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE PIPE

3.3.1 Minimum Standards

3.3.1.1 Polyethylene pipe shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F 714 and installed in accordance with IAPMO IS 26. [UPC 301.1]

3.3.2 Types of Joints

3.3.2.1 HDPE joints shall be made using the following method:

a) Heat Fusion made in accordance with ASTM D 2657 or D 3261. [UPC 705.1]

3.3.3 Markings

3.3.3.1 Markings shall be in accordance with F 714. [UPC 716.0]

3.4 POLY VINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) CORRUGATED SEWER PIPE WITH A SMOOTH INTERIOR AND FITTINGS

3.4.1 Minimum Standards

3.4.1.1 Pipe. Corrugated PVC sewer pipe may be used in sizes four (4) (102 mm), six (6) (152 mm), eight (8) (203 mm), and ten (10) (254 mm) diameters and shall conform to ASTM F 949. [UPC 301.1]

The profile wall pipe corrugated PVC sewer pipe as intended for underground use in non pressure applications for sanitary sewers, storm sewer, and perforated and unperforated pipes for subdrainage. [UPC 301.1]

3.4.1.2 Fittings shall be PVC or other fittings having equivalent durability or equal or greater strengths in accordance with ASTM F 949. [UPC 301.1]

3.4.2 Types and Use of Joints. Corrugated PVC sewer pipe shall be joined by Molded or Elastomeric Compression Joints or by other approved methods. Elastomeric seals (gaskets) shall meet the requirements of ASTM F 477. The lubricant used for assembly shall be as recommended by the seller and shall have no detrimental affect on the gasket or on the pipe and fittings.

The PVC cement shall comply with ASTM D 2564 and shall be used in conjunction with a primer in compliance with ASTM F 656. The solvent cement shall be used only for bushings in accordance with ASTM D 2855. [UPC 316.1, 705.1, 705.3]

3.4.3 Markings

3.4.3.1 Corrugated PVC sewer pipe markings shall be in accordance with F 949. [UPC 716.0]

3.4.3.2 Corrugated PVC fittings markings shall be in accordance with F 949. [UPC 716.0]

3.4.4 Protection of Building Sewer. Corrugated PVC sewer pipe shall not be installed less than 1 foot (305 mm) below the surface of the finished grade and closer than twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm) from a building. Underground installation of thermoplastic sewer pipe shall be in accordance with ASTM D 2321. [UPC 718.3]

3.4.5 Cleanouts. Cleanouts, extended to within 1 foot (305 mm) of grade, shall be of materials listed for such use. [UPC 719.0]

3.5 ASBESTOS CEMENT SEWER PIPE

3.5.1 Minimum Standards

Asbestos cement sewer pipe shall be Type II only and may be used only in sizes four (4) inches (102 mm) and larger. Its use is limited to domestic sewage. [UPC 301.1]

3.5.2 All fittings used with asbestos cement sewer pipe shall be asbestos cement or other approved non-metallic materials having equivalent durability and providing fittings with equal or greater strengths. [UPC 705.0]

3.5.3 Asbestos cement sewer pipe and male end fittings shall be joined by means of a sleeve coupling and two rubber sealing rings suitable for the particular size of the pipe and fittings for which they will be used. The rubber sealing rings shall be positioned in interior grooves in the coupling.

The assembled joint shall provide the necessary compression of the rubber sealing rings to make a watertight joint. The crush

strength across the assembled joint shall be equivalent to the crush strength of the pipe with which it will be used. [UPC 705.1]

3.5.3.1 The use of unmachined field-cut asbestos cement sewer pipe is permitted for necessary length adjustments and at points of connection to other piping materials. These adaptions shall be made with either a one-piece molded rubber coupling with appropriate bushings or listed adapter fittings. [UPC 705.1]

3.5.3.2 Approved female fittings shall be provided with interior grooves in the bell ends in which rubber sealing rings, suitable for the particular size of pipe with which the fittings will be used, are placed. The compressed rubber sealing ring in the joined female (bell) fitting end shall provide a watertight joint. [UPC 705.1]

3.5.3.3 Pipe and fitting ends shall be lubricated with an approved jelly or soap solution to permit easy assembly. [UPC 705.1]

3.5.3.4 A listed one-piece molded rubber coupling with appropriate bushings may be used as an alternate means of connecting asbestos cement pipe and male end fittings. [UPC 705.1]

3.5.3.5 Transition from asbestos cement sewer pipe to another material shall be made by listed adapter fittings, or a one-piece molded coupling with appropriate bushings for the respective material. [UPC 705.1]

3.5.4 Markings

3.5.4.1 Asbestos cement sewer pipe markings shall be in accordance with C 428. [UPC 716.0]

3.5.4.2 Each coupling sleeve of fitting markings shall be in accordance with C 428. [UPC 716.0]

3.5.5 No asbestos cement sewer pipe shall be installed less than 1 foot (305 mm) below the surface of the ground or closer than two (2) feet (610 mm) to a building. [UPC 718.3]

3.5.6 Cleanouts shall be asbestos cement or other approved materials of plug or cap type installed with rubber ring compression joints. Cleanouts, extended to within 1 foot (305 mm) of the surface, shall be of materials approved for such use. [UPC 719.0]

3.6 CONCRETE SEWER PIPE

3.6.1 Minimum Standards

3.6.1.1 Pipe and Fittings

Concrete sewer pipe may be used in sizes four (4) inches (102 mm) and larger. Concrete sewer pipe shall conform to ASTM C 14, Class 2. Transition to other types or sizes of pipe may be made with listed concrete pipe adapter fittings or listed one-piece molded rubber coupling with appropriate bushings or increasers. [UPC 301.1]

3.6.2 Types of Joints

Concrete sewer pipe and fittings shall be joined by means of flexible rubber sealing rings, compressed to provide water-tight joints conforming to ASTM C 443, or by listed one-piece molded rubber couplings, or hot-poured joints of listed hot-pour compounds. Portland cement joints are prohibited except for repairs or connections to existing lines constructed with such joints.

concrete sewer pipe shall be joined by gaskets furnished by the pipe manufacturer and installed according to the manufacturer's instructions. Approved lubricant shall be used when required for the type of joint furnished. [UPC 705.1]

3.6.3 Use of Joints

Except for points of connection to existing piping at either end of the sewer, concrete sewer pipe shall be laid using the same type of jointing throughout. [UPC 705.2]

3.6.4 Markings

3.6.4.1 Concrete sewer pipe and fittings markings shall be in accordance with C 14. [UPC 716.0]

3.6.5 Grade, Support and Protection of Building Sewers

Concrete sewer pipe shall be installed not less than 1 foot (305 mm) below the ground and not closer than two (2) feet (610 mm) to a building. [UPC 718.0]

3.6.6 Cleanouts

Cleanouts shall conform to type of jointing used and cleanouts extended to within 1 foot (305 mm) of grade, shall be of materials listed for that use. [UPC 719.0]

3.7 VITRIFIED CLAY PIPE

3.7.1 Minimum Standards

3.7.1.1 Materials. Materials shall comply with the appropriate standard in Table 14-1 of the UPC. Vitrified clay sewer pipe, extra strength only, may be used in sizes three (3) inches (76 mm) and larger. [UPC 301.1]

3.7.2 Types of Joints

Vitrified clay sewer pipe and fittings shall be joined by means of preformed flexible compression joints or listed one-piece molded rubber couplings. [UPC 705.1]

3.7.2.1 Except at point of connection to existing piping at either end of the sewer, vitrified clay sewer piping shall be laid using the same type of jointing throughout. [UPC 705.1]

3.7.2.2 When installing clay pipe with flexible compression joints, the mating surfaces shall be wiped clean of dirt and foreign matter. An approved lubricant shall be applied to the joint surfaces. Spigot shall then be seated full depth into the bell. [UPC 705.1]

3.7.2.3 Listed one-piece molded rubber couplings shall be permitted for use on vitrified clay pipe and fittings, sizes three (3) inches (76 mm) through 1 foot (305 mm). [UPC 705.1]

3.7.2.4 Transition to other types of materials or sizes may be made with the use of listed one-piece molded, rubber couplings with appropriate bushings or increasers. [UPC 705.1]

3.7.3 Markings

3.7.3.1 Vitrified clay sewer pipe and fittings markings shall be in accordance with C 700. [UPC 716.0]

3.7.4 No vitrified clay sewer pipe shall be installed less than 1 foot (305 mm) below the surface of the ground. [UPC 718.3]

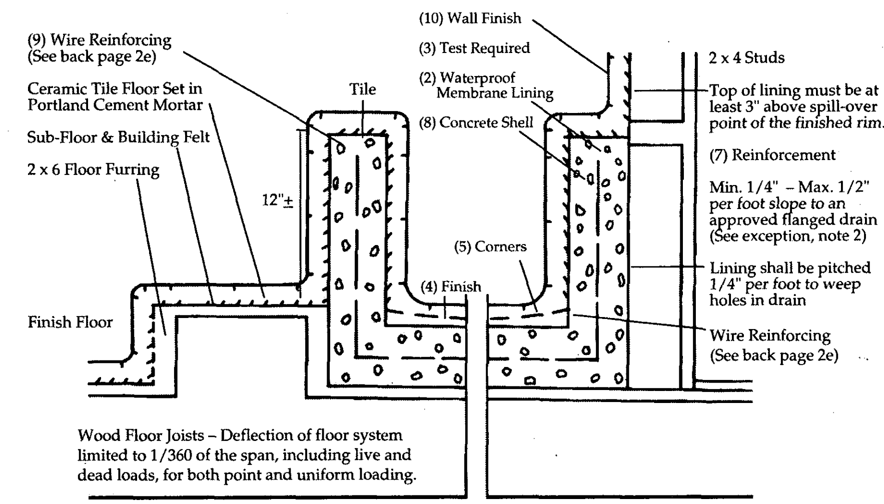
3.7.5 Cleanouts

Cleanouts shall conform to the type of jointing used and cleanouts extended to within 1 foot (305 mm) of grade shall be of materials approved for their use. [UPC 719.0]

ADOPTED: 1957
REVISED: 1966, 1971, 1973, 1975, 1976, 1982, 1985, 1990, 1991, 2002, 2003

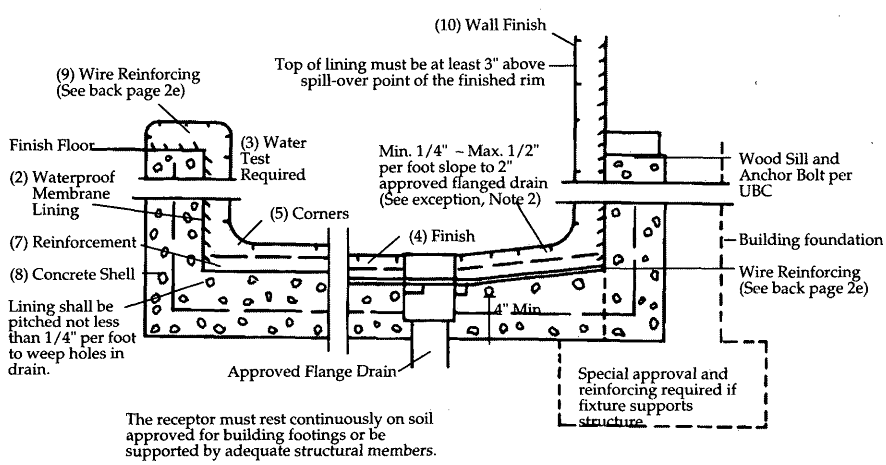
Installation Standard
For
TILE-LINED ROMAN BATH TUBS

IAPMO IS 2-2003



SCALE 1-1/2" = 1' - 0"

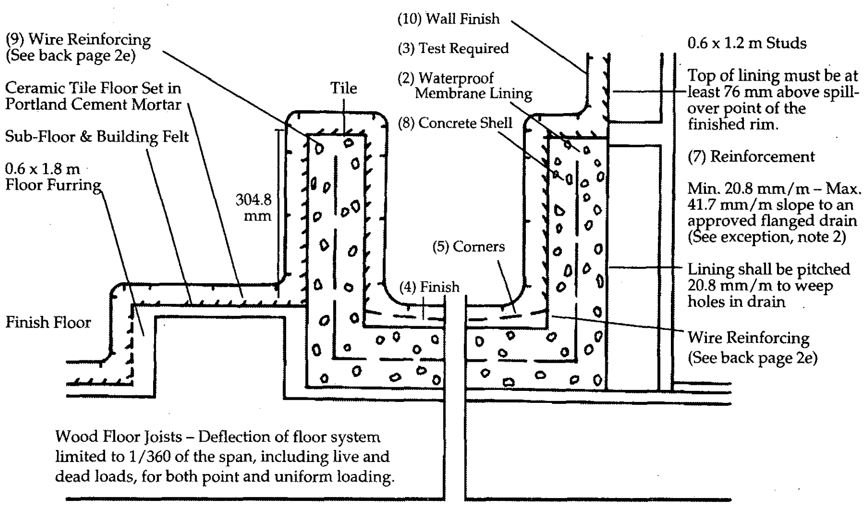
A vapor barrier consisting of at least one layer of 15 lb. type asphalt saturated felt shall be between wood surfaces and concrete.



SCALE 1-1/2" = 1' - 0"

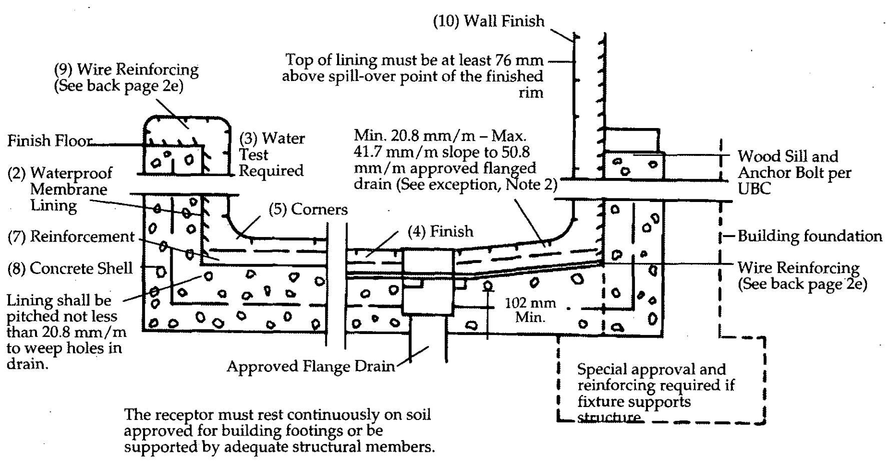
Illustrations reprinted with permission of the Ceramic Tile Institute

METRIC



SCALE 1.5 mm = 1 mm

A vapor barrier consisting of at least one layer of 6.8 kg type asphalt saturated felt shall be between wood surfaces and concrete.



SCALE 1.5 mm = 1 mm

Illustrations reprinted with permission of the Ceramic Tile Institute

1.0 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1 Inspection of Work – All surfaces prepared by others shall be inspected by the tile installer before starting tile work and all unsatisfactory conditions reported to the Administrative Authority. Starting tile work by the tile installer shall be considered as acceptance of surfaces prepared by others.

1.2 Surfaces – All surfaces to receive tile work shall be clean, structurally sound, and conform in every way to the local Building Code.

*(**Note:** No tile work shall proceed until the pan and drain construction has been inspected and approved by the Administrative Authority, where required.)*

2.0 MATERIALS

2.1 Tile Quality and Grade – Tile shall comply with American National Standard Specification for Ceramic Tile, A137.1 (equivalent to and incorporating U.S. Dept. of Commerce Simplified Practice Recommendation, R61-61 and Federal Specification SS-T-308b, Tile, Floor, Wall, and Trim Units, Ceramic).

2.2 Cement – Cement shall be portland cement type I or type II, conforming to ASTM C 150.

2.3 Sand – Sand shall be damp, clean and graded ASTM C 778.

2.4 Water – Water shall be potable.

2.5 Reinforcing shall be 3 inch x 3 inch (76 mm x 76 mm), 13 x 13 gage or 1-1/2 x 2 (38 mm x 51 mm) mesh, 16 x 13 gage steel wire, conforming to ASTM A82 and A185.

2.6 Asphalt shall conform to Federal Specification SS-A-0666, Type Z, Grade 2, Class A.

2.7 Plastic Roof Cement shall conform to Federal Specification SS-C153.

2.8 Waterproof Felt Membrane – The waterproof felt membrane shall be at least 15 lb. (6.8 kg) asphalt saturated felt, conforming to Type l, Federal Specification HH-F-191 (a).

2.9 Plastic Membrane shall comply with applicable standards listed in Table 14-1 of the UPC.

2.10 Other Membranes – Where the Administrative Authority approves their use, non-metallic sub-pans or linings of lead sheets weighing not less than 4 lbs. per sq. foot (191.5 Pa) and copper pans of at least No. 24 B & S gage may be used.

2.11 Waterproofing Admixture – The mortar bed of the receptor shall be mixed with a waterproof admixture, approved by the Administrative Authority in the amounts allowed by such approval.

2.11.1 Currently Approved Mortar Additives

Anti-Hydro – 1 qt. (0.95 I) per sack of cement.

Plastiment – 1 lb. (0.5 kg) of powder per sack of cement.

Plastiment – 2 oz. (56.7 g) of fluid per sack of cement.

Sika 3A – 1 qt. (0.95 I) per sack of cement

Suconem (Red Label) – 1 pint (0.47 I) per sack of cement.

3.0 INSTALLATION

3.1 Drains – An approved type drain with sub-drain shall be installed with every such shower membrane. Flange of each sub-drain shall be accurately set exactly level with sloping sub-floor and shall be equipped with a clamping ring or other approved device to make a tight connection between the membrane and the sub-drain. The sub-drain shall have weep holes into the waste line. The drain shall be of such design that there will be not less than 2 inch (51 mm) depth from the top of the sub-drain flange to top of the strainer. A ring of absorbent material must be placed around the weep holes to keep them open when the finish materials are installed.

3.2 Sloping Sub-Floor and Membrane – All lining materials shall be pitched not less than one quarter (1/4) inch per foot (20.8 mm/m) to weep holes in the sub-drain by means of a smooth and solidly formed sloping sub-base. All such lining materials shall extend upward on the side walls of the tub to a point not less than four (4) inches (102 mm) above the top of the finished dam or threshold and shall extend outward over the top of the rough threshold and be turned over and fastened on the outside face of the rough threshold. All ledge tops within four (4) inches (102 mm) above the rough threshold shall be covered with the lining material. Non-metallic sub-pans or linings shall be built-up on the job site and shall consist of not less than three (3) layers of standard grade fifteen (15) pound (6.8 kg) asphalt impregnated roofing felt. The bottom layer shall be mopped to the formed sub-base with hot asphalt and each

succeeding layer thoroughly hot-mopped to that below, on the basis of twenty (20) pounds (9.1 kg) of asphalt per layer per square. All corners shall be carefully fitted and shall be made strong and watertight by folding or lapping, and each corner shall be reinforced with suitable woven glass fiber webbing hot-mopped in place. All folds, laps, and reinforcing webbing shall extend at least four (4) inches (102 mm) in all directions from the corner and all glass fiber webbing shall be of approved type and mesh, producing a tear strength of not less than fifty (50) pounds per square inch (344.5 kPa) in either direction. Non-metallic shower sub-pans or linings may also consist of multi-layers of other approved equivalent materials suitably reinforced with glass fibers and having each layer carefully fitted and hot mopped in place on the job site as elsewhere required in this section, according to manufacturer's recommended installation procedures.

Linings shall not be nailed or perforated at any point which will be less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the finished dam or threshold.

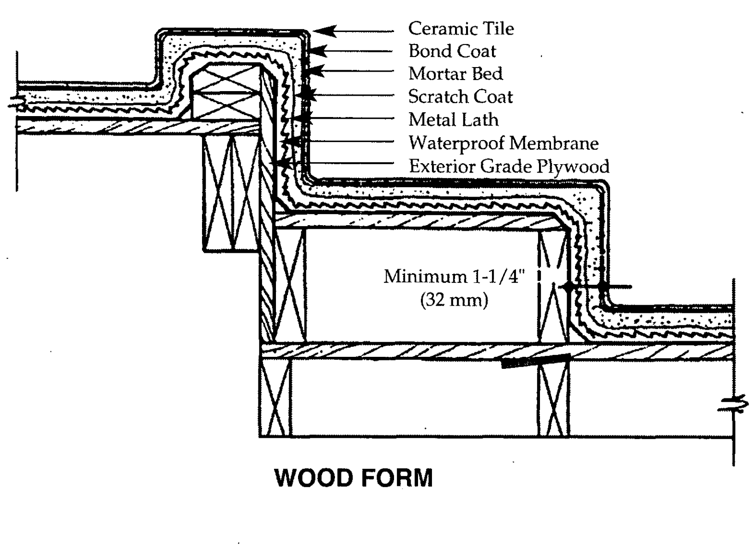
Where flexible plastic sheet membranes are used, corners shall be carefully constructed by folding or bonding of pre-fabricated reinforcing corner. Joints in flexible plastic sheeting shall be constructed with the appropriate solvent bonding liquid, bodied solvent cement, or thermal welding.

Where lead and copper pans are used as membranes, the installation shall be made in similar manner as required for felt membranes, except the asphalt moppings, and, in addition, the pans shall be insulated from all concrete and mortar surfaces and from all conducting substances, other than their connecting drain, by 15 lb. (6.8 kg) asphalt saturated felt or an approved equivalent, hot-mopped to the lead or copper pans. Joints in lead and copper pans shall not be soldered, but shall be burned or silver brazed, respectively.

3.3 **Tests** – Upon installation, all concrete tub shells shall be tested for water tightness by being filled to the top of the rough threshold with water for 24-hours to establish their water tightness.

3.4 **Roman Bath Tub** – Floor shall be of ceramic tile set in portland cement mortar, mixed in the proportion of one (1) part portland cement to four (4) parts of mortar sand by volume and shall be provided with an approved shower drain designed to make a water-tight joint at the floor. The mortar mixture shall be of such consistency that a troweled surface readily assumes a smooth, slickened surface. All concrete mortar bases shall be mixed with an approved waterproofing admixture and properly reinforced with 3 inch x 3 inch (76 mm x 76 mm) mesh, 13 x 13 gage or 1-1/2 inch x 2 inch (38 mm x 51 mm) mesh, 16 x 13 gage cold drawn welded steel wire fabric located in the approximate center of the mortar bed and extending up the side walls but, in no case, less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) above the finished threshold. Corners shall be lapped and the reinforcing shall extend over the threshold and ledges.

The total thickness of the floor mortar shall not be less than 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) at any point. The tile floor shall have a minimum of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm/m) pitch and a



WOOD FORM

maximum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm/m) pitch toward the drain per foot. Bath tub walls to a minimum height to 3 inch (76 mm) and not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) above the finished dam shall be lined with ceramic tile set in portland cement mortar, mixed with an approved waterproofing admixture.

All wood framed bases shall be designed with a maximum deflection of 1/240 of the span, including live and dead loads.

3.4.1 Note: Two stages of construction are covered – the reinforced concrete shell and the wire reinforced tile lining over the water-proof membrane.

3.4.2 Approved waterproofing membrane, mortar bed and finish construction shall conform to the general requirements of the Uniform Plumbing Code. Exception: In short sections where there is no foot traffic, the finished floor may exceed 1/2 inch per foot (12.7 mm/m) slope.

3.4.3 Each concrete shell shall be filled to its overflow rim with water and shall remain watertight for not less than twenty-four (24) hours before inspection and before the finish surface is installed.

3.4.4 The finish surface shall be ceramic tile installed with portland cement mortar mixed to a proper consistency in the proportion of one (1) part cement and four (4) parts mortar sand by volume and having an approved waterproofing admixture* included. Ceramic tile joints shall be thoroughly grouted with approved water-proofing grout containing an admixture.

3.4.5 The concave interior surfaces shall be such as to permit ready cleansing and all corners shall be rounded or at angles not in excess of 45°. Grout is not acceptable for rounding corners. See details below on approved corners.

3.4.6 Concealed overflow or built-in waste stopper may be used if designed and approved for this application.

3.4.7 For reinforcement in center of pour, use #30 @ 8 inch (203 mm) O.C. both ways.

3.4.8 2000 P.S.I. (13,780 kPa) compressive strength concrete shall be poured monolithically and shall have an approved waterproofing admixture included*. Concrete to have not less than six (6) sacks of portland cement per batch.

3.4.9 Reinforcing wire, as specified under materials in this standard or equal, shall be wired together in a self-supporting manner. Nails shall not be used through the waterproofing membrane to fasten wire reinforcing.

*Quantities of several approved waterproofing admixtures required per sack of cement:

Anti-Hydro – 1 qt. (0.95 l) per sack of cement.

Plastiment – 1 lb. (0.5 kg) of powder per sack of cement.

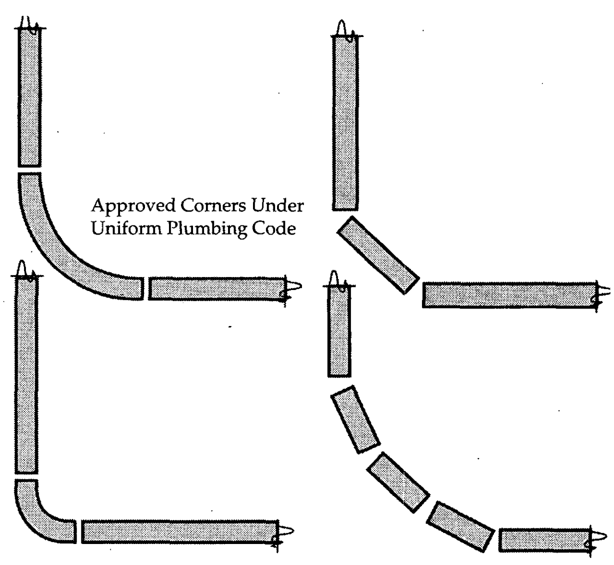
Plastiment – 2 oz. (56.7 g) of fluid per sack of cement.

Sika 3A – 1 qt. (0.95 l) per sack of cement.

Suconem (Red Label) – 1 pint (0.47 l) per sack of cement.

ADOPTED: 1966

REVISED: 1977, 1982, 1990, 2003



Installation Standard
For
COPPER PLUMBING TUBE, PIPE, AND FITTINGS

IAPMO IS 3-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 Installation and material of copper tube, pipe and fittings in drainage, vent, and water systems shall comply with this standard and the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™, published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO).

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code shall apply.*

103.5.3	Testing of systems
301.1	Minimum standards
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited fittings and practices
313.0	Protection of piping materials and structures
314.0	Hangers and supports
316.1	Types of joints
316.2	Special joints
316.4	Prohibited joints and connections
317.0	Increasers and reducers
604.0	Materials
604.1	Water piping
604.2	Water piping
604.3	Marking of tubing
604.4	Flexible water connectors
604.7	Restriction of used piping
606.1.1	Flared joints
606.2.1	Use of joints, copper water tube
608.0	Relief valve drain
609.0	Installation, inspection, testing
610.0	Size of potable piping
701.1.4	Drainage and vent piping
704.4.1	Closet Flanges
705.3.3	Ground joint, flared or ferrule connections
707.1	Cleanouts
701.0	Materials, drainage piping
811.1	Chemical or industrial waste piping
903.0	Materials, vent piping
903.2	Use of copper tubing
1101.3	Materials, rain water piping
1105.1	Materials, roof drains

Table 14-1 Standards:

ASME B 16.18	Cast Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B 16.22	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B 16.23	Cast Bronze Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B 16.29	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings
ASME B 16.50	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-Joint Pressure Fittings
ASTM B 32	Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B 42	Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B 75	Specification for Seamless Copper Tubes
ASTM B 88	Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B 302	Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B 306	Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
ASTM B 813	Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM B 828	Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings

Appendix A	Chart A-4 Friction loss per 100 ft. (30.5 m)

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials. Materials shall comply with the appropriate standard in Table 14-1 of the UPC. [UPC 301.1]

Note: *The nominal or standard size of copper plumbing tube is always 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) or one-eighth (1/8) inch (3.175 mm) smaller than the actual outside diameter dimension of the tube. For example, 3 inch (76 mm) nominal size copper plumbing tube measures 3-1/8 inch (79 mm) O.D., 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) nominal size copper plumbing tube measures 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) O.D., etc.*

2.1.2 Markings. Markings shall be visible for inspection. Products that are covered by this standard shall be identified in accordance with the standard found in Table 14-1.

2.1.3 Tube and Threadless Pipe.

Water tube (Types K, L, M), drainage tube (Type DWV), and threadless pipe (TP), shall bear the following incised marking at not over 18 inch (457 mm) intervals:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark; and,

(b) Tube type

2.1.4 Pipe (Copper and Copper Alloy)

Pipe shall bear the following incised marking at not over 18 inch (457 mm) intervals:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark; and,

(b) Pipe type.

2.1.5 Fittings

Fittings shall bear the following markings:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark, and

(b) "DWV" on drainage fittings.

2.2 Type of Joints

2.2.1 General Information

Copper tube and fittings may be joined in a number of ways, depending on the purpose of the system. Soldering and brazing with capillary fittings are the methods used most. The American Welding Society (AWS) defines soldering as a joining process which takes place below 840°F (449°C) and brazing as a similar process which occurs above 840°F (449°C) but below the melting point of the base metals. In actual practice for copper systems, most soldering is done at temperatures from about 350°F (177°C) to 550°F (288°C), while most brazing is done at temperatures ranging from 1100°F (593°C) to 1500°F (816°C). The choice between soldering or brazing will generally depend on operating conditions. Solder joints are generally used where the service temperature does not exceed 250°F (121°C), while brazed joints are used where greater tensile strength is required to resist vibration, or pressure or temperature cycling, or where system temperatures are as high as 350°F (177°C). Although brazed joints offer higher joint strength in general, the annealing of the tube and fitting which results from the higher heat used in the brazing process can cause the rated pressure of the system to be less than that of a soldered joint. This fact should also be considered in choosing which joining process to use.

Mechanical joints are used frequently for some underground connections, for joints where the use of heat is impractical and for joints that may have to be disconnected from time to time. [UPC 316.1]

2.2.2 Fittings for Soldered, Brazed, and Mechanical Joints

Cast fittings are available in all standard tube sizes and in a wide variety of types to cover needs for plumbing. They can be either soldered or brazed, although brazing cast fittings requires care. Wrought copper pressure fittings are also available over a wide range of sizes and types. These, too, can be joined by either soldering or brazing and wrought fittings are preferred where brazing is the joining method. Otherwise, the choice between cast and wrought fittings is largely a matter of the user's preference and availability. According to the American Welding Society, the strength of a brazed joint will meet or exceed that of the tube and fitting being joined when the joint overlap and the depth of the filler metal penetration is a minimum of three times the thickness of the thinner base metals (tube or fitting) and a well-developed fillet (cap) is present. The strength of a brazed copper tube joint does not vary much with different filler metals but depends on maintaining the proper clearance between the outside of the tube and the socket (cup) of the fitting. Copper tube and solder-type pressure fittings are accurately made for each other, and the tolerances permitted for each assure the capillary space will be within the limits necessary for a joint of satisfactory strength. However, the depths of the socket are considerable deeper than the three times required by AWS. There are standards available for the manufacture of fittings made specifically for brazing, these include ASME B 16.50 and MSS SP 73. When fittings are made to these standards, they cannot be soldered. They must be brazed.

2.2.2.1 Mechanical Joints

Flared-tube fittings provide metal-to-metal contact similar to ground joint unions; both can be easily taken apart and reassembled. Grooved end mechanical fittings are also available in sizes 2-inches to 6-inches. Mechanical joint fittings are especially useful where residual water cannot be removed from the tube and soldering is difficult. Mechanical joints may be required where a fire hazard exists and the use of a torch to make soldered or brazed joints is not

allowed. Also, soldering under wet conditions can be very difficult and mechanical joints may be preferred under such circumstances.

2.2.3 Solders

Most solders referenced in ASTM B 32 can be used to join copper tube and fittings in potable water systems.

Note: *Users of the Uniform Plumbing Code are reminded that provisions of the Federal Safe Drinking Water Act of 1986 (SDWA), which all must obey, forbid the use of solder which contains in excess of 0.2% of lead, in potable water systems. The provisions of the act are incorporated in all ordinances, statutes, state and municipal regulations by reference and by operation of law.*

The selection of a solder depends on the operating pressure and temperature of the system. Consideration should also be given to the stresses on the joint caused by thermal expansion and contraction. However, stresses due to temperature changes should not be significant in two commonly encountered cases: when tube lengths are short, or when expansion loops are used in long tube runs.

Solder is generally used in wire form, but paste-type solders are also available. These are finely granulated solders in suspension in a paste flux. These solder/flux pastes must meet the requirements of ASTM B 813. When using paste-type solders, observe these four rules:

1. Wire solder must be applied in addition to the paste to fill the voids and assist in displacing the flux, otherwise the surfaces may be well "tinned" and yet there may not be a good joint with a continuous bond. Use the same type of solder (e.g., 50-50 or 95-5) as that used in the paste.
2. The paste mixture must be thoroughly stirred if it has been standing in the can for more than a very short time, as the solder has a tendency to settle rapidly to the bottom.
3. The flux cannot be depended on to clean the tube. Cleaning should be done manually as is recommended for any other flux and solder.
4. Remove any excess flux. Solders are available that contain small amounts of silver or other additives to impart special properties. Such solders may require special fluxes. The manufacturer's recommendations should be consulted regarding proper procedures and fluxes for such solders and about the expected properties.

2.2.4 Soldering Flux

The functions of the soldering flux are to remove residual traces of oxides, to promote wetting and to protect the surfaces to be soldered from oxidation during heating. The flux should be applied to clean surfaces and only enough should be used to lightly coat the areas to be joined.

An oxide film may reform quickly on copper after it has been cleaned. Therefore, the flux should be applied as soon as possible after cleaning.

CAUTION

Careless workmanship, especially during flux applications, can result in corrosion of the tube long after the system has been installed. If excessive flux is used, the residue inside the tube can cause corrosion. In an extreme case, such residual flux can actually lead to perforation through the tube wall causing leakage. To guard against this danger, it is important (1) to choose a flux that is manufactured to ASTM B 813, and (2) to use only the minimum amount actually needed to make the joint.

2.3 Solder Joints

2.3.1 Soldering and brazing both involve basic steps, based on ASTM Standard Practice B 828, which must be executed with care and craftsmanship. The steps are:

(1) Measuring
(2) Cutting
(3) Reaming
(4) Cleaning
(5) Fluxing
(6) Assembly and support
(7) Heating
(8) Applying the filler metal
(9) Cooling and cleaning

Each step contributes to a strong, dependable joint.

2.3.2 Measuring

Measuring the length of each tube segment must be accurate. Inaccuracy can compromise joint quality. If the tube is too short it will not reach all the way into the socket of the fitting and a proper joint cannot be made. If the tube segment is too long there is a danger of cocking the tube in the fitting and putting strain on the system which could affect service life.

2.3.3 Cutting

Once the tube is measured, it can be cut. Cutting can be accomplished in a number of different ways to produce a satisfactory square end. The tube can be cut with a disc-type tube cutter, a hacksaw, an abrasive wheel, or with a stationary or portable bandsaw. Care must be taken that the tube is not deformed while being cut. Regardless of the method, the cut must be square with the run of the tube so that the tube will seat properly in the fitting socket.

2.3.4 Reaming

All pipe and tube shall be reamed to the full I.D. of the pipe and tube to remove the small burr created by the cutting operation. If this rough, inside edge is not removed erosion-corrosion may occur due to localized turbulence and high velocity.

Tools used to ream tube ends include the reaming blade on the tube cutter, half-round or round files, a pocket knife, or a suitable deburring tool. With annealed tube, care must be taken not to deform the tube end by applying too much pressure. Both the inside and the outside of the tube may require removal of the burr, especially in large diameters.

2.3.5 Cleaning

The removal of all oxides and surfaces soil is crucial if filler metal is to flow properly into the joint. Failure to remove them can interfere with capillary action and may lessen the strength of the joint and cause failure.

Mechanical cleaning is a simple operation. The end of the tube should be lightly abraded using sand cloth or nylon abrasive pads for a distance only slightly more than the depth of the fitting socket. The socket of the fitting should also be cleaned using sand cloth, abrasive pads, or a properly sized fitting brush.

Copper is a relatively soft metal. If too much material is removed, a loose fit will result and interfere with satisfactory capillary action in making the joint. The capillary space between tube and fitting is approximately 0.004 inch (0.10 mm). Solder or brazing filler metal can fill this gap by capillary action. This spacing is critical for the filler metal to flow into the gap and form a strong joint.

Surfaces once cleaned should not be touched with bare hands or oily gloves. Skin oils, lubricating oils, and grease impair filler metal flow and wetting.

2.3.6 Fluxing

Stir the flux before use. Flux will dissolve and remove traces of oxide from the cleaned surfaces to be joined, protect the cleaned surfaces from reoxidation during heating and promote wetting of the surfaces by the solder. A thin, even coating of flux should be applied with a brush to both tube and fitting as soon as possible after cleaning. Do not apply with fingers. Chemicals in the flux can be harmful if carried to the eyes, mouth, or open cuts.

2.3.7 Assembly and Support

After both tube and fitting surfaces are properly fluxed, they should be assembled, making sure the tube seats against the base of the fitting socket. A slight twisting motion ensures even distribution by the flux. Remove any excess flux. Care must be taken to assure that the tube and fittings are properly supported to ensure a uniform capillary space around the entire circumference of the joint. Uniformity of capillary space will ensure good filler metal penetration if the guidelines of successful joint making are followed. Excessive joint clearance can cause the filler metal to crack under stress or vibration.

The joint is now ready for soldering. Joints prepared and ready for soldering should be completed the same day and not left unfinished overnight.

2.3.8 Heating

WARNING: When dealing with an open flame, high temperatures, and flammable gases, safety precautions must be observed as described in the ANSI /ASC Z49.1 Standard.

Heat is generally applied using an air/fuel torch. Such torches use acetylene or an LP gas. Electric resistance tools can also be used. Begin heating with the flame perpendicular to the tube on the bottom. The copper tube conducts the initial heat into the fitting socket for even distribution of heat in the joint area. The extent of this preheating depends upon the size of the joint. Experience will indicate the amount of time needed. Preheating of the assembly should include the entire circumference of the tube in order to bring the entire assembly up to a suitable preheat condition. However, for joints in the horizontal position, avoid

directly preheating the top of the joint to avoid burning the soldering flux. The natural tendency of heat to rise will ensure adequate preheat of the top of the assembly. Next, move the flame onto the fitting socket. Sweep the flame alternately from the fitting socket back onto the tube a distance equal to the depth of the fitting socket. Touch the solder to the joint. If the solder does not melt, remove it and continue the heating process. Be careful not to overheat or to direct the flame into the fitting cup. This could cause the flux to burn and destroy its effectiveness. When the solder begins to melt, the heat should be directed to the base of the cup to aid capillary action in drawing the molten solder into the fitting socket towards the heat source.

2.3.9 Applying the Filler Metal

For joints in the horizontal position, start applying the solder slightly off-center at the bottom of the joint. When the solder metal begins to melt from the heat of the tube and fitting, do not use the torch to melt the solder; push the solder straight into the joint while keeping the torch at the base of the fitting socket and slightly ahead of the point of application of the solder. Continue this technique across the bottom of the fitting and up the side to the top of the fitting. Return to the beginning, overlapping slightly by re-melting the solder at the point and proceed up the other side to the top, again overlapping slightly.

For joints in the vertical position, a similar sequence of overlapping passes should be made, starting wherever is convenient. Molten solder will be drawn into the joint by capillary action regardless of whether the solder is being fed upward, downward, or horizontally. **IMPORTANT:** Always remember to let the heat lead the alloy. Do not apply the filler metal in front of the heat.

2.3.10 Cooling and Cleaning

After the joint has been completed, natural cooling is best. Shock cooling with water may cause unnecessary stress on the joint and result in eventual failure. When cool, clean off any remaining flux with a wet rag.

2.3.11 Testing

Test all completed assemblies for joint integrity following the procedures described in the body of this code. Completed systems should be flushed to remove excess flux and debris as soon as possible after completion.

2.4 Brazed Joints

2.4.1 Brazing is another commonly used method for joining copper tube. Making brazed joints is similar to making soldered joints with respect to measuring, cutting, reaming, cleaning, assembly, and support. And as in soldering, the brazing filler metal is melted by the heat of the tube and fitting and drawn into the joint by capillary action.

The major differences between soldering and brazing are the:

- Type of flux used;
- Composition of filler metal; and
- Amount of heat required to melt the filler metal.

2.4.2 Brazing Flux

The fluxes used for brazing copper joints are different in composition from soldering fluxes. The two types cannot be used interchangeably. Unlike soldering fluxes, brazing fluxes are water based. Similar to soldering fluxes, brazing fluxes dissolve and remove residual oxide from the metal surfaces, protect the metal from reoxidation during heating and promote wetting of the surfaces to be joined by the brazing filler metal.

Fluxes also provide the craftsman with an indication of temperature. Application of the flux is the same as when soldering. If the outside of the fitting and the heat-affected area of the tube are covered with flux (in addition to the end of the tube and the cup), oxidation will be prevented and the appearance of the joint will be greatly improved.

2.4.3 Brazing Filler Metals

Brazing filler metals suitable for joining copper tube systems are of two classes. Classified according to their components, they are: BCuP (Brazing-Copper Phosphorus) and BAg (Brazing-Silver).

BCuP filler metals are preferred for joining copper tube and fittings if codes and construction specifications allow it. The phosphorus in them acts as a fluxing agent and the lower percentage of silver makes them relatively low cost. When using copper tube, wrought copper fittings, and BCuP brazing filler metal, fluxing is optional. However, when cast fittings are brazed, flux must be used.

2.4.4 Heating

WARNING: When dealing with an open flame, high temperatures, and

flammable gases, safety precautions must be observed as described in the ANSI/ASC Z49.1 Standard. Oxy/fuel torches are generally used for brazing because of their higher temperatures. However, recent innovations in tip design make air/fuel torches useful for brazing on a wide range of sizes for brazing.

The heating operation is the same as for soldering. Heat the tube first, beginning about one inch from the edge of the fitting, sweeping the flame around the tube in short strokes at right angles to the axis of the tube. It is very important that the flame be in motion and not remain on any one point long enought to damage the tube. Switch the flame to the fitting at the base of the fitting socket. Heat uniformly, sweeping the flame from the fitting to the tube. Avoid excessive heating of cast fittings or they may crack.

2.4.5 Applying Brazing Filler Metal

Apply the brazing filler metal at the point where the tube enters the socket of the fitting. When the proper temperature is reached, the filler metal will flow readily into the space between the tube and fitting socket, drawn in by the natural force of capillary action.

Keep the flame away from the filler metal itself as it is fed into the joint. The temperature of the tube and fitting at the joint should be high enough to melt the filler metal. Keep both the tube and fitting heated by moving the flame back and forth fom one to the other as the filler metal is drawn into the joint.

When the joint is properly made the filler metal will be drawn into the fitting socket by capillary action, and a continuous fillet (cap) of filler metal will be visible completely around the joint. To aid in the development of this fillet during brazing, the flame should be kept slightly ahead of the pint of filler metal application.

When brazing horizontal joints, it is preferable to first apply the filler metal slightly off-center of the bottom of the joint, proceeding across the bottom of the joint and continuing up the side to the top of the joint. Then return to the beginning point, overlapping slightly. This procedure is identical to that used for soldering. Also, similar to the soldering process, make sure the operations overlap.

On vertical joints, it is immaterial where the joint is made. If the opening of the fitting socket is pointing down, care should be taken to avoid overheating the tube, as this may cause the brazing filler metal to run down the outside of the tube.

If the filler metal fails to flow, or has the tendency to ball-up, it indicates either that there is oxide on the surfaces being joined or that the parts to be joined are not hot enough. If the filler metal refuses to enter the joint, the fitting cup is not hot enough. Most poorly made braze joints result from either the tube or the fitting not being hot enough. If filler metal tends to flow over the outside of either part of the joint, it indicates that part is overheated in comparison to the other. When the joint is completed, a continuous fillet should be visible completely around the joint.

Larger diameter tube is more difficult to heat to the desired temperature. The use of a heating tip or rosebud may be necessary to maintain the proper temperature over the area being brazed. Once total heat control is attained, follow the same procedures used for smaller tube.

2.4.6 Cooling and Cleaning

When the brazed joint is finished, allow it to cool naturally. Flux residues and some oxides formed by heating can be removed by washing with hot water and brushing with a stainless steel wire brush.

2.4.7 Testing

Test all completed assembles for joint integrity following the procedures described in the body of this code. Completed systems should be flushed to remove excess flux and debris as soon as possible after completion.

2.4.8 Purging

Some installations, such as medical gas, high-purity gas, and ACR systems, require the use of an inert gas during the brazing process. The purge gas displaces oxygen from the interior of the system while it is being subjected to the high temperatures of brazing and therefore eliminates the possibility of oxide formation on the interior of the tube surface.

2.5 Flared Joints

2.5.1 Flared Joints with Impact Flaring Tools

Step 1 Cut the tube to the required length.

Step 2 Remove all burrs. This is very important to assure metal-to-metal contact.

Step 3 Soft temper tube, if deformed, should be brought back to roundness with a sizing tool. This tool consists of a plug and sizing ring.

Step 4 Slip the coupling nut over the end of the tube.

Step 5 Insert flaring tool into the tube end.

Step 6 Drive the flaring tool by hammer strokes, expanding the end of the tube to the desired flare. This requires a few moderately light strokes.

Step 7 Assemble the joint by placing the fitting squarely against the flare. Engage the coupling nut with the fitting threads. Tighten with two wrenches, one on the nut and one on the fitting.

2.5.2 Flared Joints with Screw-Type Flaring Tools

Steps 1-4 Same as for impact flaring previously described.

Step 5 Clamp the tube in the flaring block so that the end of the tube is slightly above the face of the block.

Step 6 Place the yoke of the flaring tool on the block so that the beveled end of the compressor cone is over the tube end.

Step 7 Turn the compressor screw down firmly, forming the flare between the chamber in the flaring block and the beveled compressor cone.

Step 8 Remove the flaring tool. The joint can now be assembled as in Step 6 for impact flaring.

2.6 Sizing, Velocity

To avoid excess system noise and the possibility of erosion-corrosion, flow through copper tube systems should not exceed velocities of 8 feet per second for cold water and 5 feet per second in hot water up to approximately 140°F (60°C) [UPC 610.0]

In systems where water temperatures routinely exceed 140°F (60°C), lower velocities such as 2 to 3 feet per second should not be exceeded. In addition, where 1/2-inch and smaller tube sizes are used, to guard against localized high velocity turbulence due to possible faulty workmanship (e.g. burrs at tube ends which were not properly removed) or unusually numerous, abrupt changes in flow direction, lower velocities should be considered.

Due to constant circulation and elevated water temperatures, particular attention should be paid to velocities in circulation hot water systems. Both the supply and return piping should be sized such that the maximum velocity does not exceed the above recommendations. Care should be taken to ensure that the circulating pump is not oversized and the return piping is not undersized, both common occurrences in installed copper piping systems.

3.0 GENERAL INFORMATION

3.1 It is not possible to cover all the variables of a plumbing system; however, the following information may prove helpful:

Expansion Loops – Copper tube, like all piping materials, expands and contracts with temperature changes. Therefore, in a copper tube system subjected to excessive temperature changes, the line tends to buckle or bend when it expands unless compensation is built into the system. Severe stresses on the joints may also occur. Such stresses, buckles, or bends are prevented by the use of expansion joints or by installing offsets, "U" bends, coil loops, or similar arrangements in the tube assembly. These specially shaped tube segments take up expansion and contraction without excessive stress. The expansion of a length of copper tube may be calculated from the formula:

Temperature Rise (°F) x Length (feet) x 12 (inches per foot) x Expansion Coefficient (in. per in. per °F) = Expansion (inches), or
Temperature Rise (°C) x Length (meter) x 1000 (mm per meter) x Expansion Coefficient (mm per mm per °C) = Expansion (mm).

Calculations for expansion and contraction should be based on the average coefficient of expansion of copper, which is 0.0000094 per °F (1.692 x 10^{-5} per °C), between 70°F (21°C) and 212°F (100°C). For example, the expansion of each 100 feet (3048 mm) of length of any size tube heated from room temperature (70°F) (21°C) to 170°F (77°C) (a 100°F (38°C) rise) is 1.128 inches (28.7 mm).

100° x 100 ft x 12 in./ft x
0.0000094 in./in./°F = 1.128 in., or
55.6° x 30.48 m x 1000 mm/m x 1.692 x
10^{-5} mm/mm/°C = 28.7 mm

3.2 Tube Supports - See Table 3-2 and Section 314.0 in the Uniform Plumbing Code.

3.3 Bending

3.3.1 Copper tube, properly bent, will not collapse on the outside of the bend and will not buckle on the inside of the bend. Tests demonstrate that the bursting strength of a bent copper tube can be greater than it was before bending. Because copper is readily formed, expansion loops and other bends necessary in an assembly are quickly and simply made if the proper method and equipment are used. Simple hand tools employing mandrels, dies, forms, and fillers, or power-operated bending machines are used.

Both annealed tube and bending-temper tube can be bent with hand benders. The proper size bender for each size tube must be used. Usually the size of the tool corresponds to the nominal outside diameter of the tube, not the standard tube size. For a guide to the typical bend radii, see the following bending guide for copper tube.

ADOPTED: **1969**
REVISED: **1973, 1975, 1987, 1989, 1993, 2000, 2003**

BENDING GUIDE FOR COPPER TUBE

Tube Size, Inches (mm)	Tube Type	Temper	Minimum Bend Radius, Inches (mm)	Type of Bending Equipment
1/4 (6.4)	K, L	Annealed	3/4 (19.1)	Lever type
3/8 (9.5)	K, L	Annealed	1-1/2 (38)	Lever or gear type
			3 (76)	None; by hand*
	K, L, M	Drawn	1-3/4 (44)	Gear type
1/2 (12.7)	K, L	Annealed	2-1/4 (57)	Lever or gear type
			4-1/2 (114)	None; by hand*
	K, L, M	Drawn	2-1/2 (64)	Gear type
3/4 (19.1)	K, L	Annealed	3 (76)	Lever or gear type
	K		4-1/2 (114)	None; by hand*
	L		6 (152)	None, by hand*
	K	Drawn	3 (76)	Gear type
	K, L		4 (102)	Heavy-duty gear type
1 (25.4)	K, L	Annealed	4 (102)	Gear type
			7-1/2 (191)	None; by hand*
1-1/4 (32)	K, L	Annealed	9 (229)	None; by hand*

* When bending by hand, without the use of bending equipment, a circular wooden disc is used. The radius of the disc should be about 1/4 to 1/2 inch less than the minimum bend radius shown.

Installation Standard
For
TILE-LINED SHOWER RECEPTORS (and Replacements)

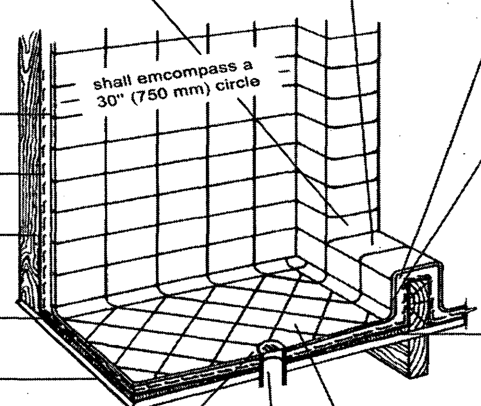
IAPMO IS 4-2003

FORWARD

This standard specification for the installation of tile-lined shower receptors is the result of extensive study and research by the following:

Ceramic Tile Institute of America
Associated Tile Contractors of Southern California, Inc.
Tile Layers Local No. 18 of I.U.B.A.C, United States and Canada
Tile Helpers Local No. 18 of I.U.B.A.C., of the United States and Canada

APPROVED CONSTRUCTION OF TILE-LINED SHOWER RECEPTORS
STANDARD SPECIFICATION FOR THE INSTALLATION OF TILE-LINED SHOWER RECEPTORS



1.0 SCOPE

1.1 Installation and material of tile-lined shower receptors shall comply with this standard and the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™, published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO).

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code shall apply.*

412.1	Floor drains
412.5	Shower receptors
412.6	Shower receptor approval
412.7	Shower compartments
412.8	On-site built-up shower
412.9	Floors of public shower rooms

2.0 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Inspection of Work – All surfaces prepared by others shall be inspected by the tile installer before starting tile work and all unsatisfactory conditions reported to the Administrative Authority. Starting tile work by the tile installer shall be considered as acceptance of surfaces prepared by others.

2.2 Surface – All surfaces to receive tile work shall be clean, structurally sound, and conform in every way to the local building code.

(***Note:*** *No tile work shall proceed until the pan and drain construction has been inspected and approved by the Administrative Authority, where required.*)

3.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

3.1 Materials

3.1.1 Tile Quality and Grade – Tile shall comply with American National Standard Specification for Ceramic Tile, A137.1 (equivalent to and incorporating U.S. Dept. of Commerce Simplified Practice Recommendation, R61-61 and Federal Specification SS-T-308b, Tile, Floor, Wall, and Trim Units, Ceramic), or CTI 69.5.

3.1.2 Cement – Cement shall be portland cement type I or type II, conforming to ASTM C150.

3.1.3 Sand – Sand shall be damp, clean and graded ASTM C 778.

3.1.4 Water – Water shall be potable.

3.1.5 Reinforcing shall be 2.5 lbs. per sq. yard (1.1 kg per m^2) or greater galvanized metal lath conforming to ANSI A42.3 or 2 inches x 2 inches (51 mm x 51 mm), 16/16 gage or 3 inches x 3 inches (76 mm x 76 mm) mesh, 13 x 13 gage or 1-1/2 inches x 2 inches (38 mm x 51 mm) mesh, 16 x 13 gage steel, wire conforming to ASTM A 82 and A 185.

3.1.6 Asphalt shall conform to Federal Specification SS-A-0666, Type Z, Grade 2, Class A.

3.1.7 Plastic Roof Cement shall conform to Federal Specifications SS-C-153.

3.1.8 Water Resistant Felt Membrane – The water resistant felt membrane shall be at least 15 lb. (6.8 kg) asphalt saturated felt conforming to Type 1, Federal Specification HH-F-191 (a).

3.1.9 Plastic Membrane shall comply with applicable standards listed in Table 14-1 of the UPC.

3.1.10 Other Membranes – Where the Administrative Authority approves their use, non-metallic sub-pans or linings or lead sheets weighing not less than 4 lbs. per sq. foot (191.5 Pa) and copper pans of at least No. 24 B & S gage (Brown & Sharp 0.0201 inches) or greater in thickness may be used.

3.1.11 Waterproofing Admixture – The mortar bed of the receptor shall be mixed with a waterproof admixture approved by the Administrative Authority in the amounts allowed by such approval.

3.2 CURRENTLY APPROVED MORTAR ADDITIVES

Anti-Hydro—1 qt. (0.95 I) per sack of cement.
Plastiment—1 lb. (0.5 kg) of powder per sack of cement.
Plastiment—2 oz. (56.7 g) of fluid per sack of cement.
Sika 3A—1 qt. (0.95 I) per sack of cement.
Suconem (Red Label)—1 pint (0.47 I) per sack of cement.

4.0 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

4.1 Shower Drains – An approved type shower floor drain with sub-drain shall be installed with every such shower membrane. Flange of each sub-drain shall be accurately set exactly level with sloping sub-floor and shall be equipped with a clamping ring or other approved device to make a tight connection between the membrane and the sub-drain. The sub-drain shall have weep holes into the waste line. The weep holes located in the subdrain clamping ring shall be protected from becoming clogged during the placement of finish materials. The drain shall be of such design that there will be not

less than 2" (51 mm) depth from the top of the sub-drain flange to top of the strainer. Unless otherwise approved by the Administrative Authority, drains shall be located in the approximate center of the shower area.

4.2 Sloping Sub-Floor and Shower Membrane All lining materials shall be pitched one quarter (1/4) inch per foot (20.8 mm/m) to weep holes in the sub-drain by means of a smooth and solidly formed sloping sub-base. All such lining materials shall extend upward on the side walls and rough jambs of the shower opening to a point not less than three (3) inches (76 mm) above the top of the finished dam or threshold and shall extend outward over the top of the rough threshold and be turned over and fastened on the outside face of both the rough threshold and the jambs.

4.2.1 Non-metallic shower sub-pans or linings may be built-up on the job site of not less than three (3) layers of standard grade fifteen (15) pound (6.8 kg) asphalt impregnated roofing felt. The bottom layer shall be fitted to the formed sub-base and each succeeding layer thoroughly hot-mopped to that below, with hot asphalt conforming to Fed. Spec. SS-A0666 Type Z, Grade 2, Class A on the basis of twenty (20) pounds (9.1 kg) of asphalt per layer per square. All corners shall be carefully fitted and shall be made strong and water-tight by folding or lapping, and each corner shall be reinforced with suitable webbing hot-mopped in place. All folds, laps and reinforcing webbing shall extend at least four (4) inches (102 mm) in all directions from the corner and all webbing shall be of approved type and mesh, producing a tensile strength of not less than fifty (50) pounds per square inch (344.5 kPa per square meter) in either direction.

4.2.2 Non-metallic shower sub-pans or linings may also consist of single or multi-layers of other approved equivalent materials, suitably reinforced and carefully fitted in place on the job site, as elsewhere required in this section according to manufacturer's recommended installation procedures.

Where flexible plastic sheet membranes are used, corners shall be carefully constructed by folding or bonding of prefabricated reinforcing corner. Joints in flexible plastic sheeting shall be constructed with the appropriate solvent bonding liquid, bodied solvent cement or thermal welding.

4.2.3 Where lead and copper pans are used as membranes, the installation shall be made in similar manner as required for felt membranes except the asphalt moppings, and in addition the pans shall be insulated from all concrete and mortar surfaces and from all conducting substances other than their connecting drain by 15 lb. (6.8 kg) asphalt saturated felt or an approved equivalent hot mopped to the lead or copper pan. Joints in lead and copper pans shall not be soldered, but shall be burned or silver brazed respectively.

4.2.4 All linings shall be properly recessed and fastened to approved backing so as not to occupy the space required for the wall covering and shall not be nailed or perforated at any point which will be less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the finished dam or threshold.

4.3 Tests. Upon installation, all linings shall be tested for water tightness by being filled to the top of the rough threshold with water for a period of time sufficient to establish their water tightness. (Usually twenty-four (24) hours with no loss of water. See the local Administrative Authority for exact time limit.)

A test plug shall be so placed that both the upper and under sides of the lining shall be subjected to test at its point of contact with the sub-drain. When the test plug is removed, all of the test water shall drain out by gravity through the weep holes. A ring of non-absorbent material must be placed around the weep holes to keep them open when the finish materials are installed.

4.4 Receptor. Shower floor shall be of ceramic tile set in portland cement mortar mixed in the proportion of one (1) part portland cement to four (4) parts of mortar sand by volume and shall be provided with an approved shower drain designed to make a water-tight joint at the floor. The mortar mixture shall be of such consistency that a troweled surface readily assumes a smooth screeded surface. All concrete mortar bases shall be mixed with an approved waterproofing admixture and properly reinforced with 2.5 lbs. per square yard (1.1 kg per square m) or more galvanized metal lath or 2 inches x 2 inches (51 mm x 51 mm), 16/16 gage or 3 inches x 3 inches (76 mm x

76 mm) mesh, 13 x 13 gage or 1-1/2 inches x 2 inches (38 mm x 51 mm) mesh, 16 x 13 gage cold drawn welded steel wire fabric located in the approximate center of the mortar bed and extending at least 3 inches (76 mm) at any point. The finished floor shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) measured from the top surface of the membrane. The high point of the tile floor shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) or more than 9 inches (229 mm) below the top of the finished dam and shall have a minimum of 1/4 inch (6.4 mm/m) and a maximum of 1/2 inch (19.1 mm/m) pitch per foot toward the drain. Shower walls to a minimum height of 3 inch (76 mm) and not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) above the finished dam shall be lined with ceramic tile set in portland cement mortar.

4.5 Floors of public shower rooms shall have a non-skid surface and shall be drained in such a manner that waste water from one bather will not pass over areas occupied by other bathers. Gutters in public or gang shower rooms shall have rounded corners for easy cleaning and shall be sloped not less than two (2) percent toward drains. Drains in such gutters shall be spaced not more than eight (8) feet (2438 mm) from side walls or more than sixteen (16) feet (4877 mm) apart.

4.6 Shower walls, including shower walls over bathtubs, shall be constructed of dense, non-absorbent waterproof materials such as ceramic tile set in portland cement mortar or approved cementitious backer unit when no materials are adversely affected by moisture to a height of not less than six (6) feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

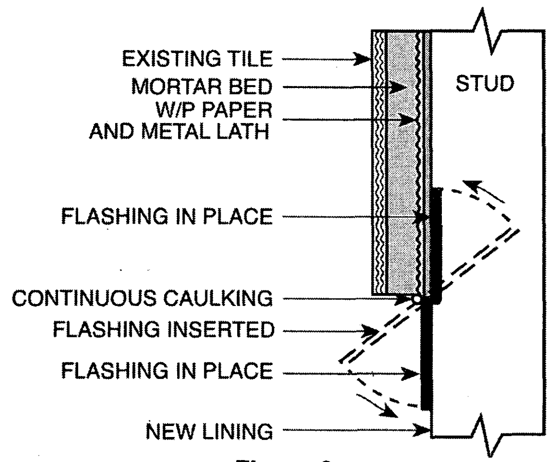


Figure 2

ADOPTED: 1966
REVISED: 1977, 1982, 1990, 1992, 1996, 2003

Installation Standard
For
ABS BUILDING DRAIN, WASTE, AND VENT PIPE AND FITTINGS

IAPMO IS 5-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This installation standard shall apply to ABS building drain, waste and vent systems as governed by the Uniform Plumbing Code. Material Standard ASTM D 2661, "Standard Specification of Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings," or ASTM F 628, "Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic, Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core," shall form a part of this standard.

1.2 Installation, material and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ as published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials and shall also comply with this standard.

Note: *The Building Official shall be consulted about penetration of fire separations, height and area or other limitations.*

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply.*

101.4.1.1	Repair and Alterations
103.5	Inspections
203.0	Definition ABS
301.1	Minimum Standards
311.8	Fittings Screwed
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited Fittings and Practices
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
316.1.1	Threaded Joints
316.1.6	Type of Joints – Solvent Cement Plastic Pipe Joints
316.2.3	Plastic Pipe to Other Material
316.3.1	Flanged Fixture Connections
316.4	Prohibited Joints and Connections
316.0	Increasers and Reducers
701.0	Materials (Drainage)
704.4	Closet Flanges
707.1	Cleanout Fittings
903.0	Materials (Venting)
903.4	Straining or Bending Pipe
1003.0	Traps Described
1101.3	Materials Uses

Table 14-1
Pipe and Fittings:

ASTM	D 2661	D 3311
ASTM	D 2122	F 402
ASTM	F 628	

ABBREVIATIONS

ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
UPC	Uniform Plumbing Code

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Pipe
ABS pipe is furnished in straight lengths. The pipe is black in color. The pipe wall is the same thickness as that of Schedule 40 (IPS) standard steel pipe.
ABS pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 2661 or F 628. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.2 Fittings
Fittings are black. Refer to Tables in ASTM D2661 and D3311 for dimensions and tolerances for pipe, fitting sockets, and laying lengths.
ABS fitting markings shall be in accordance with D 2661 or F 628. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.3 Solvent Cement
Solvent cement shall be as specified in ASTM Standard D 2235. Solvent cement labels shall be in accordance with D 2235.

2.2 Protection of Piping

2.2.1 Storage
Pipe and fittings should not be stored in direct sunlight. However, exposure to direct sunlight during normal construction periods is not considered harmful. Pipe shall be stored in such a manner as to prevent sagging or bending.

*Although referenced in this standard, some of the fittings shown in the standard are not acceptable under the Uniform Plumbing Code.

2.2.2 Expansion And Contraction

Thermal expansion and contraction of plastic drain waste and vent systems shall be taken into consideration. Thermal expansion and contraction may be controlled by several methods: offset, expansion joints or restraints. Regardless of method utilized, certain conditions shall be met.

(a) Support, but do not rigidly restrain piping at changes of direction.
(b) Do not anchor pipe rigidly in walls.
(c) Holes through framing members must be adequately sized to allow for free movement.

DWV installations with frequent changes in direction will compensate for thermal expansion and contraction. Expansion joints may be utilized in vertical straight runs in excess of thirty (30) feet (9144 mm) provided they are installed per manufacturer's installation instructions.

Except piping buried below ground, horizontal and vertical piping should be installed with restraint fittings or a minimum twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm) 45° offset every thirty (30) feet (9144 mm).

Thermal expansion for installations subject to temperature changes may be determined from Table 1. The linear expansion shown is independent of the diameter of the pipe. [UPC 313.0]

2.2.3 Exposed Piping

Piping shall not be exposed to direct sunlight. Exception: Vent piping through roof. Plumbing vents through roof, exposed to sunlight, shall be protected by water base synthetic latex paints. Adequate support shall be provided where ABS piping is exposed to wind, snow, and ice loading.

2.2.4 Protection From Damage

Piping passing through wood studs or plates shall be protected from puncture by steel nail plates not less than 18 gauge. Piping shall be protected from concrete form oil. [UPC 313.9]

2.2.5 Anti-Freeze Protection

Anti-Freeze Protection – ABS pipe and traps can be protected from freezing by the use of one of the following solutions or mixtures:

(a) 4 quarts (3.8 liters) of water mixed with 5 quarts (4.8 liters) of glycerol
(b) 2-1/2 lbs. (1.1 kg) of magnesium chloride dissolved in one gallon (3.8 liters) of water
(c) 3 lbs. (1.4 kg) of table salt dissolved in one gallon (3.8 liters) of water.

The salt solutions are effective to approximately 10°F (-12°C). If lower temperatures are anticipated, the pipe should be drained or the glycerol solution should be used. [UPC 313.0]

2.2.6 Piping Installed in Fire Resistive Construction

All piping penetrations of fire resistance rated walls, partitions, floor, floors/ceiling assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies, or shaft enclosures shall be protected in accordance with the requirements of the Building Code, IAPMO Installation Standards and Chapter 15 "Firestop Protection for DWV and Stormwater Applications". [UPC 313.7]

2.3 Hangers and Supports

2.3.1 Abrasion

Hangers and straps shall not compress, distort, cut, or abrade the piping and shall allow free movement of pipe. Pipe exposed to damage by sharp surfaces shall be protected.[UPC 314.0]

2.3.2 Support

Support all piping at intervals of not more than four (4) feet (1219 mm), at end of branches, and at change of direction or elevation. Supports shall allow free movement, but shall restrict upward movement of lateral runs so as not to create reverse grade. Vertical piping shall be supported at each story or floor level. Alignment of vertical piping shall be maintained between floors with the use of a mid-story guide. Support trap arms in excess of three (3) feet (914 mm) in length as close as possible to the trap. Closet rings shall be securely fastened with corrosive resistant fasteners to the floor with the top surface one-quarter (1/4) inch (6.4 mm) above the finish floor. [UPC 314.0]

2.4 Traps

2.4.1 Connection to Traps

Traps shall be connected by means of listed trap adapters.[UPC 1003.0]

TABLE 1
Thermal Expansion Table

Chart Shows Length Changes in Inches vs. Degrees Temperature Change
Coefficient of Linear Expansion: $e = 5.5 \times 10^{-5}$ in/in °F

Length (feet)	40°F	50°F	60°F	70°F	80°F	90°F	100°F
20	0.536	0.670	0.804	0.938	1.072	1.206	1.340
40	1.070	1.340	1.610	1.880	2.050	2.420	2.690
60	1.609	2.010	2.410	2.820	3.220	3.620	4.020
80	2.143	2.680	3.220	3.760	4.290	4.830	5.360
100	2.680	3.350	4.020	4.700	5.360	6.030	6.700

TABLE 1 (Metric)
Thermal Expansion Table

Chart Shows Length Changes in Millimeters vs. Degrees Temperature Change
Coefficient of Linear Expansion: $e = \frac{0.3 \text{ mm}}{\text{mm °C}}$

Length (mm)	4°C	10°C	16°C	21°C	27°C	32°C	38°C
6096	13.6	17.0	20.4	23.8	27.2	30.6	34.0
12192	27.2	34.0	40.8	47.8	52.1	61.5	68.3
18288	40.9	51.1	61.2	71.6	81.8	92.0	102.1
24384	54.4	68.1	81.8	95.5	110.0	122.7	136.1
30480	68.1	85.1	102.1	119.4	136.1	153.2	170.2

Example:

Highest Temperature expected	100°F	(38°C)
Lowest Temperature expected	50°F	(10°C)
	~~50°F~~	~~(10°C)~~

Length of run – 60 feet (18288 mm) from chart, read 2.010 inches (51 mm) linear expansion that must be provided for.

2.5 Joints

2.5.1 Caulked Joints

Make connections or transitions to bell-and-spigot cast iron soil pipe and fittings, and to bell-and-spigot pipe and fittings of other materials with listed mechanical compression joints designed for this use, or caulked joints made in an approved manner. In caulking, pack the joint with oakum or hemp and fill with molten lead to a depth of not less than (1) inch (25.4 mm). Allow a period of four (4) minutes for cooling, following which, caulk the lead at the inside and outside edges of the joint. Lead shall not be overheated. Heat lead to melting point only. [UPC 705.1]

Note: *Caulked joints should be avoided if possible.*

2.5.2 Solvent Cement Joints

2.5.2.1 Selection. Solvent cement shall be recommended for ABS by the manufacturer. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for types of solvent cement for such conditions as temperature over 100°F (38°C), or humidity over 60%. [UPC 316.1.6]

2.5.2.2 Handling (to maintain effectiveness). Solvent cement containers no larger than 1 gallon (3.8 liters) should be used in the field (to avoid thickening due to evaporation). Keep container closed and in the shade when not in use. Keep applicator submerged in solvent cement between applications. When solvent cement becomes thicker, THROW IT AWAY. Solvent cement shall NOT be thinned.

2.5.2.3 Size of Applicator. Applicator should be about one half the pipe diameter. Do not use small applicator on large pipes. Ordinary pure bristle paint brush or applicators furnished with product are satisfactory.

2.5.2.4 Application. Solvent cement shall be applied deliberately, but without delay (two people may be needed to make large joints). Use special care when temperature is over 100°F (38°C) or humidity is over 60%.

2.5.3 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS AND PRECAUTIONS

2.5.3.1 General. Solvents contained in ABS plastic pipe cements are classified as airborne contaminants and flammable and combustible liquids. Precautions listed in this appendix should be followed to avoid injury to personnel and the hazard of fire.

2.5.3.2 Safety Precautions. Prolonged breathing of solvent vapors should be avoided. When pipe and fittings are being joined in partially enclosed areas, a ventilating device should be used in such a manner to minimize the entry of vapors into the breathing areas.

2.5.3.3 Solvent cements should be kept away from all sources of ignition, heat, sparks and open flame.

2.5.3.4 Containers for solvent cements should be kept tightly closed except when the cement is being used.

2.5.3.5 All rags and other materials used for mopping up spills should be kept in a safety waste receptacle which should be emptied daily.

2.5.3.6 Most of the solvents used in ABS pipe cements can be considered eye irritants and contact with the eye should be avoided for it may cause eye injury. Proper eye protection and the use of chemical goggles or face shields is advisable where the possibility of splashing exists in handling solvent cements. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water for 15 minutes and call a physician immediately.

2.5.3.7 Repeated contact with the skin should be avoided. Proper gloves impervious to and unaffected by the solvents should be worn when frequent contact with the skin is likely. Application of the solvents or solvent cements with rags and bare hand is not recommended. Brushes and other suitable applicators can be used effectively for applying the solvent cement, thus avoiding skin contact. In the event of excessive contact, remove contaminated clothing and wash skin with soap and water.

Step 1 Cut pipe square with hand saw and miter box, mechanical cut-off saw, or tube cutter designed for plastic.

Step 2 Ream inside and chamfer outside of pipe (to eliminate all burrs).

Step 3 Clean all dirt, moisture, and grease from pipe and socket. Use a clean, dry rag.

Step 4 Check dry fit of pipe in fitting. Pipe should enter fitting socket from 1/3 to 3/4 depth of socket.

Step 5 Apply a light coat of ABS solvent cement to inside of socket using straight outward strokes (to keep excess solvent out of socket). This is also to prevent solvent cement damage to pipe. For loose fits, apply a second coat of solvent cement. Time is important at this stage. See Section 2.5.2.4.

Step 6 While both the inside socket surface and the outside surface of the pipe are SOFT and WET with solvent cement, forcefully bottom the pipe in the socket, giving the pipe a one-quarter turn, if possible. The pipe must go to the bottom of the socket.

Step 7 Hold the joint together until tight (partial set).

Step 8 Wipe excess cement from the pipe. A properly made joint will normally show a bead around its entire perimeter. Any gaps may indicate insufficient cement or the use of light bodied cement on larger diameters where heavy bodied cement should have been used.

Step 9 The system shall not be tested until the joints have cured (set) at least as long as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.5.4 Threaded Joints

Threads on iron pipe size (IPS) pipe and fittings shall be standards listed in Table 14-1. Threads on tubing shall be approved types. Threads on plastic pipe shall be factory cut or molded. Threaded plastic pipe shall be Schedule 80 minimum wall

thickness. Tubing threads shall conform to fine tubing thread standards. When a pipe joint material is used, it shall be applied only on male threads and such materials shall be approved types, insoluble in water and nontoxic. Cleanout plugs and caps shall be lubricated with water-insoluble, non-hardening material or tape. Only listed thread tape or thread lubricants and sealants specifically intended for use with plastics shall be used on plastic threads. Conventional pipe thread compounds, putty, linseed oil base products, and unknown lubricants and sealants shall not be used on plastic threads. [UPC 316.1.1]

2.5.5 Special Joints

2.5.5.1 Plastic Pipe to Other Materials

When connecting plastic pipe to other types of piping, use only listed fittings and adapters, designed for the specific transition intended. [UPC 316.2.3]

2.6 Prohibited Joints and Connections

(a) Drainage system – Any fitting or connection which has an enlargement, chamber or recess with a ledge, shoulder or reduction of pipe area, that offers an obstruction to flow through the drain is prohibited.

(b) No fitting or connection that offers abnormal obstruction to flow shall be used. The enlargement of a three (3) inch (76 mm) closet bend or stub to four (4) inches (102 mm) shall not be considered an obstruction. [UPC 316.4]

ADOPTED: **1966**

REVISED: **1971, 1974, 1975, 1976, 1977, 1981, 1982, 1983, 1987, 1989, 1990, 1992, 2003**

Installation Standard
For
HUBLESS CAST IRON SANITARY AND RAINWATER SYSTEMS

IAPMO IS 6-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This installation standard is for use with listed systems of hubless cast iron pipe and fittings, utilizing listed couplings.

1.2 This standard shall serve to supplement any existing applicable standards and requirements of appropriate codes and laws regulating use of hubless cast iron pipe and fittings in building sewer, drainage, waste, vent, and rainwater systems, and to provide the necessary requirements for installation, use and inspection of piping and fittings for this purpose. This system may be used in any location where cast iron pipe is acceptable under the Uniform Plumbing Code.

1.3 The provisions of this standard are not intended to prevent the use of any alternate material or method of construction, provided it meets the requirements of the standard.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to this standard:*

101.4.1.1	Repair and Alterations
301.1	Minimum Standards (Material)
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited Fittings and Practices
313.0	Protection of Piping Materials and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
316.4	Prohibited Joints and Connections
317.0	Increasers and Reducers
Table 3-1	Hanger Rod Sizes
Table 3-2	Support Spacing
701.0	Materials (Drainage)
704.4	Closet Flanges
705.1	Type of Joints
705.3.2	Expansion Joints
707.14	Cleanout Plugs
712.2 and 712.3	Testing
Table 7-3	Sizing
Table 7-5	Sizing
903.0	Materials (Venting)
1003.0	Traps Described

Chapter 11:
Storm Drainage
 1101.3 Materials Uses
 1101.11 Roof Drainage
Table 14-1 Plumbing Material Standards

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

Hubless pipe, fittings and couplings shall be manufactured in strict compliance with appropriate standards acceptable to IAPMO. [UPC 301.1]

2.2 Markings

2.2.1 All hubless system components shall be clearly marked with the following:

(a) Manufacturer's name or manufacturer's registered trademark; the markings shall be adequate to readily identify the maker or manufacturer to the end user of the product;
(b) Products listed by IAPMO that are covered by this standard shall be labeled with the designated IAPMO certification mark;
(c) Country of origin; and
(d) Any other markings required by law.

2.2.2 Pipe shall be legibly and continuously marked along the full length of the barrel. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.2.3 Markings on fittings shall be cast raised letters and not be located in the W dimension as found in the product standard. With the exception of the fittings with notations in the standards allowing for optional positioning lugs fittings have a raised lug. When properly positioned, the gasket in other than wider body couplings will rest against but will not cover the lug. Gaskets for wider body couplings will cover the lug. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.3 All installations shall be made so that the components can be readily identified. When laying hubless pipe in a ditch, the identification shall be on the top side of the pipe. When in walls, the identification shall be on a side readily visible to the inspector.

2.4 Workmanship

All piping systems shall be installed and supported in a workmanlike manner. [UPC 310.0]

2.5 Hangers and Supports

Support and stability of all components of a hubless cast iron sanitary and rainwater system shall be given prime consideration. [UPC 314.0]

2.5.1 Vertical hubless systems shall be supported per Table 3-2 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

2.5.2 Horizontal hubless systems shall be supported per Table 3-2 of the Uniform Plumbing Code. Supports shall be adequate to maintain alignment and prevent sagging and shall be placed within eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) of the joint.

2.5.3 Joints shall be supported at least at every other joint except that when the developed length between supports exceeds four (4) feet (1219 mm) they shall be provided at each joint. Supports shall also be provided at each horizontal branch connection. Such support shall be placed immediately adjacent to the coupling.

2.5.4 Suspended lines shall be suitably braced to prevent horizontal movement.

2.5.5 Closet bends, trap arms and similar branches shall be secured against movement in any direction.

2.5.6 Hubless systems, in the ground shall be laid on a firm bed for its entire length except where support is otherwise provided which is adequate in the judgment of the Administrative Authority. [UPC 314.3] Vertical sections and their connecting branches shall be adequately staked and fastened to driven steel pipe or reinforcing bars so as to remain stable while backfill is placed or concrete is poured.

2.6 Joints

During installation assembly, hubless pipe and fittings shall be inserted into the gasket and firmly seated against a center stop. Center stop ring or fittings shall not create an enlargement chamber or recess with a ledge, shoulder, or reduction of pipe area or offer an obstruction to flow. In order to provide a sound joint with field cut lengths of pipe, the ends shall be cut square. Coupling assemblies shall be properly positioned and uniformly tightened to the torque required by IAPMO listing. The use of an adequate torque wrench recommended by the manufacturer of the coupling assemblies shall be used. [UPC 705.1]

2.6.1 Listed adapters designed for the specific transition intended shall be used for the intermembering transition of different piping materials.

2.6.2 The connection of closet rings, floor and shower drains, and similar "slip over" fittings to hubless pipe and fittings and the connection of hubless pipe and fittings to conventional pipe hubs shall be accomplished by the use of caulked lead joints, or other listed connections.

ADOPTED: 1966
REVISED: 1972, 1974, 1975, 1982, 1989, 1991, 1993, 1995, 2000, 2003

Installation Standard
For
POLYETHYLENE (PE) COLD WATER BUILDING SUPPLY AND YARD PIPING

IAPMO IS 7-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of polyethylene (PE) cold water building supply and yard piping. (See Section 604.1 of the Uniform Plumbing Code and Section 2.7 of this standard for allowable location and pressure). Installation, material and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, and shall also comply with this standard.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to polyethylene piping.*

103.5.3	Testing of systems
218.0	Definition of PE
310.0	Workmanship
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures
314.0	Supporting in the Ground
315.0	Backfilling
316.2.3	Connection to Other Materials
Chapter 6	Water Distribution
609.0	Locations
609.1	Depth of Piping
609.4	Testing
Table 14-1	Fittings (and Fasteners) for Joining PE Pipe, IAPMO PS 25 Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe. ASTM D 2609 PE Pipe, ASTM D 2239

ABBREVIATIONS

ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
PS	Material and Property Standard published by IAPMO
UPC	Uniform Plumbing Code published by IAPMO

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 **Material**. Material shall conform to the appropriate standard in Table 14-1. See note ahead of Chapter 2 of this standard.

2.1.2 **Pipe**. PE pipe is plastic and black.

2.1.3 **Fittings**. Fittings are copper alloy or nylon barbed insert fittings.

2.2 Markings

2.2.1 **Piping**. PE pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 2239. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.2.2 **Fittings**. PE fitting markings shall be in accordance with D 2239. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.2.3 **Bands**. Bands shall be marked with at least the following:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark;
(b) Model;
(c) Stainless steel, Series 300; and
(d) Bands listed by IAPMO that are covered by this standard shall be labeled with the UPC logo to show compliance with this standard.

2.2.4 **Position of Markings**. The identifying markings on pipe and fittings shall be visible for inspection without moving materials.

2.3 Protection of Piping

2.3.1 **Storage**. Unprotected pipe should not be stored in direct sunlight. The pipe shall be stored in a way to protect it from mechanical damage (slitting, puncturing, etc.). [UPC 313.0]

2.3.2 **Thermal Expansion**. The pipe shall be snaked in the trench bottom with enough slack to provide for thermal expansion and contraction. The normal slack created by residual coiling is generally sufficient for this purpose. If, however, the pipe has been allowed to straighten before it is placed in the trench, six (6) inches (152 mm) per one hundred (100) feet (30480 mm) of length shall be allowed for this purpose.

2.3.3 Exposed Piping. Vertical piping may extend a maximum of twenty-four (24) inches (610 mm) above grade when located on the exterior of the building or structure and protected from mechanical damage to the satisfaction of the Administrative Authority. Where exposed to sunlight, the pipe shall be wrapped with at least 0.040 in. (1.02 mm) of tape.

2.4 Trenching and Cover. Trench bottoms shall be uniformly graded and shall be of either undisturbed soil or shall consist of a layer or layers of compacted backfill so that minimum settlement will take place. [UPC 315.0]

2.5 Joints

2.5.1 Procedure. Polyethylene pipe joints shall be made as follows (see Section 2.2.1):

Step 1. Pipe shall be cut square, using a cutter designed for plastic pipe, and chamfer ends to remove sharp edges.

Step 2. Place two strap-type stainless steel bands over the pipe.

Step 3. Check that fittings are properly sized for pipe, as tubing fittings are not of proper size.

Step 4. Force the end of the pipe over the barbed insert fittings, making contact with the fitting shoulder (the end of the pipe may be softened by placing in hot water).

Step 5. Position the clamps 180° apart and tighten evenly, so as to make a leak-proof joint. [UPC 316.1]

2.5.2 Other Joints. Polyethylene pipe shall not be threaded. Joints made with adhesives or "solvent cementing" techniques are prohibited.

2.6 Materials

2.6.1 Location. Polyethylene piping shall be installed only outside the foundation of any building or structure or parts thereof. It shall be buried in the ground for its entire length except vertical piping may be extended above grade per Section 313.3. It shall not be installed within or under any building or structure or mobile home or commercial coach, or parts thereof. The term "building or structure or parts thereof" shall include structures such as porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered, roofed porte-cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways, and similar structures or appurtenances. [UPC 604.0]

2.6.2 Harmful Materials. Polyethylene that has been in contact with gasoline, lubricating oil, or aromatic compounds, shall not be installed.

2.7 Installation

2.7.1 Pipe. Kinked pipe shall not be used. PE pipe shall not be flared. [UPC 609.0]

2.7.2 Fittings. Compression type couplings and fittings shall be used only when installing one and one-half (1-1/2) inch (38 mm) and larger pipe. Stiffeners that extend beyond the clamp or nut shall not be used. [UPC 609.0]

2.7.3 Bends. Changes in direction may be made by bends. The installed radius of pipe curvature shall be not less than thirty (30) pipe diameters, or the coil radius when bending with the coil. Coiled pipe shall not be bent beyond straight. Bends shall not be permitted closer than ten (10) pipe diameters of any fitting or valve.

2.7.4 Maximum Working Pressure. Working pressure shall not exceed 160 psi (1.10 mPa).

2.7.5 Identification. A label shall be fastened to the main electric meter panel stating "This structure has a non-metallic water service".

2.8 Sizing

2.8.1 Piping shall be sized in accordance with UPC Section 610.0. When UPC Appendix A is applicable, use UPC Chart A-4 (Copper Tubing Type L). Flow velocity shall not exceed 8 fps (2.4 m/s). [UPC 610.1]

ADOPTED: 1968
REVISED: 1969, 1971, 1972, 1973, 1975, 1978, 1981, 1982, 1983, 1989, 1990, 2003

Installation Standard
For
PVC COLD WATER BUILDING SUPPLY AND YARD PIPING

IAPMO IS 8-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of PVC piping (with solvent cemented or elastomeric gasketed joints) in cold water building supply and yard piping. (See Section 2.6.1 and 2.7.2 for allowable location and pressure.) Installation, material and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, and shall also comply with this standard.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to PVC water piping.*

218.0	Definition of PVC
310.0	Workmanship
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
315.0	Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill
316.1.6	Solvent-Cement Plastic Pipe Joints
316.2.3	Plastic Pipe to Other Materials
Chapter 6	Water Supply and Distribution
606.2	Use of Joints
604.0	Materials
609.0	Depth of Piping Installation, Testing, Unions, and Location

Chapter 14

ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
NSF	NSF International
UPC	Uniform Plumbing Code published by IAPMO

APPLICABLE STANDARDS

Type of PVC for Pipe and Fittings	ASTM Standard
PVC 1120 or 1220	D1784
Pipe	
Bell-End Poly (vinyl chloride)	
PVC Pipe	D2672
PVC Schedule 40	D1785
PVC Schedule 80	D1785
PVC 160 psi (1102.4 kPa) (SDR 26)	
PVC 200 psi (1378 kPa) (SDR 21)	
PVC 250 psi (1722.5 kPa) (SDR 17)	
PVC 315 psi (2170.4 kPa) (SDR 13.5)	D 2241
Fittings	
Schedule 40 (Socket)	D 2466
Schedule 80 (Socket)	D 2467
Schedule 80 (Threaded)	D 2464
Solvent Cement	
PVC Solvent Cement	D 2564
Primers	
PVC Primers	F 656

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

Material. Materials shall conform to the appropriate standard in Table 14-1 of the Uniform Plumbing Code. See note ahead of Chapter 2 of this standard. [UPC 301.1]

2.2 Pipe and Fittings. Pipe and fittings are manufactured from PVC plastic.

2.3 Markings

2.3.1 Pipe. PVC pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 1785 or D 2241. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.3.2 Fittings. PVC fitting markings shall be in accordance with D 2464 or D 2466 or D 2467. [UPC 301.1.2]

***Note:** Size and material designation may be omitted on smaller fittings.*

2.3.3 Solvent Cement. Solvent cement container markings shall be in accordance with D 2564.

2.3.3.1 Color. Solvent cement shall not be purple in color.

2.3.4 Primers. Primer container markings shall be in accordance with F 656.

2.3.4.1 Color. Primer shall be purple.

2.3.4.2 Position of Markings. The identifying markings on pipe and fittings shall be visible for inspection without moving materials.

2.4 Protection of Piping

2.4.1 Storage. Unprotected pipe should not be stored in direct sunlight. The pipe shall be

stored in a way to protect it from mechanical damage (slitting, puncturing, etc.). Exposure to sunlight during normal construction periods is not harmful. PVC solvent cements should be stored in a cool place, except when actually in use at the job site. The solvent cement manufacturer's specific storage recommendations should be followed. [UPC 313.0]

2.4.2 Alignment. Pipe and fittings shall be aligned properly without strain.

2.4.3 Thermal Expansion. Pipe (except pipe with elastomeric gasketed joints) shall be "snaked" in the trench bottom with enough slack, at least 6 inches (152.4 mm) per 100 feet (30480 mm), to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction before stabilizing piping. Stabilize piping by bringing it approximately to operating temperature before testing and backfilling by one of the following methods:

(a) Shade backfill. Leave all joints exposed so that they can be examined during pressure test.

(b) Fill with water at operating temperature.

(c) Allow to stand overnight.

2.4.4 Exposed Piping. Vertical piping may extend a maximum of 24 in. (610 mm) above grade when located on the exterior of the building or structure and protected from mechanical damage to the satisfaction of the Administrative Authority. Where exposed to sunlight, the pipe shall be wrapped with at least 0.040 in. (1.0 mm) of tape or otherwise protected from UV degradation.

2.5 Trenching, Cover and Backfill

2.5.1 Trenching and Cover. Trench bottoms shall be uniformly graded and shall be of either undisturbed soil or shall consist of a layer or layers of compacted backfill so that minimum settlement will take place. [UPC 315.0]

2.5.2 Backfill. Selected backfill shall be used. Tamp the backfill that is placed around the pipe so as to provide firm continuous support and proper compaction. Backfill at least 12 inches (305 mm) over pipes, except that joints shall be left exposed. After inspection and pressure test, complete backfill.

2.5.3 Elastomeric Joints. Backfill immediately after installing pipe.

***Note:** This is to maintain equal spaces within the joints for contraction and expansion.*

2.6 Joints

2.6.1 Solvent Cement Joints

2.6.1.1 Selection. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for types of solvent cement for such conditions as temperature over 100°F (38°C), humidity over 60% or use of Schedule 80 fittings. [UPC 316.0]

2.6.1.2 Handling (to maintain effectiveness). Package solvent cement in containers no larger than 1 quart (1 liter). Keep solvent cement can closed and in the shade when not in use. Keep applicator submerged in solvent cement between applications. When solvent cement becomes thicker, THROW IT AWAY. Solvent cement shall NOT be thinned.

2.6.1.3 Size of Applicator. Applicator should be about one half the pipe diameter. Do not use small applicator on large pipes.

2.6.1.4 Primers. All solvent cement PVC joints shall be made using a listed primer in compliance with ASTM F 656 and as specified in Section 316.1.6 of the UPC.

2.6.1.5 Application. Solvent cement shall be applied deliberately, but without delay (two men may be needed to make large joints). Use special care when temperature is over 100°F (38°C) or humidity is over 60%.

2.6.1.6 Procedure

***Note:** Do not take SHORT CUTS. Most failures are caused by short cuts. DON'T TAKE A CHANCE.*

2.6.2 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS AND PRECAUTIONS[1]

2.6.2.1 General. *Solvents contained in PVC plastic pipe cements are classified as airborne contaminants and flammable and combustible liquids. Precautions listed in this appendix should be followed to avoid injury to personnel and the hazard of fire.*

2.6.2.2 Safety Precautions. *Prolonged breathing of solvent vapors should be avoided. When pipe and fittings are being joined in partially enclosed areas, a ventilating device should be used in such a manner to minimize the entry of vapors into the breathing areas.*

2.6.2.3 *Solvent cements should be kept away from all sources of ignition, heat, sparks, and open flame.*

2.6.2.4 *Containers for solvent cements should be kept tightly closed except when the cement is being used.*

2.6.2.5 *All rags and other materials used for mopping up spills should be kept in a safety waste receptacle which should be emptied daily.*

2.6.2.6 *Most of the solvents used in PVC pipe cements can be considered eye irritants and contact with the eye should be avoided for it may cause eye injury. Proper eye protection and the use of chemical goggles or face shields is advisable where the possibility of splashing exists in handling solvent cements. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water for 15 minutes and call a physician immediately.*

2.6.2.7 *Repeated contact with the skin should be avoided. Proper gloves impervious to and unaffected by the solvents should be worn when frequent contact with the skin is likely. Application of the solvents or solvent cements with rags and bare hands is not recommended. Brushes and other suitable applicators can be used effectively for applying the solvent cement, thus avoiding skin contact. In the event of excessive contact, remove contaminated clothing and wash skin with soap and water.*

CAUTION: *Primers are toxic. Don't allow them to touch skin. Suitable gloves are advised.*

Step 1. Cut pipe square with hand saw and miter box, mechanical cut-off saw or tube cutter designed for plastic.

Step 2. Ream and chamfer pipe (to eliminate sharp edges, beads, and all burrs).

Step 3. Clean all dirt, moisture and grease from pipe and fitting socket. Use a clean, dry rag.

Step 4. Check dry fit of pipe in fitting. Pipe should enter fitting socket from 1/3 to 3/4 depth of socket.

Step 5. Soften inside socket surface by applying an aggressive primer.

Step 6. Soften mating outside surface of pipe to depth of socket by applying a liberal coat of the (aggressive) primer. Be sure entire surface is softened.

Step 7. Again coat inside socket surface with the (aggressive) primer. Then, without delay, apply solvent cement liberally to outside of pipe. Use more than enough to fill any gaps.

Step 8. Apply a light coat of PVC solvent cement to inside of socket using straight outward strokes (to keep excess solvent out of socket). This is also to prevent solvent cement damage to pipe. For loose fits, apply a second coat of solvent cement. Time is important at this stage. See Section 2.5.1.4.

Step 9. While both the inside socket surface and the outside surface of the pipe are SOFT and WET with solvent cement, forcefully bottom the pipe in the socket, giving the pipe a one-quarter turn, if possible. The pipe must go to the bottom of the socket.

Step 10. Hold the joint together until tight.

Step 11. Wipe excess cement from the pipe. A properly made joint will normally show a bead around its entire perimeter. Any gaps may indicate insufficient cement or the use of light bodied cement on larger diameters where heavy bodied cement should have been used.

Step 12. Do not disturb joint for the following periods:

30 minutes minimum at 60°F to 100°F (16°C to 38°C).

1 hour minimum at 40°F to 60°F (4°C to 16°C).

2 hours minimum at 20°F to 40°F (-7°C to 4°C).

4 hours minimum at 0°F to 20°F (-18°C to -7°C).

Handle the newly assembled joints carefully during these periods. If gaps (step 11) or loose fits are encountered in the system, double these periods.

Step 13. The system shall not be pressurized until the joints have cured (set) at least as long as recommended by the manufacturer. If manufacturer's recommendation is not available, the following cure times are required:

2.6.3 **Threaded Joints**. Joints shall be tightened approximately 1/2 turn past hand tight, using a strap wrench.

Caution: Handtight refers to number of threads to reach handtight with metal pipe. Pipe can be bottomed in small sizes of PVC by hand pressure alone. Do not overtighten.

2.6.4 **Elastomeric Gasketed Joints, Procedure:**

Step 1. For field cuts, cut end of pipe square with handsaw and miter box, mechanical saw or a tube cutter designed for plastic.

Step 2. Ream and bevel end of pipe (unless already done by manufacturer).

Step 3. If dirty, remove gasket, clean gasket and groove and replace ring.

Step 4. Mark pipe in a contrasting color to indicate the proper insertion depth as recommended by the manufacturer (unless already done by manufacturer).

Step 5. Apply lubricant recommended by pipe manufacturer to end of pipe. Do not apply lubricant to gasket or the groove unless otherwise specifically recommended by the manufacturer.

Step 6. Insert pipe into fitting until mark on pipe is even with fitting.

Note: *This depth of insertion is required to properly allow for thermal expansion and contraction. During joint assembly, the previously installed length of pipe should be held so that the existing joints are not pushed together or pulled apart. DO NOT USE METAL STRAPS, CHAINS (OR THE LIKE) FOR ASSEMBLY.*

2.7 Material

2.7.1 Location. PVC piping shall be installed only outside the foundation of any building or structure or parts thereof. It shall be buried in the ground for its entire length except vertical piping may be extended above grade per Section 2.4.4. It shall not be installed within or under any building or structure or mobile home or commercial coach or parts thereof. The term "building or structure or parts thereof" shall include structures such as porches and steps, whether roofed or not, roofed porte-cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways and similar structures or appurtenances. [UPC 604.0]

2.8 Installation, Testing, and Identification

2.8.1 Deflection. Elastomeric gasketed pipe may be deflected in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations provided that it shall not be permanently staked or blocked to maintain this deflection. [UPC 609.0]

2.8.2 Maximum Working Pressure. Maximum working pressure shall be as follows (see chart on following page).

2.8.3 Saddles. PVC pressure pipe saddles are limited to underground use outside the building. The branch of the saddle shall be a minimum of two pipe sizes smaller than the main. Saddles shall be installed as required by their listings.

2.8.4 Thrust Blocking. In lines with rubber gasketed joints, thrust blocks shall be installed at all:

(a) Changes in direction, as at tees and bends
(b) Changes in size, as at reducers
(c) Stops, as at dead ends
(d) Valves, where thrusts may be expected.

Thrust block sizes shall be based on the maximum line pressure, pipe size and kind of soil. Refer to Table 2 for thrust at fittings for a pressure of 100 psi (689 kPa).

TABLE 1
MINIMUM CURE TIME, IN HOURS*
TEST PRESSURE FOR PIPE

	Sizes 1/2" to 1-1/4" (12.7 mm) (32 mm)		Sizes 1-1/2" to 3" (38 mm) (76 mm)		Sizes 3-1/2" to 8" (89 mm) (203 mm)	
Temperature Range During Cure Period	Up to 180 psi (1240.2 kPa)	Above 180 to 370 psi (1240.2 to 2549.3 kPa)	Up to 180 psi (1240.2 kPa)	Above 180 to 315 psi (1240.2 to 2170.4 kPa)	Up to 180 psi (1240.2 kPa)	Above 180 to 315 psi (1240.2 to 2170.4 kPa)
60°F-100°F (16°C-38°C)	1 hr	6 hr	2 hr	12 hr	6 hr	24 hr
40°F-60°F (4°C-16°C)	2 hr	12 hr	4 hr	24 hr	12 hr	48 hr
10°F-40°F (-12°C+4°C)	8 hr	48 hr	16 hr	96 hr	48 hr	8 days

*If gaps or loose fits are encountered in the system, double these cure times.

TABLE 2
THRUST AT FITTINGS IN POUNDS AT 100 psi

Pipe Size Inches	90° Bends	45° Bends	22-1/2° Bends	Dead Ends and Tees
1-1/2	415	225	115	295
2	645	350	180	455
2-1/2	935	510	260	660
3	1395	755	385	985
3-1/2	1780	962	495	1260
4	2295	1245	635	1620
5	3500	1900	975	2490
6	4950	2710	1385	3550
8	8300	4500	2290	5860
10	12,800	6900	3540	9050
12	18,100	9800	5000	12,800

TABLE 3
THRUST AT FITTINGS IN PASCALS AT 689 kPa OF WATER PRESSURE

Pipe Size mm	90° Bends	45° Bends	22-1/2° Bends	Dead Ends and Tees
38	1846.8	1001.3	511.8	1312.8
51	2870.3	1557.5	801.0	2024.8
64	4160.8	2269.5	1157.0	3937.0
76	6207.8	3359.8	1713.3	4383.3
89	7921.0	4280.9	2202.8	5607.0
102	10,212.8	5540.3	2815.8	7209.0
127	15,575.0	8455.0	4338.8	11,080.5
152	22,027.5	12,059.5	6163.3	15,797.5
203	36,935.0	20,025.0	10,190.5	26,077.0
254	56,960.0	30,705.0	15,753.0	40,272.5
305	80,545.0	43,610.0	22,250.0	56,960.0

Example for Table 2:

For a pressure of 150 psi (1033.5 kPa) on a 4 inch (102 mm) tee, Table 2 indicates 1620 pounds (7209 N) for 100 psi (689 kPa). Therefore, total thrust for 150 psi (1033.5 kPa) will equal 1-1/2 times 1620 pounds (7209 N) for a total thrust of 2430 pounds (10810 N).

To determine the bearing area of thrust blocks, refer to Table 4 for the safe bearing load of the soil and divide the total thrust by this safe bearing load.

TABLE 4
SAFE BEARING LOADS OF VARIOUS SOILS

Soil	Safe Bearing Load Lbs./sq. ft.	kPa
Mulch, Peat, etc.	0	0
Soft Clay	1000	6890
Sand	2000	13,780
Sand and Gravel	3000	20,670
Sand and Gravel Cement with Clay	4000	27,360
Hard Shale	10,000	68,900

Example: *Assume a 4000 pound (17,800 N) total thrust was computed. The soil condition is sand. The required bearing area of the thrust block is 4,000 lbs. (17,800 N) divided by 2000 lbs. (13,780 kPa) or 2 square feet (0.19 m^2).*

2.9 Testing

2.9.1 Rubber Gasketed Joints. Properly sized thrust blocks, either permanent or temporary, shall be installed at all required points before testing. See Section 2.8.4. When concrete thrust blocks are installed, wait at least 24 hours before pressure testing.

2.9.2 Solvent Cement Joints. The entire system shall be purged before testing to eliminate all solvent cement vapors and air.

CAUTION: *Water test only.*

2.9.3 Identification. A label shall be fastened to the main electrical meter panel stating, "This structure has a nonmetallic water service".

2.10 Sizing

2.10.1 Piping shall be sized in accordance with UPC Section 610.0. When UPC Appendix A is applicable, use UPC Chart A-5 (Fairly smooth). Flow velocity shall not exceed 8 fps (2.4 m/s). [UPC 610.0]

This standard is a combination of sections from the previous standards IS 8 and IS 14. IS 8 was originally adopted in 1968 and revised in 1971, 1972, 1973, and 1975. IS 14 was originally adopted in 1972 and revised in 1975. Upon adoption of this rewrite, IS 14 was deleted.

Rewrite ratified by membership: 1978
Revised: 1980, 1981, 1984, 1986, 1989, 1991, 1992, 1995, 2003

[1] Appendix XI, Safety Requirements and Precautions from ASTM D 2564 Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings is reprinted with permission from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103, copyright.

TABLE 5

Pipe	Fittings Schedule	Fittings Sizes	Maximum Working Pressure
160 psi (SDR 26) (1102.4 kPa)	40	1/2" thru 8" incl. (12.7 mm - 203 mm)	160 psi - 1102.4 kPa
	80	1/2" thru 8" incl. (12.7 mm - 203 mm)	160 psi - 1102.4 kPa
200 psi (SDR 21) (1378 kPa)	40	1/2" thru 4" incl. (12.7 mm - 102 mm)	200 psi - 1378 kPa
	80	1/2" thru 8" incl. (12.7 mm - 203 mm)	200 psi - 1378 kPa
250 psi (SDR 17) (1722.5 kPa)	40	1/2" thru 3" incl. (12.7 mm - 76 mm)	250 psi - 1722.5 kPa
	80	1/2" thru 8" incl. (12.7 mm - 203 mm)	250 psi - 1722.5 kPa
315 psi (SDR 13.5) (2170.4 kPa)	40	1/2" thru 1-1/2" incl. (12.7 mm - 38 mm)	315 psi - 2170.4 kPa
	80	1/2" thru 4" incl. (12.7 mm - 102 mm)	315 psi - 2170.4 kPa
Schedule 40	40 80	1/2" thru 1-1/2" incl. (12.7 mm - 38 mm)	320 psi - 2204.8 kPa
	40 80	2" thru 4" incl. (51 mm - 102 mm)	220 psi - 1515.8 kPa
	40	5" thru 8" incl. (127 mm - 203 mm)	160 psi - 1102.4 kPa
Schedule 80	40	1/2" thru 1-1/2" incl. (12.7 mm - 38 mm)	320 psi - 2204.8 kPa
	40	2" thru 4" incl. (51mm - 102 mm)	220 psi - 1515.8 kPa
	40	5" thru 8" incl. (127 mm - 203 mm)	160 psi - 1102.4 kPa
	80	1/2" thru 4" incl. (12.7 mm - 102 mm)	320 psi - 2204.8 kPa
	80	5" thru 8" incl. (127 mm - 203 mm)	250 psi - 1722.5 kPa

LOCATION OF THRUST BLOCKS
(Standard and metric combined)
A Comparison of Thrust-Block Areas

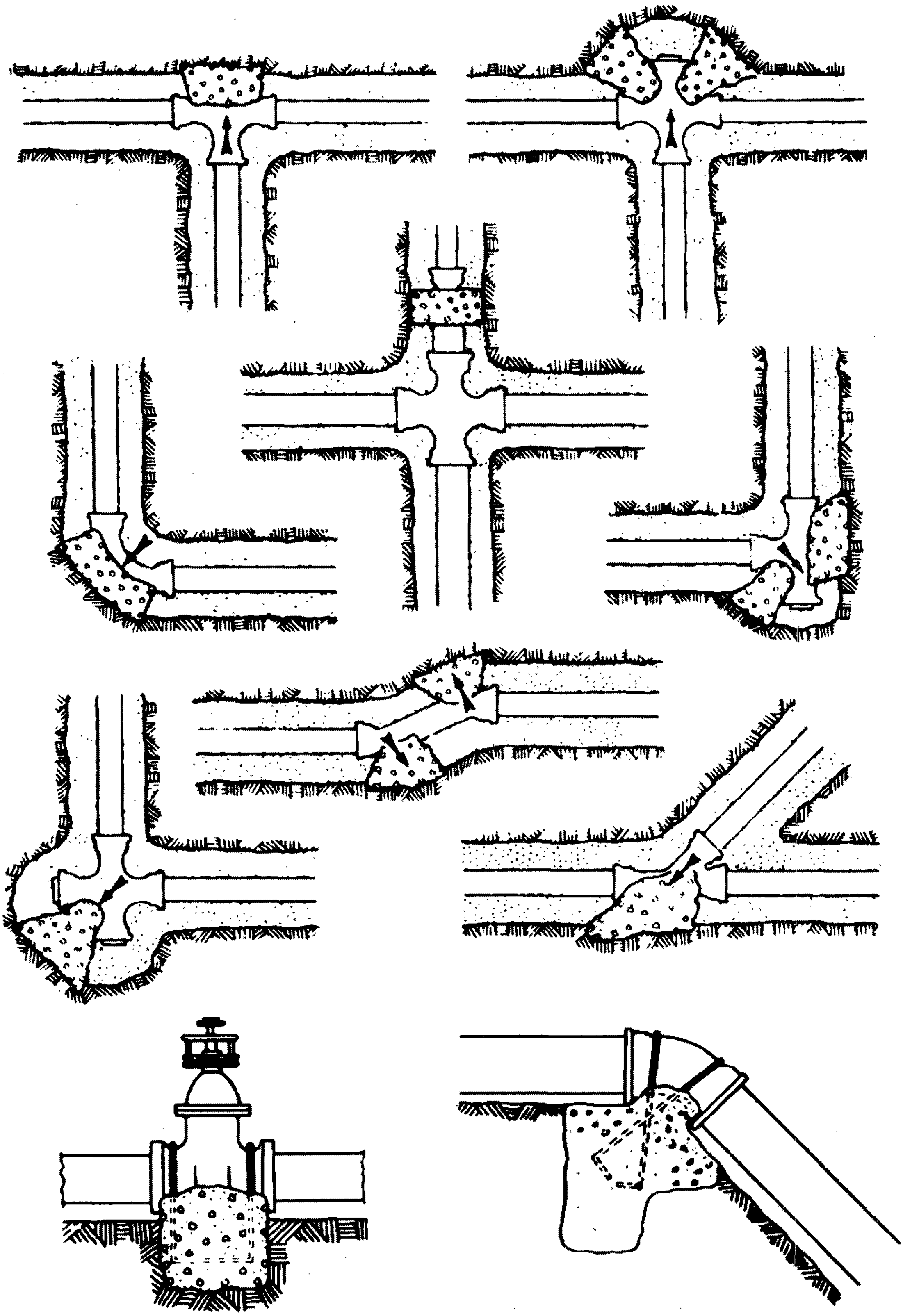


Figure 1

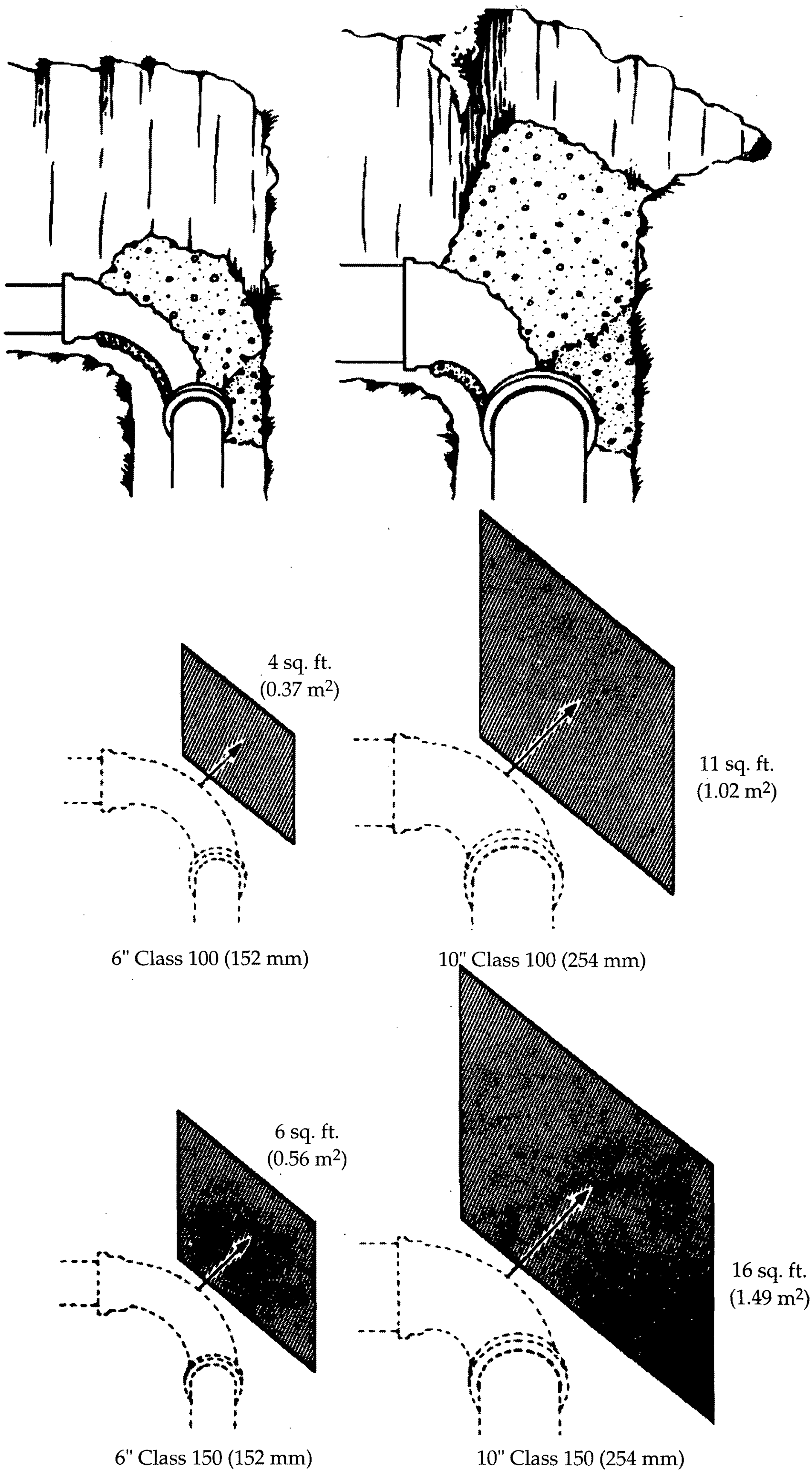

4 sq. ft.
(0.37 m²)
11 sq. ft.
(1.02 m²)
6" Class 100 (152 mm)
10" Class 100 (254 mm)
6 sq. ft.
(0.56 m²)
16 sq. ft.
(1.49 m²)
6" Class 150 (152 mm)
10" Class 150 (254 mm)

Figure 2

Installation Standard
For
PVC BUILDING DRAIN, WASTE AND VENT PIPE AND FITTINGS

IAPMO IS 9-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This installation standard shall apply to PVC building drain, waste, and vent systems as governed by the Uniform Plumbing Code. Material Standard ASTM D2665, "Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings", shall form part of this installation standard.

1.2 Installation, material and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials and shall also comply with this standard.

Note: *The Building Official shall be consulted about penetration of fire separations, height and area, or other limitations.*

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply.*

101.4.1.1	Repair and Alterations
103.5	Inspections
103.5.3	Testing of Systems
218.0	Definition PVC
301.1	Minimum Standards
311.8	Screwed Fittings
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited Fittings and Practices
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
316.1.6	Type of Joints – Solvent Cement Plastic Pipe Joints
316.2	Special Joints
316.3	Flanged Fixture Connections
316.4	Prohibited Joints and Connections
317.0	Increasers and Reducers
701.0	Materials (Drainage)
704.4	Closet Flanges
707.1	Cleanout Fittings
903.0	Materials (Venting)
903.4	Straining or Bending Pipe
1003.0	Traps Described
1101.3	Materials Uses
Table 14-1	Pipe and Fittings ASTM D 2665 D 2122 ASTM D 3311[1]

ABBREVIATIONS

ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials

IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials

UPC Uniform Plumbing Code

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Pipe. PVC pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 2665.[2] [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.2 Fittings. PVC fitting markings shall be in accordance with D 2665 or D 3311. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.3 Solvent Cement. Solvent cement label markings shall be in accordance with D 2564.

2.1.3.1 Solvent cements shall not be purple in color.

2.1.4 Primers. Primer container markings shall be in accordance with F 656.

2.1.4.1 Primer shall be purple.

2.2 Workmanship

2.2.1 Alignment

All piping systems components shall be aligned properly without strain. Pipe shall not be bent or pulled into position. Vertical piping shall be maintained in straight alignment between floors with midstory guides.

Pipe and fittings shall be so positioned that identifying markings shall be readily visible for inspection. [UPC 310.0]

[1] Although referenced in this standard, some of the fittings shown in the standard are not acceptable under the Uniform Plumbing Code.

[2] It is common practice to dual mark Schedule 40 DWV and potable water piping in which compliance with each applicable standard is met.

2.3 Protection of Piping

2.3.1 Storage

Pipe and fittings should not be stored in direct sunlight; however, exposure to sunlight during normal construction periods is not considered harmful. Pipe shall be stored in such a manner as to prevent sagging or bending. [UPC 313.0]

2.3.2 Expansion and Contraction

Thermal expansion and contraction of plastic drain waste and vent systems shall be taken into consideration. Thermal expansion and contraction may be controlled by several methods: offset, expansion joints, or restraints.

Regardless of method utilized, certain conditions shall be met:

(a) Support, but do not rigidly restrain piping at changes of direction.
(b) Do not anchor pipe rigidly in walls.
(c) Holes through framing members must be adequately sized to allow for free movement.

DWV installation with frequent changes in direction will compensate for thermal expansion and contraction.

Expansion joints may be utilized in vertical straight runs in excess of 30 feet (9144 mm) provided they are installed per manufacturer's installation instructions.

Except piping buried below ground, horizontal and vertical piping should be installed with restraint fittings or a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) 45° offset every 30 feet (9144 mm). Thermal expansion for installation subject to temperature changes may be determined from Table 3-1. The linear expansion shown is independent of the diameter of the pipe.

2.3.3 Exposed Piping

Piping shall not be exposed to direct sunlight. Exception: Vent piping through roof. Plumbing vents through roof, exposed to sunlight, shall be protected by water base synthetic latex paints.

Adequate support shall be provided where PVC piping is exposed to wind, snow and ice loading.

2.3.4 Protection from Damage

Piping passing through wood studs or plates shall be protected from puncture by minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick steel plate.

Piping shall be protected from concrete form oil.

2.3.5 Anti-Freeze Protection

PVC pipe and traps can be protected from freezing by the use of one of the following solutions of mixtures:

(a) 4 quarts (3.8 liters) of water mixed with 5 quarts (4.8 liters) of glycerol
(b) 2-1/2 lbs. (1.1 kg) of magnesium chloride dissolved in one (1) gallon (3.8 liters) of water
(c) 3 lbs. (1.4 kg) of table salt dissolved in one (1) gallon (3.8 liters) of water.

The salt solutions are effective to approximately 10°F (-12°C). If lower temperatures are anticipated, the pipe should be drained or the glycerol solution should be used.

2.4 Piping Installed in Fire Resistive Construction

Where piping is installed and penetrates required fire resistive construction, the fire resistive integrity of the construction shall be as required by the Administrative Authority, or when not established by the Building Code, by qualified testing methods approved by the Administrative Authority. Approval shall be obtained prior to installing any such piping.

2.5.0 Hangers and Supports

2.5.1 Abrasion

Hangers and straps shall not compress, distort, cut, or abrade the piping and shall allow free movement of pipe. Pipe, exposed to damage by sharp surfaces, shall be protected. [UPC 314.0]

2.5.2 Support

Support all horizontal piping at intervals of not more than four (4) feet (1219 mm), at end of branches, and at change of direction or elevation. Supports shall allow free movement, but shall restrict upward movement of lateral runs so as not to create reverse grade. Vertical piping shall be supported at each story or floor level. Alignment of vertical piping shall be maintained between floors with the use of a mid-story guide. Support trap arms in excess of three (3) feet (915 mm) in length as close as possible to the trap. Closet flanges shall be securely fastened with corrosive resistant fasteners to the floor with top surface one-quarter (1/4) inch (6.4 mm) above finish floor.

TABLE 1
PVC-DWV TYPE I
THERMAL EXPANSION TABLE
Chart Shows Length Change in Inches
vs. Degrees Temperature Change
Coefficient of Linear Expansion: e = 2.9 x 10^{-5} in/in °F

Length (feet)	40°F	50°F	60°F	70°F	80°F	90°F	100°F
20	0.278	0.348	0.418	0.487	0.557	0.626	0.696
40	0.557	0.696	0.835	0.974	1.114	1.235	1.392
60	0.835	1.044	1.253	1.462	1.670	1.879	2.088
80	1.134	1.392	1.670	1.949	2.227	2.506	2.784
100	1.392	1.740	2.088	2.436	2.784	3.132	3.480

TABLE 1 (Metric)
PVC-DWV TYPE I
THERMAL EXPANSION TABLE
Chart Shows Length Change in Millimeters
vs. Degrees Temperature Change
Coefficient of Linear Expansion: $\frac{0.2 \text{ mm}}{\text{mm °C}}$

Length (mm)	4°C	10°C	16°C	21°C	27°C	32°C	38°C
6096	7.1	8.8	10.6	12.4	14.2	15.9	17.7
12192	14.2	17.7	21.2	24.7	28.3	31.4	35.4
18288	21.2	26.5	31.8	37.1	42.4	47.7	53.0
24384	28.8	35.4	42.4	49.5	56.6	63.7	70.7
30480	35.4	44.2	53.0	61.9	70.7	79.6	88.4

Example:
Highest temperature expected 100°F (38°C)
Lowest temperature expected 50° F (10°C)
~~50°F (10°C)~~
Length of run – 60 feet (18288 mm) from chart, read 1.044 inches (26.5 mm) linear expansion that must be provided for.

2.6 Traps

2.6.1 Connection to Traps
Traps shall be connected by means of listed trap adapters. [UPC 1003.0]

2.7 Joints

2.7.1 Caulked Joints
Make connections or transitions to bell-and-spigot cast iron soil pipe fittings, and to bell-and-spigot pipe and fittings of other materials with listed mechanical compression joints designed for this use, or caulked joints made in an approved manner. In caulking, pack the joint with oakum or hemp and fill with molten lead to a depth of not less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm). Allow a period of four (4) minutes for cooling, following which, caulk the lead at the inside and outside edges of the joint. Lead shall not be overheated. [UPC 705.1.1]

2.7.2 Solvent Cement Joints
(Additional information is available in ASTM D2855.)

2.7.3 Selection. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for type of solvent cement for such conditions as temperature over 100°F (38°C), or humidity over 60%.

2.7.4 Handling (to maintain effectiveness). Solvent cement and primer containers no larger than 1 quart (1 liter) should be used in the field (to avoid thickening due to evaporation). Keep containers closed and in the shade when not in use. Keep applicator

submerged in solvent cement between applications. When solvent cement becomes thicker, THROW IT AWAY. Solvent cement shall NOT be thinned.

2.7.5 **Size of Applicator**. Applicator should be about one-half the pipe diameter. Do not use small applicator on large pipes. Ordinary pure bristle paint brushes or applicators furnished with product are satisfactory. [UPC 316.1.6]

2.7.6 **Primers.** A listed primer in compliance with ASTM F 656 shall be used on all PVC DWV joints.

2.7.7 **Application**. Solvent cement and primer shall be applied deliberately, but without delay (two men may be needed to make large joints). Use special care when temperature is over 100°F (38°C) or humidity is over 60%.

2.7.8 **SAFETY REQUIREMENTS AND PRECAUTIONS**

2.7.8.1 **General**. *Solvents contained in PVC plastic pipe cements are classified as airborne contaminants and flammable and combustible liquids. Precautions listed in this appendix should be followed to avoid injury to personnel and the hazard of fire.*

2.7.8.2 **Safety Precautions.** *Prolonged breathing of solvent vapors should be avoided. When pipe and fittings are being joined in partially enclosed areas, a ventilating device should be used in such a manner to minimize the entry of vapors into the breathing areas.*

2.7.8.3 *Solvent cements should be kept away from all sources of ignition, heat, sparks, and open flame.*

2.7.8.4 *Containers for solvent cements should be kept tightly closed except when the cement is being used.*

2.7.8.5 *All rags and other materials used for mopping up spills should be kept in a safety waste receptacle which should be emptied daily.*

2.7.8.6 *Most of the solvents used in PVC pipe cements can be considered eye irritants and contact with the eye should be avoided for it may cause eye injury. Proper eye protection and the use of chemical goggles or face shields is advisable where the possibility of splashing exists in handling solvent cements. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water for 15 minutes and call a physician immediately.*

2.7.8.7 *Repeated contact with the skin should be avoided. Proper gloves impervious to and unaffected by the solvents should be worn when frequent contact with the skin is likely. Application of the solvents or solvent cements with rags and bare hand not recommended. Brushes and other suitable applicators can be used effectively for applying the solvent cement, thus avoiding skin contact. In the event of excessive contact, remove contaminated clothing and wash skin with soap and water.*

Step 1 Cut pipe square with hand saw and miter box, mechanical cut-off saw or tube cutter designed for plastic.

Step 2 Ream inside and chamfer outside of pipe (to eliminate all burrs).

Step 3 Clean all dirt, moisture and grease from pipe and socket. Use a clean, dry rag.

Step 4 Check dry fit of pipe in fitting. Pipe should enter fitting socket from 1/3 to 3/4 depth of socket.

Step 5 Soften inside socket surface by applying an aggressive primer.

Step 6 Soften mating outside surface of pipe to depth of socket by applying a liberal coat of the (aggressive) primer. Be sure the entire surface is softened.

Step 7 Again coat inside socket surface with the (aggressive) primer. Then, without delay, apply solvent cement liberally to outside of pipe. Use more than enough to fill any gaps.

Step 8 Apply a light coat of PVC solvent cement to inside of socket using straight outward strokes (to keep excess solvent out of socket). This is also to prevent solvent cement damage to pipe. For loose fits, apply a second coat of solvent cement. Time is important at this stage. See Section 2.7.6.

Step 9 While both the inside socket surface and the outside surface of the pipe are SOFT and WET with solvent cement, forcefully bottom the pipe in the socket, giving the pipe a one-quarter turn, if possible. The pipe must go to the bottom of the socket.

Step 10 Hold the joint together until tight. (Partial set).

Step 11 Wipe excess cement from the pipe. A properly made joint will normally show a bead around its entire perimeter. Any gaps may

indicate insufficient cement or the use of light bodied cement on larger diameters where heavy bodied cement should have been used.

Step 12 The system shall not be tested until the joints have cured (set) at least as long as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.7.9 Threaded Joints

Listed adapter fittings shall be used for the transition to threaded connections. No threaded PVC female fitting(s) or joint(s) shall be located in a non-accessible location. The joint between the PVC pipe and adapter fittings shall be of the solvent cement type.

Only listed thread tape or thread lubricant, specifically intended for use with plastics, shall be used. Conventional pipe thread compounds, putty, linseed oil base products, and unknown mixtures shall not be used. Pipe and fittings which have come in contact with the above non-approved mixtures shall be removed and replaced with new materials.

Where a threaded joint is made, obtain tightness by maximum hand tightening plus additional tightening with a strapwrench not to exceed one full turn.

2.7.10 Special Joints

2.7.10.1 Connection to Non-Plastic Pipe

When connecting plastic pipe to other types of piping, use listed fittings and adapters designed for the specific use intended. [UPC 316.2]

2.7.11 Prohibited Joints and Connections

(a) Drainage System – Any fitting or connection which has an enlargement, chamber or recess with a ledge, shoulder, or reduction of pipe area, that offers an obstruction to flow through the drain is prohibited.

(b) No fitting or connection that offers abnormal obstruction to flow shall be used. The enlargement of a three (3) inch (76 mm) closet bend or stub to four (4) inches (102 mm) shall not be considered an obstruction. [UPC 316.4]

ADOPTED: 1968
REVISED: 1971, 1974, 1975, 1976, 1977, 1981, 1982, 1983, 1987, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1995, 2003

Installation Standard
For
ABS SEWER PIPE AND FITTINGS

IAPMO IS 11-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This Installation Standard shall apply to ABS, Building Sewer Pipe and Fittings as governed by the Uniform Plumbing Code. Material Standard ASTM D 2751, Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sewer Pipe and Fittings shall form part of this Installation Standard. Materials shall be limited to building sewers receiving domestic sewage excluding special and industrial waste.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply.*

103.5	Inspection and Testing
101.4.1.1	Repairs and Alterations
203.0	Definition ABS
206.0	Domestic Sewage
301.1	Minimum Standards
310.0	Workmanship
312.0	Independent Systems
313.3 and 313.4	Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
315.0	Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill
316.1	Types of Joint
317.0	Increasers/Reducers
705.1.1	Caulked Joints
705.1.7	Elastomeric Gasketed and Rubber-Ring Joints
713.0	Sewer Required
715.0	Building Sewer Materials
718.0	Grade, Support, and Protection of Building Sewers
719.0	Cleanouts
720.0	Sewer and Water Pipes
723.0	Building Sewer Test
Table 14-1	ASTM D2751[1]

1 Although this standard is referenced in Table 14-1, some of the tube or fittings shown in the standard are not acceptable for use under the Uniform Plumbing Code.

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Pipe. ABS pipe is furnished in straight lengths. Refer to Tables in D 2751 for dimensions and tolerances for pipe and pipe sockets.

ABS pipe markings shall be in accordance with D 2751. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.2 Fittings. Refer to Tables in ASTM D 2751 for dimensions and tolerances for fitting sockets, spigots, and laying lengths.

ABS fitting markings shall be in accordance with D 2751. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.3 Solvent Cement. Solvent cement shall be as specified in ASTM Standard D 2235.

Solvent cement label markings shall be in accordance with D 2235.

2.2 Workmanship

All piping system components shall be aligned properly without strain. Pipe shall not be bent or pulled into position after being solvent cemented. Pipe and fittings shall be so positioned that identifying markings shall be readily visible for inspection. [UPC 310.0]

2.3 Protection of Piping

2.3.1 Storage

Pipe and fittings should not be stored for long periods in direct sunlight. However, exposure to direct sunlight during normal construction periods is not harmful. Pipe shall be stored in such a manner as to prevent sagging or bending.

2.4 Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill

2.4.1 Trenching

The width of the trench at any point below the top of the pipe should not be greater than necessary to provide adequate room for joining the pipe and compacting the side fills. [UPC 315.0]

2.5 Alignment and Grade

The pipe should be bedded true to line and grade, uniformly and continuously supported on firm, stable material. Blocking shall not be used to bring the pipe to grade. The bedding shall conform to Section 718.0 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

2.6 Backfill

The backfill shall conform to Section 315.4 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

2.7 Joints

2.7.1 Caulked Joints

Make connections or transitions to bell-and-spigot cast iron soil pipe and fittings, and to bell-and-spigot pipe and fittings of other materials with approved mechanical compression joints designed for this use, or caulked joints made in an approved manner. In caulking, pack the joint with oakum or hemp and fill with molten lead to a depth of not less than one (1) inch (25.4 mm). Allow a period of four (4) minutes for cooling, following which, caulk the lead at the inside and outside edges of the joint. Lead shall not be overheated. [UPC 705.1.1]

***Note:** Caulked joints should be avoided if possible.*

2.7.2 Gasket-Type Joints

Pipe shall be cut square with saws or pipe cutters designed specifically for plastic pipe; protect pipe and fittings from serrated holding devices and abrasion.

1. Wipe the pipe spigot, rubber gasket, and inside of the socket clean of all dirt and moisture.
2. Coat the socket and gasket evenly with a vegetable base paste lubricant.
3. Slide the gasket on the spigot and against the backup ring and snap it to remove any twist.
4. Force the spigot into the socket. Check that the joint is properly connected by using any thin feeler gauge that the gasket is not looped back over the backup ring.

2.7.3 Solvent Cement Joints

2.7.3.1 Selection. Solvent cement shall be recommended for ABS by the manufacturer. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for types of solvent cement for such conditions as temperature over 100°F (38°C), or humidity over 60%.

2.7.3.2 Handling (to maintain effectiveness). Solvent cement containers no larger than 1 quart (1 liter) should be used in the field (to avoid thickening due to evaporation). Keep container closed and in the shade when not in use. Keep applicator submerged in solvent cement between applications. When solvent cement becomes thicker, THROW IT AWAY. Solvent cement shall NOT be thinned.

2.7.3.3 Size of Applicator. Applicator should be about one half the pipe diameter. Do not use small applicator on large pipes. Ordinary pure bristle paint brush or applicators furnished with product are satisfactory.

2.7.3.4 Application. Solvent cement shall be applied deliberately, but without delay (two men may be needed to make large joints). Use special care when temperature is over 100°F (38°C) or humidity is over 60%.

2.7.4 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS AND PRECAUTIONS

2.7.4.1 General. Solvents contained in ABS plastic pipe cements are classified as airborne contaminants and flammable and combustible liquids. Precautions listed in this appendix should be followed to avoid injury to personnel and the hazard of fire.

2.7.4.2 Safety Precautions. Prolonged breathing of solvent vapors should be avoided. When pipe and fittings are being joined in partially enclosed areas, a ventilating device should be used in such a manner to minimize the entry of vapors into the breathing areas.

2.7.4.3 Solvent cements should be kept away from all sources of ignition, heat, sparks, and open flame.

2.7.4.4 Containers for solvent cements should be kept tightly closed except when the cement is being used.

2.7.4.5 All rags and other materials used for mopping up spills should be kept in a safety waste receptacle which should be emptied daily.

2.7.4.6 Most of the solvents used in ABS pipe cements can be considered eye irritants and contact with the eye should be avoided for it may cause eye injury. Proper eye protection and the use of chemical goggles or face shields is advisable where the possibility of splashing exists in handling solvent cements. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water for 15 minutes and call a physician immediately.

2.7.4.7 Repeated contact with the skin should be avoided. Proper gloves impervious to and unaffected by the solvents should be worn when frequent contact with the skin is likely. Application of the solvents or solvent cements with rags and bare hand is not recommended. Brushes and other suitable applicators can be used effectively for applying the solvent cement, thus avoiding skin contact. In the event of excessive contact, remove contaminated clothing and wash skin with soap and water.

Step 1 Cut pipe square with hand saw and miter box, mechanical cut-off saw, or tube cutter designed for plastic.

Step 2 Ream inside and chamfer outside of pipe (to eliminate all burrs).

Step 3 Clean all dirt, moisture, and grease from pipe and socket. Use a clean, dry rag.

Step 4 Check dry fit of pipe in fitting. Pipe should enter fitting socket from 1/3 to 3/4 depth of socket.

Step 5 Apply a light coat of ABS solvent cement to inside of socket using straight outward strokes (to keep excess solvent out of socket). This is also to prevent solvent cement damage to pipe. For loose fits, apply a second coat of solvent cement. Time is important at this stage. See Section 2.7.3.4.

Step 6 While both the inside socket surface and the outside surface of the pipe are SOFT and WET with solvent cement, forcefully bottom the pipe in the socket, giving the pipe a one-quarter turn, if possible. The pipe must go to the bottom of the socket.

Step 7 Hold the joint together until tight (partial set).

Step 8 Wipe excess cement from the pipe. A properly made joint will normally show a bead around its entire perimeter. Any gaps may indicate insufficient cement or the use of light bodied cement on larger diameters where heavy bodied cement should have been used.

Step 9 The system shall not be tested until the joints have cured (set) at least as long as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.7.5 Special Joints

2.7.5.1 Connection to Non-Plastic Pipe

When connecting plastic pipe to other types piping, use only approved types of fittings and adapters, designed for the specific transition intended.

ADOPTED: 1976
REVISED: 1981, 1987, 2003

Installation Standard
For
POLYETHYLENE (PE) FOR GAS YARD PIPING

IAPMO IS 12-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of polyethylene (PE) natural and liquified petroleum gas yard piping. Installation, material and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials and shall also comply with this standard.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to PE gas piping:*

202.0	Definition of PE	
310.0	Workmanship	
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials and Structures	
314.0	Hangers and Supports	
315.0	Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill	
316.2.3	Plastic Pipe to Other Materials	
Chapter 12	Fuel Piping	
1204.3.2	Final Piping Inspection	
1210.1	Location of PE	
1211.19	Tracer Wire	
1213.0	Liquified Petroleum Gas Facilities and Piping	
1218.0	Medium Pressure Gas Piping Systems	
Table 14-1	Materials:	
	Pipe and Tube	
	PE3406	PE3408
		ASTM D 2513
	PE2306	PE2406
	Fittings:	
	Copper Alloy	ANSI B16.26
	PE2306,	PE3408
	PE2406	PE3406
		ASTM D 2513

ABBREVIATIONS

ANSI American National Standards Institute
ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials
IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
UPC Uniform Plumbing Code published by IAPMO

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials. Pipe, tubing, and fittings shall conform to the appropriate standards in Table 14-1 of the Uniform Plumbing Code. See note ahead of Chapter 2 of this standard. [UPC 301.1]

2.1.2 Pipe. PE pipe is plastic of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or larger size. One-half inch (12.7 mm) pipe shall be SDR 9. Pipe sizes less than 3 inches (76 mm) shall be SDR 11. Pipes 3 inches (76 mm) and larger shall be SDR 11.5 or lower*.

2.1.3 Tubing. PE tubing is plastic and shall be limited to the following:

Tubing Size		
Inches	**(mm)**	**SDR***
1/4	(6.4)	6
3/8	(9.5)	8
1/2	(12.7)	7

****Note:*** *The lower the SDR number, the thicker the wall.*

2.1.4 Fittings. Heat fusion fittings shall be PE 2306, PE 2406, PE 3408, PE 3406, or other listed materials. Mechanical connectors for PE pipe and tubing and for transition fittings shall be approved compression type couplings or other special listed joints.

2.2 Markings

2.2.1 Pipe and Tubing. Pipe and tubing markings shall be in accordance with D 2513. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.2.2 Fittings. Fitting markings shall be in accordance with D 2513 or B16.26. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.2.3 Position of Markings. The identifying markings on pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be visible for inspection without moving materials.

2.3 Protection of Piping

2.3.1 Storage. Unprotected pipe should not be stored in direct sunlight. The pipe shall be stored in a way to protect it from mechanical damage (slitting, puncturing, etc.). Exposure to sunlight during normal construction periods is not harmful. [UPC 313.0]

2.4 Thermal Expansion

2.4.1 Snaking. The pipe and tubing shall be "snaked" in the trench bottom with enough slack to provide for thermal expansion and contraction before stabilizing. The normal slack created by residual coiling is generally sufficient for this purpose. If, however, the pipe has been allowed to straighten before it is placed in the trench, 6 inches (152 mm) per 100 feet (30480 mm) of pipe length shall be allowed for this purpose.

2.4.2 Stabilizing. Pipe and tubing temperature shall be stabilized by one of the following methods:

(a) Shade backfill. Leave all joints exposed so they can be examined during the pressure test.

(b) Allow to stand overnight.

2.5 Trenching and Backfill

2.5.1 Trenching. Trenching bottoms shall be smooth and regular of either undisturbed soil or a layer of compacted backfill so that minimum settlement will take place. Pipe or tubing shall not be wedged or blocked. Voids shall be filled and compacted to level of trench bottom. The minimum cover shall be 18 inches (457 mm) below finish grade. [UPC 315.0]

Exceptions:

(1) Tubing for gas lights shall be buried a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) below finish grade where gas flow is restricted to 10 cubic feet per hour (8 x $10^{-5}m^3/s$) at its source by a mechanical means or a fixed orifice.

***Note:** Local climatic conditions may affect required burial depth.*

(2) Piping may terminate a maximum of one foot above ground when encased in a listed anodeless transition riser.

2.5.2 Backfill. The pipe and tubing temperature shall be stabilized before backfilling. See Section 2.4.2.

2.6 Types of Joints

PE joints shall be made as follows:

2.6.1 Heat Fusion Joints. Heat fusion joints shall be made according to the manufacturer's procedures using recommended heat times, temperature and joining pressures.

2.6.2 Mechanical Joints. Mechanical joints shall be assembled in an approved manner with tools recommended by the fitting manufacturer. Mechanical joints shall be made with listed mechanical fittings.

2.7 Special Joints

2.7.1 Listed transition fittings or listed mechanical fittings shall be used when making joints between PE and steel or PE and copper.

2.7.2 Transition fittings shall be installed outside of meter vaults with metallic piping extending into the vaults a sufficient distance to permit the use of backup wrenches.

2.8 Inspections

2.8.1 Temperature. Pipe temperatures shall be stabilized before testing. See Section 2.4.2. [UPC 1204.0]

2.8.2 Piping shall be subjected to the pressure test required in Section 1204.0 of the Uniform Plumbing Code. [UPC 1204.3.2]

2.9 Materials

2.9.1 Location. PE pipe and tubing shall be installed only outside the foundation of any building or structure or parts thereof. It shall be buried in the ground for its entire length with cover as provided in Section 2.5.1. It shall not be installed within or under any building or structure or mobile home or commercial coach or parts thereof. The term "building or structure or parts thereof" shall include structures such as porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered, roofed porte-cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways and similar structures or appurtenances. [UPC 1210.0]

***Exception:** Tubing may extend into gas light support columns provided it is not exposed to external damage.*

2.9.2 Maximum Working Pressure. Gas pressure shall not be more than 5 psi (34.5 kPa) for natural gas nor more than 10 psi (69 kPa) for liquified petroleum gas.

2.9.3 Gas Supplier. Installation shall be acceptable to the serving gas supplier.

2.10 Installation of Gas Piping

2.10.1 Types of Joints. See Sections 2.6 and 2.7 of this standard. [UPC 1211.0]

2.10.2 Prohibited Joints. PE pipe shall not be joined by a threaded joints. Joints made with adhesives or solvent cement shall be prohibited.

2.10.3 Identification. Plastic gas yard piping shall be permanently identified by attaching a metal tag to the meter end of the piping system stating, "Plastic Yard Piping".

2.11 Sizing

2.11.1 Pipe. Pipe shall be sized as required by Section 1217.0 or 1218.0 of the UPC. [UPC 1217.0]

2.11.2 Tubing. Tubing shall be sized from Table 1. [UPC 1217.0]

ADOPTED: 1971
REVISED: 1975, 1977, 1978, 1981,1983, 1985, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1993, 2003

TABLE 1
SIZE OF PLASTIC GAS TUBING
Maximum Delivery Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour (CFH) of Tubing Carrying Natural Gas of 0.60 Specific Gravity

Nominal Tubing Size Inches	Internal Diameter Inches	Length in Feet										
		10	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**	**90**	**100**	**125**
1/4	0.250	18	12	10	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	4
3/8	0.375	51	35	28	24	21	19	18	16	16	15	13
		150	**200**	**250**	**300**	**350**	**400**	**450**	**500**	**550**	**600**	
1/4	0.250	4	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	
3/8	0.375	12	10	9	8	7	7	6	6	6	6	

TABLE 1 (Metric)
SIZE OF PLASTIC GAS TUBING
Maximum Delivery Capacity in Cubic Meters of Gas per Second (m^3/s) of Tubing Carrying Natural Gas of 0.60 Specific Gravity

Nominal Tubing Size mm	Internal Diameter mm	Length in Meters					
		3.0	**6.1**	**9.1**	**12.2**	**15.2**	**18.3**
6.4	6.4	1.4	1.0	0.8	0.6	0.56	0.56
9.5	9.5	4.1	2.8	2.2	1.9	1.7	1.5
		21.3	**24.4**	**27.4**	**30.5**	**38.1**	**45.7**
6.4	6.4	0.5	0.5	0.4	0.4	0.3	0.3
9.5	9.5	1.4	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.0	0.96
		61.0	**76.2**	**91.4**	**106.7**	**121.9**	**137.2**
6.4	6.4	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.16	0.16
9.5	9.5	0.8	0.7	0.6	0.56	0.56	0.5
		152.4	**167.6**	**182.9**			
6.4	6.4	0.16	0.16	0.16			
9.5	9.5	0.5	0.5	0.5			

Installation Standard
For
PROTECTIVELY COATED PIPE

IAPMO IS 13-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 Installation and material of protective pipe coatings shall comply with this Standard and the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™, published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO).

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code shall apply to protectively coated pipe.*

301.2	Marking
302.0	Iron pipe size (IPS) pipe
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited fittings and practices
313.5	Protection required
314.0	Hangers and supports
604.0	Materials – water piping
609.3.1	Coated protection required
1210.0	Materials – gas piping
1211.6	Coated protection required and coating material approval required

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials

2.1.1.1 **Coating.** Piping shall be coated by a listed coating applicator in accordance with AWWA C203, AWWA C213, or AWWA C215.

2.1.1.2 **Tape.** Tape for field application shall comply with PS 37, Black Plastic PVC or PE Pressure-Sensitive Corrosion Preventive Tape.

2.1.1.3 **Primer.** Primer for field application shall be compatible with the tape and be as recommended by the tape manufacturer.

2.1.2 Markings

2.1.2.1 **Pipe.** Protectively coated pipe shall be legibly marked at least every two (2) feet (610 mm) as follows:

(a) Applicator's name or trademark;
(b) Pipe manufacturer's name;
(c) Pipe standard designation i.e., ASTM or API;
(d) Pipe material type i.e., black, galvanized;
(e) Pipe size and schedule;
(f) Coating material;
(g) Holiday test voltage;
(h) Products listed by IAPMO that are covered by this standard shall be labeled with the designated IAPMO certification mark; and
(i) Any other required markings. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.2.2 **Tape.** Tape for field applications should be legibly marked at least every two (2) feet (610 mm) with the manufacturer's name and tape model identification.

2.2 Protection of Piping and Fittings

2.2.1 **Field Joints.** Field joints shall be made as follows, except as specified in 2.2.2. Clean and dry surfaces to be protected. [UPC 313.0]

Step 1 Oil and grease, if present, shall be removed with suitable non-oily type solvent such as Heptane or Trichlorethylene. Materials, such as kerosene and gasoline, shall not be used.

Step 2 For coated pipe, remove coating approximately 3 inches (76 mm) from end of pipe or from repair area and bevel to expose shoulder of coating at area to be field wrapped.

Step 3 For taped pipe, remove tape and overwrapping so as to expose approximately 3 inches (76 mm) of pipe at area to be field wrapped.

Step 4 For welded pipe, grind down sharp welds and weld spatter to a minimum 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) radius. Wire brush the weld area thoroughly taking care to remove as much mil scale and surface rust as possible. Remove any loose or charred coating caused during welding.

Step 5 Apply listed primer, as recommended by the manufacturer of the tape being applied, over the protected area and adjacent 1 inch (25.4 mm) of protected area.

Step 6 Spirally wrap listed tape by a half overlap double wrap of minimum 10 mil tape stretched around the

fitting, thread, and other unprotected areas to provide a minimum 40 mil thickness. A maximum of two (2) inch (51 mm) wide tape shall be used for field application.

Exception: *Unless otherwise listed by IAPMO, a maximum of one (1) inch (25.4 mm) wide tape shall be used on change of direction fittings for piping sizes up to and including two (2) inch (51 mm).*

2.2.2 Other Methods. Other materials approved for field joints or repair shall be applied as per manufacturer's recommendations and the listing requirements.

2.3 Damage in Shipment. Coated piping shall be protected against damage in shipment.

2.3.1 Handling and Storage. Coated piping shall be handled and stored in a manner to prevent damage.

2.3.2 Handling by Installer. Movement of pipe from truck or into trench shall be done in such a manner as to avoid abrasion, or damage from dropping.

2.4 Backfill. All excavations shall be completely backfilled as soon after inspection as possible. [UPC 315.0]

2.5 Inspection. All coated piping shall be inspected and tested and any visible void, damage or imperfection to the pipe coating shall be repaired as to comply with Section 2.2.

2.5.1 Equipment. The equipment, material, and labor necessary for inspection or tests shall be furnished by the person to whom the permit is issued or by whom inspection is requested.

ADOPTED: 1971
REVISED: 1975, 1978, 1982, 1984, 1991, 2000, 2003

Installation Standard
For
ASBESTOS CEMENT PRESSURE PIPE FOR WATER SERVICE AND YARD PIPING

IAPMO IS 15-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of asbestos cement pressure pipe and fittings with elastomeric gasketed joints in hot and cold water building supply and yard piping. For allowable location and pressure, see Sections 2.4 and 2.5.2 of this standard. Installation, material, and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, and shall also comply with this standard.

***Note:** The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to asbestos cement pressure piping systems.*

Table 14-1	Materials
310.0	Workmanship
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
315.0	Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill
Chapter 6	Water Supply and Distribution

Chapter 2 DEFINITIONS

202.0	AC	Asbestos Cement
Chapter 14	ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
	IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
	UPC	Uniform Plumbing Code published by IAPMO

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 **Material.** Materials shall conform to the appropriate standard in Table 14-1 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

Applicable Standards

AC Pipe	ASTM C296
Fittings	AWWA/ANSI A21.10
Rings	ASTM D1869
Joints	AWWA/ANSI A21.11

2.1.2 **Pipe.** Pipe is asbestos cement.

2.1.3 **Fittings.** Fittings are cast iron or other listed materials.

2.1.4 Markings

2.14.1 **Pipe.** Pipe markings shall be in accordance with C 296. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.4.2 **Fittings.** Fitting markings shall be in accordance with A21.10. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.4.3 **Couplings.** Couplings shall be marked with at least the following:

(a) Manufacturers name or trademark;
(b) Class and nominal size; and
(c) Letter "T".

2.1.4.4 **Position of Markings.** The identifying markings on pipe and fittings shall be visible for inspection without moving materials unless otherwise acceptable to the Administrative Authority.

2.2 Trenching, Cover, and Backfill

2.2.1 **Trenching and Cover.** Trench bottoms shall be uniformly graded and shall be of either undisturbed soil or shall consist of a layer or layers of compacted backfill so that minimum settlement will take place. The trench bottoms shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) below the average local frost depth. The minimum cover shall be 18 inches (458 mm) below the finish grade. [UPC 315.0]

2.2.2 **Backfill.** After finishing pressure testing of the line, backfill a minimum of twelve (12) inches (305 mm) deep over the top of the pipe and fittings. Backfill should be select material placed around the pipe in a manner to provide a firm continuous support. Tamp well to secure proper compaction.

***Note:** All joints shall be exposed during test.*

2.3 Joints

2.3.1 Joints in asbestos cement pipe shall be a sleeve coupling of the same composition as the pipe, or of other listed materials, and sealed with rubber rings or joined by other listed compression type coupling. [UPC 705.1.4]

2.3.2 Joints between asbestos cement pipe and other approved pipes shall be made by means of listed adapter couplings. Special heat resistant rings as recommended by the manufacturer must be used for temperatures in excess of 140°F (60°C).

2.3.3 Before assembling the joint, the coupling grooves, pipe ends, and rubber gasket must be cleaned. The rubber gaskets are then positioned in the grooves.

2.3.4 Use the pipe manufacturer's joint lubricant recommended for potable water application. Apply lubricant to the machined end of the pipe only, never to the rubber gasket or groove, unless specifically recommended otherwise by the manufacturer.

2.3.5 The end of the pipe and the coupling or fitting bell shall be assembled using a bar and wood block or a pipe puller. "Stabbing" or "popping" the pipe into the coupling (pipe is suspended and swung into the bell) is not recommended.

2.3.6 When a field cut is made, cut the pipe square, using hand pipe-cutters which use a cutting edge, or hand saws. To properly enter the rubber gasketed joint, the end of the pipe must be machined before insertion, using hand machining tools.

2.4 Materials

2.4.1 **Location.** Asbestos cement piping shall be installed only outside the foundation of any building or structure or parts thereof. It shall be buried in the ground for its entire length except vertical piping may be extended above grade per Section 313.0 of the Uniform Plumbing Code. It shall not be installed within or under any building or structure or mobile home or commercial coach or parts thereof. The term "building or structure or parts thereof" shall include structures such as porches and steps, roofed porte-cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways, and similar structures or appurtenances. [UPC 604.1]

2.5 Installation, Testing, and Identification

2.5.1 **Alignment and Deflection.** Pipe and fittings shall be aligned properly without strain. Pipe may be deflected in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations provided that it shall not be permanently staked or blocked to maintain this deflection. If soft soil conditions exist, deflected joints may be permanently blocked or staked to maintain the deflection. The amount of deflection shall be: 5° for sizes 4 inch (101.6 mm) through 12 inch (305 mm); 4° for 14 inch (356 mm) and 16 inch (407 mm); 3-1/2° for 18 inch (457 mm) through 24 inch (610 mm) for pipe belled on the job site. For factory-belled couplings, one half (1/2) the above deflections by size shall be allowed.

2.5.2 **Working Pressure.** Maximum working pressure shall be as follows:

MATERIALS, SIZES AND MAXIMUM WORKING PRESSURES

Pipe	Sizes	Maximum Pressure
Class 100	4 – 24 inch incl. (102 – 610 mm incl.)	100 psi (689 kPa)
Class 150	4 – 24 inch incl. (102 – 610 mm incl.)	150 psi (1033 kPa)
Class 200	4 – 24 inch incl. (102 – 610 mm incl.)	200 psi (1378 kPa)

2.5.3 **Laterals and Saddles.** Installation of laterals, saddles, or tapped couplings in AC piping shall be as required by their listings.

2.5.4 **Thrust Blocking.** Thrust blocks shall be installed at:

(a) Changes in direction, as at tees and bends;
(b) Changes in size, as at reducers;
(c) Stops, as at dead ends; and
(d) Valves, where thrusts may be expected.

The size and type of thrust block shall be based on the pressure rating of the pipe (or line test pressure, if greater than piping rating), pipe size and kind of soil 2.5.4(b). Refer to Table 1 for thrust at fittings for a pressure of one hundred (100) pounds per square inch (689 kPa).

2.5.5 To determine the bearing area of thrust blocks, refer to Table 2 for the safe bearing load of the soil and divide the total thrust by this safe bearing load.

2.5.6 Thrust blocks shall be located as shown on Chart 1.

2.5.7 **Testing**

2.5.7.1 The portion of the line being tested should be complete with thrust blocks or properly sized temporary thrust blocking. The line may be pressure tested immediately after installation, provided however, that if poured concrete thrust blocks have been utilized, they have had a 24-hour period to attain an initial cure. [UPC 609.4]

2.5.7.2 The entire system shall be filled with water, purged of air, and tested at a pressure at least equal to the eventual operating pressure for at least one (1) hour before inspection and backfilling of

trench. It is recommended that the test pressure not exceed the working pressure of the pipe.

CAUTION: AIR TESTING IS PROHIBITED.

2.5.7.3 **Identification.** A label shall be fastened to the main electrical meter panel stating, "This structure has a non-metallic water service."

2.6 **Sizing.** Piping shall be sized in accordance with UPC Section 610.0. When UPC Appendix A is applicable, Chart A-5 (Fairly Smooth Pipe) may be used. Flow velocities shall be limited to a maximum of 8 fps (2.4 m/s). When using UPC, Table 6-3, required by UPC Section 610.0, velocities shall also be checked and limited using UPC Chart A-5. [UPC 610.0]

Example: *For a pressure of 150 psi (1033.5 kPa) on a 4 inch (102 mm) tee, Table 609.1.4(a) indicates 1850 pounds (8232.5 N) for 100 psi (689 kPa). Therefore, total thrust for 150 psi (1033.5 kPa) will equal 1-1/2 times 1850 pounds (82,32.5 N).*

TABLE 1
Thrust at Fittings in Pounds at 100 psi of Water Pressure

Pipe Size	Class	Dead Ends and Tees	90° Bend	45° Bend	22 1/2° Bend
4"	100	1,720	2,440	1,320	660
	150	1,850	2,610	1,420	720
	200	1,850	2,610	1,420	720
6"	100	3,800	5,370	2,910	1,470
	150	3,800	5,370	2,910	1,470
	200	3,800	5,370	2,910	1,470
8"	100	6,580	9,300	5,040	2,550
	150	6,580	9,300	5,040	2,550
	200	6,580	9,300	5,040	2,550
10"	100	9,380	13,270	7,190	3,640
	150	10,750	15,200	8,240	4,170
	200	10,750	15,200	8,240	4,170
12"	100	13,330	18,860	10,240	5,170
	150	15,310	21,640	11,720	5,940
	200	15,310	21,640	11,720	5,940
14"	100	17,930	23,360	13,740	6,960
	150	20,770	29,360	15,910	8,060
	200	20,770	29,360	15,910	8,060
16"	100	23,210	32,820	17,880	9,000
	150	26,880	38,010	20,590	10,430
	200	26,880	38,010	20,590	10,430
18"	100	31,000	44,200	23,850	11,950
	150	34,400	48,500	26,400	13,400
	200	38,600	54,400	29,650	14,900
20"	100	38,400	54,200	29,500	14,700
	150	42,600	60,000	32,600	16,500
	200	47,800	67,400	36,700	18,600
24"	100	55,000	78,000	42,200	21,100
	150	61,500	86,700	47,200	23,900
	200	69,000	97,200	52,900	26,800

TABLE 1(Metric)
Thrust at Fittings in Newtons at 689 kPa of Water Pressure

Pipe Size	Class	Dead Ends and Tees	90° Bend	45° Bend	22 1/2° Bend
102	100	7654	10,858	5874	2937
	150	8232.5	11,614.5	6319	3204
	200	8232.5	11,614.5	6319	3204
152	100	16,910	23,896.5	12,949.5	6541.5
	150	16,910	23,896.5	12,949.5	6541.5
	200	16,910	23,896.5	12,949.5	6541.5
203	100	29,281	41,385	22,428	11,347.5
	150	29,281	41,385	22,428	11,347.5
	200	29,281	41,385	22,428	11,347.5
254	100	41,741	59,051.5	31,995.5	16,198
	150	47,837.5	67,640	36,668	18,556.5
	200	47,837.5	67,640	36,668	18,556.5
305	100	59,318.5	83,927	45,568	23,006.5
	150	68,129.5	96,298	52,154	26,433
	200	68,129.5	96,298	52,154	26,433
356	100	79,788.5	103,952	61,143	30,973
	150	92,426.5	130,652	70,799.5	35,867
	200	92,426.5	130,652	70,799.5	35,867
406	100	103,284.5	146,049	79,566	40,050
	150	119,616	169,144.5	91,625.5	46,413.5
	200	119,616	169,144.5	91,625.5	46,413.5
457	100	137,950	196,690	106,132.5	53,177.5
	150	153,080	215,825	117,480	59,630
	200	171,770	242,080	131,942.5	66,305
508	100	170,880	241,190	131,275	65,415
	150	189,570	267,000	145,070	73,425
	200	212,710	299,930	163,315	82,770
610	100	244,750	347,100	187,790	93,895
	150	273,675	385,815	210,040	106,355
	200	307,050	432,540	235,405	119,260

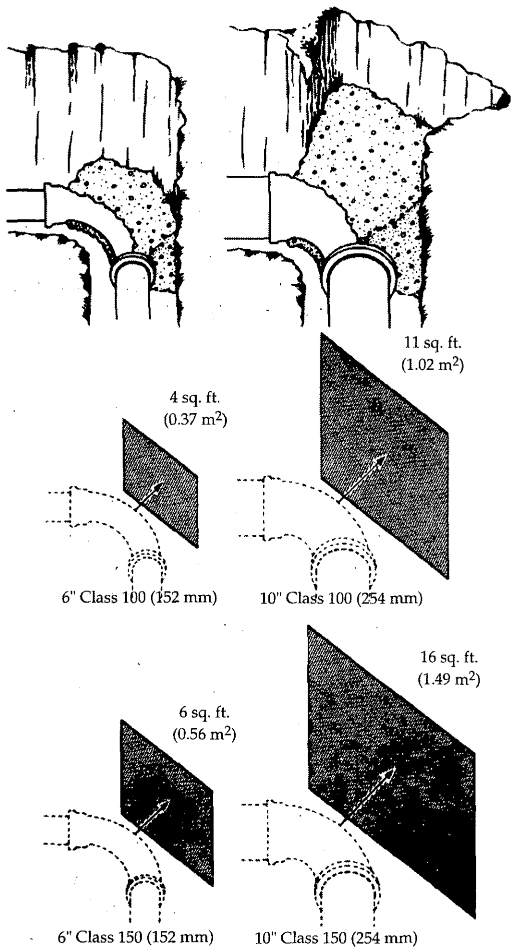
TABLE 2
Safe Bearing Loads for Various Soils

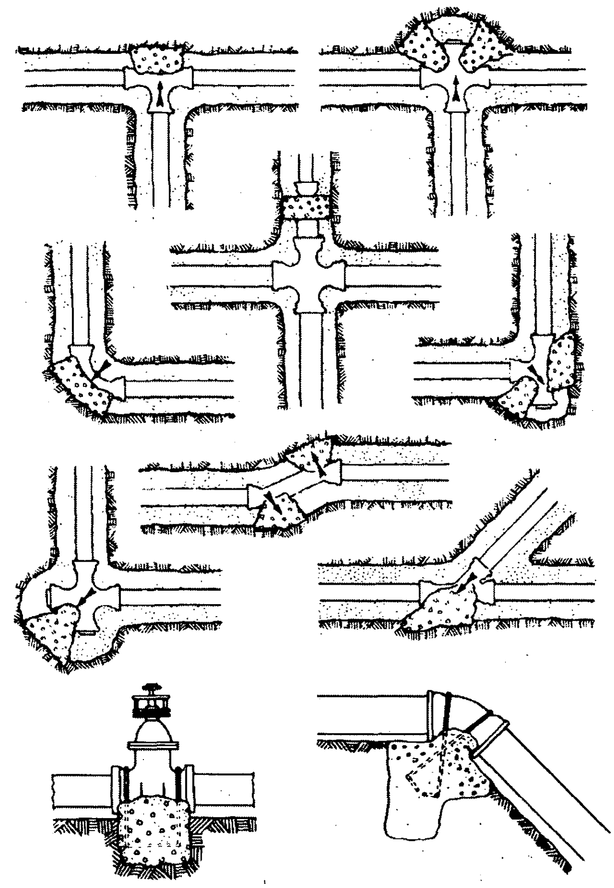
Soil	Safe Bearing Load Lbs./Sq. Ft.	(kPa)
Mulch, Peat, etc.	0	0
Soft Clay	1000	6890
Sand	2000	13,780
Sand and Gravel	3000	20,670
Sand and Gravel Cemented w/Clay	4000	27,360
Hard Shale	10,000	68,900

Example: *Assume a 4000 pound (17,800 N) total thrust was computed. The soil condition is sand. The required bearing area of the thrust block is 4000 lbs. (17,800 N) divided by 2000 lbs. (13,780 kPa) or 2 sq. ft. (0.19 m^2)*

ADOPTED: 1975
REVISED: 1981, 1982, 2003

CHART 1


11 sq. ft.
(1.02 m²)
4 sq. ft.
(0.37 m²)
6" Class 100 (152 mm)
10" Class 100 (254 mm)
16 sq. ft.
(1.49 m²)
6 sq. ft.
(0.56 m²)
6" Class 150 (152 mm)
10" Class 150 (254 mm)



Installation Standard
For
EXTRA STRENGTH VITRIFIED CLAY PIPE IN BUILDING DRAINS

IAPMO IS 18-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of extra strength vitrified clay pipe in gravity building drains. (See Section 2.2 for allowable location.) Installation, material, and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials and this standard.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to vitrified clay pipe.*

103.5	Inspections	
103.5.3	Testing of Systems	
103.5.3.3	Exceptions	
103.5.4.2	Responsibility	
204.0	Definitions, Building Drain	
310.0	Workmanship	
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures	
314.3	Supporting in the Ground	
315.0	Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill	
316.1.4	Flare Joints	
Chapter 7	Sanitary Drainage	
701.1.3	Location of Piping and Use in Pressurized Drainage Systems	
705.2	Use of Joints	
712.2	Water Test	
712.3	Air Test	
720.0	Sewer and Water Pipes	
Table 14-1	Extra Strength Vitrified Clay Pipe	ASTM C 700
	Fittings, Couplings, Molded Rubber	ASTM C 425

Chapter 2 DEFINITIONS
Chapter 14
- ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials
- IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
- UPC Uniform Plumbing Code published by IAPMO

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials. Pipe and fittings shall be a minimum 3 inch (76 mm) in size, "Extra Strength" and couplings shall be molded rubber sewer couplings. They shall conform to the applicable standards in Table 14-1 of the UPC. [UPC 301.1]

2.1.2 Markings

2.1.2.1 Pipe and Fittings. Pipe and fitting markings shall be in accordance with C 700. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.1.2.2 Couplings. Couplings assemblies shall be marked with at least the following:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark on rubber couplings and take-up band or screw take-up housing;
(b) Size, on rubber coupling;
(c) Year of manufacture on rubber coupling;
(d) Grade of material on take-up band or screw take-up housing; and
(e) Couplings and components listed by IAPMO that are covered by this standard shall be labeled with the designated IAPMO certification mark to show compliance with this standard.

2.2 Burial and Separation

2.2.1 Burial. Pipe and fittings shall be buried 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

2.2.2 Separation. Pipe and fittings shall not be run or laid in the same trench with water piping unless **both** the following conditions are met:

(1) The bottom of the water pipe, at all points, shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the drain line; and
(2) The water pipe shall be placed on a solid shelf excavated at one side of the common trench. [UPC 720.0]

2.3 Type of Joints

Joints shall be made with couplings or with flexible compression factory fabricated joints. [UPC 316.0]

2.3.1 Use of Joints

Transitions between clay and other materials shall be made with molded rubber sewer couplings and appropriate bushings or reducers. [UPC 705.2]

ADOPTED: 1980
REVISED: 1982, 1985, 2003

Installation Standard
for
CPVC SOLVENT CEMENTED HOT AND COLD WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

IAPMO IS 20-2005

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of CPVC piping (IPS pipe and SDR-11 tubing) in potable hot and cold water distributing systems within buildings (For allowable locations and pressure, see Sections 2.9.2 and 2.9.4) Installation, material, and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™, published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, and shall also comply with this standard.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to CPVC IPS piping and SDR-11 tubing.*

103.5	Inspections
301.1	Minimum Standards
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited Fittings and Practices
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
316.2.3	Plastic Pipe to Other Materials
Chapter 6	Water Supply and Distribution

Chapter 2* Definitions

205.0 CPVC Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Pipe or tubing"Pipe" or "Piping" includes both pipe and piping, unless specified as "IPS Pipe" or "tubing".

Table 14-1

Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot and ColdWater Distribution System ASTM D 2846

Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80 ASTM F 441

Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings Schedule 40 ASTM F 438

Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings Schedule 80 ASTM F 439

Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings ASTM F 493

ABBREVIATIONS

ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation International
UPC	Uniform Plumbing Code published by IAPMO

*The first three numbers refer to the corresponding section of the UPC.

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials. Materials shall comply with the following:

Materials	ASTM Standard
Raw Material-CPVC 23447	D 1784
IPS Pipe	
Sch. 40 (1/2 in., 3/4 in. and 1 in.) (12.7 mm, 19.1 mm, and 25.4 mm)	F 441
Sch. 80 (1/2 in. – 2 in.) (12.7 mm – 51 mm)	F 441
Tubing	
SDR 11 (1/2 in. thru 2 in.) (12.7 mm – 51 mm)	D 2846
Fittings	
Sch. 40 (1/2 in., 3/4 in. & 1 in.) (12.7 mm, 19.1 mm, and 25.4 mm)	F 438
Sch. 80 (1/2 in. – 2 in.) (12.7 mm – 51 mm)	F 439
Tube Fittings (1/2 in. – 2 in.) (12.7 mm – 51 mm)	D 2846

2.1.2 Primer. Listed primers shall be used that are compatible with the type of listed CPVC cement and pipe used. The primer shall be a true solvent for CPVC, containing no slow drying ingredient. Cleaners shall not be allowed to be used as a substitute or equivalent for a listed primer.

Exception: *Listed solvent cements that do not require the use of primer shall be permitted for*

use with CPVC pipe and fittings, manufactured in accordance with ASTM D 2846, 1/2 inch through 2 inches in diameter.

Note: *Manufacturer shall provide test data from an independent testing laboratory acceptable to the Administrative Authority that their CPVC pipe, together with recommended fittings has a Short Term Working Pressure (STWP) and Temperature Rating of 150 psi (1030 kPa) at 210°F (99°C) for 48 hours or more.*

2.1.3 Material. Pipe and fittings are plastic and are usually light gray for IPS pipe and fittings, and tan for SDR 11 tubing and fittings.

2.2 Markings

2.2.1 Pipe and Tubing. IPS pipe and tubing markings shall be in accordance with F 441 or D 2846. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.2.2 Fittings. Fitting markings shall be in accordance with F 438 or F 439 or D 2846. [UPC 301.1.2]

Note: *Standard number may be omitted on smaller fittings when marked with four raised dots.*

2.2.3 Solvent Cement. Container labeling of CPVC solvent cement shall be in accordance with F 493.

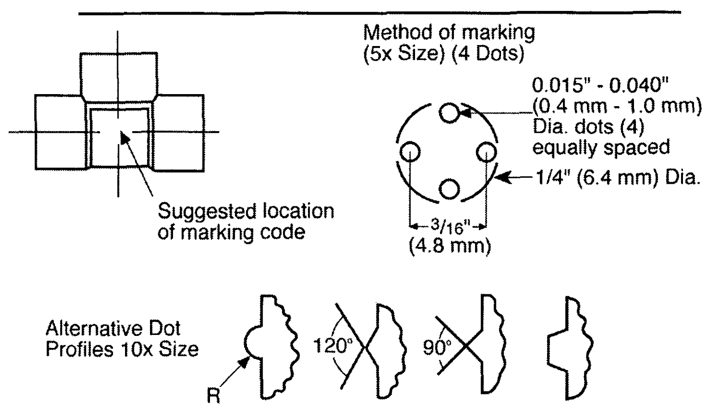
2.2.3.1 Color. Solvent cements requiring the use of primer shall be colored orange. Solvent cements that do not require the use of a primer shall be colored yellow.

2.2.4 Primer. Primer container markings shall be in accordance with F 656.

2.2.4.1 Color. Primer shall be colored so as to make its use obvious on a finished joint, but shall not be colored orange or yellow.

2.2.5 Position of Markings. Identification markings shall be visible for inspection without moving materials.

2.2.6 Alignment. Piping and fittings shall be aligned properly without strain.



2.3 Protection of Materials

2.3.1 Abrasion. Pipe or tubing passing through drilled or notched metal studs or joists or hollow shell masonry walls shall be protected from abrasion due to thermal expansion and contraction by elastomeric or plastic sleeves or grommets or other approved means. Straight runs may have protection at maximum 3 feet (915 mm) intervals. [UPC 313.0]

2.3.2 Puncture. Steel plate protection shall be installed when required by the Administrative Authority or section 313.9 of the Uniform Plumbing Code..

2.3.3 Storage and Handling. Pipe shall be stored in a way to protect it from mechanical damage (slitting, puncturing, etc.). It shall be stored under cover to keep it clean and avoid long term exposure to sunlight. Exposure to sunlight during normal construction periods is not harmful. CPVC solvent cements should be stored in a cool place except when actually in use on the job site. The solvent cement manufacturer's specific storage instruction should be followed.

2.3.4 Freezing. In areas where the system must be drained to protect it from freezing, horizontal lines shall be graded to drain.

2.3.5 Overheating:

(a) Tubing shall not be positioned or closer to devices that generate heat such that the temperature around the CPVC tubing is greater than 180°F

(b) Do not apply direct flame onto CPVC.

2.4 Thermal Expansion

2.4.1 General. Allowance for thermal expansion and contraction shall be provided by approved means. Allowance shall be based on an expansion rate of 3.5 inches (89 mm) per 100 feet (30,480 mm) of length of run per 100°F (38°C) temperature change.

Note: *Expansion rate is independent of the size of the pipe.*

2.4.2 Offsets and Loops. Thermal expansion may be provided for by use of expansion loops, offsets, or changes of direction. From Table 1 determine the length "L" that is required. Note that "L" is based on length of run, diameter of pipe, and maximum temperature of water.

2.5 Clearance. Adequate clearance shall be provided between piping and structure

(such as bored holes and sleeves) to allow for free longitudinal movement.

2.6 Hangers and Supports

2.6.1 Vertical Piping. Vertical piping shall be supported at each floor or as specified by the design engineer to allow for expansion/contraction. Piping shall have a mid-story guide. [UPC 314.0]

2.6.2 Horizontal Piping. Unless an engineered design is provided and approved by the Administrative Authority, the following provisions shall apply. Horizontal piping 1 inch (25.4 mm) or smaller shall be supported at maximum 3 foot (914 mm) intervals. Piping 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) or larger shall be supported at maximum 4 foot (1219 mm) intervals.

2.6.3 Hangers and Anchors. Piping shall not be anchored rigidly to a support, but rather secured with smooth hangers or straps that provide for a degree of movement and that prevent damage to the pipe. Hangers or straps with sharp or abrasive edges shall not be used. Hangers that pinch the piping shall not be used.

2.7 Solvent Cement Joints

2.7.1 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS AND PRECAUTIONS[1]

(a) General. Solvents contained in CPV plastic pipe cements are classified as airborne contaminants and flammable and combustible liquids. Precautions listed in this appendix should be followed to avoid injury to personnel and the hazard of fire.

(b) Prolonged breathing of solvent vapors should be avoided. When pipe and fittings are being joined in partially enclosed areas, a ventilating device should be used in such a manner to minimize the entry of vapors into the breathing areas.

(c) Solvent cements should be kept away from all sources of ignition, heat, sparks and open flame.

(d) Containers for solvent cements should be kept tightly closed except when the cement is being used.

(e) All rags and other materials used for mopping up spills should be kept in a safety waste receptacle which should be emptied daily.

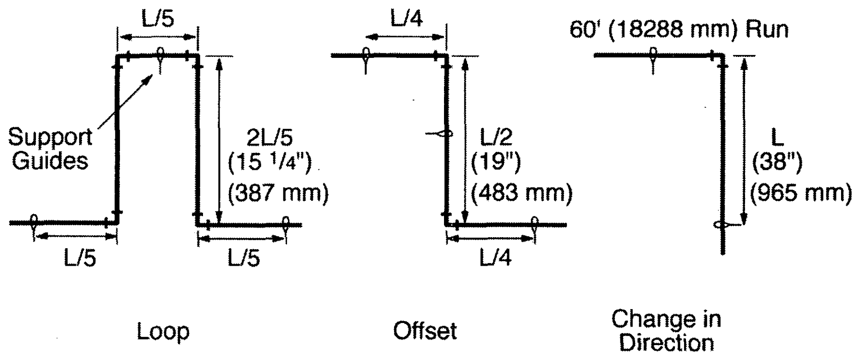
(f) Most of the solvents used in CPVC pipe cements can be considered eye irritants and contact with the eye should be avoided for it may cause eye injury. Proper eye protection and the use of chemical goggles or face shields are advisable where the possibility of splashing exists in handling solvent cements. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water for 15 minutes and call a physician immediately.

(g) Repeated contact with the skin should be avoided. Proper gloves impervious to and unaffected by the solvents should be worn when frequent contact

TABLE 1
Developed Length "L" of Expansion Loops

Nominal Size Inches	(mm)	Length of Run in Feet (mm): 20	(6096)	40	(12192)	60	(18288)	80	(24384)	100	(30480)
		Loop Length "L" in Inches (mm)									
1/2	(12.7)	22	(6706)	31	(9449)	38	(11582)	44	(13411)	50	(15240)
3/4	(19.1)	26	(7925)	37	(11278)	46	(14021)	52	(15850)	58	(17678)
1	(25.4)	30	(9144)	42	(12802)	52	(15850)	60	(18288)	67	(20422)
1-1/4	(32)	33	(10058)	47	(14326)	57	(17374)	66	(39917)	74	(22555)
1-1/2	(38)	36	(10973)	51	(15545)	62	(18898)	72	(21946)	80	(24384)
2	(51)	41	(12497)	58	(17678)	71	(21641)	82	(24994)	91	(27737)

Example: Pipe Size – 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) Length of Run – 60 feet (18288 mm): (38") (965 mm) (from table).



with the skin is likely. Application of the solvents or solvent cements with rags and bare hands is not recommended. Brushes and other suitable applicators can be used effectively for applying the solvent cement, thus avoiding skin contact. In the event of excessive contact, remove contaminated clothing and wash skin with soap and water.

2.7.2 Selection. Follow the manufacturer's recommendations for type of solvent cements for such conditions as temperatures over 100°F (38°C), or humidity over 60%.

2.7.3 Handling (to maintain effectiveness). Package solvent cement in containers no larger than 1 quart (1 liter). Keep solvent cement can closed and in the shade when not in use. Keep applicator submerged in solvent cement between applications. Discard solvent cement when it thickens appreciably or gels. Solvent cement shall not be thinned.

2.7.4 Primer. A listed primer in compliance with ASTM F 656 shall be used with CPVC solvent cements that require the use of a primer. CPVC solvent cements that do not require the use of a primer are permitted for joints up to 2 inches in size.

2.7.5 Size of Applicator. Applicator should be about one half the pipe diameter. Do not use small applicator on large pipes.

2.7.6 Procedures

Step 1. Cut pipe square with hand saw and mitre box, mechanical cutoff saw or tube cutter designed for plastic.

Step 2. Ream and chamfer pipe (to eliminate sharp edges, beads, and all burrs).

Step 3. Clean all dirt, moisture, and grease from pipe and fitting socket. Use a clean, dry rag.

Step 4. Check dry fit of pipe in fittings. Pipe should enter fitting socket 1/4 to 3/4 of socket depth. On larger sizes of Sch. 80 fittings, a looser fit may be expected. This is a normal condition, and requires care to apply an adequate amount of cement.

Step 5. Apply CPVC primer, if required, (see Section 2.7.4) to inside of fitting socket. Take care to avoid puddling.

Step 6. Apply CPVC primer, if required, to outside surface of pipe to depth of fitting socket.

Step 7. When using solvent cements requiring a primer, wait until primer surface is tacky. DO NOT attempt to soften (dissolve) the surface as is required for PVC.

Step 8. Apply a liberal coat of CPVC solvent cement to the outside surface of the pipe to the depth of the fitting socket.

Step 9. Apply a light coat of CPVC solvent cement to inside of fitting socket. Apply a second liberal coat of cement to the pipe end. Take particular care in cementing larger sizes of Sch. 80 fittings. Be sure all surfaces are coated.

Step 10. While both the inside socket surface and the outside surface of the pipe are WET with solvent cement, forcefully bottom the pipe in the socket, giving the pipe a quarter turn while inserting, if possible.

[1] Appendix X1. Safety Requirements And Precautions, from ASTMD 2564-88 Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings is reprinted with permission from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103, copyright.

Step 11. Hold the joint together for 10 to 15 seconds to assure that the pipe remains bottomed against the pipe stop.

Step 12. Do not disturb the joint for at least 30 minutes.

Note: *The joint is weak until the cement is dry. If the joint is adjusted after it is set, the joint will be ruined. See Table 2 for recommended set time.*

Step 13. Wipe excess cement from the pipe. A properly made joint will show a bead of cement around its entire perimeter. Any gaps may indicate insufficient cement.

Step 14. The system shall not be pressurized until the joints have cured (set) at least as long as recommended by the manufacturer. If the manufacturer's recommendation is not available, the following cure times are required. See Table 2.

2.7.7 Prohibited Joints. Piping shall not be threaded. Female screwed fittings, with CPVC threads, shall be prohibited. Joints made with adhesives shall be prohibited.

2.7.8 Threaded Joints. When threads are required, molded male adapters shall be used.

2.7.9 Location. CPVC threaded joints shall be accessible.

2.7.10 Lubricants. Only thread tape or thread lubricant approved specifically for use with CPVC shall be used. Conventional pipe thread compounds, putty, linseed oil based products, and unknown mixtures are prohibited.

2.7.11 Tightening. Joints shall be tightened approximately 1-1/2 turns past hand tight.

CAUTION: *Hand tight refers to the number of threads to reach hand tight with metal pipe. Small sizes of CPVC can be bottomed by hand pressure alone. DO NOT overtighten.*

2.7.12 Special Joints

2.7.12.1 Transition Joints. Transitions from CPVC tubing to metal piping and valves shall be made only with listed transition fittings suitable for that purpose. When required, the transition fittings shall be designed in such a manner that it can be anchored to a building member to prevent rotation. [UPC 316.2]

2.7.12.2 Soldering. Soldered metal joints shall not be made closer than 18 inches (457 mm) to any already installed plastic to metal adapter in the same water line.

2.7.12.3 Hose Bibbs. Hose bibbs shall be connected only to metal system components which are adequately anchored to the building structure. The CPVC plastic system shall terminate in wall.

2.8 Pressure Relief Valves

2.8.1 CPVC Piping. CPVC piping used for temperature and/or pressure relief valve drain lines shall be graded to the outlet end and shall be supported at 3 foot (914 mm) intervals both vertically and horizontally.

2.9 Installation, Inspection and Testing

2.9.1 Finish Nipples. Finish nipples shall be connected to drop ear elbows or other fittings listed for preventing rotation. Finish nipples shall not be CPVC but CPVC stub outs for fixture connections shall be permitted. [UPC 609.0]

2.9.2 Location. CPVC tubing shall not be installed so as to be subjected to direct sunlight after installation, and shall not be installed on the surface of the building unless it is protected by paint or a protective covering.

2.9.3 Water Heaters. There shall be a minimum of six (6) inches (152 mm) of metallic piping between a gas water heater connection and CPVC tubing. Piping shall not be installed down stream from any instantaneous type (coil or immersion) water heater or closer than six (6) inches (152 mm) developed length upstream.

2.9.4 Under Slab. Pipe shall be installed in trench with uniform support. Trenches shall be backfilled to a depth of six (6) inches (152 mm) with clean earth, sand, or other approved material which shall not contain sharp rocks, boulders, cinder fill, or other materials which would damage or break the piping. Pipe shall be stubbed up and all ends shall be capped. The system shall be filled with water and all air shall be bled off. The system shall be pressure tested under a water pressure which is not less than the working pressure under which it is to be used for a minimum of two (2) hours. All leaks shall be corrected. Foam pipe insulation shall be installed on all stub ups to prevent damage during concrete pour and finishing.

2.9.5 Identification. A permanent sign with the legible words "This building has non-metallic interior water piping" shall be fastened on or inside the main electric service panel.

TABLE 2

Joint Cure Schedule					
Temperature Range of Pipe and Fittings during assembly and cure		Minimum Joint Set Time, hrs. (Step 12)	Minimum Cure Time before testing, hrs. (Step 14)		Minimum Time before putting system into service at 80 psi/160°F (71°C), hrs.
			Pipe Size		
			1/2 - 1 in. (12.7-25.4 mm)	1-1/4 - 2 in. (32-51 mm)	
°F	°C				
60-100	16-38	1/2	1	2	24
40-60	4-16	1	2	4	48

TABLE 3
8 Feet per Second

Pipe Size	Pipe GPM	Sch. 40 Ft.* FU	FV** FU	Pipe GPM	Sch. 80 Ft.* FU	FV** FU	Tubing GPM	SDR 11 Ft.* FU	FV** FU
1/2	8	9	--	6	7	--	5	6	--
3/4	13	19	--	11	15	--	10	13	--
1	22	33	--	18	26	--	17	24	--
1-1/4	37	74	5	32	55	15	25	42	8
1-1/2	51	129	50	44	104	36	35	66	20
2	81	295	170	74	245	124	59	170	73

*Flush Tank Fixture Units **Flush Valve Fixture Units

Table 3 (Metric)
2.4 Meters per Second

Pipe Size	Pipe L/min	Sch. 40 Ft.* FU	FV** FU	Pipe L/min	Sch. 80 Ft.* FT	FV** FU	Tubing L/min	SDR 11 Ft.* FU	FV** FU
12.7	30.3	9	--	22.7	7	--	18.9	6	--
19.1	49.2	19	--	41.6	15	--	37.9	13	--
25.4	83.3	33	--	68.1	26	--	64.3	24	--
32	140.0	74	5	121.1	55	15	94.6	42	8
38	193.0	129	50	166.5	104	36	132.5	66	20
51	306.6	295	170	280.1	245	124	223.3	170	73

*Flush Tank Fixture Units **Flush Valve Fixture Units

2.9.6 Position of Marking. When installed, piping and fittings shall be positioned so that when practical, identifying markings shall be readily visible for inspection.

2.9.7 Testing. Air testing is prohibited.

2.10 Sizing

2.10.1 Method. Piping shall be sized in accordance with UPC Section 610.0. When Appendix A is applicable, use Chart 1 or 2 as appropriate. Flow velocities shall be limited to a maximum of 8 feet per second (2.4 mps). See Table 3. [UPC 610.1]

ADOPTED: 1982
REVISED: 1984, 1985, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1995, 1996, 1997, 2000, 2003, 2005

CHART 1

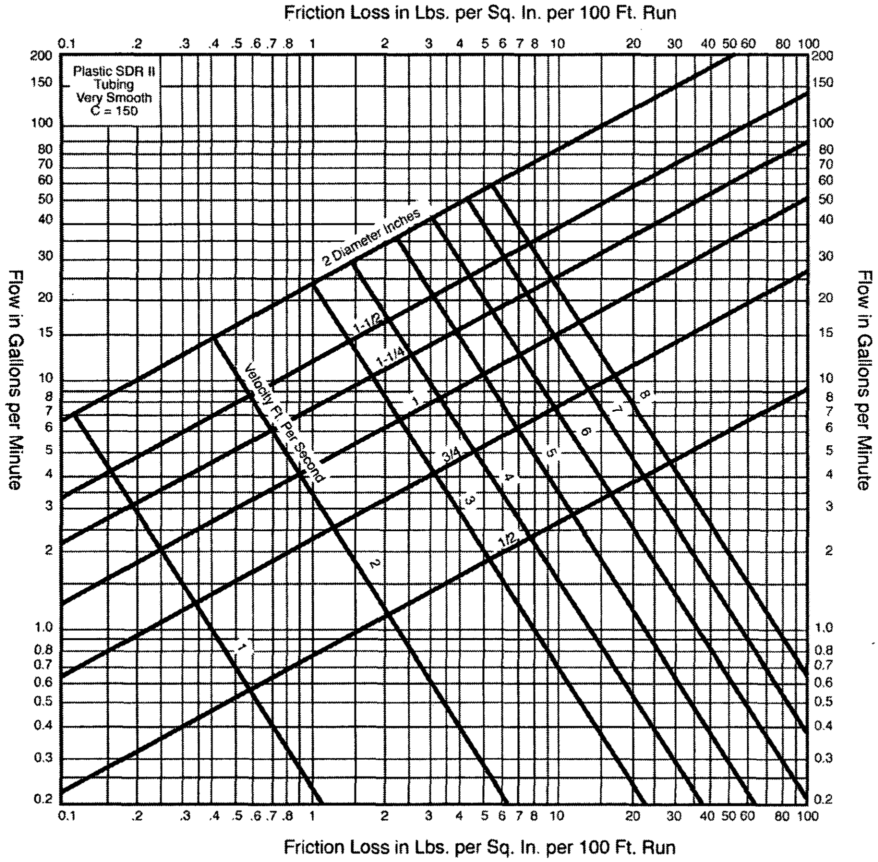
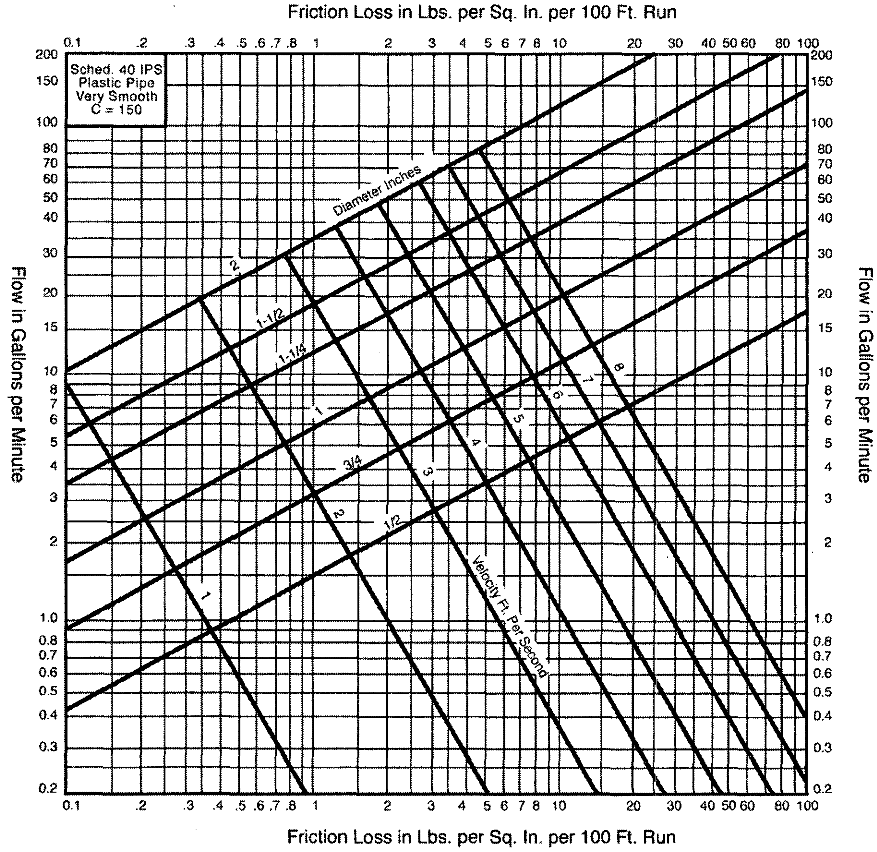


CHART 2



CPVC Pipe SDR 11 (ASTM D 2846) Calculated Loop (offset) Lengths with ØT of approx. 80°F				
	Length of Run in Feet			
Nominal Pipe Size	40	60	80	100
	Loop Length (£) in inches			
1/2"	22	27	31	34
3/4"	26	32	36	41
1"	29	36	41	46
1-1/4"	32	40	46	51
1-1/2"	35	43	50	56
2"	40	49	57	64

Assume Modulus & Stress at 160°F

CPVC Pipe Schedule 80 (ASTM F441) Calculated Loop (offset) Lengths with ØT of approx. 80°F				
	Length of Run in Feet			
Nominal Pipe Size	40	60	80	100
	Loop Length (£) in inches			
2-1/2"	47	57	66	74
3"	52	63	73	82
4"	58	72	83	92
6"	71	87	100	112
8"	81	99	114	128
10"	90	111	128	143

Assume Modulus & Stress at 160°F

CPVC Pipe Schedule 11 (ASTM D 2846) Calculated Loop (offset) Lengths with ØT of approx. 100°F					
	Length of Run in Feet				
Nominal Pipe Size	20	40	60	80	100
	Loop Length (£) in inches				
1/2"	17	24	30	34	39
3/4"	20	29	35	41	46
1"	23	33	40	46	52
1-1/4"	26	36	44	51	57
1-1/2"	28	39	48	56	62
2"	32	45	55	64	71

Assume Modulus & Stress at 160°F

£ = $\sqrt{3ED(\text{Ø}L)/2S}$

Where £ = loop length in inches
E = modulus of elasticity at maximum temperature, psi
D = outside diameter of pipe, inches
ØL = change in length due to change in temperature, inches
S = working stress at maximum temperature, psi

CPVC Pipe Schedule 80 (ASTM F441) Calculated Loop (offset) Lengths with ØT of approx. 100°F				
	Length of Run in Feet			
Nominal Pipe Size	40	60	80	100
	Loop Length (£) in inches			
2-1/2"	52	64	74	83
3"	58	71	82	91
4"	65	80	92	103
6"	79	97	112	125
8"	91	111	128	143
10"	101	124	143	160

Assume Modulus & Stress at 160°F

Thermal Expansion (inches)		
Length of Run (feet)	ØT 80°F	ØT 100°F
20	0.65	0.82
40	1.31	1.63
60	1.96	2.45
80	2.61	3.26
100	3.26	4.08

ØL = L_p X C X ØT
ØL = change in length of pipe in inches
L_p = length of pipe in inches
C = coefficient of thermal expansion for CPVC, 3.4×10^{-5} in/in/°F
ØT = change in temperature in °F

Installation Standard
For
WELDED COPPER AND COPPER ALLOY WATER TUBE

IAPMO IS 21-2003

1.0 SCOPE

This standard shall govern the installation of welded copper and copper alloy water tube in potable hot and cold water systems. Installation, material, and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code [UPC]™ published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials and this standard.

***Note:** The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to welded copper and copper alloy water tube.*

103.5.3	Test of Systems
301.1	Minimum Standards
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited Fittings and Practices
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures
314.0	Hangers and Supports
316.1	Types of Joints
316.1.2	Wiped Joints
316.1.3	Solder and Sweat Joints
316.2	Special Joints
316.2.1	Copper Tubing to Screw Pipe Joints
317.0	Increasers and Reducers
Chapter 6	Water Distribution
604.0	Materials
604.1	Materials, Water Pipe and Fittings
604.2	Water Piping
604.3	Marking of Tubing
604.4	Flexible Water Connectors
604.7	Restriction of Used Piping
606.1.1	Flared Joints
606.2.1	Use of Joints, Copper Water Tube
608.0	Relief Valve Drains
609.0	Installation, Inspection, and Testing
610.0	Size of Portable Water Piping
705.3.3	Ground Joint, Flared or Ferrule Connections
811.1	Chemical or Industrial Waste
903.2	Use of Copper Tubing

Table 14-1 Standards

ANSI B 16.18	Cast Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings
ANSI B 16.22	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASTM B 447	Standard Specification for Welded Copper Tube

Appendix A Chart A-4 Friction Loss

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials. Materials shall comply with the appropriate standard in Table 14-1 of the UPC.

***Note:** The nominal or standard size of copper and copper alloy welded water tube is always 0.125 inch (3.8 mm) or 1/8 inch (3.8 mm) smaller than the actual outside diameter dimension of the tube. For example, 3 inch (76 mm) nominal size copper plumbing, tube measures 3-1/8 inch (79.2 mm) O.D., 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) nominal size copper plumbing tube measures 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) O.D., etc.*

2.2 Use of Copper Tubing

2.2.1 Markings. Markings shall be visible for inspection. [UPC 903.2]

2.2.1.1 Water tube shall bear the following incised marked at not over 18 inch (457 mm) intervals:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark;
(b) Tube type; and
(c) Country of origin.

2.2.1.2 All hard drawn tube shall be identified throughout its entire length by a colored marking not less than 3/16 inch in height, including legend repeated at intervals not greater than 3 feet (914 mm). The legend shall include the type of tube, welded, ASTM specification, name or trademark of the manufacturer or both, and the country of origin.

(a) Tube listed by IAPMO that is covered by this standard shall be labeled with the designated IAPMO certification mark to show compliance with this standard.

2.3 Joints

2.3.1 General Information. Copper tube and fittings maybe joined in a number of ways, depending on the purpose of the system. Soldering and brazing with capillary fittings are the methods used most.

The American Welding Society defines soldering as a joining process which takes place below 840°F (449°C) and brazing as a similar process which occurs above 840°F (449°C) but below the melting point of the base metals. In actual practice for copper systems, most soldering is done at temperatures ranging from about 350°F to 550°F (177° to 288°C), while most brazing is done at temperatures ranging from 1100° F to 1500°F (593°C to 816°C). The choice between soldering or brazing will generally depend on operating conditions. Solder joints are generally used where the service temperature does not exceed 205°F (96°C), while brazed joints can be used where greater strength is required, or where system temperatures are as high as 400°F (204°C). [UPC 316.1]

2.3.2 Fittings for Soldered, Brazed, and Flared Joints. Fittings are available in all standard tube sizes and in a wide variety of types to cover needs for plumbing. They can be either soldered or brazed, although brazing cast fittings requires care. Wrought copper pressure fittings are also available over a wide range of sizes and types. These, too, can be joined by either soldering or brazing and wrought fittings are preferred where brazing is the joining method. Otherwise, the choice between cast and wrought fittings is largely a matter of the user's preference. Flared-tube fittings provide metal-to-metal contact similar to ground joint unions; both can be easily taken apart and reassembled. They are especially useful where residual water cannot be removed from the tube and soldering is difficult. Flared joints may be required where a fire hazard exists and the use of a torch to make soldered or brazed joints is not allowed.

2.3.3 Solders

Note: *Users of the Uniform Plumbing Codes are reminded that provisions of the Federal Clean Drinking Act of 1986, which all must obey, forbid the use of solder which contains in excess of 0.2% of lead, by weight in potable water systems. The provisions of the act are incorporated in all ordinances, statutes, state and municipal regulations by reference and by operation of law.*

The selection of a solder depends on the operating pressure and temperature of the line. Consideration should also be given to the stresses on the joint caused by thermal expansion and contraction. However, stresses due to temperature changes should not be significant in two commonly encountered cases: when tube lengths are short, or when expansion loops are used in long tube runs.

Solder is generally used in wire form, but paste-type solders are also available. These are finely granulated solders in suspension in a paste flux. When using paste-type solders, observe these four rules:

1. Wire solder must be applied in addition to the paste to fill the voids and assist in displacing the flux, otherwise the surfaces may be well "tinned" and yet there may not be a good joint with a continuous bond.
2. The paste mixture must be thoroughly stirred if it has been standing in the can for more than a very short time, as the solder has a tendency to settle rapidly to the bottom.
3. The flux cannot be depended on to clean the tube. Cleaning should be done manually as is recommended for any other flux and solder.
4. Remove any excess flux.

Solders are available containing small amounts of silver or other additives to impart special properties. Such solders may require special fluxes. The manufacturer's recommendations should be consulted regarding proper procedures and fluxes for such solders and about the expected properties.

2.3.4 Soldering Flux

The functions of the soldering flux are to remove residual traces of oxides, to promote wetting, and to protect the surfaces to be soldered from oxidation during heating. The flux should be applied to clean surfaces and only enough should be used to lightly coat the areas to be joined.

An oxide film may reform quickly on copper after it has been cleaned. Therefore, the flux should be applied as soon as possible after cleaning.

CAUTION

Careless workmanship, especially during flux applications, can result in corrosion of the tube long after the system has been installed. If excessive flux is used, the residue inside the tube can cause corrosion. In an extreme case, such residual flux can actually lead to perforation through the tube wall causing leakage. To guard against this danger, it is important (1) to choose a flux that is not too corrosive, and (2) to use only the minimum amount actually needed to make the joint.

2.3.5 Solder Joints

Soldering and brazing both involve basic steps, which must be executed with care and craftsmanship. The steps are:

(1) Measuring
(2) Cutting
(3) Reaming
(4) Cleaning
(5) Fluxing
(6) Assembly and support
(7) Heating
(8) Applying the filler metal
(9) Cooling and cleaning

Each step contributes to a strong, dependable joint.

2.3.5.1 Measuring

Measuring the length of each tube segment must be accurate. Inaccuracy can compromise joint quality. If the tube is too short it will not reach all the way into the socket of the fitting and a proper joint cannot be made. If the tube segment is too long, there is danger of cocking the tube in the fitting and putting strain on the system which could affect service life.

2.3.5.2 Cutting

Once the tube is measured it can be cut. Cutting can be accomplished in a number of different ways to produce a satisfactory square end. The tube can be cut with a disc-type tube cutter, a hacksaw, an abrasive wheel, or with a stationary or portable bandsaw. Care must be taken that the tube is not deformed while being cut. Regardless of method, the cut must be square with the run of the tube so that the tube will seat properly in the fitting socket.

2.3.5.3 Reaming

All pipe and tube shall be reamed to the full I.D. of the pipe and tube.

Tools used to ream tube ends include the reaming blade on the tube cutter, half-round or round files, a pocket knife, and a suitable deburring tool. With annealed tube, care must be taken not to deform the tube end by applying too much pressure. Both the inside and the outside of the tube may require removal of the burr.

2.3.5.4 Cleaning

The removal of oxides and surface soil is crucial if filler metal is to flow properly into the joint. Unremoved oxide, surface soil, and oil can interfere with the strength of the joint and cause failure.

Mechanical cleaning is a simple operation. The end of the tube should be abraded lightly using sand cloth or nylon abrasive pads for a distance only slightly more than the depth of the fitting socket. The socket of the fitting should also be cleaned using sand cloth, abrasive pads, or a properly sized fitting brush.

Copper is a relatively soft metal. If too much material is removed, a loose fit will result and interfere with satisfactory capillary action in making the joint. The capillary space between the tube and fitting is approximately 0.004 inch (0.1 mm). Solder or brazing filler metal can fill this gap by capillary action. This spacing is critical for the filler metal to flow into the gap and form a strong joint.

Surfaces, once cleaned, should not be touched with bare hands or oily gloves. Skin oils, lubricating oils, and grease impair solder flow and wetting.

2.3.5.5 Fluxing

Stir the flux before use. A good flux will dissolve and remove traces of oxide from the cleaned surfaces to be joined, protect the cleaned surfaces from reoxidation during heating and promote wetting of the surfaces by the solder. A thin, even coating of flux should be applied with a brush to both tube and fitting. Do not apply with fingers. Chemicals in the flux can be harmful if carried to the eyes or open cuts.

2.3.5.6 Assembly and Support

After both tube and fitting surfaces are properly fluxed, they should be assembled, making sure the tube seats against the base of the fitting socket. A slight twisting motion ensures even distribution by the flux. Remove excess

flux. Care must be taken to assure that the tube and fittings are properly supported with a uniform capillary space around the entire circumference of the joint. Uniformity of capillary space will ensure good filler metal penetration if the guidelines of successful joint making are followed. Excessive joint clearance can cause the filler metal to crack under stress or vibration.

The joint is now ready for soldering. Joints prepared and ready for soldering should be completed the same day and not left unfinished overnight.

2.3.5.7 Heating

Because an open flame may be used for soldering, and because flammable gases are used, safety precautions must be observed. The heat is generally applied using an air/fuel torch. Such torches use acetylene or an LP gas. Electric resistance tools can also be used.

Heating should begin with the flame perpendicular to the tube. The copper tube conducts the initial heat into the fitting socket for even distribution of heat inside and out. The extent of this preheating depends upon the size of the joint. Experience will indicate the amount of time needed. The flame should now be moved onto the fitting. Then move the flame from the fitting socket back onto the tube a distance equal to the depth of the fitting socket. Touch the solder to the joint. If the solder does not melt, remove it and continue the heating process. Be careful not to overheat or to direct the flame into the fitting cup. This could cause the flux to burn and destroy its effectiveness. When the melting temperature of the solder has been reached, heat may be applied to the base of the cup to aid capillary action in drawing the solder into the cup.

2.3.5.8 Applying the Filler Metal

For tube in a horizontal position, start applying the solder slightly off-center at the bottom of the joint. Proceed across the bottom of the fitting and up to the top center position. Return to the point of beginning, overlap the starting point, and then proceed up the incompleted side to the top, again, overlapping the solder.

For joints in the vertical position, a similar sequence of overlapping passes should be made, starting wherever is convenient. Molten solder will be drawn into the joint by capillary action regardless of whether the solder is being fed upward, downward, or horizontally.

2.3.5.9 Cooling and Cleaning

After the joint has been completed, natural cooling is best. Shock cooling with water may cause unnecessary stress on the joint and result in eventual failure. When cool, clean off any remaining flux with a wet rag.

2.3.6 Brazed Joints

Brazing is the second most commonly used method for joining copper tube. Making brazed joints is similar to making soldered joints with respect to measuring, cutting, reaming, cleaning, assembly and support. And as in soldering, the brazing filler metal is melted by the heat of the tube and fitting and drawn into the joint by capillary action. [UPC 316.1.7]

The major differences between soldering and brazing are the:

- Type of flux used,
- Composition of filler metal, and
- Amount of heat required to melt the filler metal.

2.3.6.1 Brazing Flux

The fluxes used for brazing copper joints are different in composition from soldering fluxes. The two types cannot be used interchangeably. Brazing fluxes are water based, whereas most soldering fluxes are petroleum based. Similar to soldering fluxes, brazing fluxes dissolve and remove residual oxide from the metal surface, protect the metal from reoxidation during heating and promote wetting of the surfaces to be joined by the brazing filler metal.

Fluxes also provide the draftsman with an indication of temperature. Application of the flux is the same as when soldering. If the outside of the fitting and the heat-affected area of the tube are covered with flux (in addition to the end of the tube and the cup), oxidation will be prevented and the appearance of the joint will be greatly improved.

2.3.6.2 Brazing Filler Metals

There are two general types of brazing filler metal used for joining copper tube. Classified according to their components,

they are: BCuP (Brazing-Copper-Phosphorous) and BAg (Brazing-Silver). BCuP filler metals are preferred for joining copper tube and fittings. The phosphorous in them acts as a fluxing agent and the lower percentage of silver makes them relatively low cost. When using copper tube, wrought copper fittings, and BCuP brazing filler metal, fluxing is optional. However, when cast fittings are brazed, flux must be used.

2.3.6.3 Heating

Oxy/fuel torches are generally used for brazing because of the higher temperatures required.

Recent innovations in tip design make air/fuel torches useful on a wider range of sizes for brazing.

When working at brazing temperatures, safety precautions must be followed and care taken to protect both the operator and the materials being used.

The heating operation is the same as for soldering. First preheat the tube and then the tube and fitting. When the filler metal starts to melt, apply heat at the base of the fitting socket to help draw the brazing filler metal in by capillary action.

2.3.6.4 Applying Brazing Filler Metal

Remember to allow the heat of the joint, not the flame, to melt the filler metal. The melted filler metal will be drawn into the joint by capillary action. It is very important that the flame be in continuous motion. It must not be allowed to remain on any one point long enough to burn through the tube or fitting.

If the filler metal fails to flow, or has the tendency to ball-up, it indicates either that there is oxide on the surfaces being joined or that the parts to be joined are not hot enough. If the filler metal refuses to enter the joint, the fitting cup is not hot enough. If it tends to flow over the outside of either part of the joint it indicates that part is overheated. When the joint is completed, a continuous fillet should be visible completely around the joint.

Large diameter tube is more difficult to heat to the desired temperature. The use of a heating tip or rosebud may be necessary to maintain the proper temperature over the area being brazed. Once total heat control is attained, follow the same procedures used for smaller tube.

2.3.6.5 Cooling and Cleaning

When the brazed joint is finished, allow it to cool naturally. Flux residues and some oxides formed by heating can be removed by washing with hot water and brushing with a stainless steel wire brush.

2.3.7 Flared Joints

2.3.7.1 Flared Joints with Impact Flaring Tools:

Step 1 Cut the tube to the required length.

Step 2 Remove all burrs. This is very important to assure metal-to-metal contact.

Step 3 Slip the coupling nut over the end of the tube.

Step 4 Insert flaring tool into the tube end.

Step 5 Drive the flaring tool by hammer strokes, expanding the end of the tube to the desired flare. This requires a few moderately light strokes.

Step 6 Assemble the joint by placing the fitting squarely against the flare. Engage the coupling nut with the fitting threads. Tighten with two wrenches, one on the nut and one on the fitting. [UPC 606.1.1]

2.3.7.2 Flared Joints with Screw-Type Flaring Tools:

Steps 1-3 Same as for impact flaring previously described.

Step 4 Clamp the tube in the flaring block so that the end of the tube is slightly above the face of the block.

Step 5 Place the yoke of the flaring tool on the block so that the beveled end of the compressor cone is over the tube end.

Step 6 Turn the compressor screw down firmly, forming the flare between the chamber in the flaring block and the beveled compressor cone.

Step 7 Remove the flaring tool. The joint can now be assembled as in Step 6 for impact flaring. [UPC 606.2.1]

2.4 Sizing

2.4.1 Velocity.

Note: *There are various hydraulic formulas for the flow of water in pipe. With high velocity and attendant turbulent flow, there can be excessive noise and piping wear. [UPC 610.1]*

The designer should aim for maximum flow velocities in the range of 5 to 8 feet per second (1.5 – 2.4 meters per second) to minimize noise and erosion problems. For the smallest tube sizes, the designer is wise to work at the bottom of this range, as a maximum, to guard against local high velocities building up due to faulty workmanship (e.g. burrs at tube ends which are not properly reamed) or unusually numerous changes in flow direction.

3.0 GENERAL INFORMATION

3.1 It is not possible to cover all the variables of a plumbing system; however, the following information may prove helpful:

3.2 Expansion Loops – Copper tube, like all piping materials, expands and contracts with temperature changes. Therefore, in a copper tube system subjected to excessive temperature changes, the line tends to buckle or bend when it expands unless compensation is built into the system. Severe stresses on the joints may also occur. Such stresses, buckles, or bends are prevented by the use of expansion joints or by installing offsets, "U" bends, coil loops, or similar arrangements in the tube assembly. These specially shaped tube segments take up expansion and contraction without excessive stress. The expansion of a length of copper tube may be calculated from the formula:

Temperature Rise (°F) x length (feet) x 12 (inches per foot) x Expansion Coefficient (inch per inch per °F) = Expansion (inches), or

Temperature Rise (°C) x Length (meter) x 1000 (mm per meter) x Expansion Coefficient (mm per mm per °C) = Expansion (mm).

Calculations for expansion and contraction should be based on the average coefficient of expansion of copper which is 0.0000094 per degree F (1.692 x 10^{-5} per degree C), between 70°F and 212°F (21°C and 100°C). For example, the expansion of each 100 feet (30.5 meters) of length of any size tube heated from room temperature (70°F) to 170°F (a 100°F (55.6°C) rise) is 1.128 inches (28.7 mm).

100°F x 100 feet x 12 inch/foot x 0.0000094 inch/inch/°F = 1.128 inch, or
55.6°C x 30.48 mm x 1000 mm/m x 1.692 x 10^{-5} mm/mm/°C = 28.7 mm

3.3 Tube Supports – See Section 314.0 and Table 3-2 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

3.4 Bending – Copper tube, properly bent, will not collapse on the outside of the bend and will not buckle on the inside of the bend. Tests demonstrate that the bursting strength of a bent copper tube can be greater than it was before bending. Because copper is readily formed, expansion loops and other bends necessary in an assembly are quickly and simply made if the proper method and equipment are used. Simple hand tools employing mandrels, dies, forms, and fillers, or power-operated bending machines, are used.

3.4.1 Both annealed tube and bending-temper tube can be bent with hand benders. The proper size bender for each size tube must be used. Usually the size of the tool corresponds to the nominal outside diameter of the tube, not the standard tube size. For a guide to the typical bend radii, see the following bending guide for copper tube.

ADOPTED: 1980
REVISED: 1989, 2003

BENDING GUIDE FOR COPPER TUBE

Tube Size, In. (mm)	Tube Type	Temper	Minimum Bend Radius, In. (mm)	Type of Bending Equipment
1/4 (6.4)	K, L	Annealed	3/4 (19.1)	Lever type
3/8 (9.5)	K, L K, L, M	Annealed Drawn	1-1/2 (38) 3 (76) 1-3/4 (45)	Lever or gear type None; by hand* Gear Type
1/2 (12.7)	K, L K, L, M	Annealed Drawn	2-1/4 (57) 4-1/2 (114) 2-1/2 (64)	Lever or gear type None; by hand* Gear type
3/4 (19.1)	K, L K L K K, L	Annealed Drawn	3 (76) 4-1/2 (114) 6 (152) 3 (76) 4 (102)	Lever of gear type None; by hand* None; by hand* Gear type Heavy-duty gear type
1 (25.4)	K, L	Annealed	4 (102) 7-1/2 (191)	Gear type None; by hand*
1-1/4(31.8)	K, L	Annealed	9 (229)	None; by hand*

* When bending by hand, without the use of bending equipment, a circular wooden disc is used. The radius of the disc should be about 1/4 to 1/2 inch (6.4 to 12.7 mm) less than the minimum bend radius shown.

Installation Standard
for
TRENCHLESS INSERTION OF
POLYETHYLENE (PE) PIPE FOR SEWER LATERALS

IAPMO IS 26–2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the Trenchless Installation of Polyethylene (PE) pipe for use in sanitary and storm sewers. The installed pipe shall comply with the requirements of the Uniform Plumbing Code (UPC™) published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO) as to grade and connections to existing pipe and shall also comply with this standard.

Note: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply.*

103.5.3	Testing of Systems
103.5.4.2	Responsibility
103.5.5	Other Inspections
103.5.5.1	Defective Systems
103.6.2	Other Connections
218.0	Definition of PE
301.1	Minimum Standards
310.0	Workmanship
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures
315.0	Trenching, Excavation, and Backfill
316.2.3	Plastic Pipe to Other Materials
Chapter 7	Sanitary Drainage
701.2	Fittings

ABBREVIATIONS

ASTM American Society for Testing Materials
IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
UPC Uniform Plumbing Code

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials

Materials shall comply with the following: The polyethylene pipe used is covered by the ASTM standards listed later in this standard. [UPC 301.1]

Materials	**ASTM Standard**
HDPE Extra High Molecular Weight 3408 SDR 17 Pipe	F 714
Socket-Type PE Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe	D 2683

Note: *The HDPE 3408 SDR 17 pipe used in this process was selected because of its ability to retain its circular shape even when bent on a 4-foot radius during and after installation.*

2.1.2 Table 14-1 Standards

ASTM D 1412
ASTM D 2239
ASTM D 2683
ASTM D 2447
ASTM D 2657
ASTM D 3261
ASTM F 714
ASTM F 894
IAPMO PS 25

2.2 Protection of Pipe

2.2.1 Storage and Handling

Pipe shall be stored in a way to protect it from mechanical damage (slitting, puncturing, etc.). It shall be stored under cover to keep it clean and avoid long term exposure to sunlight. Exposure to sunlight during normal construction periods is not harmful.

2.3 Types of Joints.

PE joints shall be made as follows:

2.3.1 Molded Rubber Coupling Joints

Molded rubber coupling joints shall be installed in accordance with Appendix I of the UPC and with Section 705.1.6.

2.3.2 Shielded Coupling Joints

Shielded coupling joints shall be installed in accordance with Appendix I of the UPC and with Section 705.1.8.

2.3.4 Hubless Cast Iron Pipe Joints
Hubless cast iron pipe joints shall be installed in accordance with Appendix I of the UPC and with Section 705.1.9.

2.3.5 Heat Fusion Joints.
Heat fusion joints shall be made according to the manufacturer's procedure, installation instructions, and either ASTM D 2659 or ASTM D 3261 and shall meet the requirements of Section 701.1 of the UPC.

2.4 Trenchless Installation of sewers will be as follows:

I. Preliminary Steps

Inspect the inside of the sewer line using a television camera and video tape recorder to ascertain the line condition. Mark the details revealed by the video inspection including:

1. The ground surface to show the location of the lateral tie of the city wye.
2. The line location with an arrow in the street pointing back at the lateral.
3. The property denoting the lateral location.
4. The locations of the proposed excavations.

Obtain utility line identification service contact information and all applicable permits.

II. Excavation

In addition to the above markings, the local utility companies will mark utilities. Considerations are soil density; clearance from obstacles, utilities, and structures; location of bends; and water service locations. Excavations and shoring shall be in accordance with jurisdictional safety requirements.

III. Set Up

Fuse the proper length of polyethylene pipe in accordance with ASTM D 2657 or ASTM D 2657 and fuse the end to a small length that is attached to the pulling head. A rod pusher cable is pushed through the damaged host pipe and attached to the pulling cable, which is then drawn through the pipe. The clevis end of the cable is attached to the pulling head. The pulling equipment is then set up according to the manufacturers instructions.

IV. Pulling

Pull the pulling head through. Once the pull is done, complete the connection to the existing piping.

2.5 Cleanouts
Cleanouts shall be installed in accordance with UPC Section 707.

2.6 Inspections
The completed piping shall be internally inspected by television camera unless waived by the Administrative Authority. [UPC 103.5]

2.7 Testing
Completed piping shall be subjected to testing in accordance with Section 712.0 or 723.0 of the UPC.

ADOPTED: 1999
REVISED: 2002, 2003

Installation Standard
for

ODOR CONTROL SYSTEMS FOR WATER CLOSETS

IAPMO IS 27-2003

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of Odor Control Systems for Water Closets. Installation, material and inspection shall comply with the requirements of the Uniform Plumbing Code (UPC™) published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO) and this standard.

Note: The Building Official shall be consulted about penetration of fire separations, height and area or other limitations.

Note: The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code apply to Odor Control Systems for Water Closets.

103.5	Inspection
Chapter 2	Definitions
301.1	Minimum Standards
310.0	Workmanship
311.0	Prohibited Fittings and Practices
311.8	Screwed Fittings
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials and Structures
314.0	Hangars and Supports
316.0	Joints and Connections
316.4	Prohibited Joints and Connections
317.0	Increasers and Reducers
Chapter 7	Sanitary Drainage
701.0	Materials (Drainage)
701.2	Fittings
903.0	Materials (Venting)
1101.3	Material Uses
Table 14-1	Materials

ASME B 16.23	Cast Bronze Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B 16.29	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings
ASTM A 74	Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM A 888	Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications
ASTM B 42	Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B 302	Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B 306	Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
ASTM B 828	Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
ASTM D 2564	Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
ASTM D 2661	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sch. 40 Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D 2665	Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D 3311	Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fitting Patterns (note: although referenced in this standard, some of the fittings shown in the standard are not acceptable under the Uniform Plumbing Code.)
ASTM F 402	Safe Handling of Solvent Cement, Primers, and Cleaners Used for Joining Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F 628	Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sch. 40 Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core
ASTM F 656	Primers for Use in Solvent Cement Joints of Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F 891	Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core
CISPI 301	Hubless Cast iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications
IAPMO IS 3	Copper Plumbing Tube, Pipe and Fittings
IAPMO IS 5	ABS Building Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings
IAPMO IS 6	Hubless Cast Iron Sanitary and Rainwater Systems
IAPMO IS 9	PVC Building Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings
UL 1004	Electric Motors

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Minimum Standards

2.1.1 Materials

All materials shall comply with the appropriate standards in Table 14-1 of the UPC.

2.1.2 All pipe and fittings shall be made from approved DWV materials and shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 7 of the Uniform Plumbing Code entitled, Sanitary Drainage. In addition, all pipe and fittings shall be installed in accordance with the applicable IAPMO Installation Standard. [UPC 701.0]

2.2 Odor Control System Components

2.2.1 Inlet Connection – The inlet for DWV odor control systems shall be connected at the tailpiece of the flushometer operated water closet using a listed tee. The tee shall immediately transition to the odor control riser using approved DWV pipe and fittings.

2.2.2 Riser – The odor control riser shall be made from listed DWV pipe no smaller than 2-1/2 inch diameter. This minimum riser size was selected to adequately handle the required minimum odor control air flow rate. The riser height shall be a minimum of 6 feet as measured from the connection at the sanitary tee to the overhead connection at the odor control manifold. The minimum riser height was selected to adequately handle the maximum possible water rise generated during the flushometer flushing cycle.

2.2.3 Manifold – The odor control manifold, including all horizontal piping within the odor control system, shall be 1/8" per foot horizontally sloped back to the last riser. The manifold shall be made from approved DWV material no smaller than the pipe size as determined by using Table 1 of this Installation Standard. No traps are permitted within the odor control piping system.

Note: The attached Figures 1 and 2 illustrate the basic configuration to be used for the design of any Odor Control System installed in accordance with this Installation Standard.

2.3 System Sizing

2.3.1 Minimum Inlet Flow Rate - The odor control system shall provide a minimum average air flow rate of 5 cfm at each inlet connection (tee).

2.3.2 Minimum Inlet Draft - The odor control system shall provide a minimum average draft of 1/4 inch WC (water column) as measured inside the inlet connection (tee), or a minimum of 0.10 inch of WC at the small perforations in the top rim of the water closet bowl.

2.4 Exhaust Fan

2.4.1 The exhaust fan shall be listed for installation in outdoor and wet locations and in conditioned air streams up to 140°F and shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 1004.

2.4.2 The odor control system exhaust fan shall be installed in accordance with local building and electrical code requirements and shall comply with drainage venting termination requirements of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

2.5 System Testing

2.5.1 Measure the suction pressure at any perforation of the water closet rim. The minimum reading should be 0.10 inch of water column.

Note: For conditions other than those covered in Table 1 the exhaust manifold and the main exhaust riser to the odor control system exhaust fan shall be sized to maintain an average air velocity of 300 ±50 feet per minute.

ADOPTED: 2001
REVISED: 2003

TABLE 1

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF WATER CLOSETS CONNECTED TO AN EXHAUST MANIFOLD

Pipe Diameter (inch)	2-1/2	3	4	5	6	8
Maximum No. of Water Closets	2	3	6	8	10	22

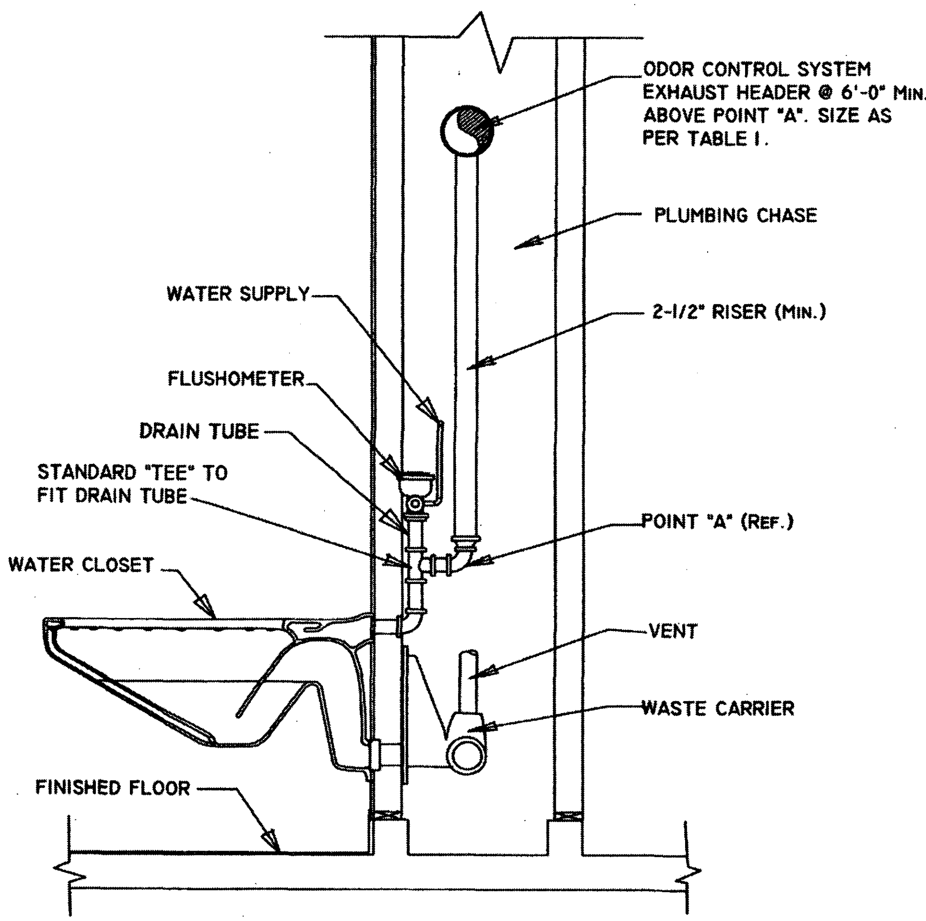


Figure 1

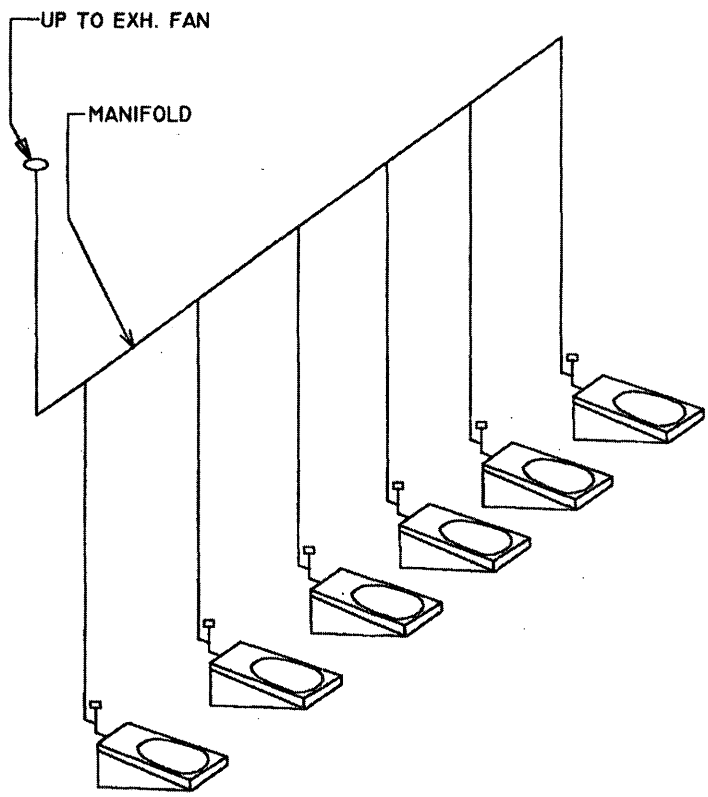


Figure 2

Installation Standard
For
COMPOSITE PEX-AL-PEX HOT AND PE-AL-PE COLD WATER-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

IS 28-2005

1.0 SCOPE

1.1 This standard shall govern the installation of composite piping in potable hot and cold water distribution systems within and under buildings and shall apply only to PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE piping meeting the requirements of ASTM F 1281 and ASTM F 1282 and fittings meeting the requirements of ASTM F 1974. Installation, materials, and inspection should comply with the current edition of the Uniform Plumbing Code published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, and shall also comply with this standard and manufacturer's installation recommendations.

NOTE: *The following sections of the Uniform Plumbing Code shall apply to composite PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE tubing.*

310.0	Workmanship
313.0	Protection of Piping, Materials, and Structures
316.1	Types of Joints
316.2.3	Plastic Pipe to Other Materials
Chapter 6	Water Supply and Distribution

Chapter 2*	DEFINITIONS
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
PEX-AL-PEX	Crosslinked Polyethylene-Aluminum-Crosslinked Polyethylene
PE-AL-PE	Polyethylen Aluminum–Polyethylene
UPC	Uniform Plumbing Code as published by IAPMO

2.0 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Materials and Fittings

2.1.1 Materials. Materials shall comply with the following requirements:

Materials	ASTM Standard
Crosslinked Polyethylene-Aluminum-Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX)	F 1281
Polyethylene-Aluminum-Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE)	F 1282
Metal Insert Fittings for PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE composite pipe	F 1974

2.1.2 Piping. PEX-AL-PEX composite pipe shall comply with ASTM F 1281. PE-AL PE composite pipe shall comply with ASTM F 1282.

2.1.3 Fittings. Fittings shall be metal insert type and shall comply with ASTM F 1974. Fittings are limited to the following types:

(a) Insert fittings or compression type fittings; and

(b) Special listed fittings of other types. Connections to galvanized pipe or fittings shall be specifically designed for that purpose.

NOTE 1: *Manufacturers of fittings shall recommend assembly procedures.*

2.2 Markings

2.2.1 Piping. Composite piping shall be legibly marked at intervals of not more than 5 ft. (1.5 m) with at least the following:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark;

(b) ASTM F 1281(PEX-AL-PEX) or F 1282 (PE-AL-PE);

(c) Piping size;

(d) Material type – PEX-AL-PEX or PE-AL-PE;

(e) Pressure ratings for water and the temperature for which the temperature rating is valid;

(f) Mark of an acceptable certification agency; and

(g) Manufacturer's date and material code.

[UPC 301.1.2]

The elevated temperature and pressure ratings for PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE in accordance with ASTM F 1281 and ASTM F 1282 are:

PEX-AL-PEX (orange colored)	200 psi	125 psi
	at 73°F	at 180°F
PEX-AL-PE (blue colored)	200 psi	100 psi
	at 73°F	at 180°F

2.2.2 Fittings. Fittings shall be marked with at least the following:

(a) Manufacturer's name or trademark or other acceptable markings; and

(b) The mark of an acceptable certification agenc; and

(c) If size permits, ASTM F 1974. [UPC 301.1.2]

2.2.3 Position of Markings. When practical, markings shall be visible for inspection. Markings shall be visible prior to installation.

2.3 Protection of Piping

2.3.1 Abrasion. Piping passing through metallic studs, joists, or hollow masonry walls shall be protected from abrasion or sharp edges by elastomeric or plastic sleeves, grommets, conical shaped punch holes or other approved means.

2.3.2 Puncture. Steel plate protection, minimum 18 gauge, shall be installed when the tubing is within 1 in. (25 mm) of the nailing surface. [UPC 313.9]

2.4 Exposed Piping

2.4.1 General – Where exposed tubing may be subjected to mechanical damage it must be protected.

2.4.2 Freezing. In areas where the system must be drained to protect the system from freezing, horizontal lines shall be graded to drain.

2.4.3 Storage. Piping shall be stored in a way to protect the system from mechanical damage (slitting, puncturing, etc.). Piping should be stored undercover to keep it clean and avoid long term exposure to sunlight. Consult piping manufacturer for recommended limits for outside storage.

2.5 Thermal Expansion

2.5.1 General. The linear expansion rate for PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE is 1.56 in. (39.6 mm) per 100 ft. (30m) of tube per 100°F (55°C) change in temperature. No accommodation for thermal expansion is required.

2.5.2 Clearance. Bored holes and sleeves shall provide adequate clearance between the piping and structure to allow for free longitudinal movement.

2.6 Hangers and Supports

2.6.1 Vertical Piping. Vertical piping shall be supported at every floor. Piping shall have a mid-story guide.

2.6.2 Horizontal Piping. Horizontal piping shall be supported according to the following Table 1.

Table 1
Support Spacing

Nominal Diameter	Spacing
1/2", 3/4", and 1"	8' 2" (2489 mm)

2.6.3 Hangers and Anchors. Piping shall not be anchored rigidly to a support, but shall be secured with hangers or straps that provide for a degree of movement and that prevent damage to the tubing. Do not use hangers or straps with sharp or abrasive edges. Do not use hangers that pinch the piping. [UPC 314.0]

2.7 Inspection and Testing

A. Inspection. All tubing shall be properly seated on to the fitting per the manu-facturer's instructions. For crimp fittings, each crimped joint shall be checked. Buckled, gouged, or obviously damaged pipe shall not be used. Consult manu-facturer's recommendations for repair procedures.

B. Testing. Upon completion of a section or of the entire hot and cold water supply system it shall be tested and proved tight under a water pressure or air test not less than the working pressure under which it is to be used. The water used for tests shall be obtained from a potable source. The system shall withstand the test without leaking for a period of not less than fifteen (15) minutes.

2.8 Joints and Connections

2.8.1 Procedure. Piping should be cut with a pipe cutter designed specifically for composite pipe. Piping shall be cut square, i.e. perpendicular to the length. No other cutting methods shall be used and care must be taken to remove any excess material, flashing, or burrs.

2.8.2 Tools. Fitting manufacturer's recommended tool shall be used with the composite insert fitting systems. For specific procedures, follow the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.8.3 Transition Joints

2.8.3.1 Fittings. Transitions for composite tubing to metal piping or valves shall be made only with transition fittings intended for that purpose.

2.8.4 Joints. Joints shall not be allowed in piping installed in or under a concrete slab resting on grade unless for repair within a building

structure. All repair joints must be properly protected with a heat shrink sleeve. All slab penetrations shall be sleeved.

2.9 Pressure Relief Valves

2.9.1 PEX–AL–PEX Piping. PEX-AL-PEX piping used for temperature and/or pressure relief valve drain lines shall be graded to the outlet end and shall be supported at a maximum of 8 ft. 2 in. (2489 mm) interval horizontally. Vertical piping shall be supported at every floor. Vertical piping shall have a mid-story guide.

2.10 Installation

2.10.1 Bends. Piping shall be installed by bending the composite pipe by hand to a minimum radius of 5 times the nominal pipe diameter. External bend supports or sleeves are not required as the composite piping is rigid after bending.

2.10.2 Damage. Kinked, buckled, gouged, or other obvious damaged pipe shall not be used.

2.10.3 Finish Nipples. Finish nipples shall be connected to drop ear fittings to prevent rotation. Finish nipples shall not be PEX.

2.10.4 Hose Bibs. The piping directly connected to any hose bib shall be so anchored that the load on the hose bib will not strain the composite piping.

2.10.5 Heated Joints. An open flame shall not be applied to PEX-AL-PEX or PE-AL-PE piping when brazing, soldering, or welding joints.

2.10.6 Working Pressure and Temperature. Long term working pressures for the PEX-AL-PEX shall not exceed a maximum of 125 psi (860 kPa) and the long term working temperature shall not exceed 180°F (82°C). Long term working pressures for the PE-AL-PE shall not exceed a maximum of 100 psi (690 kPa) and the long term working temperature shall not exceed 180°F (82°C).

2.10.7 Exposure to Sunlight. Only UV stabilized composite piping can be subjected to direct sunlight after installation and can be installed on the surface of the building. Composite pipe contains an ultraviolet (UV) inhibitor to withstand limited exposure to UV light. Manufacturer's recommends placing the unused portion of a coil back in the product's box rather than storing in the sunlight while not in use.

2.10.8 Water Heater Connections. PEX-AL-PEX or PE-AL-PE piping shall not be installed within the first eighteen inches (18) (457 mm) of piping connected to a water heater. [UPC 604.13.2]

2.10.9 Water Hammer Arrestors. A composite hot water system will withstand repeated pressure surges, well in excess of its rated pressure. The Uniform Plumbing Code requires a means of attenuating water hammer. Consequently, water hammer arrestors shall be required when solenoid valves or other quick closing devices are used in the system. In designing for such situations, it is advisable to consult the pipe or fittings manufacturer for recommended surge pressure limits. Water hammer and surge pressure calculations are reviewed in Chapter 7, AWWA Manual M-11. [UPC 609.10]

2.11 Sizing

2.11.1 Method. Piping shall be sized in accordance with UPC Section 610.0.

When UPC Appendix A is applicable, use Table A2. Add equivalent lengths from Table A3 when determining developed length.

Maximum velocities through PEX-AL-PEX and PE-AL-PE copper alloy fittings shall be limited to eight (8) feet per second (fps) (2.4 mps) in cold water and five (5) feet per second (fps) (1.52 mps) in hot water. [UPC 610.0]

Table 2

Flow Rate U.S. GPM	1/2"		3/4"		1"	
	Head Loss Psi/c.ft.	Velocity Ft./s	Head Loss Psi/c.ft.	Velocity Ft./s	Head Loss Psi/c.ft.	Velocity Ft./s
0.1	0.02	0.2	0.002	0.07	0.001	0.04
0.2	0.1	0.4	0.01	0.1	0.002	0.08
0.3	0.2	0.6	0.02	0.2	0.005	0.1
0.4	0.3	0.7	0.03	0.3	0.009	0.2
0.5	0.5	0.9	0.04	0.3	0.01	0.2
0.6	0.6	1.1	0.05	0.4	0.02	0.3
0.7	0.9	1.3	0.07	0.5	0.02	0.3
0.8	1.1	1.5	0.09	0.5	0.03	0.3
0.9	1.4	1.7	0.1	0.6	0.04	04
1.0	1.6	1.8	0.1	0.7	0.05	0.4
2.0	5.9	3.7	0.5	1.3	0.2	0.9
3.0	12.5	5.5	1.0	2.0	0.4	1.3
4.0	21.3	7.3	1.8	2.6	0.6	1.7
5.0			2.7	3.3	0.9	2.1
6.0			3.8	4.0	1.3	2.5
7.0			5.0	4.6	1.7	3.0
8.0			6.4	5.3	2.2	3.4
9.0			8.0	5.9	2.7	3.8
10.0			9.7	6.6	3.3	4.2
11.0			11.6	7.2	3.9	4.6
12.0			13.6	7.9	4.6	5.0
13.0					5.3	5.5
14.0					6.1	5.9
15.0					6.9	6.3
16.0					7.8	6.3
17.0					8.7	6.7
18.0					9.7	7.1
19.0					10.7	7.6
20.0					11.8	8.0

Table 3
Developed Length

Sizes, Inches	Type of Fittings	Equivalent Length of Pipe (Feet)
1/2	Couplings	2
	Adapters	2
	Elbows	7.5
	Tees (Branch Flow)	8
	Tees (On the Run)	2.5
3/4	Couplings	2
	Adapters	2
	Elbows	8.5
	Tees (Branch Flow)	10.5
	Tees (On the Run)	2.5
1	Couplings	2
	Adapters	2
	Elbows	9
	Tees (Branch Flow)	11
	Tees (On the Run)	2.5

Installation Standard
For
FLEXIBLE PVC HOSE
IAPMO SIS 1-2003

This standard shall govern the installation of Flexible PVC Hose (with solvent cemented joints) in Pools, Hot Tubs, Spas and Jetted Bathtubs.

Installation, material and inspection shall comply with the current edition of the Uniform Swimming Pool Code and Uniform Plumbing Code published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, and shall also comply with this Standard.

NOTE: *The following sections of the Uniform Swimming Pool Code and Uniform Plumbing Code apply to Flexible PVC Hose.*

USPC

201.0	Definitions
Table 6-1	Materials
309.0	Piping
314.0	Joints and Connections
317.0	Tests

UPC

218. 0	Definitions of PVC
Table 14-1	Materials
310.0	Workmanship
313.0	Protection of Piping, Material, and Structures
315.0	Backfilling

ABBREVIATIONS

ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials
IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
UPC Uniform Plumbing Code
USPC Uniform Swimming Pool, [Spa and Hot Tub] Code

1.0 MINIMUM STANDARDS

1.1 Material. Materials shall perform to the appropriate standard in Table 6 -1 of the Uniform Swimming Pool Code.

1.2 Applicable Standards. For applicable standards, see Table 6 -1 of the Uniform Swimming Pool Code.

2.0 MARKINGS

2.1 Hoses, fittings, solvent cement and primer used shall be marked with the designated IAPMO certification mark to show compliance with this standard.

3.0 PROTECTION OF HOSES

3.1 Storage. Unprotected hose shall not be stored in direct sunlight. The hose shall be stored in a way to protect it from mechanical damage (slitting, puncturing, etc.). Exposure to sunlight during normal construction periods is not harmful. PVC solvent cement shall be stored in a cool place, except when actually in use at the job site. The solvent cement manufacturer's specific storage recommendations shall be followed.

3.2 Thermal Expansion. Hose shall be "snaked" in the trench bottom with enough slack, at least 6 in. (152.4 mm) per 100 ft. (30.5 m), to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction before stabilizing hose. Stabilize hose by bringing it approximately to operating temperature before testing and backfilling by one of the following methods:
(a) Backfill with a layer of soil for shading.
(b) Fill with water at operating temperature.
(c) Allow to stand overnight.

3.3 Exposed Hose. Hose above grade when located on the exterior of the building or structure shall be protected from mechanical damage to the satisfaction of the Administrative Authority. Where exposed to sunlight, the hose shall be wrapped with at least 0.040 in. (1.0 mm) of tape or other approved method acceptable to the Administrative Authority.

4.0 TRENCHING, COVER, AND BACKFILL

4.1 Trenching and Cover. Trench bottoms shall be uniformly graded and shall be of either undisturbed soil or shall consist of a layer or layers of compacted backfill so that minimum settlement will take place.

4.2 Backfill. Selected backfill shall be used to provide firm continuous support and proper compaction. Backfill over hose, except that joints shall be left exposed. After inspection and pressure test, complete backfill to a minimum of 12 in. (0.3 m) cover.

5.0 INSTALLATION

5.1 Solvent Cement Joints

5.1.1 Selection. Solvent cement shall be recommended for flexible PVC hose by the

manufacturer. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for types of solvent cement for flexible PVC hose.

5.1.2 Handling (to maintain effectiveness). Use solvent cement in containers no larger than 1 quart (1 liter). Keep solvent cement can closed and in the shade when not in use. Keep applicator submerged in solvent cement between application. When solvent cement becomes thicker, THROW IT AWAY. Solvent cement shall NOT be thinned.

5.1.3 Size of Applicator. Follow manufacturer's recommendations.

5.1.4 Application. Follow manufacturer's recommendations.

5.1.5 General Principles

5.1.5.1 To consistently make good joints, the following should be clearly understood and adhered to:

(a) The joining surfaces must be softened (dissolved) and made semi-fluid.
(b) Sufficient cement must be applied to fill the gap between hose and fitting.
(c) Assembly of hose and fittings must be made while the surfaces are still wet and fluid.
(d) Joint strength develops as the cement dries. In the tight part of the joints the surfaces will tend to fuse together; in the loose part the cement will bond to both surfaces.
(e) When solvent welding flexible PVC hose to other than PVC fittings, follow manufacturer's installation instructions.

5.1.5.2 Penetration and dissolving can be achieved by the cement itself, by a suitable primer, or by the use of both primer and cement. A suitable primer will penetrate and dissolve the plastic more quickly than cement alone. In cold weather more time and additional applications are required (see Fig. 1).

5.1.5.3 More than sufficient cement to fill the loose part of the joint must be applied (see Fig. 2). Besides filling the gap, adequate cement layers will penetrate the surfaces and also remain wet until the joint is assembled.

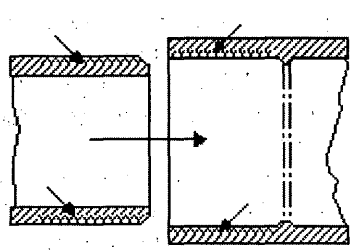


Figure 1
Areas of Hose and Fittings to be Softened (Dissolved) and Penetrated

5.1.5.4 If the cement coatings on the hose and fittings are wet and fluid when assembly takes place, they will tend to flow together and become one cement layer. Also, if the cement is wet the surfaces beneath them will still be soft, and these dissolved surfaces in the tight part of the joint will tend to fuse together (see Fig. 3).

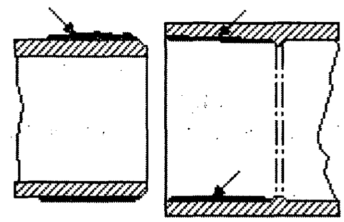


Figure 2
Cement Coatings of Sufficient Thickness

5.1.5.5 As the solvent dissipates, the cement layer and the dissolved surfaces will harden with a corresponding increase in joint strength. A good joint will take the required working pressure long before the joint is fully dry and final strength is obtained. In the tight (fused) part of the joint, strength will develop more quickly than in the looser (bonded) part of the joint. Completed joints should not be disturbed until they have cured sufficiently to withstand handling. Joint strength develops as the cement dries. Information about development of bond strength of solvent cemented joints is available (see Fig. 4).

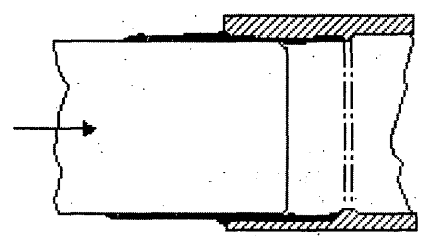


Figure 3
Assembly of Surfaces While They Are Wet and Soft

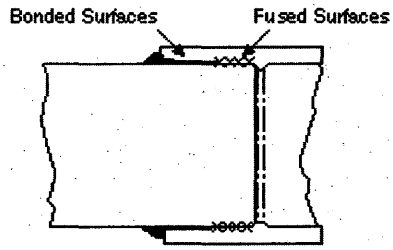


Figure 4
Bonded and Fused Surfaces of Joined Hoses

5.1.6 Procedure

NOTE: *Do not take SHORT CUTS. Most failures are caused by short cuts. DON'T TAKE A CHANCE.*

Step 1 Cut hose square with hand saw and miter box, mechanical cut-off saw, or tube cutter designed for plastic.

Step 2 Ream and chamfer hose (to eliminate sharp edges, beads and all burrs).

Step 3 Clean all dirt, moisture, and grease from hose and fitting socket. Use a clean, dry rag.

Step 4 Check dry fit of hose in fitting. Hose should enter fitting socket from 1/3 to 3/4 depth of socket.

Step 5 Soften inside socket surface by applying an aggressive primer which is a true solvent for PVC and is recommended by the manufacturer.

Step 6 Soften mating outside surface of hose to depth of socket by applying a liberal coat of the (aggressive) primer. Be sure entire surface is softened.

Step 7 Again coat inside socket surface with the (aggressive) primer. Then, without delay, apply solvent cement liberally to outside of hose. Use more than enough to fill any gaps.

Step 8 Apply a light coat of PVC solvent cement to inside of socket using straight outward strokes (to keep excess solvent out of socket). This is also to prevent solvent cement damage to hose. For loose fits, apply a second coat of solvent cement. Time is important at this stage. (See 5.1.4)

Step 9 While both the inside socket surface and the outside surface of the hose are SOFT and WET with solvent cement, forcefully bottom the hose in the socket, giving the hose a one-quarter turn, if possible. The hose must go to the bottom of the socket.

Step 10 Hold the joint together until tight.

Step 11 Wipe excess cement from the hose. A properly made joint will normally show a bead around its entire perimeter. Any gaps may indicate insufficient cement or the use of light bodied cement on larger diameters where heavy bodied cement should have been used.

Step 12 Do not disturb joint for the following periods:

30 minutes minimum at 60°F to 100°F (16°C to 38°C)

1 hour minimum at 40°F to 60°F (4°C to 16°C)

2 hours minimum at 20°F to 40°F (-7°C to 4°C)

4 hours minimum at 0°F to 20°F (-18°C to -7°C)

Handle the newly assembled joints carefully during these periods. If gaps (step 11) or loose fits are encountered in the system, double these periods.

Step 13 The system shall not be pressurized until the joints have cured (set) at least as long as recommended by the manufacturer. If manufacturer's recommendation is not available, the cure times as shown in Table 1 are required.

5.1.7 Installation and Testing

5.1.7.1 Installation. The hose shall be properly supported to prevent excessive sagging.

5.1.7.2 Testing.

(a) All pool, spa, and hot tub piping shall be inspected and approved before being covered or concealed, except as permitted by sections 3.2 and 4.2. It shall be tested and proved tight to the satisfaction of the Administrative Authority, under a static water or air pressure test of not less than 35 psi (241 kPa) for 15 minutes.

EXCEPTION: *All exposed equipment need not be tested as required in this section.*

(b) All swimming pool, spa, or hot tub installations must be completed, filled with water, and in operation before final inspection.

5.1.8 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS AND PRECAUTIONS[1]

5.1.8.1 General. Solvents contained in PVC plastic hose cements are classified as airborne contaminants and flammable and combustible liquids. Precautions listed in this section should be followed to avoid injury to personnel and the hazard of fire.

[1]CAUTION: Primers are toxic. Don't allow them to touch skin. Suitable gloves are advised.

5.1.8.2 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1. Prolonged breathing of solvent vapors should be avoided. When hose and fittings are being joined in partially enclosed areas, a ventilating device should be used in such a manner to minimize the entry of vapors into the breathing areas.
2. Solvent cements should be kept away from all sources of ignition, heat, sparks and open flame.
3. Containers for solvent cements should be kept tightly closed except when the cement is being used.
4. All rags and other materials used for mopping up spills should be kept in a safety waste receptacle which should be emptied daily.
5. Most of the solvents used in PVC hose cements can be considered eye irritants and contact with the eye should be avoided for it may cause eye injury. Proper eye protection and the use of chemical goggles or face shields is advisable where the possibility of splashing exists in handling solvent cements. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water for 15 min. and call a physician immediately.
6. Repeated contact with the skin should be avoided. Proper gloves impervious to and unaffected by the solvents should be worn when frequent contact with the skin is likely. Application of the solvents or solvent cements with rags and bare hands is not recommended. Brushes and other suitable applicators can be used effectively for applying the solvent cement, thus avoiding skin contact. In the event of excessive contact, remove contaminated clothing and wash skin with soap and water.

ADOPTED: 1989
REVISED: 2003

Table 1
Minimum Cure Time, in Hours[A,B]
Test Pressure for Hose

	Sizes 1/2" to 1 1/4" 12.7 mm to 31.8 mm		Sizes 1-1/2" to 3" 38.1 mm to 76.2 mm		Sizes 3-1/2" to 8" 88.9 mm to 203.2 mm	
Temp. Range During Cure Period	Up to 180psi (1240.2 kPa)	Above 180 to 370psi (1240.2 to 2549.3 kPa)	Up to 180psi (1240.2 kPa)	Above 180 to 315 psi (1240.2 to 2170.4 kPa)	Up to 180psi (1240.2 kPa)	Above 180 to 315psi (1240.2 to 2170.4 kPa)
60°F–100°F (16°C–38°C)	1 hr	6 hr	2 hr	12 hr	6 hr	24 hr
40°F–60°F (4°C–16°C)	2 hr	12 hr	4 hr	24 hr	12 hr	48 hr
10°F–40°F (-12°C+4°C)	8 hr	48 hr	16 hr	96 hr	48 hr	8 days

A It is important to note that at temperatures colder than 20°F (-6.7°C) on sizes that exceed 3 in. (76.2 mm), test results indicate that many variables exist in the actual cure rate of the joint. The data expressed in these categories represent only estimated averages. In some cases, cure will be achieved in less time, but isolated test results indicate that even longer periods of cure may be required.

B These cure schedules are based on laboratory test data obtained on Net Fit Joints (NET FIT= in a dry fit the pipe bottoms snugly in the fitting socket without meeting interference). The relative humidity in these tests was 50% or less. Higher relative humidity may require longer cure periods.

Installation Standard
For
ASSEMBLED WHIRLPOOL BATH APPLIANCES
IAPMO SIS 2-2003

1. Purpose and Scope

To ensure the proper installation of fittings and pumps to maintain no more than the maximum, allowed water retention for each system installed on each different make/model of bathtub. This is a field inspection to be done by the Administrative Authority, and because of this, there will be special, specific points of reference included in the installation instructions to locate jet-suction fitting-pump elevations.

2. Testing

To receive USPC listing, the manufacturer of the kit/or assembler of the whirlpool bath appliance shall provide sample tubs/systems to an approved testing laboratory and said tubs shall be tested to ANSI A112.19.7M. The sample tubs shall represent the parameters described below:

	Tub Volume[1]	No. of Jets	Pump Size[2]
Sample #1	Largest	Greatest	Largest
Sample #2	Largest	Least	Smallest
Sample #3	Smallest	Greatest	Largest
Sample #4	Smallest	Least	Smallest

1 As measured in gallon, to the overflow

2 As rated in gallons per minute (GPM)

3. Instructions

A complete set of installation instructions shall be provided with each appliance or kit and shall include the following:

(a) A side view drawing showing location of jets, suction fittings, pumps, piping and any other parts of the whirlpool system that affect the water retention of the entire system. A point or points of reference shall be chosen by the manufacturer to enable the Administrative Authority to verify these locations after installation of the tub.

(b) Cross reference shall be made as to the kit and the tub (make and model) for which it is listed.

(c) A drawing showing the pump mounting and all hardware to be used.

(d) Recommendations for piping support.

4. Labeling Requirements

Labels shall be permanently affixed to the appliances to be visible from the access door upon final inspection. Labels shall contain the following information :

(a) Title: Assembled Whirlpool Bathtub Appliances

(b) Assembler's Company Name

(c) Date Assembled

(d) Kit Manufacturer Model Number

(e) USPC certification mark with registration ®

ADOPTED: 1990

REVISED: 2003

APPENDIX K

PRIVATE SEWAGE DISPOSAL SYSTEMS

K 1 Private Sewage Disposal – General.

(A) Where permitted by Section 713.0, the building sewer may be connected to a private sewage disposal system complying with the provisions of this appendix. The type of system shall be determined on the basis of location, soil porosity, and groundwater level, and shall be designed to receive all sewage from the property. The system, except as otherwise approved, shall consist of a septic tank with effluent discharging into a subsurface disposal field, into one (1) or more seepage pits, or into a combination of subsurface disposal field and seepage pits. The Authority Having Jurisdiction may grant exceptions to the provisions of this appendix for permitted structures that have been destroyed due to fire or natural disaster and that cannot be reconstructed in compliance with these provisions provided that such exceptions are the minimum necessary.

(B) Where the quantity or quality of the sewage is such that the above system cannot be expected to function satisfactorily for commercial, agricultural, and industrial plumbing systems; for installations where appreciable amounts of industrial or indigestible wastes are produced; for occupancies producing abnormal quantities of sewage or liquid waste; or when grease interceptors are required by other parts of this code, the method of sewage treatment and disposal shall be first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Special sewage disposal systems for minor, limited, or temporary uses shall be first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(C) Disposal systems shall be designed to utilize the most porous or absorptive portions of the soil formation. Where the groundwater level extends to within twelve (12) feet (3658 mm) or less of the ground surface or where the upper soil is porous and the underlying stratum is rock or impervious soil, a septic tank and disposal field system shall be installed.

(D) Disposal systems shall be located outside of flood hazard areas.

> **Exception:** Where suitable sites outside of flood hazard areas are not available, disposal systems may be located in flood hazard areas on sites where the effects of inundation under conditions of the design flood are minimized.

(E) All private sewage disposal systems shall be so designed that additional seepage pits or subsurface drain fields, equivalent to at least one hundred (100) percent of the required original system, may be installed if the original system cannot absorb all the sewage. No division of the lot or erection of structures on the lot shall be made if such division or structure impairs the usefulness of the one hundred (100) percent expansion area.

(F) No property shall be improved in excess of its capacity to properly absorb sewage effluent by the means provided in this code.

> **Exception:** The Authority Having Jurisdiction may, at its discretion, approve an alternate system.

(G) No private sewage disposal system, or part thereof, shall be located in any lot other than the lot that is the site of the building or structure served by such private sewage disposal system, nor shall any private sewage disposal system or part thereof be located at any point having less than the minimum distances indicated in Table K-1.

Nothing contained in this code shall be construed to prohibit the use of all or part of an abutting lot to provide additional space for a private sewage disposal system or part thereof when proper cause, transfer of ownership, or change of boundary not in violation of other requirements has been first established to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The instrument recording such action shall constitute an agreement with the Authority Having Jurisdiction, which shall clearly state and show that the areas so joined or used shall be maintained as a unit during the time they are so used. Such agreement shall be recorded in the office of the County Recorder as part of the conditions of ownership of said properties and shall be binding on all heirs, successors, and assigns to such properties. A copy of the instrument recording such proceedings shall be filed with the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(H) When there is insufficient lot area or improper soil conditions for adequate sewage disposal for the building or land use proposed, and the Authority Having Jurisdiction so finds, no building permit shall be issued and no private sewage disposal shall be permitted. Where space or soil conditions are critical, no building permit shall be issued until

engineering data and test reports satisfactory to the Authority Having Jurisdiction have been submitted and approved.

(I) Nothing contained in this appendix shall be construed to prevent the Authority Having Jurisdiction from requiring compliance with additional requirements than those contained herein, where such additional requirements are essential to maintain a safe and sanitary condition.

(J) Alternate systems may be used only by special permission of the Authority Having Jurisdiction after being satisfied of their adequacy. This authorization may be based on extensive field and test data from conditions similar to those at the proposed site, or may require such additional data as may be necessary to provide assurance that the alternate system will produce continuous and long-range results at the proposed site, at least equivalent to systems which are specifically authorized.

If demonstration systems are to be considered for installation, conditions for installation, maintenance, and monitoring at each such site shall first be established by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Aerobic Systems. Approved aerobic systems may be substituted for conventional septic tanks provided the Authority Having Jurisdiction is satisfied that such systems will produce results at least equivalent to septic tanks, whether their aeration systems are operating or not.

K 2 Capacity of Septic Tanks.

The liquid capacity of all septic tanks shall conform to Tables K-2 and K-3 as determined by the number of bedrooms or apartment units in dwelling occupancies and the estimated waste/sewage design flow rate or the number of plumbing fixture units as determined from Table 7-3 of this Code, whichever is greater in other building occupancies. The capacity of any one septic tank and its drainage system shall be limited by the soil structure classification, as specified in Table K-4.

K 3 Area of Disposal Fields and Seepage Pits.

The minimum effective absorption area in disposal fields in square feet (m^2), and in seepage pits in square feet (m^2) of sidewall, shall be predicated on the required septic tank capacity in gallons (liters) and/or estimated waste/sewage flow rate, whichever is greater, and shall conform to Table K-4 as determined for the type of soil found in the excavation, and shall be as follows:

(1) When disposal fields are installed, a minimum of one hundred and fifty (150) square feet (14 m^2) of trench bottom shall be provided for each system exclusive of any hard pan, rock, clay, or other impervious formations. Sidewall area in excess of the required twelve (12) inches (305 mm) and not to exceed thirty-six (36) inches (914 mm) below the leach line may be added to the trench bottom area when computing absorption areas.

(2) Where leaching beds are permitted in lieu of trenches, the area of each such bed shall be at least fifty (50) percent greater than the tabular requirements for trenches. Perimeter sidewall area in excess of the required twelve (12) inches (305 mm) and not to exceed thirty-six (36) inches (914 mm) below the leach line may be added to the trench bottom area when computing absorption areas.

(3) No excavation for a leach line or leach bed shall extend within five (5) feet (1,524 mm) of the water table nor to a depth where sewage may contaminate the underground water stratum that is usable for domestic purposes.

Exception: In areas where the records or data indicate that the groundwaters are grossly degraded, the five (5) foot (1,524 mm) separation requirement may be reduced by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The applicant shall supply evidence of groundwater depth to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(4) The minimum effective absorption area in any seepage pit shall be calculated as the excavated sidewall area below the inlet exclusive of any hardpan, rock, clay, or other impervious formations. The minimum required area of porous formation shall be provided in one or more seepage pits. No excavation shall extend within ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) of the water table nor to a depth where sewage may contaminate underground water stratum that is usable for domestic purposes.

Exception: In areas where the records or data indicate that the groundwaters are grossly degraded, the ten (10) foot (3,048 mm) separation requirement may be reduced by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

The applicant shall supply evidence of groundwater depth to the satisfaction of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(5) Leaching chambers shall be sized on the bottom absorption area (nominal unit width) in square feet. The required area shall be calculated using Table K-4 with a 0.70 multiplier.

K 4 Percolation Test.

(A) Wherever practicable, disposal field and seepage pit sizes shall be computed from Table K-4. Seepage pit sizes shall be computed by percolation tests, unless use of Table K-4 is approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(B) In order to determine the absorption qualities of seepage pits and of questionable soils other than those listed in Table K-4, the proposed site shall be subjected to percolation tests acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(C) When a percolation test is required, no private disposal system shall be permitted to serve a building if that test shows the absorption capacity of the soil is less than 0.83 gallons per square foot (33.8 L/m^2) or more than 5.12 gallons per square foot (208 L/m^2) of leaching area per 24 hours. If the percolation test shows an absorption rate greater than 5.12 gallons per square foot (208 L/m^2) per 24 hours, a private disposal system may be permitted if the site does not overlie groundwaters protected for drinking water supplies, a minimum thickness of two (2) feet (610 mm) of the native soil below the entire proposed system is replaced by loamy sand, and the system design is based on percolation tests made in the loamy sand.

K 5 Septic Tank Construction.

(A) Plans for all septic tanks shall be submitted to the Authority Having Jurisdiction for approval. Such plans shall show all dimensions, reinforcing, structural calculations, and such other pertinent data as may be required.

(B) Septic tank design shall be such as to produce a clarified effluent consistent with accepted standards and shall provide adequate space for sludge and scum accumulations.

(C) Septic tanks shall be constructed of solid durable materials not subject to excessive corrosion or decay and shall be watertight.

(D) Septic tanks shall have a minimum of two (2) compartments. The inlet compartment of any septic tank shall be not less than two-thirds (2/3) of the total capacity of the tank, nor less than five hundred (500) gallons (2.0 m^3) liquid capacity, and shall be at least three (3) feet (914 mm) in width and five (5) feet (1,524 mm) in length. Liquid depth shall be not less than two (2) feet (610 mm) and six (6) inches (152 mm) nor more than six (6) feet (1,829 mm). The secondary compartment of any septic tank shall have a minimum capacity of two hundred fifty (250) gallons (1.0 m^3) and a maximum capacity of one-third (1/3) of the total capacity of such tank. In septic tanks having over a fifteen hundred (1,500) gallon (6.0 m^3) capacity, the secondary compartment may be not less than five (5) feet (1,524) in length.

(E) Access to each septic tank shall be provided by at least two (2) manholes twenty (20) inches (508 mm) in minimum dimension or by an equivalent removable cover slab. One access manhole shall be located over the inlet and one (1) access manhole shall be located over the outlet. Wherever a first compartment exceeds twelve (12) feet (3,658 mm) in length, an additional manhole shall be provided over the baffle wall.

(F) The inlet and outlet pipe openings shallnot be larger in size than the connecting sewer pipe. The vertical leg of round inlet and outlet fittings shall not be less in size than the connecting sewer pipe nor less than four (4) inches (102 mm). A baffle-type fitting shall have the equivalent cross-sectional area of the connecting sewer pipe and not less than a four (4) inch (100 mm) horizontal dimension when measured at the inlet and outlet pipe inverts.

(G) The inlet and outlet pipe or baffle shall extend four (4) inches (100 mm) above and at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) below the water surface. The invert of the inlet pipe shall be at a level not less than two (2) inches (51 mm) above the invert of the outlet pipe.

(H) Inlet and outlet pipe fittings or baffles and compartment partitions shall have a free vent area equal to the required cross-sectional area of the house sewer or private sewer discharging therein to provide free ventilation above the water surface from the disposal field or seepage pit through the septic tank, house sewer, and stack to the outer air.

(I) The sidewalls shall extend at least nine (9) inches (229 mm) above the liquid depth. The cover of the

septic tank shall be at least two (2) inches (51 mm) above the back vent openings.

(J) Partitions or baffles between compartments shall be of solid, durable material and shall extend at least four (4) inches (102 mm) above the liquid level. An inverted fitting equivalent in size to the tank inlet, but in no case less than four (4) inches (102 mm) in size, shall be installed in the inlet compartment side of the baffle with the bottom of the fitting placed midway in the depth of the liquid. Wooden baffles are prohibited.

(K) Structural Design.

(1) General. Each such tank shall be structurally designed to withstand all anticipated earth or other loads. All septic tank covers shall be capable of supporting an earth load of not less than five hundred (500) pounds per square foot (23.9kPa) when the maximum coverage does not exceed three (3) feet (914 mm).

(2) Flood Loads. In flood hazard areas, tanks shall be anchored to counter buoyant forces during conditions of the design flood. The vent termination and service manhole of the tank shall be a minimum of 2 feet (610 mm) above the design flood elevation or fitted with covers designed to prevent the inflow of floodwater or the outflow of the contents of the tanks during conditions of the design flood.

(L) Septic tanks installed under concrete or blacktop paving shall have the required manholes accessible by extending the manhole openings to grade in a manner acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(M) Materials.

(1) **Concrete Septic Tanks.**

All materials used in constructing a septic tank shall be in accordance with applicable standards in Chapter 14, Table 14-1.

(2) **Steel Septic Tanks.**

The minimum wall thickness of any steel septic tank shall be No. 12 U.S. gauge (0.109) (2.8 mm), and each such tank shall be protected from corrosion both externally and internally by an approved bituminous coating or by other acceptable means.

(3) **Alternate Materials.**

(i) Septic tanks constructed of alternate materials may be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction when complying with approved applicable standards.

(ii) Wooden septic tanks are prohibited.

(N) Prefabricated Septic Tanks.

(1) Manufactured or prefabricated septic tanks shall comply with all approved applicable standards and be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(2) Independent laboratory tests and engineering calculations certifying the tank capacity and structural stability shall be provided as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

K 6 Disposal Fields.

(A) Distribution lines shall be constructed of clay tile laid with open joints, perforated clay pipe, perforated bituminous fiber pipe, perforated high-density polyethylene pipe, perforated ABS pipe, perforated PVC pipe, or other approved materials, provided that sufficient openings are available for distribution of the effluent into the trench area.

(B) Before placing filter material or drain lines in a prepared excavation, all smeared or compacted surfaces shall be removed from trenches by raking to a depth of one (1) inch (25.4 mm) and the loose material removed. Clean stone, gravel, slag, or similar filter material acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction, varying in size from three fourths (3/4) inch to two and one-half (2-1/2) inches (19.1 mm to 64 mm), shall be placed in the trench to the depth and grade required by this section. Drain pipe shall be placed on filter material in an approved manner. The drain lines shall then be covered with filter material to the minimum depth required by this section, and this material covered with untreated building paper, straw, or similar porous material to prevent closure of voids with earth backfill. No earth backfill shall be placed over the filter material cover until after inspection and acceptance.

Exception: Listed or approved plastic leaching chambers may be used in lieu of pipe and filter material. Chamber installations shall follow the rules for disposal fields, where applicable, and shall conform to manufacturer's installation instructions.

(C) A grade board staked in the trench to the depth of filter material shall be utilized when the distribution line is constructed with drain tile or a flexible pipe material that will not maintain alignment without continuous support.

	Minimum	Maximum
Number of drain lines per field	1	–
Length of each line	–	100 ft. (30,480 mm)
Bottom width of trench	18 in. (457 mm)	36 in. (914 mm)
Spacing of lines, center-to-center	6 ft. (1,829 mm)	–
Depth of earth cover of lines [preferred –18 in. (457 mm)]	12 in. (305 mm)	–
Grade of lines	level	3 in./100 ft. (25 mm/m)
Filter material under drain lines	12 in. (305 mm)	–
Filter material over drain lines	2 in. (51 mm)	–

(D) When seepage pits are used in combination with disposal fields, the filter material in the trenches shall terminate at least five (5) feet (1,524 mm) from the pit excavation, and the line extending from such points to the seepage pit shall be approved pipe with watertight joints.

(E) Where two (2) or more drain lines are installed, an approved distribution box of sufficient size to receive lateral lines shall be installed at the head of each disposal field. The inverts of all outlets shall be level, and the invert of the inlet shall be at least one (1) inch (25.4 mm) above the outlets. Distribution boxes shall be designed to ensure equal flow and shall be installed on a level concrete slab in natural or compacted soil.

(F) All laterals from a distribution box to the disposal field shall be approved pipe with watertight joints. Multiple disposal field laterals, wherever practicable, shall be of uniform length.

(G) Connections between a septic tank and a distribution box shall be laid with approved pipe with watertight joints on natural ground or compacted fill.

(H) When the quantity of sewage exceeds the amount that can be disposed in five hundred (500) lineal feet (152.4 m) of leach line, a dosing tank shall be used. Dosing tanks shall be equipped with an automatic siphon or pump that discharges the tank once every three (3) or four (4) hours. The tank shall have a capacity equal to sixty (60) to seventy-five (75) percent of the interior capacity of the pipe to be dosed at one time. Where the total length of pipe exceeds one thousand (1,000) lineal feet (304.8 m), the dosing tank shall be provided with two (2) siphons or pumps dosing alternately and each serving one-half (1/2) of the leach field.

(I) Disposal fields shall be constructed as follows:
(See chart above.)
Minimum spacing between trenches or leaching beds shall be four (4) feet (1,219 mm) plus two (2) feet (610 mm) for each additional foot (305 mm) of depth in excess of one (1) foot (305 mm) below the bottom of the drain line. Distribution drain lines in leaching beds shall not be more than six (6) feet (1,829 mm) apart on centers, and no part of the perimeter of the leaching bed shall be more than three (3) feet (914 mm) from a distribution drain line. Disposal fields, trenches, and leaching beds shall not be paved over or covered by concrete or any material that can reduce or inhibit any possible evaporation of sewer effluent.

(J) When necessary on sloping ground to prevent excessive line slope, leach lines or leach beds shall be stepped. The lines between each horizontal section shall be made with watertight joints and shall be designed so each horizontal leaching trench or bed shall be utilized to the maximum capacity before the effluent shall pass to the next lower leach line or bed. The lines between each horizontal leaching section shall be made with approved watertight joints and installed on natural or unfilled ground.

K 7 Seepage Pits.

(A) The capacity of seepage pits shall be based on the quantity of liquid waste discharging thereinto and on the character and porosity of the surrounding soil, and shall conform to Section K 3 of this appendix.

(B) Multiple seepage pit installations shall be served through an approved distribution box or be connected in series by means of a watertight connection laid on undistributed or compacted soil; the outlet from the pit shall have an approved vented leg fitting extending at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) below the inlet fitting.

(C) Each seepage pit shall be circular in shape and shall have an excavated diameter of not less than four (4) feet (1,219 mm). Each such pit shall be lined with approved-type whole new hard-burned clay brick, concrete brick, concrete circular-type cesspool blocks, or other approved materials. Approval shall be obtained prior to construction for any pit having an excavated diameter greater than six (6) feet (1,829 mm).

(D) The lining in every seepage pit shall be laid on a firm foundation. Lining materials shall be placed tight together and laid with joints staggered. Except in the case of approved-type precast concrete circular sections, no brick or block shall be greater in height than its width, and shall be laid flat to form at least a four (4) inch (102 mm) wall. Brick or block greater than twelve (12) inches (305 mm) in length shall have chamfered matching ends and be scored to provide for seepage. Excavation voids behind the brick, block, or concrete liner shall have a minimum of six (6) inches (152 mm) of clean three-fourths (3/4) inch (19.1 mm) gravel or rock.

(E) All brick or block used in seepage pit construction shall have a minimum compressive strength of twenty-five hundred (2,500) pounds per square inch (17,237 kPa).

(F) Each seepage pit shall have a minimum sidewall (not including the arch) of ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) below the inlet.

(G) The arch or dome of any seepage pit may be constructed in one of three ways:

(1) Approved-type hard-burned clay brick or solid concrete brick or block laid in cement mortar.

(2) Approved brick or block laid dry.

In both of the above methods, an approved cement mortar covering of at least two (2) inches (51 mm) in thickness shall be applied, said covering to extend at least six (6) inches (152 mm) beyond the sidewalls of the pit.

(3) Approved-type one or two-piece reinforced concrete slab of twenty-five hundred (2,500) pounds per square inch (17237 kPa) minimum compressive strength, not less than five (5) inches (127 mm) thick and designed to support an earth load of not less than four hundred (400) pounds per square foot (19.2 kPa). Each such cover shall be provided with a nine (9) inch (229 mm) minimum inspection hole with plug or cover and shall be coated on the underside with an approved bituminous or other nonpermeable protective compound.

(H) The top of the arch or cover must be at least eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) but not more than four (4) feet (1219 mm) below the surface of the ground.

(I) An approved vented inlet fitting shall be provided in every seepage pit so arranged as to prevent the inflow from damaging the sidewall.

Exception: When using a one- or two-piece concrete slab cover inlet, fitting may be a one-fourth (1/4) bend fitting discharging through an opening in the top of the slab cover. On multiple seepage pit installations, the outlet fittings shall be per Section K 7(B) of this appendix.

K 8 Cesspools.

(A) A cesspool shall be considered only as a temporary expedient pending the construction of a public sewer; as an overflow facility when installed in conjunction with an existing cesspool; or as a means of sewage disposal for limited, minor, or temporary uses, when first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(B) Where it is established that a public sewer system will be available in less than two (2) years and soil and groundwater conditions are favorable to cesspool disposal, cesspools without septic tanks may be installed for single-family dwellings or for other limited uses when first approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(C) Each cesspool, when permitted, shall conform to the construction requirements set forth in Section K 7 of this appendix for seepage pits and shall have a minimum sidewall (not including arch) of twenty (20) feet (6,096 mm) below the inlet, provided, however, that when a strata of gravel or equally pervious material of four (4) feet (1,219 mm) in thickness is found, the depth of such sidewall need not be more than ten (10) feet (3,048 mm) below the inlet.

(D) When overflow cesspools or seepage pits are added to existing installations, the effluent shall leave the existing pit through an approved vented leg extending at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) downward into such existing pit and having its outlet flow line at least six (6) inches (152 mm) below the inlet. All pipe between pits shall be laid with approved watertight joints.

Grease and Garbage, Commercial Kitchens

Number of meals per peak hour	x	Waste flow rate	x	Retention time	x	Storage factor	=	Interceptor size (liquid capacity)

Sand-Silt Oil, Auto Washers

Number of vehicles per hour	x	Waste flow rate	x	Retention time	x	Storage factor	=	Interceptor size (liquid capacity)

Silt-Lint Grease, Laundries, Laundromats

Number of machines	x	2 cycles per hour	x	Waste flow rate	x	Retention time	x	Storage Factor	=	Interceptor size (liquid capacity)

Waste Flow Rate

See Table K-3 of this appendix for estimated flow rates.

Retention Times

Commercial kitchen waste:
Dishwasher and/or disposal .... 2.5 hours
Single service kitchen:
Single serving with disposal .... 1.5 hours
Sand-silt oil .... 2.0 hours
Lint-silt (laundry) .... 2.0 hours

Storage Factors

Fully equipped commercial kitchen .... 8 h. operation: 1
16 h. operation: 2
24 h. operation: 3
Single service kitchen 1.5
Auto washers .... self-serve: 1.5
employee operated: 2
Laundries, laundromats .... 1.5 (allows for rock filter)

K 9 Commercial or Industrial Special Liquid-Waste Disposal.

(A) When liquid wastes contain excessive amounts of grease, garbage, flammable wastes, sand, or other ingredients that may affect the operation of a private sewage disposal system, an interceptor for such wastes shall be installed.

(B) Installation of such interceptors shall comply with Section 1009.0 of this code, and their location shall be in accordance with Table K-1 of this appendix.

(C) A sampling box shall be installed when required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(D) Interceptors shall be of approved design and be of not less than two (2) compartments. Structural requirements shall be in compliance with the applicable subparts of Section K 5 of this appendix.

(E) Interceptors shall be located as close to the source as possible and be accessible for servicing. All necessary manholes for servicing shall be at grade level and be gastight.

(F) Waste discharge from interceptors may be connected to a septic tank or other primary system or be disposed into a separate disposal system.

(G) Recommended Design Criteria. (Formula may be adapted to other types of occupancies with similar wastes.) See charts on this page.

K 10 Inspection and Testing.

(A) Inspection.

(1) Applicable provision of Section 103.5 of this code and this appendix shall be complied with. Plans may be required per Section 101.3 of this code.

(2) System components shall be properly identified as to manufacturer. Septic tanks or other primary systems shall have the rated capacity permanently marked on the unit.

(3) Septic tanks or other primary systems shall be installed on dry, level, well-compacted soil.

(4) If design is predicated on soil tests, the system shall be installed at the same location and depth as the tested area.

(B) Testing.

(1) Septic tanks or other primary components shall be filled with water to flow line prior to requesting inspection. All seams or joints shall be left exposed (except the bottom), and the tank shall remain watertight.

(2) A flow test shall be performed through the system to the point of effluent disposal. All lines and components shall be watertight. Capacities, required air space, and fittings shall be in accordance with the provisions set forth in this appendix.

K 11 Abandoned Sewers and Sewage Disposal Facilities.

(A) Every abandoned building (house) sewer, or part thereof, shall be plugged or capped in an approved manner within five (5) feet (1,524 mm) of the property line.

(B) Every cesspool, septic tank, and seepage pit that has been abandoned or has been discontinued

TABLE K-1

Location of Sewage Disposal System

	Minimum Horizontal Distance In Clear Required From:	Building Sewer	Septic Tank	Disposal Field	Seepage Pit or Cesspool
	Buildings or structures[1]	2 feet (610 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)	8 feet (2,438 mm)	8 feet (2,438 mm)
	Property line adjoining private property	Clear[2]	5 feet (1,524 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)	8 feet (2,438 mm)
	Water supply wells	50 feet[3] (15,240 mm)	50 feet (15,240 mm)	100 feet (30.5 m)	150 feet (45.7 m)
TIA TIA TIA	Streams and other bodies of water	50 feet (15,240 mm)	50 feet (15,240 mm)	100 feet[7] (15,240 mm)[7]	150 feet[7] (30.5 m)[7]
	Trees	–	10 feet (3,048 mm)	–	10 feet (3,048 mm)
	Seepage pits or cesspools	–	5 feet (1,524 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)	12 feet (3,658 mm)
	Disposal field	–	5 feet (1,524 mm)	4 feet[4] (1,219 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)
	On-site domestic water service line	1 foot[5] (305 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)
	Distribution box	–	–	5 feet (1,524 mm)	5 feet (1,524 mm)
	Pressure public water main	10 feet[6] (3,048 mm)	10 feet (3,048 mm)	10 feet (3,048 mm)	10 feet (3,048 mm)

Note:
When disposal fields and/or seepage pits are installed in sloping ground, the minimum horizontal distance between any part of the leaching system and ground surface shall be fifteen (15) feet (4,572 mm).

1 Including porches and steps, whether covered or uncovered, breezeways, roofed porte cocheres, roofed patios, carports, covered walks, covered driveways, and similar structures or appurtenances.

2 See also Section 313.3 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

3 All drainage piping shall clear domestic water supply wells by at least fifty (50) feet (15,240 mm). This distance may be reduced to not less than twenty-five (25) feet (7,620 mm) when the drainage piping is constructed of materials approved for use within a building.

4 Plus two (2) feet (610 mm) for each additional one (1) foot (305 mm) of depth in excess of one (1) foot (305 mm) below the bottom of the drain line. (See also Section K 6.)

5 See Section 720.0 of the Uniform Plumbing Code.

6 For parallel construction – For crossings, approval by the Health Department shall be required.

TIA 7 These minimum clear horizontal distances shall also apply between disposal fields, seepage pits, and the mean high tide line.

TABLE K-2
Capacity of Septic Tanks*

Single-Family Dwellings – Number of Bedrooms	Multiple Dwelling Units or Apartments – One Bedroom Each	Other Uses: Maximum Fixture Units Served per Table 7-3	Minimum Septic Tank Capacity in Gallons	(Liters)
1 or 2		15	750	(2,838)
3		20	1,000	(3,785)
4	2 units	25	1,200	(4,542)
5 or 6	3	33	1,500	(5,678)
	4	45	2,000	(7,570)
	5	55	2,250	(8,516)
	6	60	2,500	(9,463)
	7	70	2,750	(10,409)
	8	80	3,000	(11,355)
	9	90	3,250	(12,301)
	10	100	3,500	(13,248)

*Note:
Extra bedroom, 150 gallons (568 liters) each.
Extra dwelling units over 10,250 gallons (946 liters) each.
Extra fixture units over 100,25 gallons (95 liters) per fixture unit.

Septic tank sizes in this table include sludge storage capacity and the connection of domestic food waste disposal units without further volume increase.

TABLE K-3
Estimated Waste/Sewage Flow Rates

Because of the many variables encountered, it is not possible to set absolute values for waste/sewage flow rates for all situations. The designer should evaluate each situation and, if figures in this table need modification, they should be made with the concurrence of the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Type of Occupancy	**Gallons (liters) Per Day**
1. Airports	15 (56.8) per employee 5 (18.9) per passenger
2. Auto washers	Check with equipment manufacturer
3. Bowling alleys (snack bar only)	75 (283.9) per lane
4. Camps:	
Campground with central comfort station	35 (132.5) per person
Campground with flush toilets, no showers	25 (94.6) per person
Day camps (no meals served)	15 (56.8) per person
Summer and seasonal	50 (189.3) per person
5. Churches (Sanctuary)	5 (18.9) per seat
with kitchen waste	7 (26.5) per seat
6. Dance halls	5 (18.9) per person
7. Factories	
No showers	25 (94.6) per employee
With showers	35 (132.5) per employee
Cafeteria, add	5 (18.9) per employee
8. Hospitals	250 (946.3) per bed
Kitchen waste only	25 (94.6) per bed
Laundry waste only	40 (151.4) per bed
9. *Hotels (no kitchen waste)*	60 (227.1) per bed (2 person)

TABLE K-3 (Continued)

Type of Occupancy	Gallons (liters) Per Day
10. Institutions (Resident)	75 (283.9) per person
Nursing home	125 (473.1) per person
Rest home	125 (473.1) per person
11. Laundries, self-service	
(minimum 10 hours per day)	50 (189.3) per wash cycle
Commercial	Per manufacturer's specifications
12. Motel	50 (189.3) per bed space
with kitchen	60 (227.1) per bed space
13. Offices	20 (75.7) per employee
14. Parks, mobile homes	250 (946.3) per space
picnic parks (toilets only)	20 (75.7) per parking space
recreational vehicles –	
without water hook-up	75 (283.9) per space
with water and sewer hook-up	100 (378.5) per space
15. Restaurants – cafeterias	20 (75.7) per employee
toilet	7 (26.5) per customer
kitchen waste	6 (22.7) per meal
add for garbage disposal	1 (3.8) per meal
add for cocktail lounge	2 (7.6) per customer
kitchen waste – Disposable service	2 (7.6) per meal
16. Schools – Staff and office	20 (75.7) per person
Elementary students	15 (56.8) per person
Intermediate and high	20 (75.7) per student
with gym and showers, add	5 (18.9) per student
with cafeteria, add	3 (11.4) per student
Boarding, total waste	100 (378.5) per person
17. Service station, toilets	1000 (3785) for 1st bay 500 (1892.5) for each additional bay
18. Stores	20 (75.7) per employee
public restrooms, add	1 per 10 sq. ft. (4.1/m^2) of floor space
19. Swimming pools, public	10 (37.9) per person
20. Theaters, auditoriums	5 (18.9) per seat
drive-in	10 (37.9) per space

(a) **Recommended Design Criteria.** Sewage disposal systems sized using the estimated waste/sewage flow rates should be calculated as follows:

(1) Waste/sewage flow, up to 1,500 gallons/day (5,677.5 L/day)
Flow x 1.5 = septic tank size

(2) Waste/sewage flow, over 1,500 gallons/day (5,677.5 L/day)
Flow x 0.75 + 1,125 = septic tank size

(3) Secondary system shall be sized for total flow per 24 hours.

(b) Also see Section K 2 of this appendix.

TABLE K-4
Design Criteria of Five Typical Soils

Type of Soil	Required sq. ft. of leaching area/ 100 gal. (m^2/L)		Maximum absorption capacity in gals./sq. ft. of leaching area for a 24 hr. period (L/m^2)	
Coarse sand or gravel	20	(0.005)	5.0	(203.7)
Fine sand	25	(0.006)	4.0	(162.9)
Sandy loam or sandy clay	40	(0.010)	2.5	(101.8)
Clay with considerable sand or gravel	90	(0.022)	1.1	(44.8)
Clay with small amount of sand or gravel	120	(0.030)	0.8	(32.6)

TABLE K-5

Required Square Feet of Leaching Area/100 gal. Septic Tank Capacity	(m^2/L)	Maximum Septic Tank Size Allowable Gallons	(liters)
20–25	(0.005–0.006)	7500	(28,387.5)
40	(0.010)	5000	(18,925.0)
90	(0.022)	3500	(13,247.5)
120	(0.030)	3000	(11,355.0)

otherwise from further use, or to which no waste or soil pipe from a plumbing fixture is connected, shall have the sewage removed therefrom and be completely filled with the earth, sand, gravel, concrete, or other approved material.

(C) The top cover or arch over the cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit shall be removed before filling, and the filling shall not extend above the top of the vertical portions of the sidewalls or above the level of any outlet pipe until inspection has been called and the cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit has been inspected. After such inspection, the cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit shall be filled to the level of the top of the ground.

(D) No person owning or controlling any cesspool, septic tank, or seepage pit on the premises of such person or in that portion of any public street, alley, or other public property abutting such premises shall fail, refuse, or neglect to comply with the provisions of this section or upon receipt of notice so to comply with the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

(E) Where disposal facilities are abandoned consequent to connecting any premises with the public sewer, the permittee making the connection shall fill all abandoned facilities as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction within thirty (30) days from the time of connecting to the public sewer.

K 12 Drawings and Specifications.

The Authority Having Jurisdiction, Health Officer, or other department having jurisdiction may require any or all of the following information before a permit is issued for a private sewage disposal system or at any time during the construction thereof.

(A) Plot plan drawn to scale, completely dimensioned, showing direction and approximate slope of surface, location of all present or proposed retaining walls, drainage channels, water supply lines or wells, paved areas and structures on the plot, number of bedrooms or plumbing fixtures in each structure, and location of the private sewage disposal system with relation to lot lines and structures.

(B) Details of construction necessary to ensure compliance with the requirements of this appendix together with a full description of the complete installation including quality, kind, and grade of all materials, equipment, construction, workmanship, and methods of assembly and installation.

(C) A log of soil formations and groundwater levels as determined by test holes dug in close proximity to any proposed seepage pit or disposal field, together with a statement of water absorption characteristics of the soil at the proposed site, as determined by approved percolation tests.

APPENDIX L

ALTERNATE PLUMBING SYSTEMS

L 1.0 Scope.

L 1.1 The intent of this appendix is to provide clarification of procedures for the design and approval of engineered plumbing systems, alternate materials, and equipment not specifically covered in other parts of the code.

L 1.2 The provisions of this appendix apply to the design, installation, and inspection of an engineered plumbing system, alternate material, and equipment.

L 1.3 The Authority Having Jurisdiction has the right to require descriptive details of an engineered plumbing system, alternate material, or equipment including pertinent technical data to be filed.

L 1.4 Components, materials, and equipment must conform to standards and specifications listed in Table 14-1 of this code and other national consensus standards applicable to plumbing systems and materials.

L 1.5 Where such standards and specifications are not available, alternate materials and equipment must be approved per the provisions of Section 301.2 of this code.

L 2.0 Engineered Plumbing Systems.

L 2.1 Definition. *Engineered Plumbing System:* A system designed for a specific building project with drawings and specifications indicating plumbing materials to be installed, all as prepared by a person registered or licensed to perform plumbing design work.

L 2.2 Inspection and Installation. In other than one- and two-family dwellings, the designer of the system is to provide periodic inspection of the installation on a schedule found suitable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Prior to the final approval, the designer must verify to the Authority Having Jurisdiction that the installation is in compliance with the approved plans, specifications, and data and such amendments thereto. The designer must also certify to the Authority Having Jurisdiction that the installation is in compliance with the applicable engineered design criteria.

L 2.3 Owner Information. The designer of the system must provide the building owner with information concerning the system, considerations applicable for any subsequent modifications to the system, and maintenance requirements as applicable.

L 3.0 Water Heat Exchangers.

L 3.1 Heat exchangers used for heat transfer, heat recovery, or solar heating shall protect the potable water system from being contaminated by the heat-transfer medium.

L 3.2 Single-wall heat exchangers shall be permitted if they satisfy all of the following requirements:

(1) The heat-transfer medium is either potable water or contains essentially nontoxic transfer fluids having a toxicity rating or class of 1 (see Section 207.0).

(2) The pressure of the heat-transfer medium is maintained at less than the normal minimum operating pressure of the potable water system.

Exception: Steam complying with Section L 3.2 (1) above.

(3) The equipment is permanently labeled to indicate that only additives recognized as safe by the FDA shall be used in the heat-transfer medium.

L 3.3 Other heat exchanger designs may be permitted where approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

L 4.0 Fixture Unit Values for Bathroom Groups.

L 4.1 Tables L-1 and L-2 reflect the fixture unit loads for the fixtures in bathrooms as groups, rather than as individual fixtures. Such fixtures include water closets, lavatories, and bathtubs or showers. The tables reflect diversity in the use of fixtures within a bathroom and between multiple bathrooms.

L 4.2 The listed water supply fixture unit values in Table L-1 reflect the load of entire bathroom groups on the cold-water service. Individual hot and cold water branch piping to the fixtures should be sized according to Chapter 6 and Appendix A.

L 4.3 The listed drainage fixture unit values in Table L-2 reflect the load of entire bathroom groups on the sanitary drainage system. Where fixtures within bathrooms connect to different branches of the drainage system, the fixture unit values for the individual fixtures shall be used, as listed in Table 7-3 of this Code.

L 5.0 Vacuum Drainage Systems.

L 5.1 Vacuum drainage systems shall be considered engineered systems and shall comply with the requirements of L 1.0 and L 2.0.

L 5.2 Vacuum drainage systems, including piping tank assemblies, vacuum pump assembly, and other components necessary for the proper function of the system shall be engineered and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

TABLE L-1
Water Supply Fixture Units (WSFU) for Bathroom Groups[1,2]

	Individual Dwelling Units	Serving 3 or more Dwelling Units
Bathroom Groups having 1.6 GPF Gravity-Tank Water Closets		
Half-bath or Powder Room	3.5	2.5
1 Bathroom Group	5.0	3.5
1-1/2 Bathrooms	6.0	
2 Bathrooms	7.0	
2-1/2 Bathrooms	8.0	
3 Bathrooms	9.0	
Each Additional 1/2 Bath	0.5	
Each Additional Bathroom Group	1.0	
Bathroom Groups having 1.6 GPF Pressure-Tank Water Closets		
Half-bath or Powder Room	3.5	2.5
1 Bathroom Group	5.0	3.5
1-1/2 Bathrooms	6.0	
2 Bathrooms	7.0	
2-1/2 Bathrooms	8.0	
3 Bathrooms	9.0	
Each Additional 1/2 Bath	0.5	
Each Additional Bathroom Group	1.0	
Bathroom Groups having 3.5 GPF Gravity-Tank Water Closets		
Half-bath or Powder Room	4.0	3.0
1 Bathroom Group	6.0	5.0
1-1/2 Bathrooms	8.0	
2 Bathrooms	10.0	
2-1/2 Bathrooms	11.0	
3 Bathrooms	12.0	
Each Additional 1/2 Bath	0.5	
Each Additional Bathroom Group	1.0	
Bath Group (1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve)	6.0	4.0
Bath Group (3.5 GPF Flushometer Valve)	8.0	6.0
Kitchen Group (Sink and Dishwasher)	2.0	1.5
Laundry Group (Sink and Clothes Washer)	5.0	3.0

Notes:
1. A bathroom group, for the purposes of this table, consists of one water closet, up to two lavatories, and either one bathtub or one shower.
2. A half-bath or powder room, for the purposes of this table, consists of one water closet and one lavatory.

Plans and specifications shall be submitted to the Authority Having Jurisdiction for review and approval prior to installation.

L 5.3 Fixtures. Fixtures used in vacuum drainage systems shall comply with L 1.4 and L 1.5.

L 5.4 Drainage Load. The pump discharge load from the collector tanks shall be in accordance with Chapter 7 of this Code.

L 5.5 Water Supply Fixture Units. Water supply fixture units shall be based on the values in Chapter 6 of this Code. The load requirement of a vacuum-type water closet shall be determined per manufacturer's specification.

L 5.6 Traps and Cleanouts. For gravity fixtures, traps and cleanouts shall be per approved plans.

L 6.0 Special Venting of Fixtures.

L 6.1 Batteries of Fixtures (Battery Venting).

L 6.1.1 A maximum of eight (8) floor-outlet water closets, showers, bathtubs, or floor drains connected in battery on a horizontal branch drain shall be permitted to be battery-vented. The drain from each fixture being battery-vented shall connect horizontally to the horizontal wet-vented drain branch. The horizontal wet-vented branch drain shall be considered as a vent extending from

TABLE L-2
Drainage Fixture Unit Values (DFU) for Bathroom Groups

	Individual Dwelling Units	Serving 3 or more Dwelling Units
Bathroom Groups having 1.6 GPF Gravity-Tank Water Closets		
Half-bath or Powder Room	3.0	2.0
1 Bathroom Group	5.0	3.0
1-1/2 Bathrooms	6.0	
2 Bathrooms	7.0	
2-1/2 Bathrooms	8.0	
3 Bathrooms	9.0	
Each Additional 1/2 Bath	0.5	
Each Additional Bathroom Group	1.0	
Bathroom Groups having 1.6 GPF Pressure-Tank Water Closets		
Half-bath or Powder Room	3.5	2.5
1 Bathroom Group	5.5	3.5
1-1/2 Bathrooms	6.5	
2 Bathrooms	7.5	
2-1/2 Bathrooms	8.5	
3 Bathrooms	9.5	
Each Additional 1/2 Bath	0.5	
Each Additional Bathroom Group	1.0	
Bathroom Groups having 3.5 GPF Gravity-Tank Water Closets		
Half-bath or Powder Room	3.0	2.0
1 Bathroom Group	6.0	4.0
1-1/2 Bathrooms	8.0	
2 Bathrooms	10.0	
2-1/2 Bathrooms	11.0	
3 Bathrooms	12.0	
Each Additional 1/2 Bath	0.5	
Each Additional Bathroom	1.0	
Bath Group (1.6 GPF Flushometer Valve)	5.0	3.0
Bath Group (3.5 GPF Flushometer Valve)	6.0	4.0

Notes:
1. A bathroom group, for the purposes of this table, consists of not more than one water closet, up to two lavatories, and either one bathtub or one shower.
2. A half-bath or powder room, for the purposes of this table, consists of one water closet and one lavatory.

the downstream fixture drain connection to the most upstream fixture connection.

L 6.1.2 Back-outlet water closets having carriers conforming to Section 407.4 shall be permitted to be battery-vented provided they connect horizontally to the horizontal wet-vented section.

L 6.1.3 Trap arm lengths for fixtures shall not exceed those as indicated in Table 10-1.

L 6.1.4 A battery vent shall be connected to the horizontal wet-vented branch drain between the two (2) most upstream fixture drains.

L 6.1.5 The entire length of the wet-vented section of the horizontal branch drain shall be uniformly sized for the total drainage discharge connected thereto as per Table 7-5. The maximum slope of the horizontal drain shall be three-eighths (3/8) inch (10 mm) per foot (300 mm).

L 6.1.6 A relief vent shall be provided on each wet-vented horizontal branch drain below the upper-most floor. The relief vent shall connect to the horizontal branch drain between the stack and the first upstream fixture drain.

L 6.1.7 Battery vents and relief vent connections shall be taken off vertically from the top of the horizontal drain.

Battery vents and relief vents shall not be used as vertical wet vents.

L 6.1.8 Lavatories and drinking fountains shall be permitted to connect horizontally to the horizontal wet-vented branch drain provided that they are located on the same floor as the battery-vented fixtures and each is provided with either an individual or common vent.

L 6.1.9 Batteries of more than eight (8) battery vented fixtures shall have a separate battery vent for each group of eight (8) or less fixtures, and the horizontal branch drain in each group shall be sized for the total drainage into the branch, including all upstream branches and the fixtures within the particular group.

L 6.1.10 All battery vents and relief vents shall be sized according to Section 904.0, but shall be not less than one-half (1/2) the area of the drain pipe that they serve and shall comply with Section 905.0

L 6.2 Single Bathroom or Single Toilet Room.

L 6.2.1 An individually vented lavatory in a single bathroom or single toilet room shall be permitted to serve as the wet vent for one (1) water closet and/or one (1) bathtub or shower stall, or one (1) water closet and/or one (1) bathtub/shower combination if all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The wet vent, and the dry vent extending from the wet vent, shall be two (2) inch (50 mm) minimum pipe size.

(2) The wet vent pipe opening shall not be below the weir of the trap that it serves. Vent sizing, grades, and connections shall comply with Sections 904.0 and 905.0.

(3) The horizontal branch drain serving both the lavatory and the bathtub or shower stall shall be two (2) inch (50 mm) minimum pipe size.

(4) The length of the trap arm from the bathtub or shower stall complies with the limits in Table 10-1.

(5) The distance from the outlet of the water closet to the connection of the wet vent complies with the limits in Table 10-1.

(6) The horizontal branch drain serving the lavatory and the bathtub or shower stall shall connect to the horizontal water closet branch above its centerline. When the bathroom or toilet room is the top-most load on a stack, the horizontal branch serving the lavatory and the bathtub or shower stall shall be permitted to connect to the stack below the water-closet branch.

(7) No fixture other than those listed in L 6.2.1 shall discharge through a single bathroom or single toilet room wet-vented system.

L 6.3 Double Bathtubs, Bathtub/Shower Combinations, Shower Stalls, and Lavatories.

Two (2) lavatories, each rated at 1.0 drainage fixture unit (DFU), and two (2) bathtubs, bathtub/shower combinations, or shower stalls, installed in adjacent bathrooms, shall be permitted to drain to a horizontal drain branch that is two (2) inch (50 mm) minimum pipe size, with a common vent for the lavatories and no individual vents for the bathtubs, bathtub/shower combinations, or shower stalls, provided that the wet vent from the lavatories and their dry vent is two (2) inch (50 mm) minimum pipe size and the length of all trap arms comply with the limits in Table 10-1.

L 7.0 Circuit Venting.

L 7.1 Circuit vent permitted. Circuit venting shall be designed by a registered professional engineer as an engineered design. A maximum of eight fixtures connected to a horizontal branch drain shall be permitted to be circuit vented. Each fixture drain shall connect horizontally to the horizontal branch being circuit vented. The horizontal branch drain shall be classified as a vent from the most downstream fixture drain connection to the most upstream fixture drain connection to the horizontal branch.

L 7.1.1 Multiple circuit-vented branches. Circuit-vented horizontal branch drains are permitted to be connected together. Each group of a maximum of eight fixtures shall be considered a separate circuit vent and shall conform to the requirements of this section.

L 7.2 Vent size and connection. The circuit vent shall be a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter and the connection shall be located between the two most upstream fixture drains. The vent shall connect to the horizontal branch on the vertical. The circuit vent pipe shall not receive the discharge of any soil or waste.

L 7.3 Slope and size of horizontal branch. The maximum slope of the vent section of the horizontal branch drain shall be 1 inch per foot (25 mm per 305 mm). The entire length of the vented section of the horizontal branch drain shall be sized for the total drainage discharge to the branch.

L 7.3.1 Size of multiple circuit vent. Multiple circuit vented branches shall be permitted to connect on the same floor level. Each separate circuit-vented horizontal branch that is interconnected shall be sized independently in accordance with Section L 7.3. The downstream circuit-vented horizontal branch shall be sized

for the total discharge into the branch, including the upstream branches and the fixtures within the branch.

L 7.4 Relief vent. A 2-inch (50 mm) relief vent shall be provided for circuit-vented horizontal branches receiving the discharge of four or more water closets and connecting to a drainage stack that receives the discharge of soil or waste from upper horizontal branches.

L 7.4.1 Connection and installation. The relief vent shall connect to the horizontal branch drain between the stack and the most downstream fixture drain of the circuit vent. The relief vent shall be installed on the vertical to the horizontal branch.

L 7.4.2 Fixture drain or branch. The relief vent is permitted to be a fixture drain or fixture branch for a fixture located within the same branch interval as the circuit-vented horizontal branch. The maximum discharge to a relief vent shall be four fixture units.

L 7.5 Additional fixtures. Fixtures, other than the circuit-vented fixtures, are permitted to discharge to the horizontal branch drain. Such fixtures shall be located on the same floor as the circuit-vented fixtures and shall be either individually or common vented.

L 8.0 Single-Stack Vent System

L 8.1 Where permitted. Single-stack venting shall be designed by a registered professional engineer as an engineered design. A drainage stack shall be permitted to serve as a single-stack vent system when sized and installed in accordance with Sections L 8.2 through L 8.9. The drainage stack and branch piping in a single-stack vent system shall provide for the flow of liquids, solids, and air without the loss of fixture trap seals.

L 8.2 Stack Size. Drainage stacks shall be sized according to Table L-3. A maximum of two water closets shall be permitted to discharge to a 3-inch (80 mm) stack. Stacks shall be uniformly sized based on the total connected drainage fixture unit load, with no reductions in size.

L 8.2.1 Stack Vent. The drainage stack vent shall have a stack vent of the same size terminating to the outdoors.

L 8.3 Branch Size. Horizontal branches connecting to a single-stack vent system shall be sized according to Table 7-5.

Exceptions:

(1) No more than one water closet within 18 inches (457 mm) of the stack horizontally shall be permitted on a 3-inch (80 mm) horizontal branch.

(2) A water closet within 18 inches (457 mm) of a stack horizontally and one other fixture with up to 1-1/2 inch (40 mm) fixture drain size shall be permitted on a 3-inch (80 mm) horizontal branch when connected to the stack through a sanitary tee.

L 8.4 Length of horizontal branches.

L 8.4.1 Water closets shall be no more than four (4) feet (1,219 mm) horizontally from the stack.

Exception: Water closets shall be permitted to be up to eight (8) feet (2,438 mm) horizontally from the stack when connected to the stack through a sanitary tee.

L 8.4.2 Fixtures other than water closets shall be no more than twelve (12) feet (3658 mm) horizontally from the stack.

L 8.4.3 The length of any vertical piping from a fixture trap to a horizontal branch shall not be considered in computing the fixture's horizontal distance from the stack.

L 8.5 Maximum vertical drops from fixtures. Vertical drops from fixture traps to horizontal branch piping shall be one size larger than the trap size, but not less than two (2) inch (50 mm) in diameter. Vertical drops shall be four (4) feet (1219 mm) maximum length. Fixture drains that are not increased in size, or have a vertical drop exceeding 4 feet shall be individually vented.

L 8.6 Additional venting required. Additional venting shall be provided when more than one water closet is on a horizontal branch and where the distance from a fixture trap to the stack exceeds the limits in Section L 8.4. Where additional venting is required, the fixture (s) shall be vented by individual vents, common vents, wet vents, circuit vents, or a combination waste and vent pipe. The dry vent extensions for the additional venting shall connect to a branch vent, vent stack, stack vent, or be extended outdoors and terminate to the open air. TIA

L 8.7 Stack Offsets. Where there are no fixture drain connections below a horizontal offset in a stack, the offset does not need to be vented. Where there are fixture drain connections below a horizontal offset in a stack, the offset shall be vented. There shall be no fixture connections to a stack within 2 feet above and below a horizontal offset.

L 8.8 Separate Stack Required. Where stacks are more than two stories high, a separate stack shall be provided for the fixtures on the lower two stories. The stack for the lower two stories may be connected to the branch of the building drain that serves the stack for the upper stories at a point that is at least 10

pipe diameters downstream from the base of the upper stack.

L 8.9 Sizing Building Drains and Sewers. In a single-stack vent system, the building drain and branches thereof shall be sized in accordance with Table 7-5, and the building sewer shall be sized in accordance with Table 7-8.

Table L-3
Single-Stack Size

Stack Size (inches)	Maximum Connected Drainage Fixture Units		
	Stacks Less than 75 Feet in Height	Stack 75 Feet to Less than 160 Feet in Height	Stack 160 Feet or Greater in Height
3	24	NP	NP
4	225	24	NP
5	480	225	24
6	1,015	480	225
8	2,320	1,015	480
10	4,500	2,320	1,015
12	8,100	4,500	2,320
15	13,600	8,100	4,500

USEFUL TABLES

Conversion Table

"The information contained in these tables are not part of this American National Standard (ANS) and have not been processed in accordance with ANSI's requirements for an ANS. As such, these tables may contain material that has not been subjected to public review or a consensus process. In addition, they do not contain requirements necessary for conformance to the standard."

MULTIPLY	BY	TO OBTAIN
Acres	43,560	Square feet
Acre-feet	43,560	Cubic feet
Acre-feet	325,851	Gallons
Atmospheres	76.0	Cm of mercury
Atmospheres	29.92	Inches of mercury
Atmospheres	33.90	Feet of water
Atmospheres	14.70	Pounds/square inch
Btu/minute	12.96	Foot-Pounds/second
Btu/minute	0.02356	Horse power
Centimeters	0.3937	Inches
Centimeters of mercury	0.01316	Atmospheres
Centimeters of mercury	0.4461	Feet of water
Centimeters of mercury	27.85	Pounds/square feet
Centimeters of mercury	0.1934	Pounds/square inch
Cubic feet	1728	Cubic inches
Cubic feet	0.03704	Cubic yards
Cubic feet	7.48052	Gallons
Cubic feet	29.92	Quarts (liquid)
Cubic feet/minute	472.0	Cubic cms/second
Cubic feet/minute	0.1247	Gallons/second
Cubic feet/minute	62.43	Pounds of water/minute
Cubic feet/second	0.0646317	Million gallons/day
Cubic feet/second	448.831	Gallons/minute
Cubic yards	27	Cubic feet
Cubic yards	202.0	Gallons
Feet of water	0.02950	Atmospheres
Feet of water	0.8826	Inches of mercury
Feet of water	62.43	Pounds/square feet
Feet of water	0.4335	Pounds/square inch
Feet/minute	0.01667	Feet/second
Feet/minute	0.01136	Miles/hour
Feet/second	0.6818	Miles/hour
Feet/second	0.01136	Miles/minute
Gallons	3785	Cubic centimeters
Gallons	0.1337	Cubic feet

MULTIPLY	BY	TO OBTAIN
Gallons	231	Cubic inches
Gallons	4	Quarts (liquid)
Gallons water	8.3453	Pounds of water
Gallons/minute	0.002228	Cubic feet/second
Gallons/minute	8.0208	Cubic feet/hour
Gallons water/minute	6.0086	Tons of water/24 hours
Inches	2.540	Centimeters
Inches of mercury	0.03342	Atmospheres
Inches of mercury	1.133	Feet of water
Inches of mercury	0.4912	Pounds/square inch
Inches of water	0.002458	Atmospheres
Inches of water	0.07355	Inches of mercury
Inches of water	5.202	Pounds/square feet
Inches of water	0.03613	Pounds/square inch
Liters	1000	Cubic centimeters
Liters	61.02	Cubic inches
Liters	0.2642	Gallons
Miles	5280	Feet
Miles/hour	88	Feet/minute
Miles/hour	1.467	Feet/second
Millimeters	0.1	Centimeters
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Million gallons/day	1.54723	Cubic feet/second
Pounds of water	0.01602	Cubic feet
Pounds of water	27.68	Cubic inches
Pounds of water	0.1198	Gallons
Pounds/cubic inch	1728	Pounds/cubic feet
Pounds/square foot	0.01602	Feet of water
Pounds/square inch	0.06804	Atmospheres
Pounds/square inch	2.307	Feet of water
Pounds/square inch	2.036	Inches of mercury
Quarts (dry)	67.20	Cubic inches
Quarts (liquid)	57.75	Cubic inches
Square feet	144	Square inches
Square miles	640	Acres
Square yards	9	Square feet
Temperature (°C) + 273	1	Abs. temperature (°C)
Temperature (°C) + 17.28	1.8	Temperature (°F)
Temperature (°F) + 460	1	Abs. temperature (°F)
Temperature (°F) – 32	5/9	Temperature (°C)
Tons (short)	2000	Pounds
Tons of water/24 hours	83.333	Pounds water/hour
Tons of water/24 hours	0.16643	Gallons/minute
Tons of water/24 hours	1.3349	Cubic feet/hour

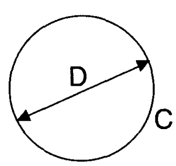
Areas and Circumferences of Circles

Diameter		Circumference		Area	
Inches	mm	Inches	mm	Inches²	mm²
1/8	6	0.40	10	0.01227	8.0
1/4	8	0.79	20	0.04909	31.7
3/8	10	1.18	30	0.11045	71.3
1/2	15	1.57	40	0.19635	126.7
3/4	20	2.36	60	0.44179	285.0
1	25	3.14	80	0.7854	506.7
1-1/4	32	3.93	100	1.2272	791.7
1-1/2	40	4.71	120	1.7671	1,140.1
2	50	6.28	160	3.1416	2,026.8
2-1/2	65	7.85	200	4.9087	3,166.9
3	80	9.43	240	7.0686	4,560.4
4	100	12.55	320	12.566	8,107.1
5	125	15.71	400	19.635	12,667.7
6	150	18.85	480	28.274	18,241.3
7	175	21.99	560	38.485	24,828.9
8	200	25.13	640	50.265	32,428.9
9	225	28.27	720	63.617	41,043.1
10	250	31.42	800	78.540	50,670.9

EQUAL PERIPHERIES

S = 0.7854 D

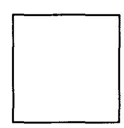
D = 1.2732 S



S = 0.8862 D

D = 1.1284 S

S = 0.2821 C



EQUAL AREAS

Area of square (S') =
1.2732 x area of circle

Area of square (S) =
0.6366 x area of circle

$C = \pi D = 2\pi R$

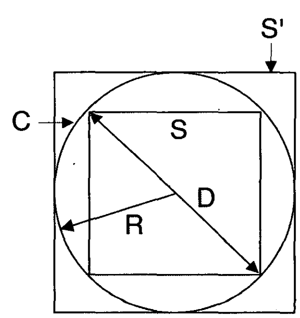
$C = 3.5446 \sqrt{\text{area}}$

$D = 0.3183\,C = 2R$

$D = 1.1283 \sqrt{\text{area}}$

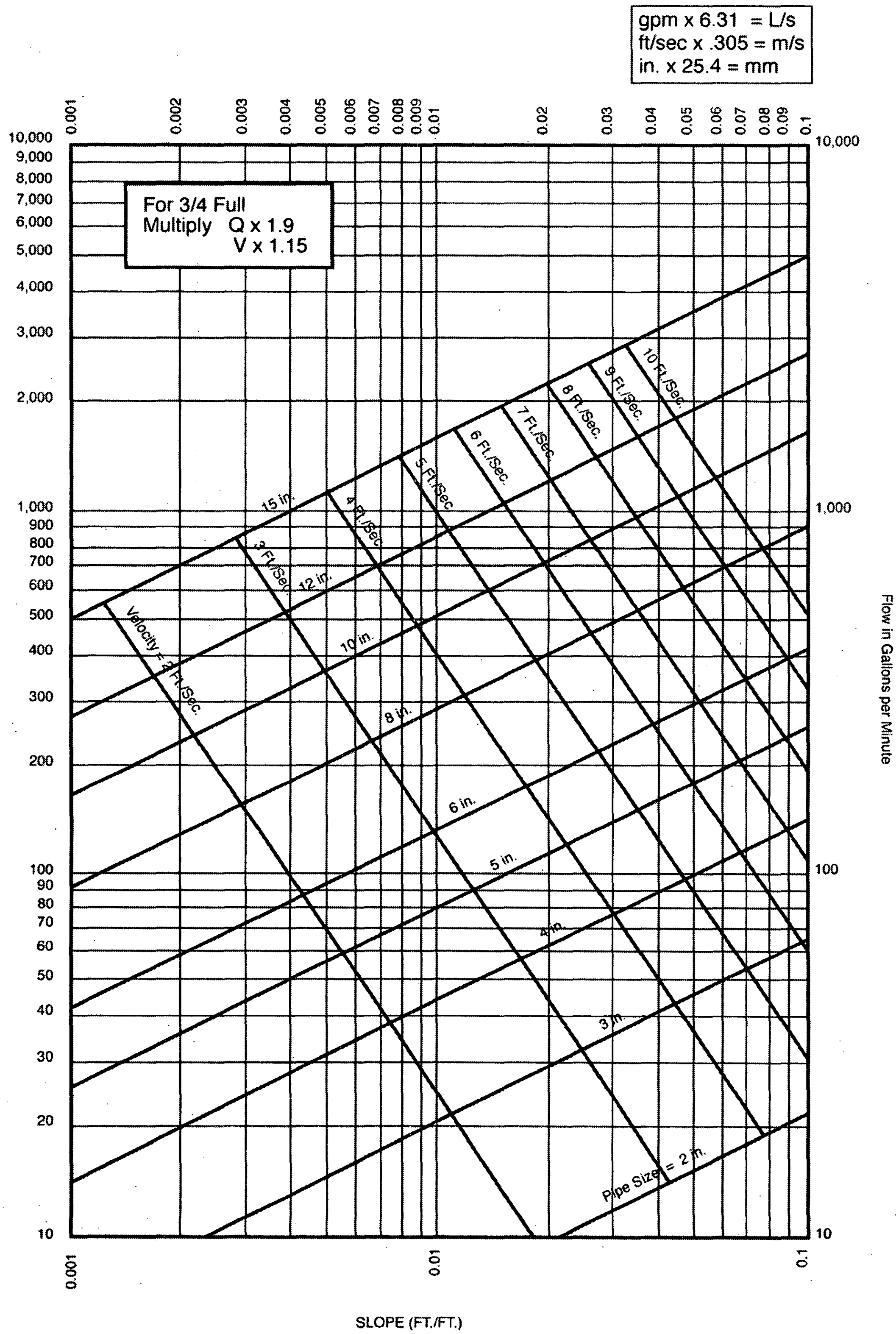
$\text{Area} = \pi R^2 = 0.7854\,D^2$

$\text{Area} = 0.07958\,C^2 = \dfrac{\pi D^2}{4}$



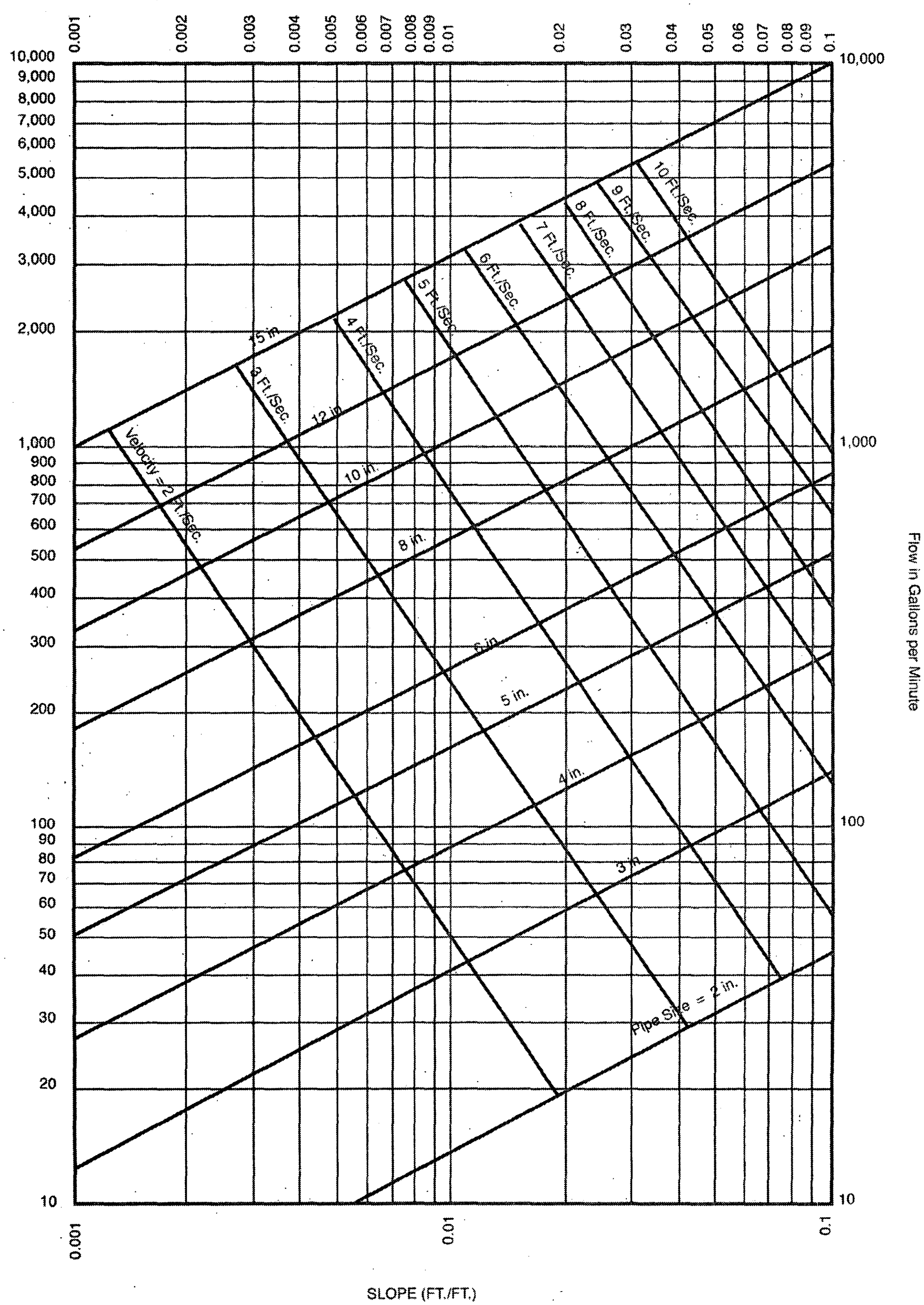
$\pi = 3.1416$

Flow in Partly Filled (One-Half Full) Pipes
(Based on Manning's Formula with n = .012)



Flow in Partly Filled (Full) Pipes
(Based on Manning's Formula with n = .012)

gpm x 6.31 = L/s
ft/sec x .305 = m/s
in. x 25.4 = mm



METRIC SYSTEM

(INTERNATIONAL SYSTEM OF UNITS – SI)

For the users of this code, we are including a short explanation and some conversion tables to aid in the conversion of our familiar English units to the forthcoming SI units.

This is written with the code users in mind, and will detail only those measurements used in everyday work and calculations. For the scientific units, we recommend the use of ANSI Z210.1, "Metric Practice Guide."

GENERAL COMMENTS

Our present system of measuring involves the three dimensions of force, length and time. The SI units involve mass, length, and time. The change of force to mass has meaning in scientific and engineering work, but for practical use in ordinary construction, we will show kilogram to pounds conversion values, although an exact conversion would be pounds force divided by the acceleration due to gravity to mass units.

In the same manner, the SI units for temperature expressed in Kelvins and based on absolute zero will be given as degrees Celsius, which is the more familiar and practical Centigrade degrees.

The SI system measures angles in radians where there are 2 pi radians in a circle, but using a 1.5708 bend to change from a vertical stack to a horizontal house drain is not as easy as calling out a 1/4 bend or an ell for water piping.

The foregoing notes are intended to show that in making conversions from one unit system to another, a little common sense must be used and the degree of accuracy needed to do the job at hand.

The following tables are set up using this approach and using the preferred SI units.

METRIC SYSTEM
(INTERNATIONAL SYSTEM OF UNITS – SI)

TO CONVERT	INTO	MULTIPLY BY
Atmospheres	Cm of mercury	76.0
Btu	Joules	1,054.8
Btu/hour	Watts	0.2931
Btu/minute	Kilowatts	0.01757
Btu/minute	Watts	17.57
Centigrade	Fahrenheit	(°C x 9/5) + 32°
Circumference	Radians	6.283
Cubic centimeters	Cubic inches	0.06102
Cubic feet	Cubic meters	0.02832
Cubic feet	Liters	28.32
Cubic feet/minute	Cubic cm/second	472.0
Cubic inches	Cubic cm	16.39
Cubic inches	Liters	0.01639
Cubic meters	Gallons (U.S. liquid)	264.2
Feet	Centimeters	30.48
Feet	Meters	0.3048
Feet	Millimeters	304.8
Feet of water	Kg/square cm	0.03048
Foot-Pounds	Joules	1.356
Foot-pounds/minute	Kilowatts	2.260×10^{-5}
Foot-pounds/second	Kilowatts	1.356×10^{-3}
Gallons	Liters	3.785
Horsepower	Watts	745.7
Horsepower-hours	Joules	2.684×10^{6}
Horsepower-hours	Kilowatt-hours	0.7457
Joules	Btu	9.480×10^{-4}
Joules	Foot-pounds	0.7376
Joules	Watt-hours	2.778×10^{-4}
Kilograms	Pounds	2.205
Kilograms	Tons (short)	1.102×10^{-3}
Kilometers	Miles	0.6214
Kilometers/hour	Miles/hour	0.6214
Kilowatts	Horsepower	1.341
Kilowatt-hours	Btu	3,413
Kilowatt-hours	Foot-pounds	2.655×10^{6}
Kilowatt-hours	Joules	3.6×10^{6}
Liters	Cubic feet	0.03531

METRIC SYSTEM
(INTERNATIONAL SYSTEM OF UNITS – SI)
(Continued)

TO CONVERT	INTO	MULTIPLY BY
Liters	Gallons (U.S. liquid)	0.2642
Meters	Feet	3.281
Meters	Inches	39.37
Meters	Yards	1.094
Meters/second	Feet/second	3.281
Meters/second	Miles/hr	2.237
Miles (statute)	Kilometers	1.609
Miles/hour	Meters/minute	26.82
Millimeters	Inches	0.03937
Ounces (fluid)	Liters	0.02957
Pints (liquid)	Cubic centimeters	473.2
Pounds	Kilograms	0.4536
PSI	Pascals	6,895
Quarts (liquid)	Liters	0.9463
Radians	Degrees	57.30
Square inches	Square millimeters	645.2
Square meters	Square inches	1,550
Square millimeters	Square inches	1.550×10^{-3}
Watts	Btu/hour	3.4129
Watts	Btu/minute	0.05688
Watts	Foot-pounds/second	0.7378
Watts	Horsepower	1.341×10^{-3}

When the plumbing industry, including plumbers, suppliers, and manufacturers, actually begins the metric conversion program, it will undoubtedly follow the guidelines of committees selected from all phases of the construction industry as set up under the American National Metric Council.

The final preferred units used will be those that apply to our industry and will be of the magnitude to simplify and ease job calculations and avoid confusion and ambiguity.

The conversion looks complex and confusing, but when the metric system was first proposed in France, an attempt was made to include a ten-hour day, a ten-day week, and ten months to the year, but cooler heads prevailed and our time still follows the sun and seasons. Likewise, assigning new units or numbers to the quantities we must work with cannot change the basic hydraulic principles that plumbers have worked with throughout history.

Information on conversion factors is provided by ANSI, the American National Metric Council, and the Division of Designatronics, Inc.

– J –

Errata for
2006 Uniform Plumbing Code – 8th Printing

The following is a list of changes that we found after the eighth printing of the 2006 Uniform Plumbing Code. These changes may or may not apply to your code book. However, we do encourage you to check your code book with this list to ensure that all the changes are updated. Thank you.

Appendix A

Charts A-4 through A-7: The X and Y values for Charts A-4 through A-7 were revised to reflect the correct conversion formula.

Chapter 5

Section 510.2.5 The reference to Section 510.8(3) has been changed to correctly refer to Section 510.8.3

Chapter 6

Table 6-3 In the fixtures column, the conversion for ¾ inch has been revised to read 19 mm.

06/25/08

Chart A-4

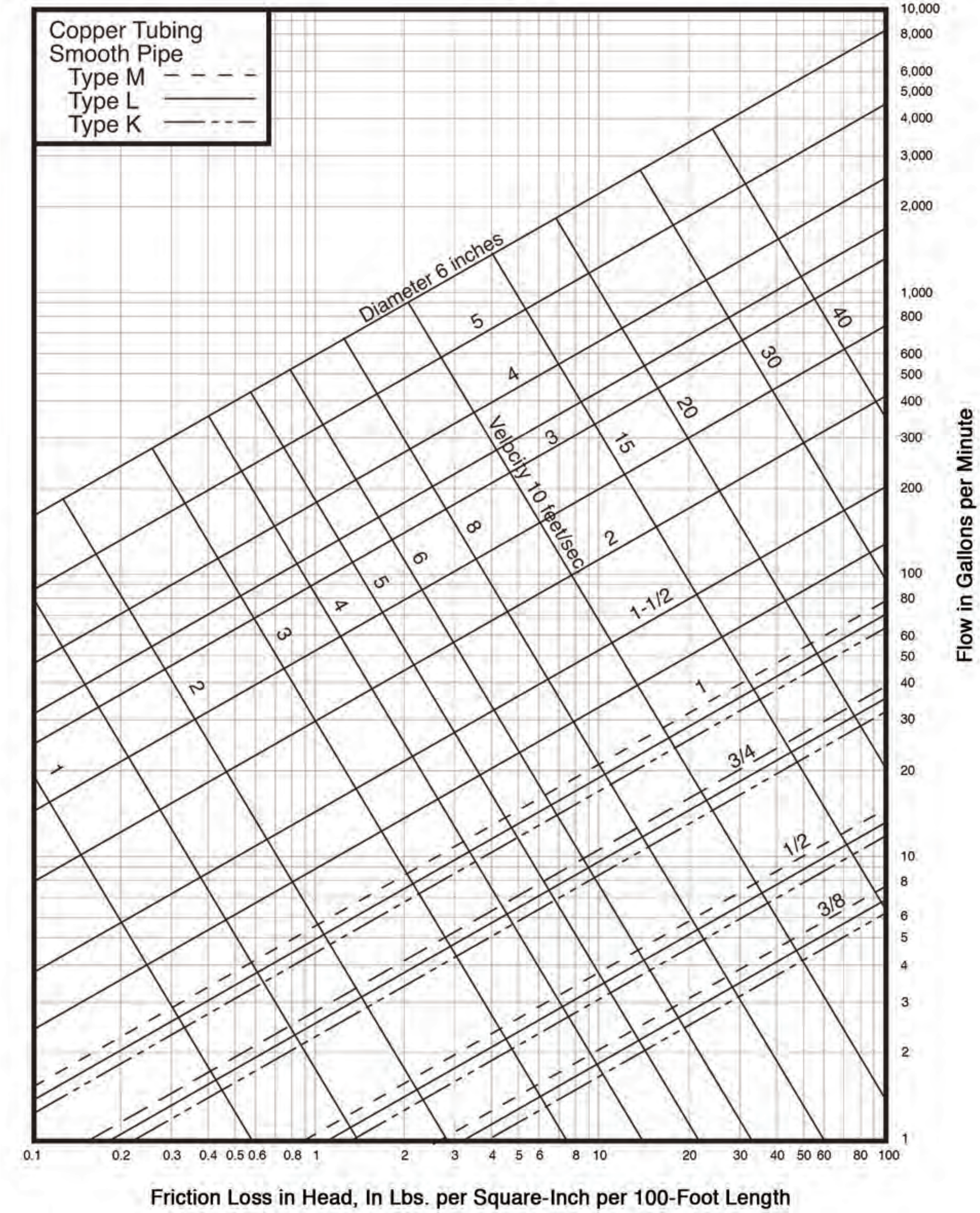

Copper Tubing
Smooth Pipe
Type M
Type L
Type K
Diameter 6 inches
5
4
3
2
1-1/2
1
3/4
1/2
3/8
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
Velocity 10 feet/sec
15
20
30
40
10,000
8,000
6,000
5,000
4,000
3,000
2,000
1,000
800
600
500
400
300
200
100
80
60
50
40
30
20
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
Flow in Gallons per Minute
0.1
0.2
0.3
0.4
0.5
0.6
0.8
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
10
20
30
40
50
60
80
100
Friction Loss in Head, In Lbs. per Square-Inch per 100-Foot Length

Chart A-4 (Metric)

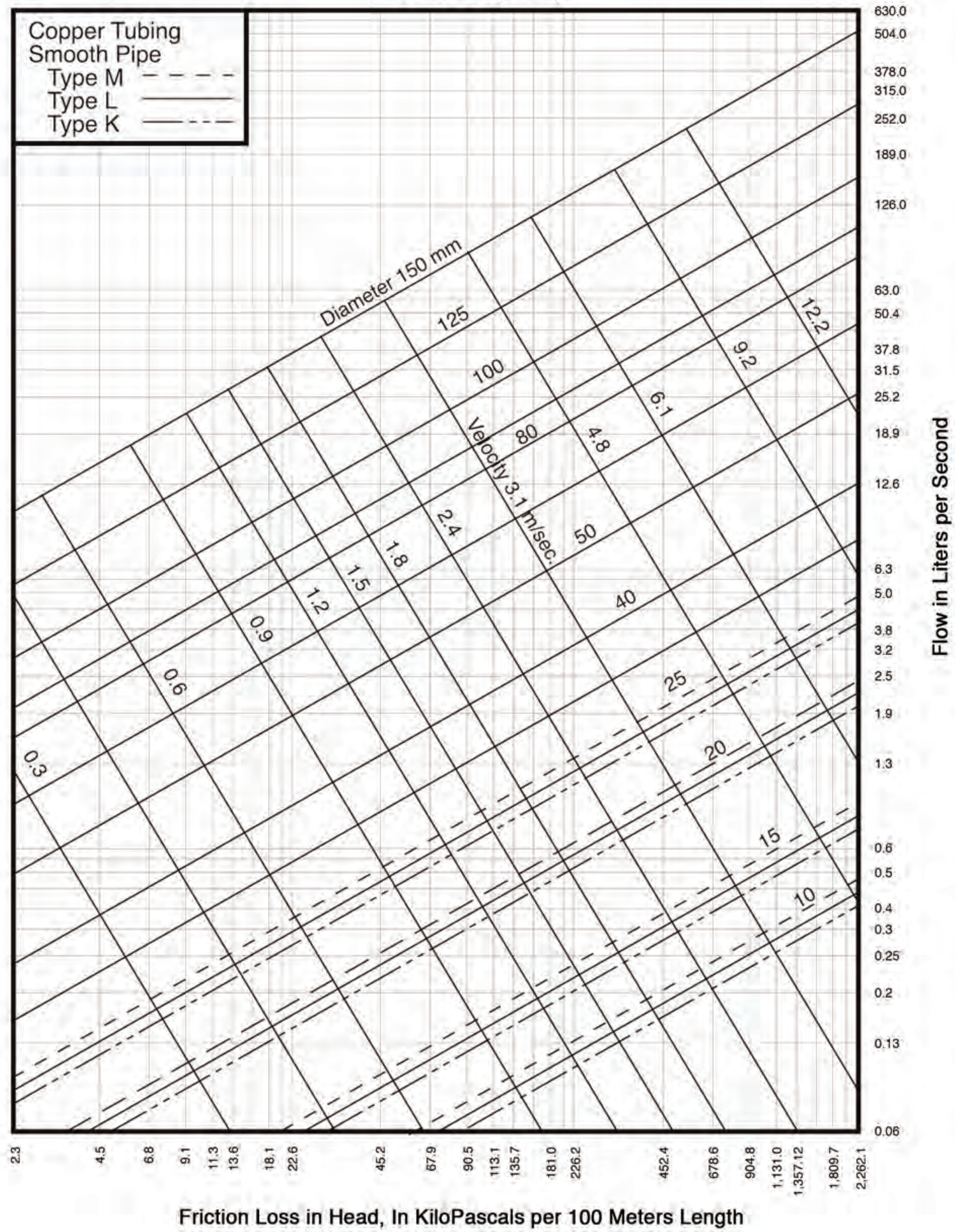


Chart A-5

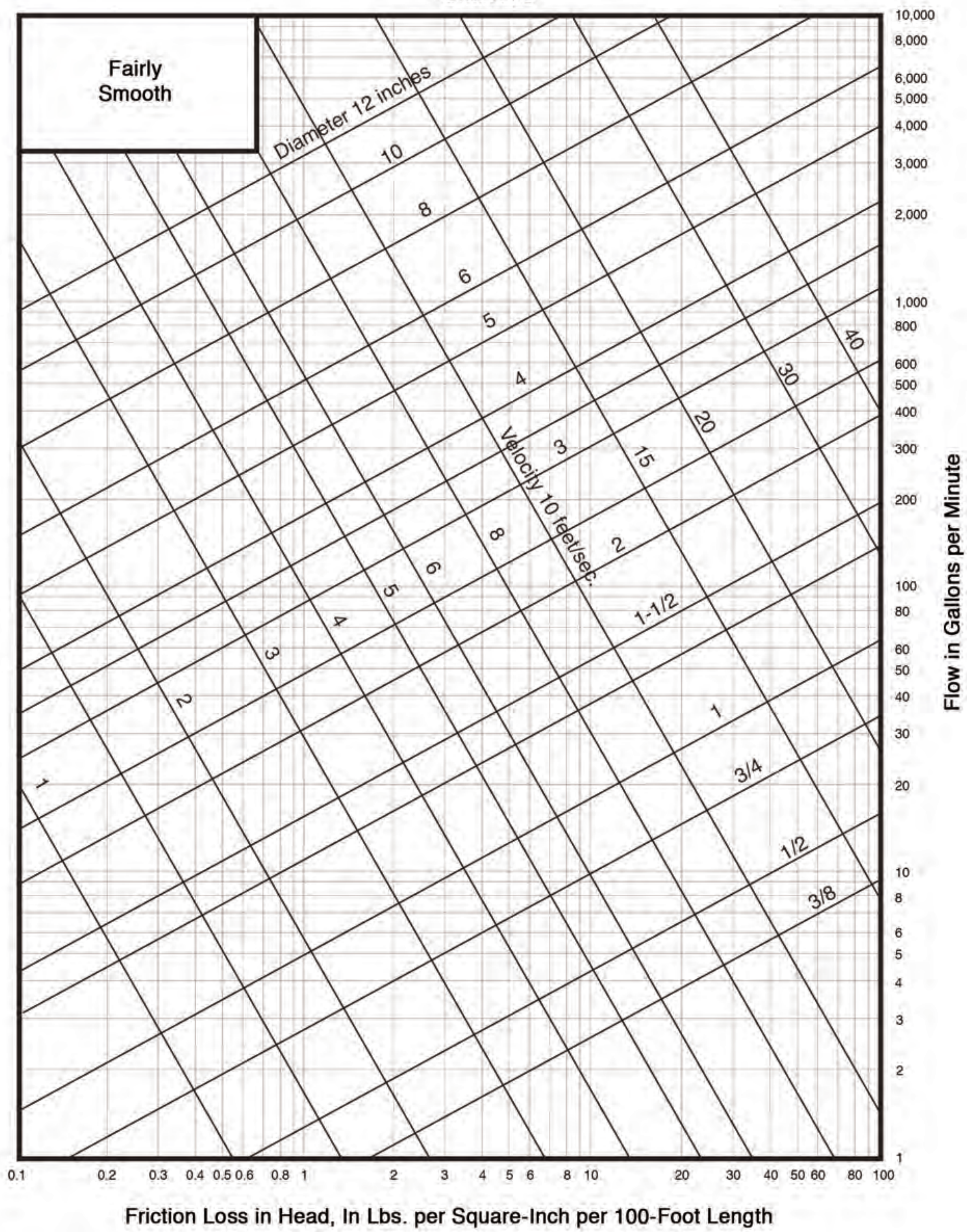
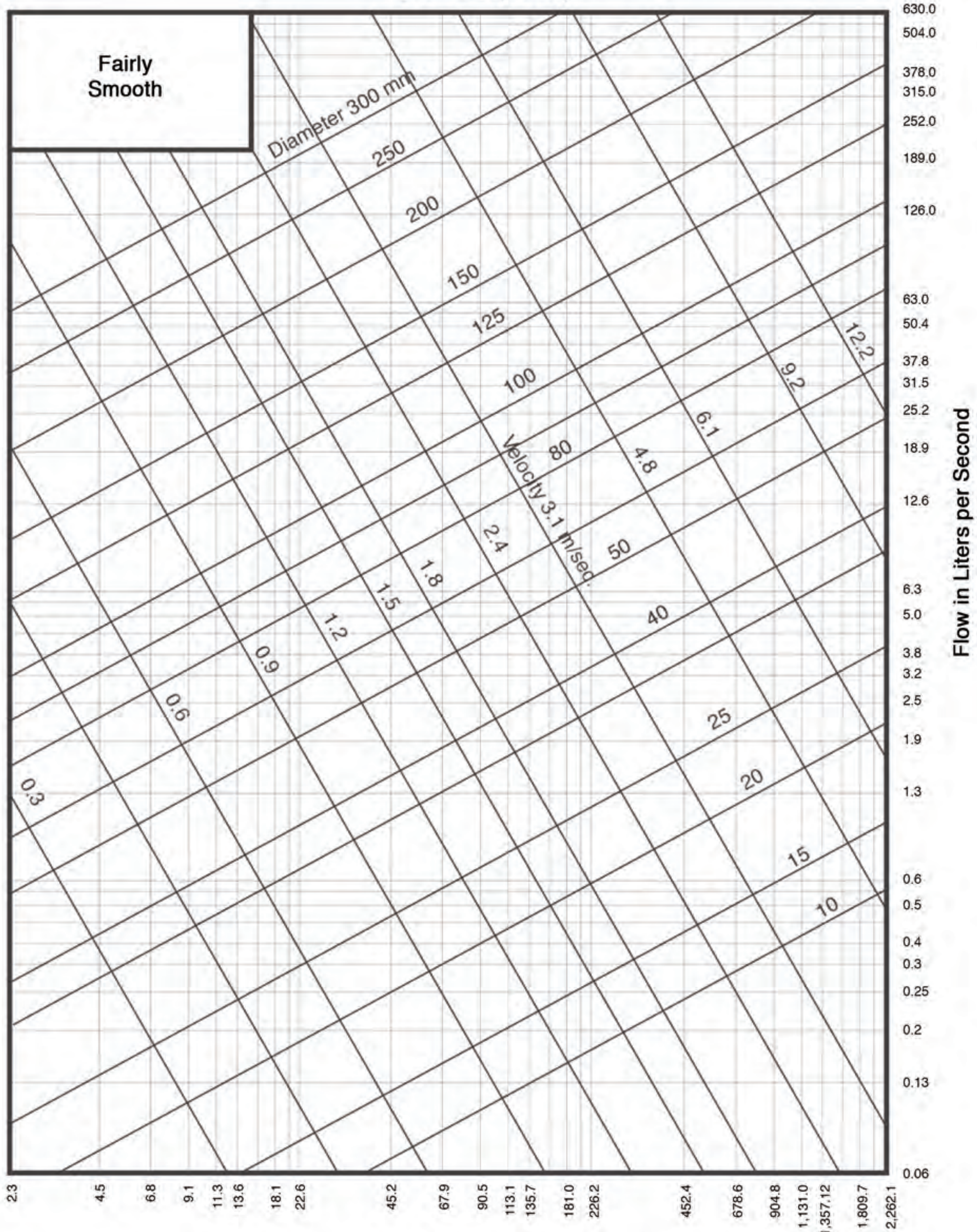

Fairly
Smooth
Diameter 12 inches
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1-1/2
1
3/4
1/2
3/8
Velocity 10 feet/sec.
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
15
20
30
40
10,000
8,000
6,000
5,000
4,000
3,000
2,000
1,000
800
600
500
400
300
200
100
80
60
50
40
30
20
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
Flow in Gallons per Minute
0.1
0.2
0.3
0.4
0.5
0.6
0.8
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
10
20
30
40
50
60
80
100
Friction Loss in Head, In Lbs. per Square-Inch per 100-Foot Length

Chart A-5 (Metric)



Friction Loss in Head, In KiloPascals per 100 Meters Length

Chart A-6

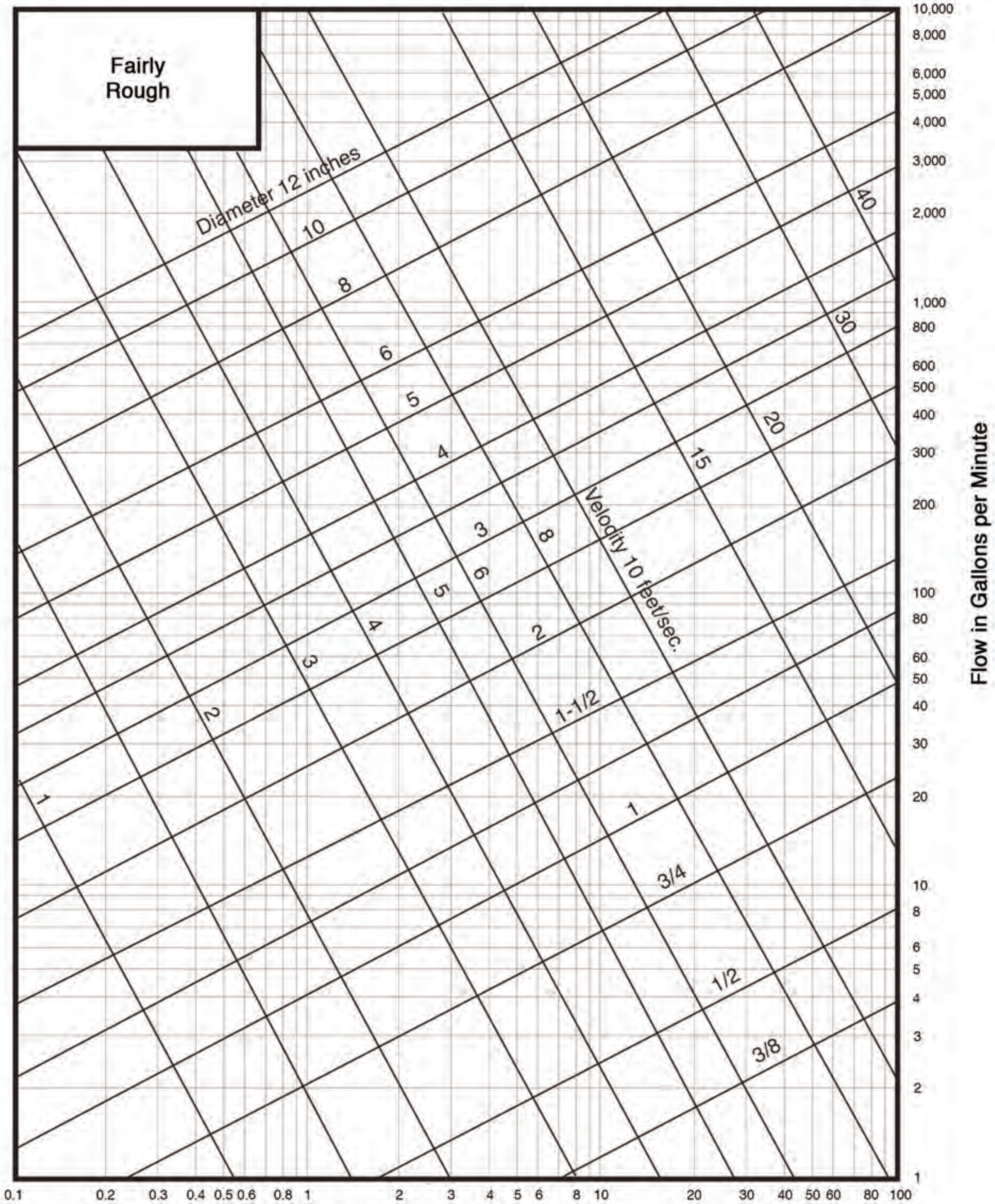

Fairly Rough
Diameter 12 inches
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1-1/2
1
3/4
1/2
3/8
Velocity 10 feet/sec.
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
15
20
30
40
10,000
8,000
6,000
5,000
4,000
3,000
2,000
1,000
800
600
500
400
300
200
100
80
60
50
40
30
20
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
Flow in Gallons per Minute
0.1
0.2
0.3
0.4
0.5
0.6
0.8
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
10
20
30
40
50
60
80
100
Friction Loss in Head, In Lbs. per Square-Inch per 100-Foot Length

Chart A-6 (Metric)

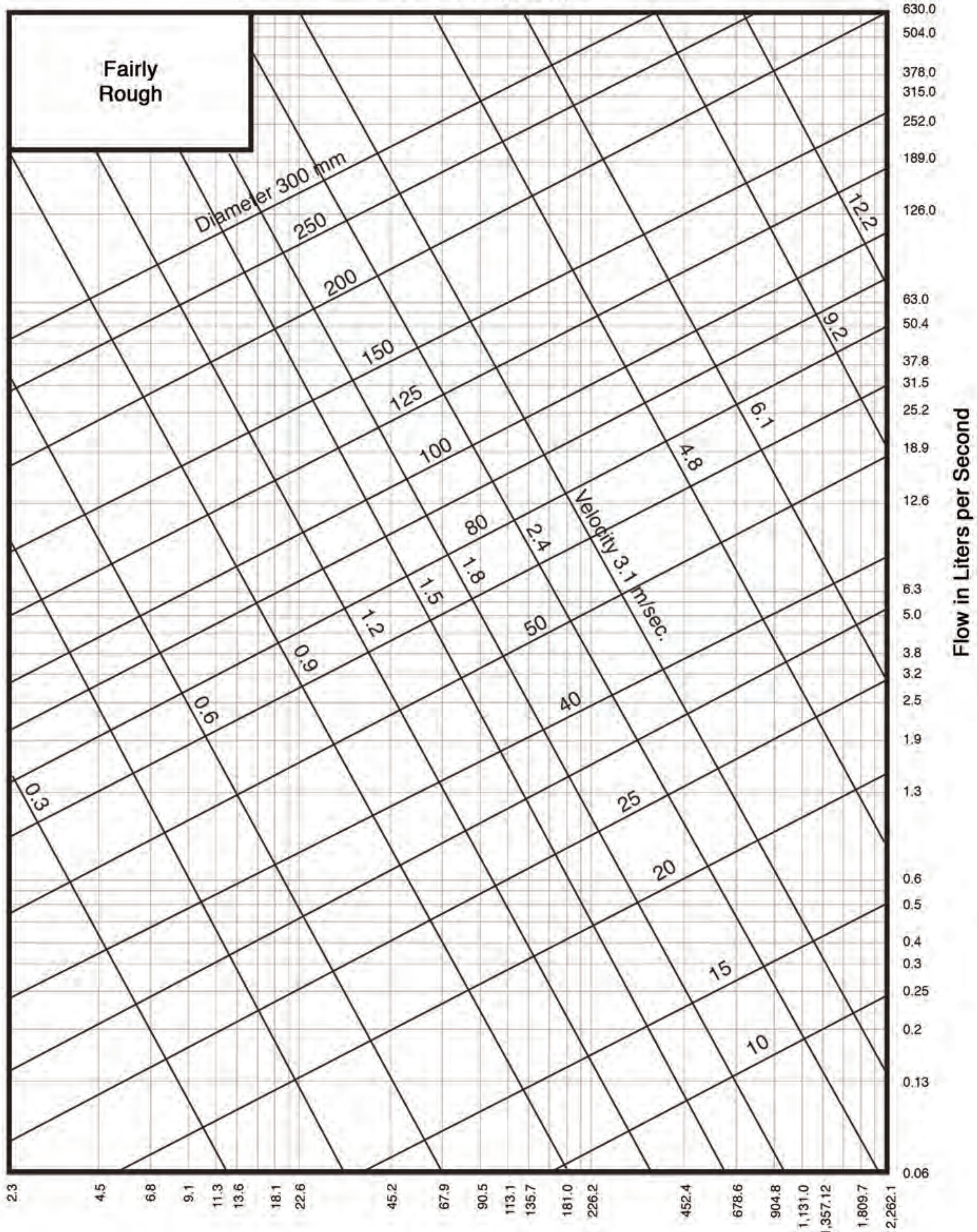


Chart A-7

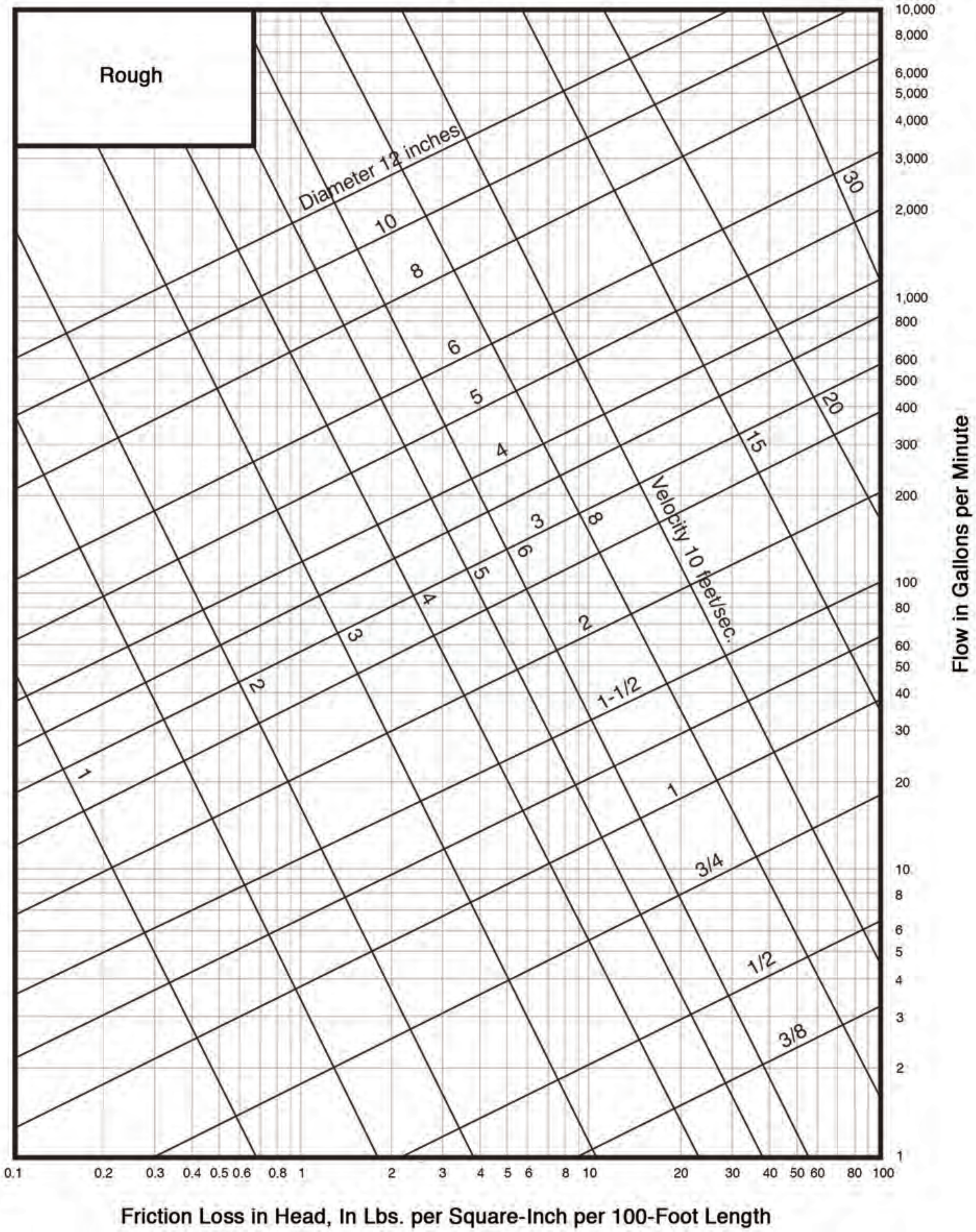
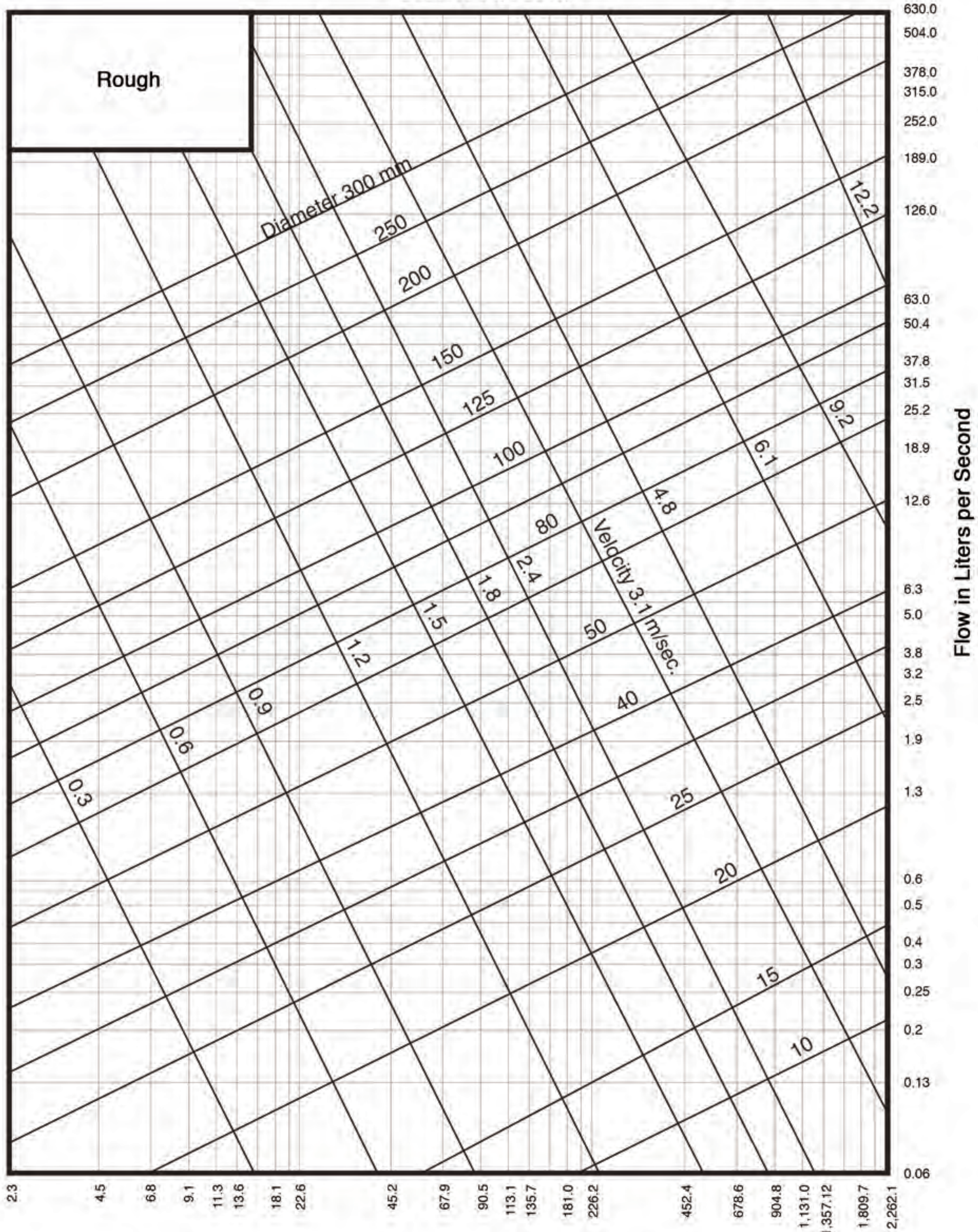

Rough
Diameter 12 inches
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1-1/2
1
3/4
1/2
3/8
Velocity 10 feet/sec.
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
15
20
30
10,000
8,000
6,000
5,000
4,000
3,000
2,000
1,000
800
600
500
400
300
200
100
80
60
50
40
30
20
10
8
6
5
4
3
2
1
0.1
0.2
0.3
0.4
0.5
0.6
0.8
1
2
3
4
5
6
8
10
20
30
40
50
60
80
100
Flow in Gallons per Minute
Friction Loss in Head, In Lbs. per Square-Inch per 100-Foot Length

Chart A-7 (Metric)



Errata for
2006 Uniform Plumbing Code – 7th Printing

The following is a list of changes that we found after the seventh printing of the 2006 Uniform Plumbing Code. These changes may or may not apply to your code book. However, we do encourage you to check your code book with this list to ensure that all the changes are updated. Thank you.

Chapter 4

Table 4-1: [TIA UPC-023-06] The first sentence of the second paragraph at the top of Table 4-1, "The total occupant load shall be determined by minimum existing requirements" has been deleted as the result of a TIA.

Chapter 5

Section 507.4.1: The reference to Figures 5-8 through 5-11 has been deleted to correlate with NFPA 54, National Fuel Gas Code.

Chapter 12

Section 1211.16(A) The reference to Section 1211.13 has been changed to correctly refer to Section 1211.14.

IS 9

Table 1: The example at the bottom of Table 1 for the "Lowest temperature expected" contains misplaced fraction lines.

IS 20

Table: The Δ symbol in the tables on pages 394 – 395 were inadvertently changed to $\varnothing$.

06/16/08

Errata for
2006 Uniform Plumbing Code – 5th Printing

The following is a list of changes that we found after the fifth printing of the 2006 Uniform Plumbing Code. These changes may or may not apply to your code book. However, we do encourage you to check your code book with this list to ensure that all the changes are updated. Thank you.

Chapter 5

Section 502.9: The extract number reads: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*5*.2.2]. Revise the extract number to read: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*3*.2.2]

Section 502.10: The extract number reads: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*5*.2.4]. Revise the extract number to read: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*3*.2.4]

Section 502.12: The extract number reads: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*5*]. Revise the extract number to read: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*3*]

Section 502.13: The extract number reads: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*6*]. Revise the extract number to read: [NFPA 54: 3.3.10*4*]

Section 502.14: The extract number reads: [NFPA 54: 3.3.*98.7*]. Revise the extract number to read: [NFPA 54: 3.3.*96.6*]

Section 507.3(1): This paragraph references Figure 5-12. Revise: [See Figure 5-*12*] to read: [See Figure 5-*7*]

Section 507.4.1: The end of this paragraph references Figure 5-7. Revise: [See Figure *5-7*] to read: [See Figures *5-8 through 5-11*].

Section 510.6.2(1): The extract number reads: [NFPA 54: *10.6*.2(1)(a)]. Revise the extract number to read: [NFPA 54: *12.7*.2(1)(a)]

Section 510.6.3: This paragraph references NFPA 54, Chapter *3*. Revise reference to read: NFPA 54, Chapter *13*.

Section 511.2: The title references Tables 5-*7* through 5-22. Revise the table references to read: Table 5-*8* through 5-22.

Table 5-20: The note at the bottom of this table references Figure *G.2.4*. Revise this reference to read: Figure *5-13*.

Chapter 5, Annex G

G.1.2, Solution: The first line of the solution for G.1.2 (pg 89) references Table 5-*10*. Revise this reference to read: Table 5-*9*

G.1.3, Example 3: Revise this paragraph to match the contents of its extract as stated in 2006 NFPA 54:

G.1.3. Example 3: Interpolating Between Table Values. An installer has an 80,000 Btu/h input appliance with a 4-inch diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 12-foot high Type B vent. The vent connector has a 5-foot lateral length and is also Type B. Can this appliance be vented using a 4-inch diameter vent?

Table G.2.3: The inside liner dimension for a 20x20 inch nominal liner size reads "16-*1/2*x16-3/4." Revise the inside liner dimension to read: 16-*3/4*x16-3/4

The equivalent area for a nominal liner size of 20x24 inches having an inside diameter of 22 inches currently reads: 3*08*.1 (in.^{2}). Revise the equivalent area to read: 3*80*.1.

The equivalent area for a nominal liner size of 24x24 inches having an inside diameter of 22.1 inches currently reads: 3*08*.1 (in.^{2}). Revise the equivalent area to read: 3*80*.1.

The 30x30 inch nominal liner size has a second inside diameter equal to 30.0 inches with an equivalent area equal to 706.8 square inches. Revise the table to display the additional inside diameter and equivalent area.

G.2.2, Solution: (First paragraph, pg 92) This paragraph references Section 511.*2.18*. Revise this reference to read: Section 511.*1.1(5).*

G.2.3, Ex. 5(b): (Masonry Chimney, Paragraph 2) The first line of this paragraph references Section 511.*2.4*. Revise this reference to read: Section 511.*1.9*.

G.2.4, Ex. 5(c): (Solution, first paragraph, pg 93) The first line references 13.2.18. Revise reference to read 511.2.18. Line 3 of this paragraph instructs the use of *Table 5-21(a) and Table 5-21(b)*. Revise the tables to read: *Table 5-21 and Table 5-22*.

(Solution, second paragraph) Line 2 of this paragraph instructs the use of *Table 5-21(a) and Table 5-21(b)*. Revise the tables to read: *Table 5-21 and Table 5-22*.

(Chimney Liner Requirement, paragraph 1) Line 2 of this paragraph references *Table 5-21(a)*. Revise this reference to read: *Table 5-21*. Line 7 of this paragraph references *Table 5-21(b)*. Revise this reference to read: *Table 5-22*.

(Chimney Liner Diameter) Line 9 of this paragraph references *13*.2.19. Revise this reference to read: *511*.2.19.

Chapter 13

Section 1318.11(2): Table 5.1.11 should read *NFPA 99:* Table 5.1.11.

Installation Standards, IS 2

Image: The image on page 331 (Approved Corners Under Uniform Plumbing Code) has an overlapping duplicate title. Revise this image to clarify the title.

Installation Standards, IS 11

2.7.2: Revise this section number to read 2.7.5.
2.7.2.1: Revise this section number to read 2.7.5.1

Errata for
2006 Uniform Plumbing Code
2nd printing Soft Cover & 1st Printing Loose Leaf

The following is a list of changes that we found after the second printing of the 2006 Uniform Plumbing Code. These changes may or may not apply to your code book. However, we do encourage you to check your code book with this list to ensure that all changes are updated. Thank you.

Page vi Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA): Please add Section 507.8 to the list. It should read, "*Section 507.8 – This Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) was issued on December 7, 2005.*"

<u>Chapter 5</u>
Section 507.8 Louvers Grilles and Screens: Remove the bar on the left and replace it with TIA. The section should now look like the following:

TIA **507.8 Louvers Grilles and Screens.**
TIA **(A) Louvers and Grilles.** The required size of
TIA openings for combustion, ventilation, and
TIA

<u>Chapter 6</u>
Section 604.3: The correct ASTM reference should read ASTM *B88* Seamless Copper Water Tube as listed in Table 14-1.
Section 603.2.5 Pressure Vacuum Breaker Backflow Prevention Assembly (DC): The last sentence of the paragraph should read, "This device shall be installed *indoors* only if provisions for spillage are provided."

<u>Chapter 10</u>
Section 1003.2: The paragraph should read, "No more than one (1) approved slip joint fitting may be used on the outlet side of a trap, and no tubing trap shall be installed without a listed tubing trap adapter. *Listed plastic trap adapters may be used to connect listed metal tubing traps.*

<u>Chapter 12</u>
Section 1209.5.4.2: Revise Reference ASTM D2513 to read *ASTM F1973*.
Section 1211.6 Gas Pipe Turns: Revise this section to read, "Changes in direction of gas pipe shall be made by the use of fittings *or* factory bends. [NFPA 54:7.5]
Section 1214.2.5: Revise paragraph to read, "Where the piping system is connected…such appliances and equipment shall be isolated from the piping system by closing the individual *appliance* equipment shutoff valves."
Section 1214.5.3 Test for Leakage: Delete "tested" and replace it with "checked". The paragraph should now read, "…the piping system shall be *checked* for leakage."
Table 12-32 Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe:
The Inlet Pressure and Pressure Drop should be *11.0 in w.c.* and *0.5 in w.c.* respectively.